






Chapter 1

Routine maintenance and servicing

Contents

Air conditioning system check	14	Ignition timing check	See Chapter 5
Air cleaner element renewal	29	Introduction	1
Automatic transmission fluid level check	7	Manual transmission oil level check	18
Automatic transmission fluid renewal	32	Oil filler cap check	31
Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal	11	Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system check and filter cleaning	30
Battery check, maintenance and charging	9	Power steering fluid level check	5
Brake check	23	Road test	26
Brake fluid renewal	36	Roadwheel nut tightness check	25
Coolant renewal	28	Routine maintenance	2
Door and bonnet check and lubrication	24	Seat belt check	10
Driveshaft rubber gaiter and CV joint check	20	Spark plug renewal	27
Electrical system check	8	Steering, suspension and roadwheel check	19
Engine compartment wiring check	13	Timing belt renewal	34
Engine oil and filter change	16	Tyre and tyre pressure checks	4
Exhaust system check	21	Underbody and fuel/brake line check	22
Fluid level checks	3	Underbonnet check for fluid leaks and hose condition	12
Ford Escort and Orion maintenance schedule	1	Valve clearance adjustment	15
Fuel filter renewal	35	Windscreen/tailgate washer system and wiper blade check	6
Handbrake adjustment	33		
Idle speed and mixture check and adjustment	17		

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

Specifications

Engine

Direction of crankshaft rotation	Clockwise (seen from right-hand side of vehicle)
Oil filter:	
HCS and CVH engines	Champion C104
Zetec engine	Champion C148

Cooling system

Coolant protection at standard 40% antifreeze/water mixture ratio:	
Slush point	-25°C (-13°F)
Solidifying point	-30°C (-22°F)
Coolant specific gravity at standard 40% antifreeze/water mixture ratio and 15°C/59°F - with no other additives in coolant	1.061

Fuel system

Idle speed*:	
1.3 litre HCS (carburettor) engine	750 ± 50 rpm (cooling fan running)
1.4 litre CVH (carburettor) engine	800 ± 50 rpm (cooling fan running)
1.6 litre CVH (carburettor) engine	800 ± 50 rpm (cooling fan running)
1.6 litre CVH (fuel-injected) engine:	
Idle speed	900 ± 50 rpm
Base idle speed	750 ± 50 rpm

1.2 Servicing Specifications

Fuel system (continued)

Idle mixture CO content*:

1.3 litre HCS (carburettor) engine	1.0 ± 0.5%
1.4 litre CVH (carburettor) engine	1.0 ± 0.5%
1.6 litre CVH (carburettor) engine	1.5 ± 0.5%
1.6 litre CVH (fuel-injected) engine	0.8 ± 0.25%

***Note:** The idle speed and mixture CO content is only adjustable on the engines shown above. On all other engines, it is controlled by the engine management system, and cannot be checked or adjusted without specialised test equipment.

Air filter element:

1.3 litre HCS engine	Champion W225
1.4 litre CVH engine	Champion W226
1.6 litre CVH (carburettor) engine	Champion W226
1.6 litre CVH (fuel-injected) engine	Champion U612
1.6 and 1.8 litre Zetec engine	Champion U612

Fuel filter:

1.3 litre HCS (CFI fuel-injected) engine	Champion type not available
1.4 litre CVH (CFI fuel-injected) engine	Champion type not available
1.6 litre CVH (fuel-injected) engine	Champion L204
1.6 and 1.8 litre Zetec engine	Champion L218

Ignition system

Firing order:

HCS engine	1-2-4-3 (No 1 cylinder at timing chain end of engine)
All other engines	1-3-4-2 (No 1 cylinder at timing belt end of engine)

Spark plugs*:

1.3 litre HCS (carburettor) engine	Champion RS9YCC or RS9YC
1.4 litre CVH engine	Champion RC7YCC or RC7YC
1.6 litre CVH (carburettor) engine	Champion RC7YCC or RC7YC
1.6 litre CVH (EFI fuel-injected) engine	Champion RC6YCC or RC6YC
1.6 and 1.8 litre Zetec engine	Champion RE7YCC

Electrode gap*:

1.3 litre HCS engine	1.0 mm
1.4 litre CVH (carburettor) engine	0.8 mm
1.4 litre CVH (CFI fuel-injected) engine	1.0 mm
1.6 litre CVH engine	0.8 mm
1.6 and 1.8 litre Zetec engine	1.0 mm

Spark plug (HT) leads:

HCS engine	Champion LS-28
1.4 litre CVH engine	Champion LS-27
1.6 litre CVH (carburettor) engine	Champion LS-27
1.6 litre CVH (fuel-injected) engine	Champion LS-26
1.6 and 1.8 litre Zetec engine	Champion type not available

Maximum resistance per lead 30 000 ohms

* Information on spark plug types and electrode gaps is as recommended by Champion Spark Plug. Where alternative types are used, refer to their manufacturer's recommendations.

Braking system

Minimum front or rear brake pad lining thickness	1.5 mm
Minimum rear brake shoe lining thickness	1.0 mm

Tyre pressures (cold)

Saloon, Hatchback and Estate models:

Normally-laden*	2.0 bars (29 psi)	1.8 bars (26 psi)
Fully-laden*	2.3 bars (34 psi)	2.8 bars (40 psi)

Van models:

Normally-laden*	2.0 bars (29 psi)	1.8 bars (26 psi)
Fully-laden*		
With 165 R 13 tyres	2.3 bars (34 psi)	3.0 bars (44 psi)
With 165 R 13 reinforced tyres	2.3 bars (34 psi)	3.5 bars (51 psi)

Note: Normally-laden means up to 3 persons. For sustained high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h), increased pressures are necessary. Consult the driver's handbook supplied with the vehicle.

Wiper blades

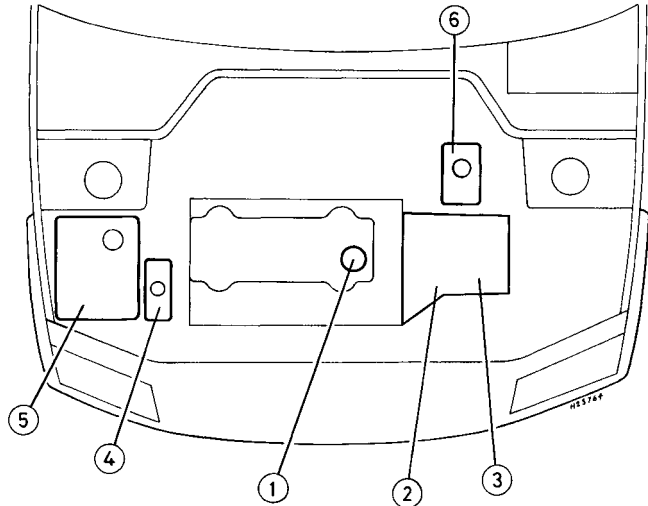
Windscreen	Champion X-5103
Tailgate/rear window	Champion X-5103

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Auxiliary drivebelt cover fasteners	5 to 10	4 to 7
Auxiliary drivebelt adjustment:		
Adjusting bolt (sliding arm)	18 to 25	13 to 18
Central (locking) bolt	18 to 25	13 to 18
Pinion (adjuster) nut	10 to 15	7 to 11
Alternator mounting bolts	20 to 27	15 to 19
Engine oil drain plug	21 to 28	15 to 21
Manual transmission filler/level plug	23 to 30	17 to 22
Spark plugs:		
HCS engines	14 to 20	12 to 15
CVH engines	17 to 33	13 to 24
Zetec engines	14 to 20	12 to 15
Roadwheel nuts	70 to 100	52 to 74
Seat belt mounting bolts	29 to 45	22 to 33
Windscreen wiper arm nut	17 to 18	12.5 to 13

Lubricants and fluids

Component or system	Lubricant type/specification
1 Engine	Multigrade engine oil to specification API SG/CD or better, viscosity range 5W/50 to 10W/30
2 BC type manual transmission	SAE 80 high pressure gear oil to Ford specification SQM2C-9008-A
2 MTX-75 type manual transmission	Gear oil to Ford specification ESD-M2C-186-A
3 Automatic transmission	Transmission fluid to Ford specification ESP-M2C-166-H
4 Power steering	Transmission fluid to Ford specification ESP-M2C-166-H
5 Cooling system	Soft water, and antifreeze (ethylene glycol-based, suitable for use in mixed-metal cooling systems) to Ford specification ESD-M97B-49-A
6 Braking system	Hydraulic fluid to Ford specification ESD-M6C-57-A, Super DOT 4 or equivalent
Wheel hub bearing grease (front and rear)	Grease to Ford specification SAM-1C-9111A



Capacities

Engine oil

At oil and filter change:	
HCS engine	3.25 litres
CVH engine	3.50 litres
Zetec engine	4.25 litres
Difference between dipstick minimum and maximum level notches	0.5 to 1.0 litre

Cooling system

1.3 litre HCS engine	7.1 litres
1.4 litre CVH engine	7.6 litres
1.6 litre CVH engine	7.8 litres
1.6 and 1.8 Zetec engine	7.4 litres

Fuel tank	55.0 litres
-----------	-------------

Manual transmission

BC type (four-speed)	2.8 litres
BC type (five-speed)	3.1 litres
MTX-75 type	2.4 litres

Automatic transmission

Without fluid cooler	3.5 litres
With fluid cooler	3.6 litres

Washer system reservoir

Excluding headlight washer system	4.0 litres
Including headlight washer system	8.0 litres

Ford Escort and Orion maintenance schedule

General

The manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule for these vehicles is as described below - note that the schedule starts from the vehicle's date of registration. These are the minimum maintenance intervals recommended by the factory for Escorts and Orions driven daily, but subjected only to "normal" use. If you wish to keep your vehicle in peak condition at all times, you may wish to perform some of these procedures even more often. Because frequent maintenance enhances the efficiency, performance and resale value of your vehicle, we encourage you to do so. If your usage is not "normal", shorter intervals are also recommended - the most important examples of these are noted in the schedule. These shorter intervals apply particularly if you drive in dusty areas, tow a caravan or trailer, sit with the engine idling or drive at low speeds for extended periods (ie, in heavy traffic), or drive for short distances (less than four miles) in below-freezing temperatures.

When your vehicle is new, it should be serviced by a Ford dealer

Weekly, when refuelling, or before any long journey

- ☐ Check the engine oil level, and top-up if necessary (Section 3)
- ☐ Check the brake fluid level, and top-up if necessary (Section 3). If repeated topping-up is required, check the system for leaks or damage at the earliest possible opportunity (Sections 12 and 22)
- ☐ Check the windscreen/tailgate washer fluid level, and top-up if necessary (Section 3)
- ☐ Check the tyre pressures, including the spare (Section 4)
- ☐ Check the tyres for excessive tread wear, or damage (Section 4)
- ☐ Check the operation of all (exterior and interior) lights and the horn, wipers and windscreen/tailgate washer system (Sections 6 and 8). Renew any blown bulbs (Chapter 12), and clean the lenses of all exterior lights
- ☐ Check the coolant level, and top-up if necessary (Section 3)
- ☐ Check the battery electrolyte level, where applicable (Section 3)
- ☐ Check the power steering fluid level, and top-up if necessary (Section 5)
- ☐ Check all reservoirs, hoses and pipes for leakage (Section 12)
- ☐ Check the operation of the air conditioning system (Section 14)
- ☐ Check the operation of the handbrake (Section 26 and Section 33 for adjustment)
- ☐ Check the aim of the windscreen/tailgate/headlight washer jets, correcting them if required (Section 6)
- ☐ Check the condition of the wiper blades, renewing them if worn or no longer effective - note that the manufacturer recommends renewing the blades as a safety precaution, irrespective of their apparent condition, at least once a year (Section 6)
- ☐ Check the automatic transmission fluid level with the engine still hot (Section 7)

service department to protect the factory warranty. In many cases, the initial maintenance check is done at no cost to the owner. Note that this first free service (carried out by the selling dealer 1500 miles or 3 months after delivery), although an important check for a new vehicle, is not part of the regular maintenance schedule, and is therefore not mentioned here.

It should be noted that for the 1992 model year, the service time/mileage intervals were extended by the manufacturer to the periods shown in this schedule. Although these intervals can be applied retrospectively, owners of earlier vehicles may notice a discrepancy between this schedule and the one shown in the Service Guide supplied with the vehicle.

Standard service - every 10 000 miles or 12 months, whichever occurs first

- ☐ Check the electrical system (Section 8)
- ☐ Check the battery (Section 9)
- ☐ Check the seat belts (Section 10)
- ☐ Check the auxiliary drivebelt (Section 11)
- ☐ Check under the bonnet for fluid leaks and hose condition (Section 12)
- ☐ Check the condition of all engine compartment wiring (Section 13)
- ☐ Check the condition of all air conditioning system components (Section 14)
- ☐ Check the valve clearance adjustment - HCS engines only (Section 15)
- ☐ Change the engine oil and filter (Section 16)
- ☐ Check the engine idle speed and mixture - HCS and CVH engines only, where possible (Section 17)
- ☐ Check the manual transmission oil level (Section 18)
- ☐ Check the steering, suspension and roadwheels (Section 19)
- ☐ Check the driveshaft rubber gaiters and CV joints (Section 20)
- ☐ Check the exhaust system (Section 21)
- ☐ Check the underbody, and all fuel/brake lines (Section 22)
- ☐ Check the brake system (Section 23)
- ☐ Check the doors and bonnet, and lubricate their hinges and locks (Section 24)
- ☐ Check the security of all roadwheel nuts (Section 25)
- ☐ Road test (Section 26).

Note: If the vehicle is used regularly for very short (less than 10 miles), stop/go journeys, the oil and filter should be renewed between services (ie, every 5000 miles/6 months). Seek the advice of a Ford dealer if in doubt on this point.

Every 20 000 miles

Carry out all operations listed above, plus the following:

- ☐ Renew the spark plugs - HCS and CVH engines only (Section 27)

Extended service - every 30 000 miles or 3 years, whichever occurs first

Carry out all operations listed above, plus the following:

- ☐ Renew the coolant (Section 28)
- ☐ Renew the air cleaner filter element (Section 29). Note that this task must be carried out at more frequent intervals if the vehicle is used in dusty or polluted conditions
- ☐ Check the Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system, and clean the filter (Section 30)
- ☐ Renew the spark plugs - Zetec engines only (Section 27)
- ☐ Check the oil filler cap - HCS engines only (Section 31)
- ☐ Renew the automatic transmission fluid (Section 32)
- ☐ Check the handbrake adjustment (Section 33)

Every 60 000 miles

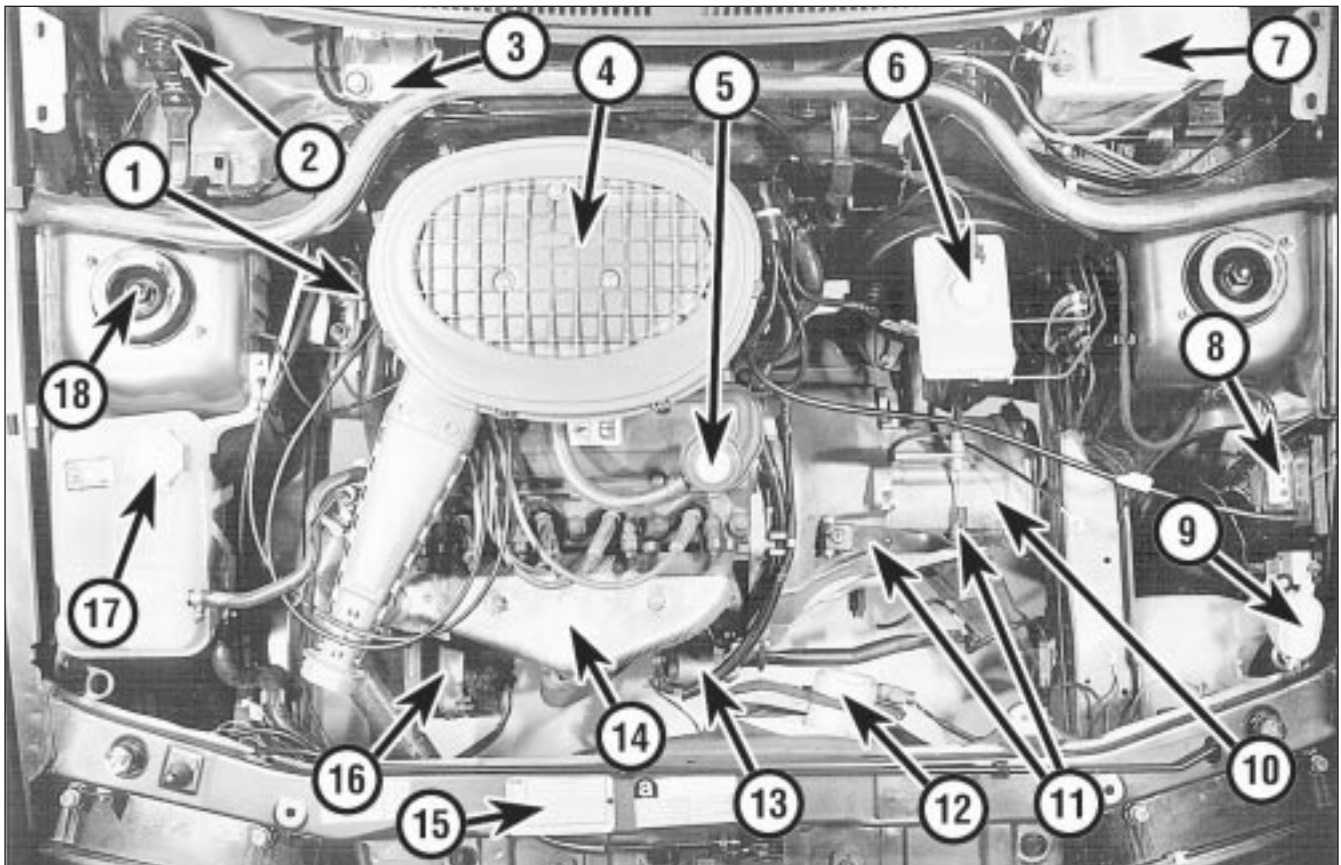
Carry out all operations listed above, plus the following:

- ☐ Renew the timing belt (Section 34)
- ☐ Renew the fuel filter (Section 35)

Every 3 years (regardless of mileage)

- ☐ Renew the brake fluid (Section 36)

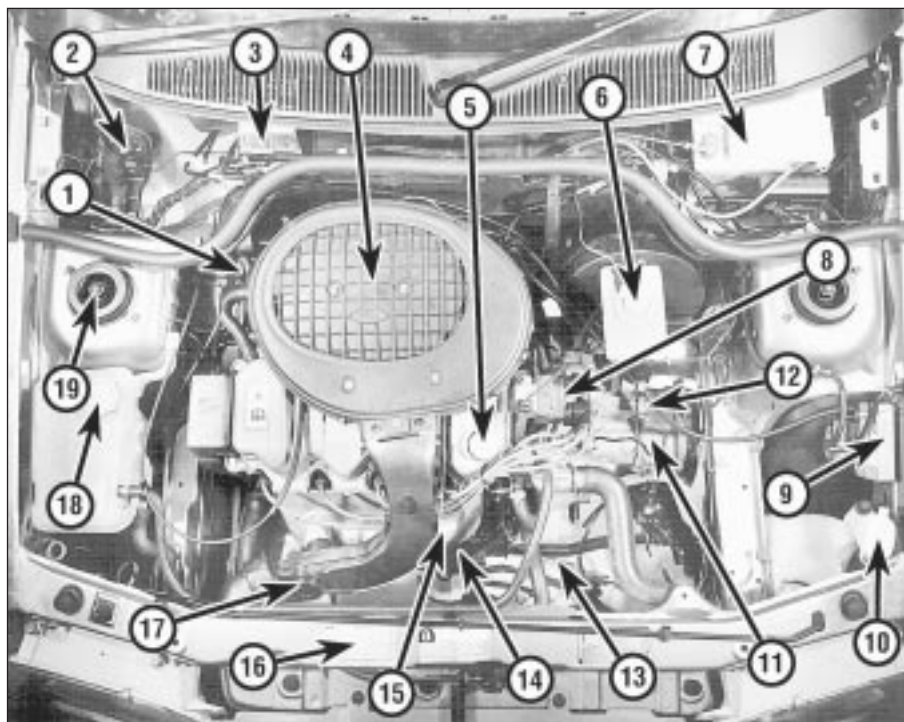
1



Engine compartment component locations - 1.3 litre HCS carburettor engine

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 Oil level dipstick location | 6 Brake master cylinder reservoir | 11 Clutch operating lever and cable | 15 Vehicle identification plate (VIN) |
| 2 Anti-theft alarm horn | 7 Battery | 12 Cooling fan | 16 Alternator |
| 3 Windscreen wiper motor | 8 Ignition module | 13 Starter motor | 17 Coolant expansion tank |
| 4 Air cleaner | 9 Washer fluid reservoir | 14 Exhaust heat shield/air deflector | 18 Suspension upper mounting |
| 5 Engine oil filler cap | 10 Transmission | | |

1.6 Maintenance & Servicing

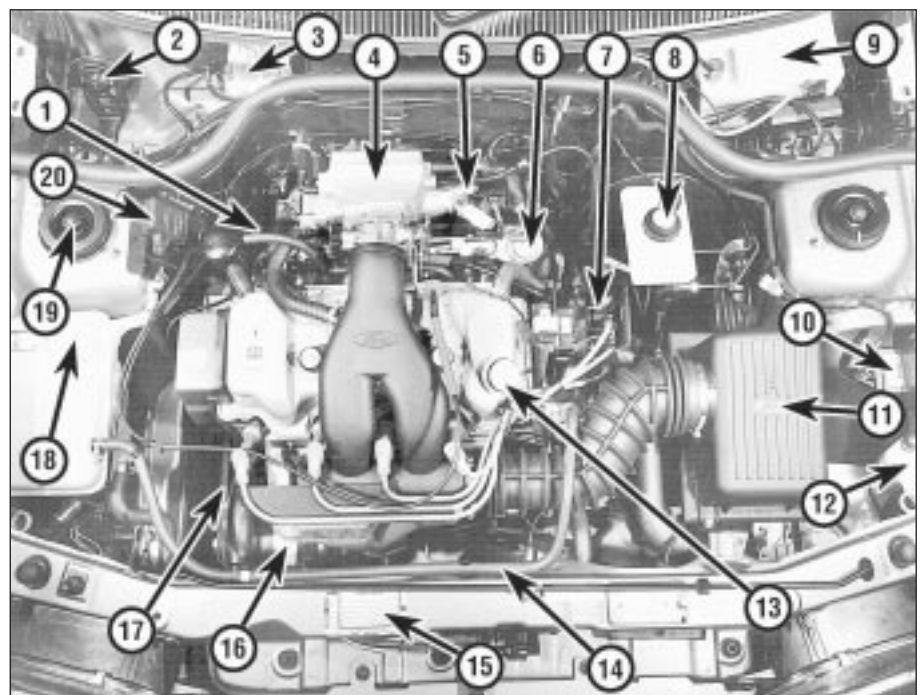


Engine compartment component locations
- 1.6 litre CVH carburettor engine

- 1 Oil level dipstick location
- 2 Anti-theft alarm horn
- 3 Windscreen wiper motor
- 4 Air cleaner
- 5 Engine oil filler cap
- 6 Brake master cylinder reservoir
- 7 Battery
- 8 DIS Ignition coil
- 9 Ignition module
- 10 Washer fluid reservoir
- 11 Transmission
- 12 Clutch cable
- 13 Cooling fan
- 14 Starter motor
- 15 Exhaust heat shield/air deflector
- 16 Vehicle identification plate (VIN)
- 17 Intake air temperature control valve
- 18 Coolant expansion tank
- 19 Suspension upper mounting

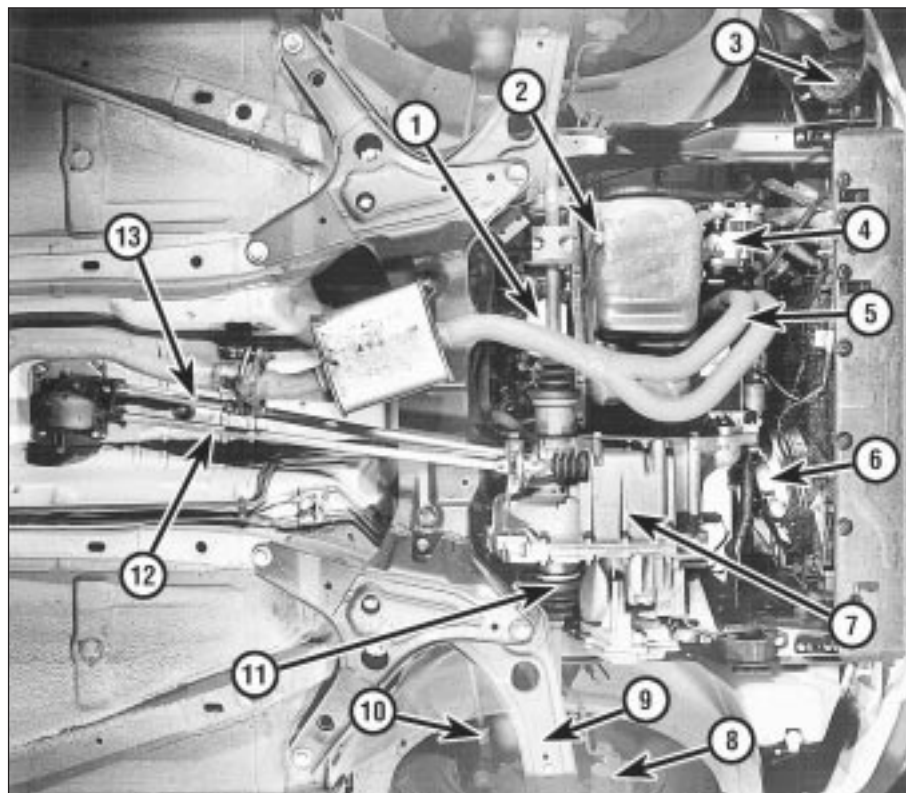
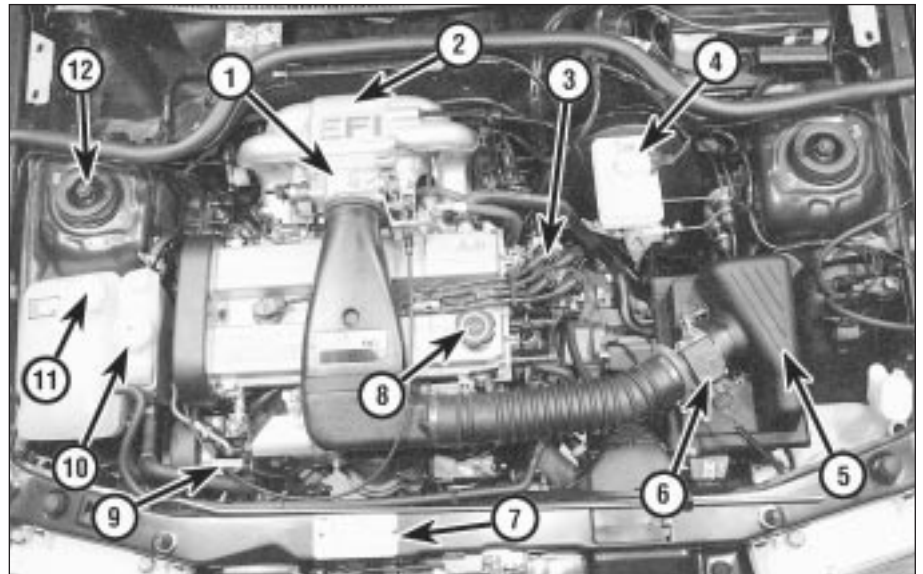
Engine compartment component locations
- 1.6 litre CVH EFI fuel injected engine

- 1 Oil level dipstick location
- 2 Anti-theft alarm horn
- 3 Windscreen wiper motor
- 4 Throttle housing
- 5 Intake air temperature sensor
- 6 Fuel pressure regulator
- 7 EDIS Ignition coil
- 8 Brake master cylinder reservoir
- 9 Battery
- 10 Ignition module
- 11 Air cleaner housing
- 12 Washer fluid reservoir
- 13 Engine oil filler cap
- 14 Cooling fan
- 15 Vehicle identification plate (VIN)
- 16 Starter motor
- 17 Auxiliary drivebelt
- 18 Coolant expansion tank
- 19 Suspension upper mounting
- 20 MAP sensor



Engine compartment component locations - 1.6 litre Zetec SEFi fuel injected engine

- 1 Throttle housing
- 2 Inlet manifold
- 3 EDIS ignition coil
- 4 Brake master cylinder reservoir
- 5 Air cleaner housing
- 6 Air mass meter
- 7 Vehicle identification plate (VIN)
- 8 Engine oil filler cap
- 9 Oil level dipstick location
- 10 Power steering fluid reservoir
- 11 Coolant expansion tank
- 12 Suspension upper mounting



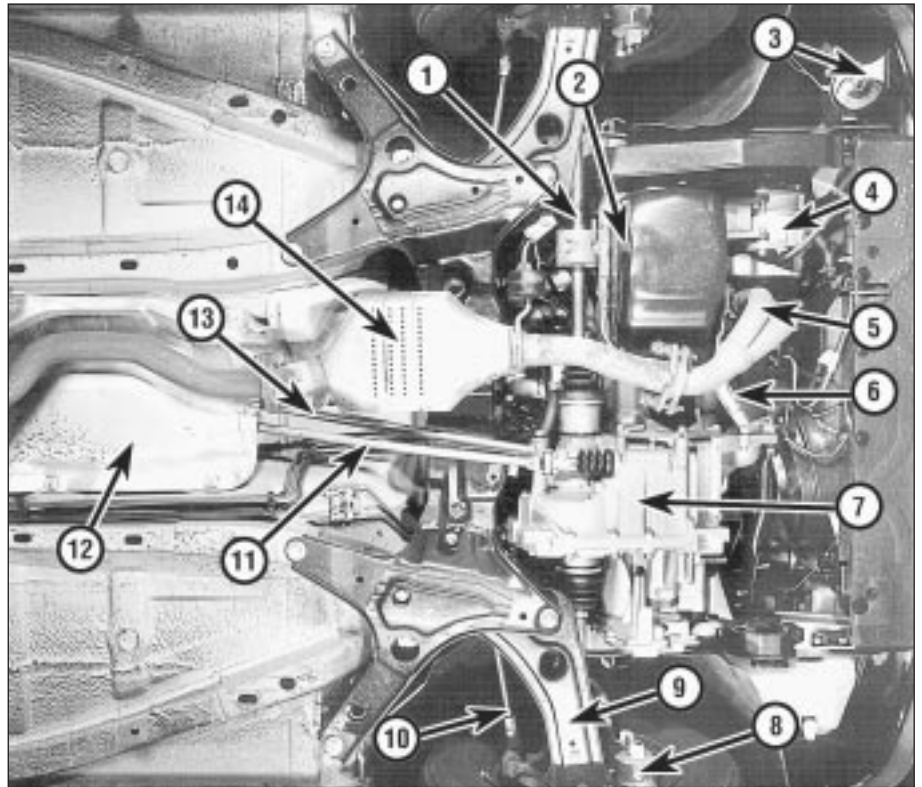
Underside view at front end showing component locations on the 1.3 litre HCS carburettor engine model

- 1 Engine oil filter
- 2 Engine oil drain plug
- 3 Horn
- 4 Alternator
- 5 Exhaust downpipe
- 6 Cooling fan
- 7 Transmission
- 8 Brake caliper
- 9 Lower suspension arm
- 10 Track rod end balljoint
- 11 Driveshaft
- 12 Gearshift rod
- 13 Stabiliser rod (transmission)

1.8 Maintenance & Servicing

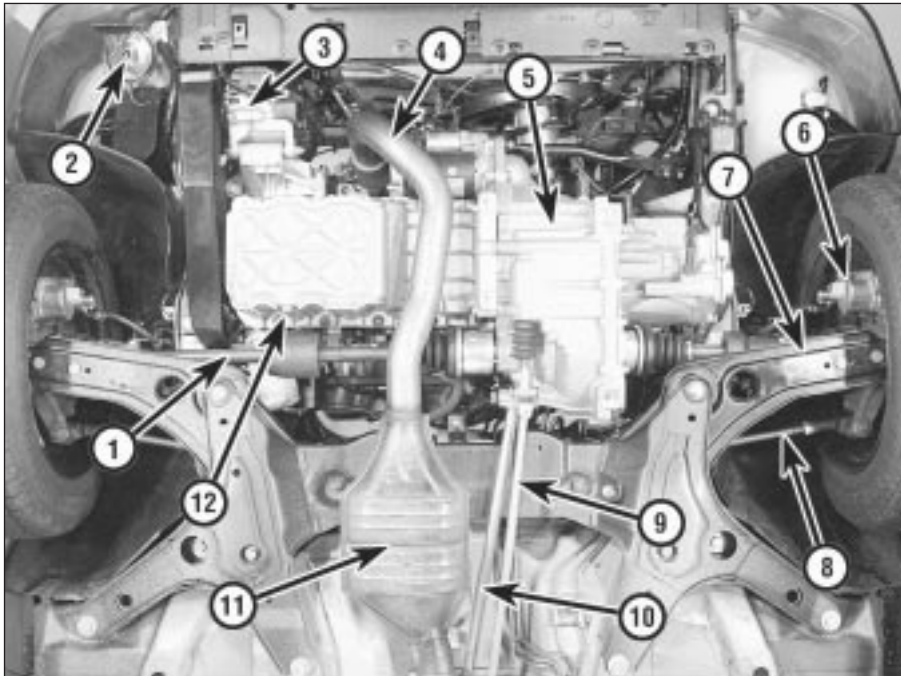
Underside view at front end showing component locations on the 1.6 litre CVH EFI engine model

- 1 Driveshaft
- 2 Engine oil drain plug
- 3 Horn
- 4 Alternator
- 5 Exhaust downpipe
- 6 Oxygen sensor
- 7 Transmission
- 8 Brake caliper
- 9 Lower suspension arm
- 10 Track rod
- 11 Gearshift rod
- 12 Heatshield
- 13 Stabiliser rod (transmission)
- 14 Catalytic converter



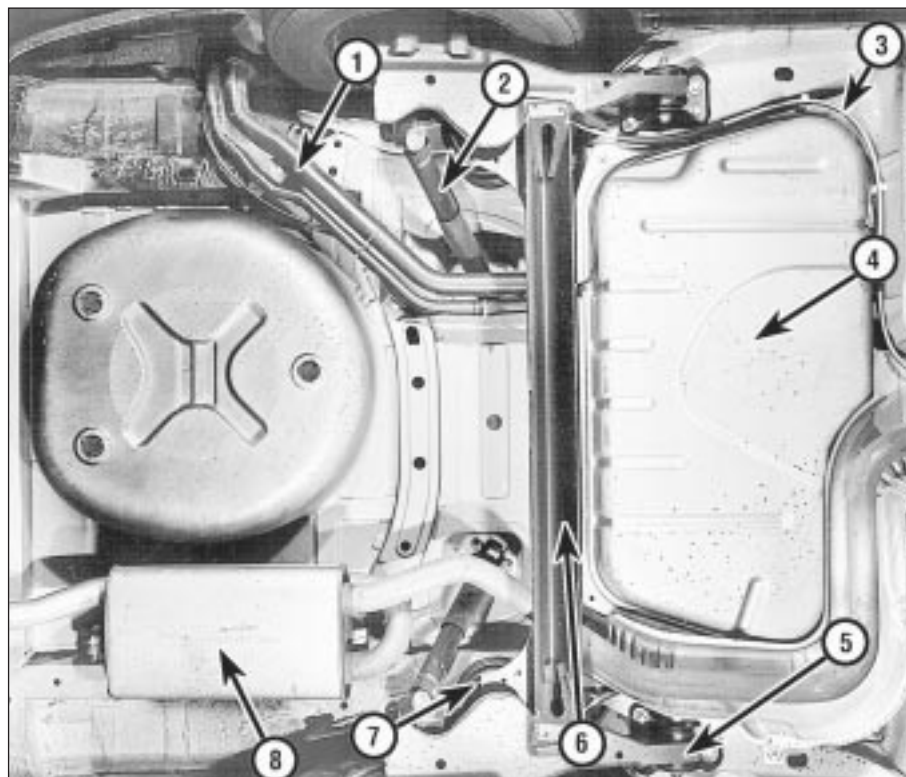
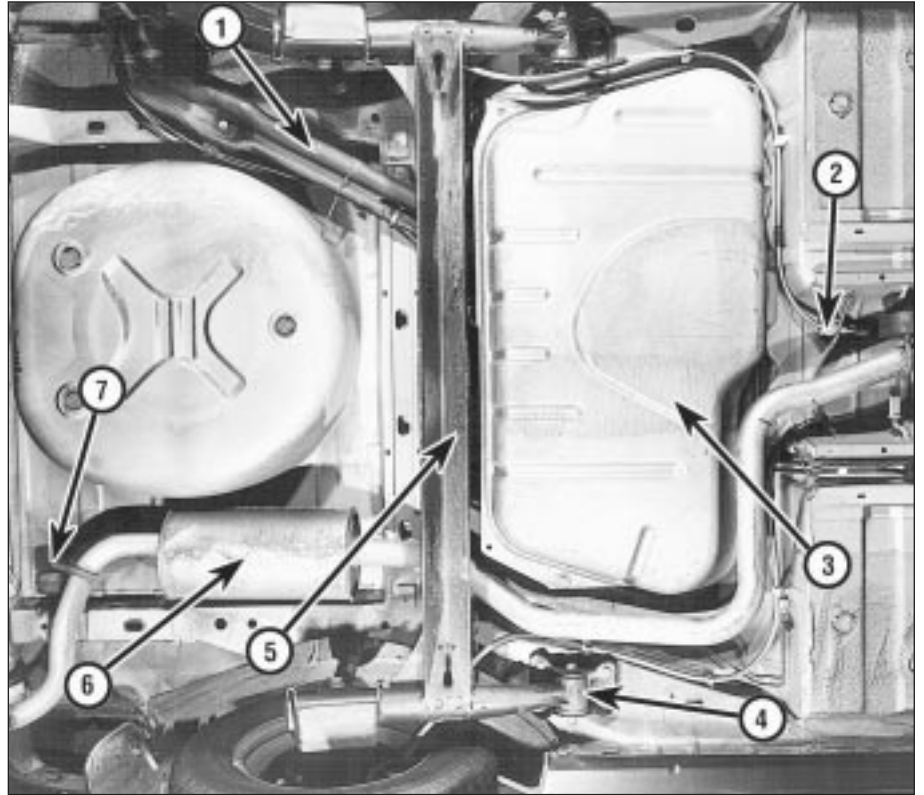
Underside view at front end showing component locations on the 1.6 litre Zetec SEFi engine model

- 1 Driveshaft
- 2 Horn
- 3 Alternator
- 4 Exhaust downpipe
- 5 Transmission
- 6 Brake caliper
- 7 Lower suspension arm
- 8 Track rod
- 9 Gearshift rod
- 10 Stabiliser rod (transmission)
- 11 Catalytic converter
- 12 Engine oil drain plug



Underside view at rear end showing component locations on a 1.3 litre Hatchback model

- 1 Fuel filler pipe
- 2 Handbrake cable adjuster
- 3 Fuel tank
- 4 Suspension mounting
- 5 Rear axle beam
- 6 Exhaust rear silencer
- 7 Exhaust system support/insulator



Underside view at rear end showing component locations on a 1.6 litre Estate model

- 1 Fuel filler pipe
- 2 Shock absorber
- 3 Handbrake cable
- 4 Fuel tank
- 5 Suspension mounting
- 6 Rear axle beam
- 7 Rear coil spring
- 8 Exhaust system rear silencer

1 Introduction

This Chapter is designed to help the home mechanic maintain the Ford Escort and Orion models for peak performance, economy, safety and long life.

On the following pages is a master maintenance schedule, followed by Sections dealing specifically with each item on the schedule. Visual checks, adjustments, component replacement and other helpful items are included. Refer to the accompanying illustrations of the engine compartment and the underside of the vehicle for the location of various components.

Servicing your Escort or Orion in accordance with the mileage/time maintenance schedule and the following

Sections will provide it with a planned maintenance programme, which should result in a long and reliable service life. This is a comprehensive plan, so maintaining some items but not others at the specified service intervals will not produce the same results.

As you service your car, you will discover that many of the procedures can - and should - be grouped together, because of the nature of the particular procedure you're performing, or because of the close proximity to one another of two otherwise-unrelated components.

For example, if the vehicle is raised for any reason, you should inspect the exhaust, suspension, steering and fuel systems while you're under the vehicle. When you're checking the tyres, it makes good sense to check the brakes and wheel bearings, especially if the roadwheels have already been removed.

Finally, let's suppose you have to borrow or hire a torque wrench. Even if you only need to tighten the spark plugs, you might as well check the torque of as many critical fasteners as time allows.

2 Routine maintenance

The first step of this maintenance programme is to prepare yourself before the actual work begins. Read through all the Sections which are relevant to the procedures you're planning to carry out, then make a list of, and gather together, all the parts and tools you will need to do the job. If it looks as if you might run into problems during a particular segment of some procedure, seek advice from your local parts man or dealer service department.

Weekly checks

3 Fluid level checks



General

1 Fluids are an essential part of the lubrication, cooling, braking and other systems. Because these fluids gradually become depleted and/or contaminated during normal operation of the vehicle, they must be periodically replenished. See "Lubricants and fluids and capacities" at the beginning of this Chapter before adding fluid to any of the following components. **Note:** The vehicle must be on level ground before fluid levels are checked, to ensure accuracy.

Engine oil

2 The engine oil level is checked with a dipstick located at the front of the engine; it can be identified by its yellow/black plastic grip (see illustration). The dipstick extends through a metal tube, from which it protrudes down into the sump at the bottom of the engine.

3 The oil level should be checked before the vehicle is driven, or about 5 minutes after the engine has been switched off.

HAYNES HINT If the level is checked immediately after driving the vehicle, some of the oil will remain in the engine upper components, producing an inaccurate dipstick reading.



3.2 Engine oil dipstick location (arrowed) on Zetec engines

4 Pull the dipstick from the tube, and wipe all the oil from the end with a clean rag or paper towel; note the dipstick's maximum and minimum levels, indicated by notches (see illustration). Insert the clean dipstick all the way back into its metal tube, and pull it out again. Observe the oil on the end of the dipstick; its level should be between these two notches.

5 Do not allow the level to drop below the



3.4 Engine oil dipstick MAXimum and MINimum level markings



3.6A Topping-up the engine oil level (HCS engine)



3.6B Topping-up the engine oil level (CVH engine)



3.6C Topping-up the engine oil level (Zetec engine)

minimum level notch, or oil starvation may cause engine damage. Conversely, overfilling the engine (adding oil above the maximum level notch) may cause oil-fouled spark plugs, oil leaks or oil seal failures.

6 The oil filler cap is screwed into the left-hand front end of the cylinder head/rocker cover; unscrew it to add oil (**see illustrations**). When topping-up, use only the correct grade and type of oil, as given in "Lubricants, fluids and capacities" at the start of this Chapter; use a funnel if necessary to prevent spills. It takes approximately 0.5 to 1.0 litre of oil to raise the level from the dipstick's minimum level notch to its maximum level notch. After adding the oil, refit the filler cap hand-tight. Start the engine, and allow it to idle while the oil is redistributed around the engine - while you are waiting, look carefully for any oil leaks, particularly around the oil filter or drain plug. Stop the engine; check the oil level again, after the oil has had enough time to drain from the upper block and cylinder head galleries.

7 Checking the oil level is an important preventive maintenance step. A continually-dropping oil level indicates oil leakage through damaged seals and from loose connections, or oil consumption past worn piston rings or valve guides. If the oil looks milky in colour, or has water droplets in it, the cylinder head gasket may be blown - the engine's compression pressure should be checked immediately (**see Chapter 2**). The condition of the oil should also be checked. Each time you check the oil level, slide your thumb and index finger up the dipstick before wiping off the oil. If you see small dirt or metal particles clinging to the dipstick, the oil should be changed (**Section 16**).

Coolant



Warning: Do not allow antifreeze to come in contact with your skin or painted surfaces of the vehicle. Flush contaminated

areas immediately with plenty of water. Don't store new coolant, or leave old coolant lying around, where it's accessible to children or pets - they're attracted by its sweet smell. Ingestion of even a small amount of coolant can be fatal! Wipe up garage-floor and drip-pan spills immediately. Keep antifreeze containers covered, and repair cooling system leaks as soon as they're noticed.

8 All vehicles covered by this manual are equipped with a sealed, pressurised cooling system. A translucent plastic expansion tank, located on the right-hand side of the engine compartment, is connected by a hose to the thermostat housing. As the coolant heats up during engine operation, surplus coolant passes through the connecting hose into the expansion tank; a connection to the radiator bottom hose union allows coolant to circulate through the tank and back to the water pump, thus purging any air from the system. As the



3.10 Coolant reservoir MAXimum and MINimum level marks

engine cools, the coolant is automatically drawn back into the cooling system's main components, to maintain the correct level.

9 While the coolant level must be checked regularly, remember therefore that it will vary with the temperature of the engine. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" level lines on the tank, but once the engine has warmed up, the level may rise to above the "MAX" level line.

10 For an accurate check of the coolant level, the engine must be cold. The level must be between the "MAX" and "MIN" level lines on the tank (**see illustration**). If it is below the "MIN" level line, the coolant must be topped-up as follows.

11 First prepare a sufficient quantity of coolant mixture, using clean, soft water and antifreeze of the recommended type, in the specified mixture ratio. If you are using antifreeze to Ford's specification or equivalent (**see "Antifreeze - notes on renewal" in Section 28**), mix equal quantities of water and antifreeze to produce the 50/50 mixture ratio specified when topping-up; if using any other type of antifreeze, follow its manufacturer's instructions to achieve the correct ratio. If only a small amount of coolant is required to bring the system up to the proper level, plain water can be used, but repeatedly doing this will dilute the antifreeze/water solution in the system, reducing the protection it should provide against freezing and corrosion. To maintain the specified antifreeze/water ratio, it is essential to top-up the coolant level with the correct mixture, as described here. Use only ethylene/glycol type antifreeze, and do not use supplementary inhibitors or additives.



Warning: Never remove the expansion tank filler cap when the engine is running, or has just been switched off, as the cooling system will be hot, and the consequent escaping steam and scalding coolant could cause serious injury.

12 If topping-up is necessary, wait until the system has cooled completely (or at least 10 minutes after switching off the engine, if lack of time means it is absolutely necessary to top-up while the engine may still be warm). Wrap a thick cloth around the expansion tank



3.13 Topping-up the coolant level with specified antifreeze mixture

filler cap, and unscrew it one full turn. If any hissing is heard as steam escapes, wait until the hissing ceases, indicating that pressure is released, then slowly unscrew the filler cap until it can be removed. If more hissing sounds are heard, wait until they have stopped before unscrewing the filler cap completely. At all times, keep your face, hands and other exposed skin well away from the filler opening.

13 When the filler cap has been removed, add coolant to bring the level up to the "MAX" level line (**see illustration**). Refit the cap, tightening it securely.

14 With this type of cooling system, the addition of coolant should only be necessary at very infrequent intervals. If topping-up is regularly required, or if the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishment, there may be a leak in the system. Inspect the radiator, hoses, expansion tank filler cap, radiator drain plug and water pump. If no leak is evident, have the filler cap and the entire system pressure-tested by your dealer or suitably-equipped garage; this will usually show up a small leak not otherwise visible. If significant leakage is found at any time, use an antifreeze hydrometer to check the concentration of antifreeze remaining in the coolant.

15 Coolant hydrometers are available at most automotive accessory shops. If the specific gravity of a sample taken from the expansion tank (when the engine is switched off and fully cooled down) is less than that specified, the coolant mixture strength has fallen below the minimum. If this is found, either the coolant strength must be restored by adding neat antifreeze to Ford's specification (if that is what is in the system) or by draining and flushing the system, then refilling it with fresh coolant mixture of the correct ratio (if any other type of antifreeze is being used).

16 When checking the coolant level, always note its condition; it should be relatively clear. If it is brown or rust-coloured, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled. If antifreeze has been used which does not meet Ford's specification, its corrosion inhibitors will lose their effectiveness with time; such coolant must be renewed regularly,



3.17 Checking the level of fluid in the washer reservoir



3.19 Brake master cylinder showing "MAX" and "MIN" marks



3.22 Topping-up the fluid level in the brake master cylinder reservoir

even if it appears to be in good condition, usually at the intervals suggested in "Antifreeze - notes on renewal" in Section 28.

Windscreen/tailgate and headlight washer fluid

17 Fluid for the windscreen/tailgate washer system (and, where applicable, the headlight washer system) is stored in a plastic reservoir, which is located at the left-hand front corner of the engine compartment. In milder climates, plain water can be used to top-up the reservoir, but the reservoir should be kept no more than two-thirds full, to allow for expansion should the water freeze. In colder climates, the use of a specially-formulated windscreen washer fluid, available at your dealer or any car accessory shop, will help lower the freezing point of the fluid (see illustration). Do not use regular (cooling system) antifreeze - it will damage the vehicle's paintwork.

Battery electrolyte

18 On models not equipped with a sealed battery (see Section 9), check the electrolyte level of all six battery cells. The level must be approximately 10 mm above the plates; this may be shown by maximum and minimum level lines marked on the battery's casing. If the level is low, use a coin to release the filler/vent cap, and add distilled water. Install and securely retighten the cap.



Caution: Overfilling the cells may cause electrolyte to spill over during periods of heavy charging, causing corrosion or damage.

Refer also to the warning at the beginning of Section 9.

Brake fluid

19 The brake fluid reservoir is located on the top of the brake master cylinder, which is attached to the front of the vacuum servo unit. The "MAX" and "MIN" marks are indicated on the side of the translucent reservoir, and the fluid level should be maintained between these marks at all times (see illustration).

20 The brake fluid inside the reservoir is readily visible. With the vehicle on level

ground, the level should normally be on or just below the "MAX" mark.

21 Progressive wear of the brake pads and brake shoe linings causes the level of the brake fluid to gradually fall; however, when the brake pads are renewed, the original level of the fluid is restored. It is not therefore necessary to top-up the level to compensate for this minimal drop, but the level must never be allowed to fall below the minimum mark.

22 If topping-up is necessary, first wipe the area around the filler cap with a clean rag before removing the cap. When adding fluid, pour it carefully into the reservoir, to avoid spilling it on surrounding painted surfaces (see illustration). Be sure to use only the specified hydraulic fluid (see "Lubricants, fluids and capacities" at the start of this Chapter) since mixing different types of fluid can cause damage to the system.



Warning: Brake hydraulic fluid can harm your eyes and damage painted surfaces, so use extreme caution when handling and

pouring it. Wash off spills immediately with plenty of water. Do not use fluid that has been standing open for some time, as it absorbs moisture from the air. Excess moisture can cause corrosion and a dangerous loss of braking effectiveness.

23 When adding fluid, it is a good idea to inspect the reservoir for contamination. The system should be drained and refilled if deposits, dirt particles or contamination are seen in the fluid.



4.2 The TWI marks on the side of the tyre shows the position of the tread wear indicator bands

24 After filling the reservoir to the correct level, make sure that the cap is refitted securely, to avoid leaks and the entry of foreign matter.

25 If the reservoir requires repeated replenishing to maintain the correct level, this is an indication of an hydraulic leak somewhere in the system, which should be investigated immediately.

Power steering fluid

26 See Section 5 of this Chapter.

4 Tyre and tyre pressure checks



1 Periodic inspection of the tyres may spare you from the inconvenience of being stranded with a flat tyre. It can also provide you with vital information regarding possible problems in the steering and suspension systems before major damage occurs.

2 The original tyres on this vehicle are equipped with tread wear indicator (TWI) bands, which will appear when the tread depth reaches approximately 1.6 mm. Most tyres have a mark around the tyre at regular intervals to indicate the location of the tread wear indicators, the mark being TWI, an arrow, or the tyre manufacturer's symbol (see illustration).



Tread wear can be monitored with a simple inexpensive device known as a tread depth indicator gauge.



4.3 Check the tyre pressures regularly using an accurate gauge

3 Ensure that tyre pressures are checked regularly and maintained correctly (see the Specifications at the beginning of this Chapter for pressures). Checking should be carried out with the tyres cold, and *not* immediately after the vehicle has been in use. If the pressures are checked with the tyres hot, an apparently-high reading will be obtained, owing to heat expansion. *Under no circumstances* should an attempt be made to reduce the pressures to the quoted cold reading in this instance, or effective under-inflation will result. Most garage forecourts have a pressure line which combines a gauge to check and adjust the tyre pressures, but they may vary in accuracy, due to general misuse and abuse. It therefore pays to carry a good-quality tyre pressure gauge in the vehicle, to make the regular checks required and ensure pressure accuracy (see illustration).

4 Note any abnormal tread wear (see illustration). Tread pattern irregularities such

as feathering, flat spots, and more wear on one side than the other, are indications of front wheel alignment and/or balance problems. If any of these conditions are noted, they should be rectified as soon as possible.

5 Under-inflation will cause overheating of the tyre, owing to excessive flexing of the casing, and the tread will not sit correctly on the road surface. This will cause a consequent loss of adhesion and excessive wear, not to mention the danger of sudden tyre failure due to heat build-up.

6 Over-inflation will cause rapid wear of the centre part of the tyre tread, coupled with reduced adhesion, harder ride, and the danger of damage occurring in the tyre casing.

7 Regularly check the tyres for damage in the form of cuts or bulges, especially in the sidewalls. Remove any nails or stones embedded in the tread, before they penetrate the tyre to cause deflation. If removal of a nail reveals that the tyre has been punctured, refit the nail, so that its point of penetration is marked. Then immediately change the wheel, and have the tyre repaired by a tyre dealer. Do not drive on a tyre in such a condition. If in any doubt as to the possible consequences of any damage found, consult your local tyre dealer for advice.

8 General tyre wear is influenced to a large degree by driving style - harsh braking and acceleration, or fast cornering, will all produce more rapid tyre wear. Interchanging of tyres may result in more even wear; however, it is worth bearing in mind that if this is completely

effective, the likelihood is that all four tyres would need replacing at once, which may prove too expensive for many owners.

9 Front tyres may wear unevenly as a result of wheel misalignment. The front wheels should always be correctly aligned according to the settings specified by the vehicle manufacturer.

10 Don't forget to check the spare tyre for condition and pressure.

11 Legal restrictions apply to many aspects of tyre fitting and usage, and in the UK this information is contained in the Motor Vehicle Construction and Use Regulations. It is suggested that a copy of these regulations is obtained from your local police, if in doubt as to current legal requirements with regard to tyre type and condition, minimum tread depth, etc.

5 Power steering fluid level check



1 The power steering fluid reservoir is located on the right-hand side of the engine compartment, next to the cooling system expansion tank.

2 For the fluid level check, the power steering system should be at its normal operating temperature, so it is best to carry out the check after a run.

3 Park the vehicle on level ground, with the front wheels pointing straight ahead, and switch off the engine.

Tyre tread wear patterns



Shoulder Wear

Underinflation (wear on both sides)

Under-inflation will cause overheating of the tyre, because the tyre will flex too much, and the tread will not sit correctly on the road surface. This will cause a loss of grip and excessive wear, not to mention the danger of sudden tyre failure due to heat build-up.

Check and adjust pressures

Incorrect wheel camber (wear on one side)

Repair or renew suspension parts

Hard cornering

Reduce speed!



Centre Wear

Overinflation

Over-inflation will cause rapid wear of the centre part of the tyre tread, coupled with reduced grip, harsher ride, and the danger of shock damage occurring in the tyre casing.

Check and adjust pressures

If you sometimes have to inflate your car's tyres to the higher pressures specified for maximum load or sustained high speed, don't forget to reduce the pressures to normal afterwards.



Uneven Wear

Front tyres may wear unevenly as a result of wheel misalignment. Most tyre dealers and garages can check and adjust the wheel alignment (or "tracking") for a modest charge.

Incorrect camber or castor

Repair or renew suspension parts

Malfunctioning suspension

Repair or renew suspension parts

Unbalanced wheel

Balance tyres

Incorrect toe setting

Adjust front wheel alignment

Note: The feathered edge of the tread which typifies toe wear is best checked by feel.



5.6 Topping-up the power steering fluid reservoir

4 Check that the fluid level is up to the "MAX" mark on the reservoir.

5 If topping-up is required, first use a clean rag to wipe the filler cap and the surrounding area, to prevent foreign matter from entering the system. Unscrew and remove the filler cap.

6 Top-up the level to the "MAX" mark, using the grade of fluid specified at the beginning of this Chapter (see illustration). Be careful not to introduce dirt into the system, and do not overfill. The need for frequent topping-up indicates a leak, which should be investigated.

7 Refit the filler cap.

6 Windscreen/tailgate washer system and wiper blade check

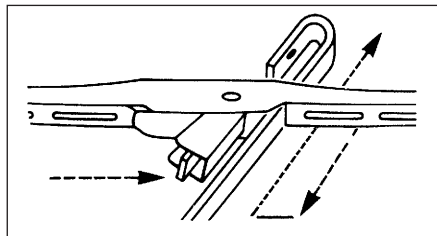


1 The windscreen wiper and blade assemblies should be inspected at the specified intervals for damage, loose components, and cracked or worn blade elements.

2 Road film can build up on the wiper blades and affect their efficiency, so they should be washed regularly with a mild detergent solution.

3 The action of the wiping mechanism can loosen bolts, nuts and fasteners, so they should be checked and tightened, as necessary, at the same time as the wiper blades are checked.

4 If the wiper blade elements are cracked, worn or warped, or no longer clean adequately, they should be replaced with new ones.



6.6 Windscreen wiper blade removal from the arm

5 Lift the wiper arm and blade away from the glass.

6 To remove the windscreen wiper blade, release the catch on the arm, then turn the blade through 90° and withdraw the blade from the end of the arm (see illustration).

7 To remove the tailgate wiper blade, push the wiper blade forward, and at the same time depress it against the spring pressure, then withdraw it from the end of the arm.

8 If the metal part of the wiper blade is in good condition, it may be possible to renew the rubber insert separately. Inserts can sometimes be obtained from car accessory shops and, according to type, may need to be cut to the correct length before sliding into the clips.

9 Refit the wiper blade assembly using a reversal of the removal procedure, making sure that it fully engages with the spring clip.

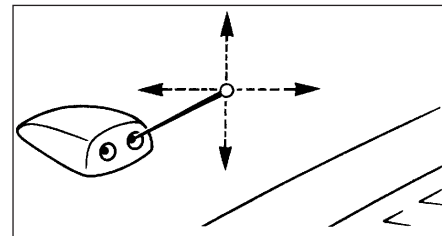
10 Check that the washer jets direct the fluid onto the upper part of the windscreen/tailgate/rear window/headlight, and if necessary adjust the small sphere on the jet with a pin (see illustration).

7 Automatic transmission fluid level check



1 The level of the automatic transmission fluid should be carefully maintained. Low fluid level can lead to slipping or loss of drive, while overfilling can cause foaming, loss of fluid and transmission damage.

2 The transmission fluid level should only be checked when the transmission is hot (at its normal operating temperature). If the vehicle has just been driven over 10 miles (15 miles in a cold climate), and the fluid temperature is 160 to 175°F, the transmission is hot.



6.10 Adjust the washer jets with a pin in the direction required



Caution: If the vehicle has just been driven for a long time at high speed or in city traffic in hot weather, or if it has been pulling a trailer, an accurate fluid level reading cannot be obtained. In these circumstances, allow the fluid to cool down for about 30 minutes.

3 Park the vehicle on level ground, apply the handbrake, and start the engine. While the engine is idling, depress the brake pedal and move the selector lever through all the gear positions three times, beginning and ending in "P".

4 Allow the engine to idle for one minute, then (with the engine still idling) remove the dipstick from its tube. Note the condition and colour of the fluid on the dipstick.

5 Wipe the fluid from the dipstick with a clean rag, and re-insert it into the filler tube until the cap seats.

6 Pull the dipstick out again, and note the fluid level. The level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is on the "MIN" mark, stop the engine, and add the specified automatic transmission fluid through the dipstick tube, using a clean funnel if necessary. It is important not to introduce dirt into the transmission when topping-up.

7 Add the fluid a little at a time, and keep checking the level as previously described until it is correct.

8 The need for regular topping-up of the transmission fluid indicates a leak, which should be found and rectified without delay.

9 The condition of the fluid should also be checked along with the level. If the fluid on the dipstick is black or a dark reddish-brown colour, or if it has a burned smell, the fluid should be changed. If you are in doubt about the condition of the fluid, purchase some new fluid, and compare the two for colour and smell.

Every 10 000 miles or 12 months

8 Electrical system check



1 Check the operation of all external lights and indicators (front and rear).

2 Check for satisfactory operation of the

instrument panel, its illumination and warning lights, the switches and their function lights.

3 Check the horn(s) for satisfactory operation.

4 Check all other electrical equipment for satisfactory operation.

5 Check all electrical wiring in the engine compartment for correct routing, and for any signs of physical or heat-damage or chafing.

9 Battery check, maintenance and charging



Warning: Certain precautions must be followed when checking and servicing the battery.

Hydrogen gas, which is highly flammable, is always present in the battery cells, so keep lighted tobacco and all other open flames and sparks away from the battery. The electrolyte inside the battery is actually dilute sulphuric acid, which will cause injury if splashed on your skin or in your eyes. It will also ruin clothes and painted surfaces. When disconnecting the battery, always detach the negative (earth) lead first and connect it last!

Note: Before disconnecting the battery, refer to Section 1 of Chapter 5.

General

1 A routine preventive maintenance programme for the battery in your vehicle is the only way to ensure quick and reliable starts. Before performing any battery maintenance, make sure that you have the proper equipment necessary to work safely around the battery. This includes safety goggles and rubber gloves to protect your eyes and hands from the caustic battery deposits, a solution of baking soda to dissolve these deposits, and petroleum jelly, which, applied to the cleaned battery terminals, will help prevent further corrosion occurring.

2 There are also several precautions that should be taken whenever battery maintenance is performed. Before servicing the battery, always turn the engine and all accessories off, and disconnect the lead from the negative terminal of the battery - see Chapter 5, Section 1.

3 The battery produces hydrogen gas, which is both flammable and explosive. Never create a spark, smoke, or light a match around the battery. Always charge the battery in a well-ventilated area.

4 The battery electrolyte fluid contains sulphuric acid, which is poisonous and corrosive. Do not allow it to get in your eyes, on your skin, or on your clothes. Never ingest it. Wear protective safety goggles when working near the battery. Keep children away from the battery.

5 Note the external condition of the battery. If the positive terminal and lead clamp on your vehicle's battery is equipped with a plastic cover or rubber protector, make sure that it's not torn or damaged. It should completely cover the terminal. Look for any corroded or loose connections, cracks in the case or cover, or loose hold-down clamps. Also check the entire length of each lead for cracks and frayed conductors.

6 If corrosion, which looks like white, fluffy deposits is evident, particularly around the terminals, the battery should be removed for cleaning. Slacken the lead clamp nuts with a spanner, being careful to remove the negative (earth) lead first, and slide them off the terminals. Then unscrew the hold-down clamp nuts, remove the clamp, and lift the battery from the engine compartment.

7 Clean the lead clamps thoroughly, using a soft wire brush or a terminal cleaner, with a

solution of warm water and baking soda. Wash the terminals and the top of the battery case with the same solution, but make sure that the solution doesn't get into the battery. When cleaning the leads, terminals and battery top, wear safety goggles and rubber gloves, to prevent any solution from coming in contact with your eyes or hands. Wear old clothes too - even when diluted, sulphuric acid splashed onto clothes will burn holes in them. If the terminals have been extensively corroded, clean them up with a suitable tool. Thoroughly wash all cleaned areas with plain water.

8 Make sure that the battery tray is in good condition, and that the hold-down clamp nuts are tight. If the battery is removed from the tray, make sure that no parts remain in the bottom of the tray when the battery is refitted. When refitting the hold-down clamp nuts, do not overtighten them.

9 Information on removing and installing the battery can be found in Chapter 5. Information on jump starting can be found at the front of this manual. For more detailed battery checking procedures, refer to the Haynes "Automobile Electrical and Electronic Systems Manual".

Cleaning

10 Corrosion on the hold-down components, battery case and surrounding areas can be removed with a solution of water and baking soda. Thoroughly rinse all cleaned areas with plain water.

11 Any metal parts of the vehicle damaged by corrosion should be covered with a zinc-based primer, then painted.

Charging

Warning: When batteries are being charged, hydrogen gas, which is very explosive and flammable, is produced. Do not smoke, or allow open flames, near a charging or a recently-charged battery. Wear eye protection when near the battery during charging. Also, make sure that the charger is unplugged before connecting or disconnecting the battery from the charger.

12 Slow-rate charging is the best way to restore a battery that's discharged to the point where it will not start the engine. It's also a good way to maintain the battery charge in a vehicle that's only driven a few miles between starts. Maintaining the battery charge is particularly important in Winter, when the battery must work harder to start the engine, and electrical accessories that drain the battery are in greater use.

13 It's best to use a one- or two-amp battery charger (sometimes called a "trickle" charger). They are the safest, and put the least strain on the battery. They are also the least expensive. For a faster charge, you can use a higher-ampere charger, but don't use one rated more than 1/10th the amp/hour rating of the battery (ie no more than 5 amps, typically). Rapid boost charges that claim to restore the power of the battery in one to two hours are hardest on the battery, and can damage batteries not in good

condition. This type of charging should only be used in emergency situations.

14 The average time necessary to charge a battery should be listed in the instructions that come with the charger. As a general rule, a trickle charger will charge a battery in 12 to 16 hours.

10 Seat belt check



1 Check the seat belts for satisfactory operation and condition. Inspect the webbing for fraying and cuts. Check that they retract smoothly and without binding into their reels.

2 Check that the seat belt mounting bolts are tight, and if necessary tighten them to the specified torque wrench setting.

11 Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal



General

1 The auxiliary drivebelt type depends on the engine fitted, and on whether the vehicle is equipped with power-assisted steering or air conditioning. The belt will be either a V-belt or a flat, multi-ribbed (or "polyvee") type. The drivebelt is located on the right-hand end of the engine, and drives the alternator, water pump (and, when fitted, the power steering pump and the air conditioning compressor) from the engine's crankshaft pulley.

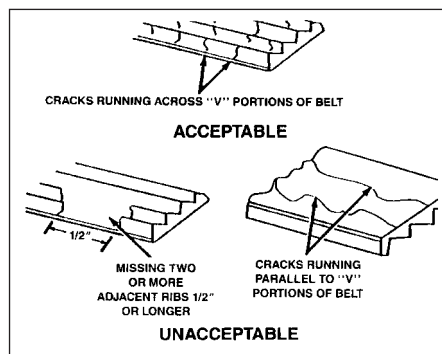
2 The good condition and proper tension of the auxiliary drivebelt is critical to the operation of the engine. Because of their composition and the high stresses to which they are subjected, drivebelts stretch and deteriorate as they get older. They must, therefore, be regularly inspected.

Check

3 With the engine switched off, open and support the bonnet, then locate the auxiliary drivebelt on the right-hand end of the engine (Be very careful, and wear protective gloves to minimise the risk of burning your hands on hot components, if the engine has recently been running). For improved access, jack up the



11.3 Removing the auxiliary drivebelt lower cover (arrowed) from inside the wheel arch



11.4 Check the auxiliary drivebelt for signs of wear like these. Very small cracks across the drivebelt ribs are acceptable. If the cracks are deep, or if the drivebelt looks worn or damaged in any other way, renew it. This is the "polyvee" type belt, but the checks on the V-belt type are the same

front right-hand side of the vehicle, support it securely on an axle stand, remove the roadwheel, then remove the auxiliary drivebelt lower cover from inside the wheel arch (see illustration).

4 Using an inspection light or a small electric torch, and rotating the engine when necessary with a spanner applied to the crankshaft pulley bolt, check the whole length of the drivebelt for cracks, separation of the rubber, and torn or worn ribs (see illustration). Also check for fraying and glazing, which gives the drivebelt a shiny appearance. Both sides of the drivebelt should be inspected, which means you will have to twist the drivebelt to check the underside. Use your fingers to feel the drivebelt where you can't see it. If you are in any doubt as to the condition of the drivebelt, renew it (go to paragraph 19). Turning the engine will be much easier if the spark plugs are removed first (Section 27).

Drivebelt tension

5 It's only necessary to adjust the tension if the drivebelt is of the V-belt type. The flat, "polyvee" type drivebelts are fitted with an automatic tensioner to maintain the correct belt adjustment.

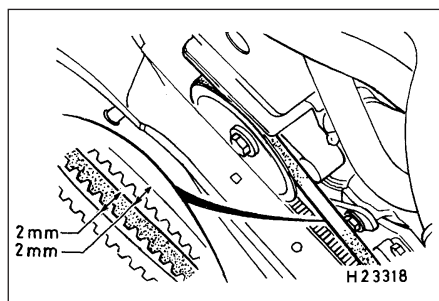
6 On the V-belt type, Ford technicians use a special tension gauge for checking drivebelt adjustment, but for DIY purposes, checking the belt tension using firm finger pressure gives a good indication of correct adjustment. This is done midway between the pulleys, on the longest run of the belt.

7 If adjustment is necessary, proceed as follows according to belt type.

V-belt with sliding arm type adjuster

8 Open the bonnet. Jack up the front right-hand side of the vehicle, and support it securely on an axle stand. Remove the roadwheel, then remove the auxiliary drivebelt lower cover from inside the wheel arch.

9 Apply firm finger pressure midway between



11.9A Checking drivebelt adjustment - V-belt types

Note that the 4 mm dimension is the total belt swing and is equal to 2 mm of deflection

the pulleys on the longest run of the belt, and look for a deflection of 2.0 mm (i.e. a total drivebelt "swing" of 4.0 mm). If adjustment is required, loosen off the alternator mounting and drivebelt adjustment bolts, pivot the alternator as required to provide the correct drivebelt tension, then retighten the bolts to secure (see illustrations).

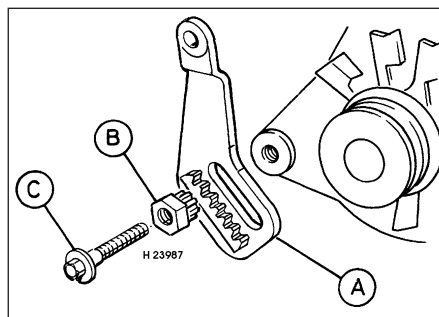
10 Refit the auxiliary drivebelt cover and roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground.

11 Run the engine for about five minutes, then recheck the tension.

V-belt with rack-and-pinion type adjuster

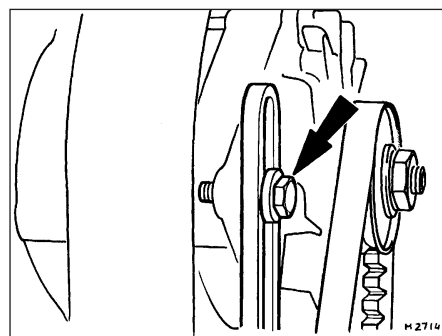
12 Open the bonnet. Jack up the front right-hand side of the vehicle, and support it securely on an axle stand. Remove the roadwheel, then remove the auxiliary drivebelt lower cover from inside the wheel arch.

13 Check the adjustment as described in paragraph 9. If adjustment is required, loosen off the alternator mounting bolts and the adjusting arm mounting bolt. Slacken the pinion central locking bolt, and turn the pinion nut as required to take up the tension of the drivebelt (see illustration). Hold it at the required setting, and tighten the central bolt securely to lock the adjuster arm and set the tension.



11.13 Rack-and-pinion type auxiliary drivebelt adjuster

- A Adjuster arm
- B Pinion (adjuster) nut
- C Central (locking) bolt



11.9B Alternator upper mounting/sliding arm adjuster bolt (arrowed) - V-belt with sliding arm type adjuster

14 Tighten the alternator mounting and adjusting arm bolts securely.

15 Refit the auxiliary drivebelt cover and roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground.

16 Run the engine for about five minutes, then recheck the tension.

Flat "polyvee" type drivebelt

17 As mentioned above, this type of drivebelt is tensioned by an automatic tensioner; regular checks are not required, and manual "adjustment" is not possible.

18 If you suspect that the drivebelt is slipping and/or running slack, or that the tensioner is otherwise faulty, it must be renewed. To do this, remove the drivebelt as described below, then unbolt and remove the tensioner. On fitting the new tensioner, ensure that it is aligned correctly on its mountings, and tightened to the specified torque wrench setting.

Renewal

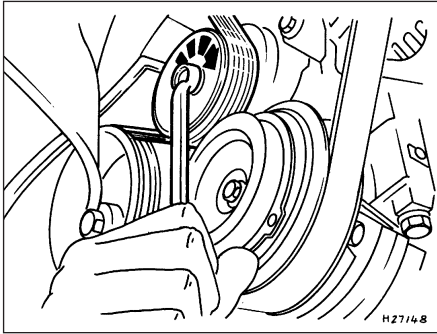
19 Open the bonnet. Jack up the front right-hand side of the vehicle, and support it securely on an axle stand. Remove the roadwheel, then remove the auxiliary drivebelt lower cover from inside the wheel arch.

20 The routing of the drivebelt around the pulleys is dependent on the drivebelt type, and on whether power steering and/or air conditioning is fitted. Before removing the drivebelt, it's a good idea to sketch the belt run around the pulleys; this will save a lot of frustration when it comes to refitting.

21 If the existing drivebelt is to be refitted, mark it, or note the maker's markings on its flat surface, so that it can be installed the same way round.

22 To renew the V-belt type of drivebelt, slacken the belt tension fully as described above, according to type. Slip the belt off the pulleys, then fit the new belt, ensuring that it is routed correctly. With the belt in position, adjust the tension as previously described.

23 To renew the flat, "polyvee" type



11.23 Automatic drivebelt tensioner - "polyvee" type drivebelt

Turn tensioner clockwise to release tension

drivebelt, reach up between the body and the engine (above the crankshaft pulley), and apply a spanner to the hexagon in the centre of the automatic tensioner's pulley. Rotate the tensioner pulley clockwise to release its pressure on the drivebelt, then slip the drivebelt off the crankshaft pulley, and release the tensioner again (see illustration). Note that on certain models, a self-cocking tensioner is fitted, and that this will remain in the released position. Working from the wheel arch or engine compartment as necessary, and noting its routing, slip the

drivebelt off the remaining pulleys and withdraw it.

24 Check all the pulleys, ensuring that their grooves are clean, and removing all traces of oil and grease. Check that the tensioner works properly, with strong spring pressure being felt when its pulley is rotated clockwise, and a smooth return to the limit of its travel when released.

25 If the original drivebelt is being refitted, use the marks or notes made on removal, to ensure that it is installed to run in the same direction as it was previously. To fit the drivebelt, arrange it on the grooved pulleys so that it is centred in their grooves, and not overlapping their raised sides, and is routed correctly (see illustrations). Start at the top, and work down to finish at the crankshaft pulley; rotate the tensioner pulley clockwise, slip the drivebelt onto the crankshaft pulley, then release the tensioner again.

26 Using a spanner applied to the crankshaft pulley bolt, rotate the crankshaft through at least two full turns clockwise to settle the drivebelt on the pulleys, then check that the drivebelt is properly installed.

27 Refit the auxiliary drivebelt cover and roadwheel, then lower the vehicle to the ground.

12 Underbonnet check for fluid leaks and hose condition

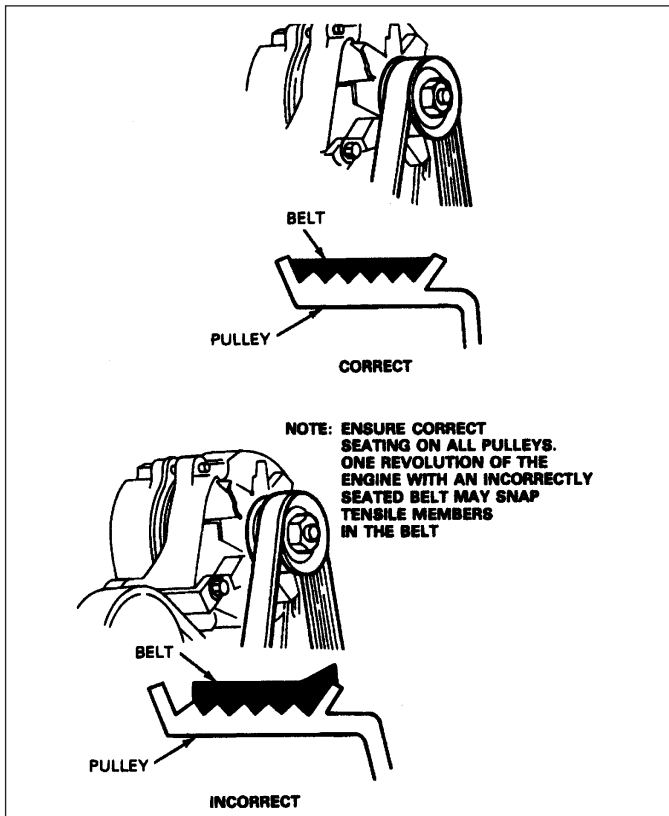


Caution: Renewal of air conditioning hoses must be left to a dealer service department or air conditioning specialist who has the equipment to depressurise the system safely. Never remove air conditioning components or hoses until the system has been depressurised.

General

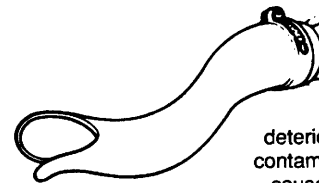
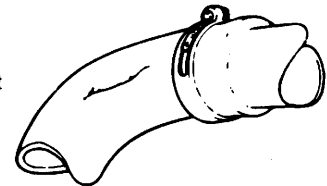
1 High temperatures in the engine compartment can cause the deterioration of the rubber and plastic hoses used for engine, accessory and emissions systems operation. Periodic inspection should be made for cracks, loose clamps, material hardening and leaks.

2 Carefully check the large top and bottom radiator hoses, along with the other smaller-diameter cooling system hoses and metal pipes; do not forget the heater hoses/pipes which run from the engine to the bulkhead. Inspect each hose along its entire length, replacing any that is cracked, swollen or shows signs of deterioration. Cracks may become more apparent if the hose is squeezed (see illustration). If you are using



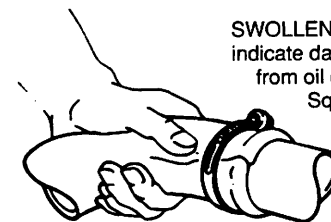
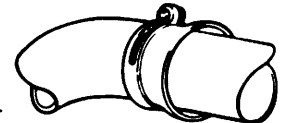
11.25 When installing the auxiliary drivebelt, make sure that it is centred - it must not overlap either edge of the grooved pulleys

ALWAYS CHECK hose for chafed or burned areas that may cause an untimely and costly failure.



SOFT hose indicates inside deterioration. This deterioration can contaminate the cooling system and cause particles to clog the radiator.

HARDENED hose can fail at any time. Tightening hose clamps will not seal the connection or stop leaks.



SWOLLEN hose or oil soaked ends indicate danger and possible failure from oil or grease contamination. Squeeze the hose to locate cracks and breaks that cause leaks.

12.2 Hoses, like drivebelts, have a habit of failing at the worst possible time - to prevent the inconvenience of a blown radiator or heater hose, inspect them carefully as shown here

non-Ford specification antifreeze, and so have to renew the coolant every two years or so, it's a good idea to renew the hoses at that time, regardless of their apparent condition.

3 Make sure that all hose connections are tight. A leak in the cooling system will usually show up as white- or rust-coloured deposits on the areas adjoining the leak; if the spring clamps that are used to secure the hoses in this system appear to be slackening, they should be renewed to prevent the possibility of leaks.

4 Some other hoses are secured to their fittings with clamps. Where clamps are used, check to be sure they haven't lost their tension, allowing the hose to leak. If clamps aren't used, make sure the hose has not expanded and/or hardened where it slips over the fitting, allowing it to leak.

5 Check all fluid reservoirs, filler caps, drain plugs and fittings etc, looking for any signs of leakage of oil, transmission and/or brake hydraulic fluid, coolant and power steering fluid. If the vehicle is regularly parked in the same place, close inspection of the ground underneath it will soon show any leaks; ignore the puddle of water which will be left if the air conditioning system is in use. As soon as a leak is detected, its source must be traced and rectified. Where oil has been leaking for some time, it is usually necessary to use a steam cleaner, pressure washer or similar, to clean away the accumulated dirt, so that (when the engine is run again) the exact source of the leak can be identified.

Vacuum hoses

6 It's quite common for vacuum hoses, especially those in the emissions system, to be colour-coded, or to be identified by coloured stripes moulded into them. Various systems require hoses with different wall thicknesses, collapse resistance and temperature resistance. When renewing hoses, be sure the new ones are made of the same material.

7 Often the only effective way to check a hose is to remove it completely from the vehicle. If more than one hose is removed, be sure to label the hoses and fittings to ensure correct installation.

8 When checking vacuum hoses, be sure to include any plastic T-fittings in the check. Inspect the fittings for cracks, and check the hose where it fits over the fitting for distortion, which could cause leakage.

9 A small piece of vacuum hose (quarter-inch inside diameter) can be used as a stethoscope to detect vacuum leaks. Hold one end of the hose to your ear, and probe around vacuum hoses and fittings, listening for the "hissing" sound characteristic of a vacuum leak.



Warning: When probing with the vacuum-hose stethoscope, be very careful not to come into contact with moving engine

components such as the auxiliary drivebelt, radiator electric cooling fan, etc.

Fuel hoses



Warning: There are certain precautions which must be taken when inspecting or servicing fuel system components. Work in a well-ventilated area, and do not allow open flames (cigarettes, appliance pilot lights, etc.) or bare light bulbs near the work area. Mop up any spills immediately, and do not store fuel-soaked rags where they could ignite.

10 Check all fuel hoses for deterioration and chafing. Check especially for cracks in areas where the hose bends, and also just before fittings, such as where a hose attaches to the fuel filter.

11 High-quality fuel line, usually identified by the word "Fluoroelastomer" printed on the hose, should be used for fuel line renewal. Never, under any circumstances, use unreinforced vacuum line, clear plastic tubing or water hose for fuel lines.

12 Spring-type clamps are commonly used on fuel lines. These clamps often lose their tension over a period of time, and can be "sprung" during removal. Replace all spring-type clamps with screw clamps whenever a hose is replaced.

Metal lines

13 Sections of metal piping are often used for fuel line between the fuel filter and the engine. Check carefully to be sure the piping has not been bent or crimped, and that cracks have not started in the line.

14 If a section of metal fuel line must be renewed, only seamless steel piping should be used, since copper and aluminium piping don't have the strength necessary to withstand normal engine vibration.

15 Check the metal brake lines where they enter the master cylinder and ABS hydraulic unit (if used) for cracks in the lines or loose fittings. Any sign of brake fluid leakage calls for an immediate and thorough inspection of the brake system.

13 Engine compartment wiring check



1 With the vehicle parked on level ground, apply the handbrake firmly and open the bonnet. Using an inspection light or a small electric torch, check all visible wiring within and beneath the engine compartment.

2 What you are looking for is wiring that is obviously damaged by chafing against sharp edges, or against moving suspension/transmission components and/or the auxiliary drivebelt, by being trapped or crushed between carelessly-refitted components, or melted by being forced into contact with the hot engine castings, coolant pipes, etc. In almost all cases, damage of this sort is caused in the first instance by incorrect routing on reassembly, after previous work has been carried out.

3 Depending on the extent of the problem, damaged wiring may be repaired by rejoining the break or splicing-in a new length of wire, using solder to ensure a good connection, and remaking the insulation with adhesive insulating tape or heat-shrink tubing, as appropriate. If the damage is extensive, given the implications for the vehicle's future reliability, the best long-term answer may well be to renew that entire section of the loom, however expensive this may appear.

4 When the actual damage has been repaired, ensure that the wiring loom is re-routed correctly, so that it is clear of other components, and not stretched or kinked, and is secured out of harm's way using the plastic clips, guides and ties provided.

5 Check all electrical connectors, ensuring that they are clean, securely fastened, and that each is locked by its plastic tabs or wire clip, as appropriate. If any connector shows external signs of corrosion (accumulations of white or green deposits, or streaks of "rust"), or if any is thought to be dirty, it must be unplugged and cleaned using electrical contact cleaner. If the connector pins are severely corroded, the connector must be renewed; note that this may mean the renewal of that entire section of the loom - see your local Ford dealer for details.

6 If the cleaner completely removes the corrosion to leave the connector in a satisfactory condition, it would be wise to pack the connector with a suitable material which will exclude dirt and moisture, preventing the corrosion from occurring again; a Ford dealer may be able to recommend a suitable product.

7 Check the condition of the battery connections - remake the connections or renew the leads if a fault is found (see Chapter 5). Use the same techniques to ensure that all earth points in the engine compartment provide good electrical contact through clean, metal-to-metal joints, and that all are securely fastened. (In addition to the earth connection at the engine lifting eye, and that from the transmission to the body/battery, there are others in various places, so check carefully).

8 Refer to Section 27 for details of spark plug (HT) lead checks.

14 Air conditioning system check



Warning: The air conditioning system is under high pressure. Do not loosen any fittings or remove any components until

after the system has been discharged. Air conditioning refrigerant must be properly discharged into an approved type of container, at a dealer service department or an automotive air conditioning repair facility capable of handling the refrigerant safely. Always wear eye protection when disconnecting air conditioning system fittings.

1 The following maintenance checks should be performed on a regular basis, to ensure that the air conditioner continues to operate at peak efficiency:

- a) Check the auxiliary drivebelt. If it's worn or deteriorated, renew it (see Section 11).
- b) Check the system hoses. Look for cracks, bubbles, hard spots and deterioration. Inspect the hoses and all fittings for oil bubbles and seepage. If there's any evidence of wear, damage or leaks, renew the hose(s).
- c) Inspect the condenser fins for leaves, insects and other debris. Use a "fin comb" or compressed air to clean the condenser.
- d) Check that the drain tube from the front of the evaporator is clear - note that it is normal to have clear fluid (water) dripping from this while the system is in operation, to the extent that quite a large puddle can be left under the vehicle when it is parked.



Warning: Wear eye protection when using compressed air!

2 It's a good idea to operate the system for about 30 minutes at least once a month, particularly during the Winter. Long term non-use can cause hardening, and subsequent failure, of the seals.

3 Because of the complexity of the air conditioning system and the special equipment necessary to service it, in-depth fault diagnosis and repairs are not included in this manual. For more complete information on the air conditioning system, refer to the Haynes "Automotive Heating and Air Conditioning Manual".

4 The most common cause of poor cooling is simply a low system refrigerant charge. If a noticeable drop in cool-air output occurs, the following quick check will help you determine if the refrigerant level is low.

5 Warm the engine up to normal operating temperature.

6 Place the air conditioning temperature selector at the coldest setting, and put the blower at the highest setting. Open the doors - to make sure the air conditioning system doesn't cycle off as soon as it cools the passenger compartment.

7 With the compressor engaged - the clutch will make an audible click, and the centre of the clutch will rotate - feel the inlet and outlet pipes at the compressor. One side should be cold, and one hot. If there's no perceptible difference between the two pipes, there's something wrong with the compressor or the system. It might be a low charge - it might be something else. Take the vehicle to a dealer service department or an automotive air conditioning specialist.

15 Valve clearance adjustment



Refer to Chapter 2, Part A.

16 Engine oil and filter change



1 Frequent oil changes are the best preventive maintenance the home mechanic can give the engine, because ageing oil becomes diluted and contaminated, which leads to premature engine wear.

2 Make sure that you have all the necessary tools before you begin this procedure (see illustration). You should also have plenty of rags or newspapers handy, for mopping up any spills. To avoid any possibility of scalding, and to protect yourself from possible skin irritants and other harmful contaminants in used engine oils, it is advisable to wear gloves when carrying out this work.

3 Access to the underside of the vehicle is greatly improved if the vehicle can be lifted on a hoist, driven onto ramps, or supported by axle stands.



Warning: Do not work under a vehicle which is supported only by an hydraulic or scissors-type jack, or by bricks, blocks of wood, etc.

4 If this is your first oil change, get under the vehicle and familiarise yourself with the position of the engine oil drain plug location in the sump. The engine and exhaust components will be warm during the actual work, so try to anticipate any potential

problems while the engine and accessories are cool.

5 The oil should preferably be changed when the engine is still fully warmed-up to normal operating temperature, just after a run (the needle on the temperature gauge should be in the "Normal" sector of the gauge); warm oil and sludge will flow out more easily. Park the vehicle on firm, level ground, apply the handbrake firmly, then select 1st or reverse gear (manual transmission) or the "P" position (automatic transmission). Open the bonnet and remove the engine oil filler cap from the cylinder head cover, then remove the oil level dipstick from its tube (see Section 3).

6 Raise the front of the vehicle, and support it securely on axle stands. Remove the front right-hand roadwheel to provide access to the oil filter; if the additional working clearance is required, remove also the auxiliary drivebelt cover.



Warning: To avoid personal injury, never get beneath the vehicle when it is supported by only by a jack. The jack provided with your vehicle is designed solely for raising the vehicle to remove and refit the roadwheels. Always use axle stands to support the vehicle when it becomes necessary to place your body underneath the vehicle.

7 Being careful not to touch the hot exhaust components, place the drain pan under the drain plug, and unscrew the plug (see illustrations). If possible, try to keep the plug pressed into the sump while unscrewing it by hand the last couple of turns. As the plug releases from the threads, move it away sharply, so the stream of oil issuing from the sump runs into the pan, not up your sleeve! Allow the oil to drain into the drain pan, and check the condition of the plug's sealing washer; renew it if worn or damaged.

8 Allow some time for the old oil to drain, noting that it may be necessary to reposition the pan as the oil flow slows to a trickle; when the oil has completely drained, wipe clean the drain plug and its threads in the sump and refit the plug, tightening it to the specified torque wrench setting.

9 Reposition the drain pan under the oil filter



16.2 These tools are required when changing the engine oil and filter



16.7A Engine oil drain plug location in the sump on HCS and CVH engines



16.7B Removing the engine oil drain plug on the Zetec engine



16.9 Removing the oil filter on the CVH engine using a strap wrench



16.10A Lubricate the filter's sealing ring with clean engine oil before installing the filter on the engine



16.10B Engine oil filter (HCS engine)

then, using a suitable filter removal tool, unscrew the oil filter from the cylinder block; be prepared for some oil spillage (see illustration). Check the old filter to make sure that the rubber sealing ring hasn't stuck to the engine; if it has, carefully remove it. Withdraw the filter through the wheel arch, taking care to spill as little oil as possible.

10 Using a clean, lint-free rag, wipe clean the cylinder block around the filter mounting. If there are no specific instructions supplied with it, fit a new oil filter as follows. Apply a light coating of clean engine oil to the filter's sealing ring. Screw the filter into position on the engine until it seats, then tighten it through a further half- to three-quarters of a turn *only* (see illustrations). Tighten the filter by hand only - do not use any tools.

11 Remove the old oil and all tools from under the vehicle, refit the roadwheel, and lower the vehicle to the ground.

12 Refill the engine with oil, using the correct grade and type of oil, as given in "Lubricants, fluids and capacities". Pour in half the specified quantity of oil first, then wait a few minutes for the oil to fall to the sump. Continue adding oil a small quantity at a time, until the level is up to the lower notch on the dipstick. Adding approximately 0.5 to 1.0 litre will raise the level to the dipstick's upper notch.

13 Start the engine. The oil pressure warning light will take a few seconds to go out while the new filter fills with oil; do not race the

engine while the light is on. Run the engine for a few minutes, while checking for leaks around the oil filter seal and the drain plug.

14 Switch off the engine, and wait a few minutes for the oil to settle in the sump once more. With the new oil circulated and the filter now completely full, recheck the level on the dipstick, and add more oil as necessary.

15 Dispose of the used engine oil safely, with reference to "General repair procedures" in the Reference Sections of this manual.

17 Idle speed and mixture check and adjustment



General

1 Many of the engines fitted to Escort and Orion models are equipped with fuel injection systems of one sort or another which are entirely controlled by the engine management system. On most of these vehicles, it isn't possible to make any adjustments to the idle speed or the mixture settings without specialist test equipment of a type usually only found at a Ford dealer or fuel injection specialist. However, the very nature of these highly-sophisticated systems means they don't go out of tune very often (if ever), so that it's one less maintenance operation to worry about.

2 On carburettor and 1.6 litre EFI fuel-injected engines, certain checks and adjustments are

necessary as part of the service requirements, and these are described below.

Idle speed and mixture check and adjustment - carburettor engines

3 Before carrying out the following checks and adjustments, ensure that the spark plugs are in good condition and correctly gapped (Section 27). To carry out the checks/adjustments, an accurate tachometer and an exhaust gas analyser (CO meter) will be required.

4 Make sure that all electrical components are switched off during the following procedures.

5 Connect a tachometer to the engine in accordance with its manufacturer's instructions, and insert the probe of an exhaust gas analyser (CO meter) into the exhaust tailpipe. As previously mentioned, these items are essential in obtaining an accurate setting. If they are not available, an approximate check/adjustment can be made as a temporary measure, providing they are further checked out as soon as is possible using a tachometer and a CO meter (or by a Ford dealer).

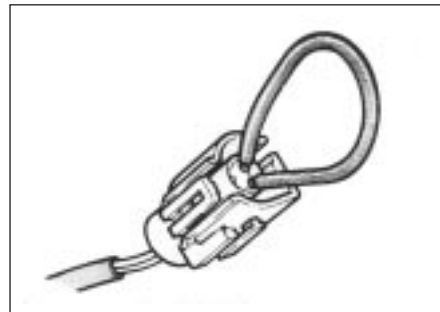
6 Run the engine at a fast idle speed until it reaches its normal operating temperature and the radiator cooling fan cuts in. Turn the engine off, then disconnect the radiator cooling fan lead at the thermostatic switch connector. Now connect a temporary wire to the fan switch multi-plug, as shown (see illustration) to enable the fan to operate



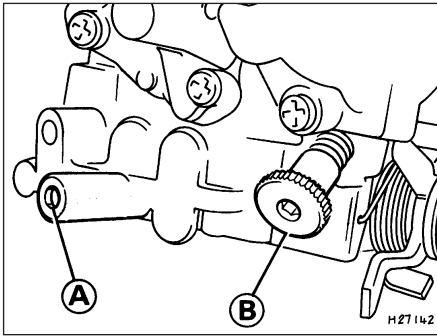
16.10C Engine oil filter (CVH engine)



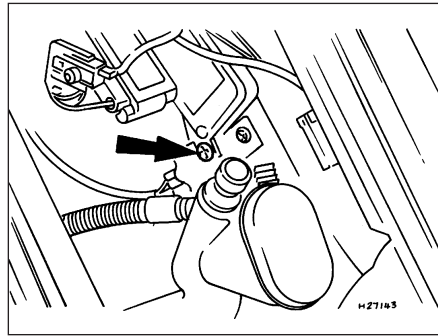
16.10D Engine oil filter (Zetec engine)



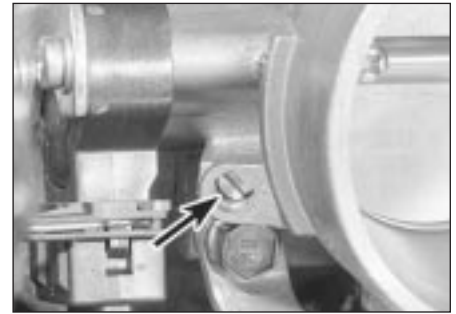
17.6 Cooling fan thermostatic switch multi-plug with temporary bridging wire connected



17.11 Carburettor idle mixture adjustment screw (A) and idle speed screw (B)



17.16 Mixture CO adjusting screw (arrowed) on the 1.6 litre EFI engine



17.18 Base idle speed adjusting screw (arrowed) in the throttle housing on the 1.6 litre EFI engine

continuously during the following checks and adjustments (if this is specified). Take care to keep clear of the fan during the following operations when working in the engine compartment.

7 Where fitted, disconnect the throttle kicker vacuum pipe, and plug the end. To identify the throttle kicker unit, refer to Chapter 4.

8 Check that the vehicle lighting and other electrical loadings (apart from the radiator cooling fan) are switched off, then restart the engine. Increase the engine speed to 3000 rpm for 30 seconds, and repeat this at three-minute intervals during the check/adjustment procedures. This will ensure that any excess fuel is cleared from the inlet manifold.

9 Ensure that the throttle is fully released, allow the meters to stabilise for a period of 3 to 5 seconds, then check the idle speed against that specified. If adjustment is necessary, turn the idle speed screw until the engine is idling at the specified speed. Any checks and adjustments must be completed within 30 seconds of the meters stabilising.

10 If adjustment to the mixture is required, the tamperproof cap will need to be removed from the carburettor to gain access to the mixture screw. To do this, first unclip the fuel trap from the side of the air cleaner unit, then remove the air cleaner unit, ensuring that the crankcase ventilation trap remains connected. Prise free the tamperproof cap (with the aid of a thin-bladed screwdriver), then with the vacuum and emissions control pipes connected to it, relocate the air cleaner unit temporarily into position.

11 Turn the mixture adjustment screw clockwise to weaken the mixture, or anti-clockwise to richen it, until the CO reading is as given in the Specifications (see illustration). If a CO meter is not being used, weaken the mixture as described, then enrich the mixture until the maximum engine speed is obtained, consistent with even running.

12 If necessary, re-adjust the idle speed then check the CO reading again. Repeat as necessary until both the idle speed and CO reading are correct.

13 Where required by law (as in some European countries), fit a new tamperproof cap to the mixture adjustment screw.

14 Disconnect the tachometer and the CO meter, refit the air cleaner unit, and reconnect the fan switch lead to complete.

Base idle speed and mixture check and adjustment - 1.6 litre EFI engines

15 Proceed as described above in paragraphs 4 to 6 inclusive, then continue as follows.

16 Run the engine at a fast idle speed until it reaches its normal operating temperature and the cooling fan cuts in. Check the CO content of the exhaust, and compare it against the specified reading. If the CO content reading is incorrect, it can be adjusted by prising free the tamperproof cap for access to the CO adjustment screw (see illustration), and turning the screw in the required direction to suit.

17 Check the base idle speed by first disconnecting the multi-plug from the idle speed control valve. Increase the engine speed to 2000 rpm, hold it at that speed for 30 seconds, then fully release the throttle and check if the base idle speed registered is as specified.

18 If adjustment is necessary, prise free the tamperproof plug using a suitable small screwdriver to gain access to the base idle adjustment screw in the throttle body. Turn the screw in the required direction to adjust the base idle speed to the specified amount. Turning the screw anti-clockwise increases the idle speed (see illustration).

19 Repeat the procedure outlined in

paragraph 17 to recheck and further adjust the base idle speed if required, then fit a new tamperproof plug into position.

20 Reconnect the idle speed control valve multi-plug, and check that the engine speed briefly rises to about 900 rpm, then drops down to the specified normal idle speed.

21 On completion, disconnect the tachometer and the CO meter, but continue running the engine at idle speed for a period of about five minutes, to enable the engine management module to relearn its values before switching it off.

18 Manual transmission oil level check



1 The manual transmission does not have a dipstick. To check the oil level, raise the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands, making sure that the vehicle is level. On the lower front side of the transmission housing, you will see the filler/level plug. Unscrew and remove it - an Allen key or bit will probably be required (see illustration). If the lubricant level is correct, the oil should be up to the lower edge of the hole.

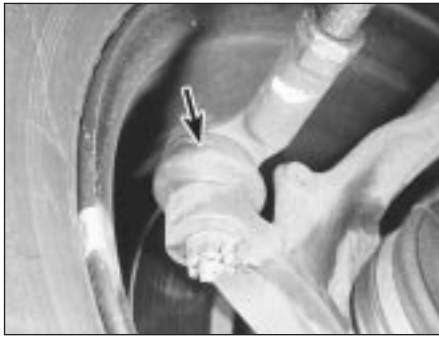
2 If the transmission needs more lubricant (if the oil level is not up to the hole), use a syringe, or a plastic bottle and tube, to add more (see illustration). Stop filling the transmission when the lubricant begins to run out of the hole.



18.1 Unscrewing the manual transmission oil filler/level plug



18.2 Topping-up the oil level in the BC type transmission



19.2A Check the condition of the track rod end balljoint dust cover (arrowed)



19.2B Check the condition of the lower arm balljoint dust cover (arrowed)



19.2C Check the condition of the steering rack gaiters

3 Refit the filler/level plug, and tighten it to the specified torque wrench setting. Drive the vehicle a short distance, then check for leaks.
4 The need for regular topping-up can only be due to a leak, which should be found and rectified without delay.

19 Steering, suspension and roadwheel check



Front suspension and steering check

1 Apply the handbrake, then raise the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands.
2 Visually inspect the balljoint dust covers and the steering gear gaiters for splits, chafing or deterioration (**see illustrations**). Any wear of these components will cause loss of lubricant, together with dirt and water entry, resulting in rapid deterioration of the balljoints or steering gear.
3 Check the power-assisted steering fluid hoses (where fitted) for chafing or deterioration, and the pipe and hose unions for fluid leaks. Also check for signs of fluid leakage under pressure from the steering gear rubber gaiters, which would indicate failed fluid seals within the steering gear.
4 Grasp the roadwheel at the 12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions, and try to rock it (**see illustration**). Very slight free play may be felt, but if the movement is appreciable, further



19.4 Checking for wear in the front suspension and hub bearings

investigation is necessary to determine the source. Continue rocking the wheel while an assistant depresses the footbrake. If the movement is now eliminated or significantly reduced, it is likely that the hub bearings are at fault. If the free play is still evident with the footbrake depressed, then there is wear in the suspension joints or mountings.

5 Now grasp the wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, and try to rock it as before. Any movement felt now may again be caused by wear in the hub bearings or the steering track rod balljoints. If the outer track rod end balljoint is worn, the visual movement will be obvious. If the inner joint is suspect, it can be felt by placing a hand over the rack-and-pinion rubber gaiter, and gripping the track rod. If the wheel is now rocked, movement will be felt at the inner joint if wear has taken place.

6 Using a large screwdriver or flat bar, check for wear in the suspension mounting bushes by levering between the relevant suspension component and its attachment point. Some movement is to be expected, as the mountings are made of rubber, but excessive wear should be obvious. Also check the condition of any visible rubber bushes, looking for splits, cracks or contamination of the rubber.

7 With the vehicle standing on its wheels, have an assistant turn the steering wheel back-and-forth, about an eighth of a turn each way. There should be very little, if any, lost movement between the steering wheel and roadwheels. If this is not the case, closely observe the joints and mountings previously described, but in addition, check the steering column universal joints for wear, and also check the rack-and-pinion steering gear itself.

Rear suspension check

8 Chock the front wheels, then raise the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands.

9 Check the rear hub bearings for wear, using the method described for the front hub bearings (paragraph 4).

10 Using a large screwdriver or flat bar, check for wear in the suspension mounting bushes by levering between the relevant suspension component and its attachment

point. Some movement is to be expected, as the mountings are made of rubber, but excessive wear should be obvious. Check the condition of the shock absorbers and their bushes/mountings. On Van models, check the leaves of the leaf springs for signs of cracking, distortion, or other damage.

Roadwheel check and balancing

11 Periodically remove the roadwheels, and clean any dirt or mud from the inside and outside surfaces. Examine the wheel rims for signs of rusting, corrosion or other damage. Light alloy wheels are easily damaged by "kerbing" whilst parking, and similarly, steel wheels may become dented or buckled. Renewal of the wheel is very often the only course of remedial action possible.

12 The balance of each wheel and tyre assembly should be maintained, not only to avoid excessive tyre wear, but also to avoid wear in the steering and suspension components. Wheel imbalance is normally signified by vibration through the vehicle's bodyshell, although in many cases it is particularly noticeable through the steering wheel. Conversely, it should be noted that wear or damage in suspension or steering components may cause excessive tyre wear. Out-of-round or out-of-true tyres, damaged wheels and wheel bearing wear/maladjustment also fall into this category. Balancing will not usually cure vibration caused by such wear.

13 Wheel balancing may be carried out with the wheel either on or off the vehicle. If balanced on the vehicle, ensure that the wheel-to-hub relationship is marked in some way prior to subsequent wheel removal, so that it may be refitted in its original position.

20 Driveshaft rubber gaiter and CV joint check



1 The driveshaft rubber gaiters are very important, because they prevent dirt, water and foreign material from entering and damaging the constant velocity (CV) joints. External contamination can cause the gaiter

material to deteriorate prematurely, so it's a good idea to wash the gaiters with soap and water occasionally.

2 With the vehicle raised and securely supported on axle stands, turn the steering onto full-lock, then slowly rotate each front wheel in turn. Inspect the condition of the outer constant velocity (CV) joint rubber gaiters, squeezing the gaiters to open out the folds. Check for signs of cracking, splits, or deterioration of the rubber, which may allow the escape of grease, and lead to the ingress of water and grit into the joint (**see illustration**). Also check the security and condition of the retaining clips. Repeat these checks on the inner CV joints. If any damage or deterioration is found, the gaiters should be renewed as described in Chapter 8.

3 At the same time, check the general condition of the outer CV joints themselves, by first holding the driveshaft and attempting to rotate the wheels. Any appreciable movement in the CV joint indicates wear in the joint, wear in the driveshaft splines, or a loose driveshaft retaining nut. Repeat this check on the inner joints, by holding the inner joint yoke and attempting to rotate the driveshaft.



20.2 Check the driveshaft gaiters by hand for cracks and/or leaking grease

suspension parts, secure the exhaust system with new mountings.

5 Check the running condition of the engine by inspecting inside the end of the tailpipe; the exhaust deposits here are an indication of the engine's state of tune. The inside of the tailpipe should be dry, and should vary in colour from dark grey to light grey/brown; if it is black and sooty, or coated with white deposits, the engine is in need of a thorough fuel system inspection.



21.2 If any of the exhaust system rubber mountings are to be renewed, ensure that the replacements are of the correct type - their colour is a good guide. Those nearest to the catalytic converter are more heat-resistant than the others

whenever a defect is suspected in the braking system. Any of the following symptoms could indicate a potential brake system defect:

- The vehicle pulls to one side when the brake pedal is depressed.*
- The brakes make scraping or dragging noises when applied.*
- Brake pedal travel is excessive.*
- The brake fluid requires repeated topping-up.*

2 A thorough inspection should be made to confirm the thickness of the linings, as follows.

Disc brakes

3 Jack up the front or rear of the vehicle, as applicable, and support it on axle stands. Where rear brake pads are fitted, also jack up the rear of the vehicle and support on axle stands.

4 For better access to the brake calipers, remove the wheels.

5 Look through the inspection window in the caliper, and check that the thickness of the friction lining material on each of the pads is not less than the recommended minimum thickness given in the Specifications. **Note:** *Bear in mind that the lining material is normally bonded to a metal backing plate.*

6 If it is difficult to determine the exact thickness of the pad linings, or if you are at all concerned about the condition of the pads, then remove them from the calipers for further inspection (refer to Chapter 9).

7 Check the remaining brake caliper(s) in the same way.

8 If any one of the brake pads has worn down to, or below, the specified limit, *all four* pads at that end of the car must be renewed as a set (ie all the front pads or all the rear pads).

9 Measure the thickness of the discs with a micrometer, if available, to make sure that they still have service life remaining. If any disc is thinner than the specified minimum thickness, renew it (refer to Chapter 9). In any case, check the general condition of the discs. Look for excessive scoring and discolouration caused by overheating. If these

21 Exhaust system check



1 With the engine cold (at least three hours after the vehicle has been driven), check the complete exhaust system, from its starting point at the engine to the end of the tailpipe. Ideally, this should be done on a hoist, where unrestricted access is available; if a hoist is not available, raise and support the vehicle on axle stands.

2 Check the pipes and connections for evidence of leaks, severe corrosion, or damage. Make sure that all brackets and rubber mountings are in good condition, and tight; if any of the mountings are to be renewed, ensure that the replacements are of the correct type (**see illustration**). Leakage at any of the joints or in other parts of the system will usually show up as a black sooty stain in the vicinity of the leak. **Note:** *Exhaust sealants should not be used on any part of the exhaust system upstream of the catalytic converter - even if the sealant does not contain additives harmful to the converter, pieces of it may break off and foul the element, causing local overheating.*

3 At the same time, inspect the underside of the body for holes, corrosion, open seams, etc, which may allow exhaust gases to enter the passenger compartment. Seal all body openings with silicone or body putty.

4 Rattles and other noises can often be traced to the exhaust system, especially the rubber mountings. Try to move the system, silencer(s) and catalytic converter. If any components can touch the body or

22 Underbody and fuel/brake line check



1 With the vehicle raised and supported on axle stands or over an inspection pit, thoroughly inspect the underbody and wheel arches for signs of damage and corrosion. In particular, examine the bottom of the side sills, and any concealed areas where mud can collect. Where corrosion and rust is evident, press and tap firmly on the panel with a screwdriver, and check for any serious corrosion which would necessitate repairs. If the panel is not seriously corroded, clean away the rust, and apply a new coating of underseal. Refer to Chapter 11 for more details of body repairs.

2 At the same time, inspect the PVC-coated lower body panels for stone damage and general condition.

3 Inspect all of the fuel and brake lines on the underbody for damage, rust, corrosion and leakage. Also make sure that they are correctly supported in their clips. Where applicable, check the PVC coating on the lines for damage.

23 Brake check



Note: *For detailed photographs of the brake system, refer to Chapter 9.*

1 The work described in this Section should be carried out at the specified intervals, or

1•24 Every 10 000 miles

conditions exist, remove the relevant disc and have it resurfaced or renewed (refer to Chapter 9).

10 Before refitting the wheels, check all brake lines and hoses (refer to Chapter 9). In particular, check the flexible hoses in the vicinity of the calipers, where they are subjected to most movement. Bend them between the fingers (but do not actually bend them double, or the casing may be damaged) and check that this does not reveal previously-hidden cracks, cuts or splits.

Rear drum brakes

11 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support on axle stands. **12** For better access, remove the rear wheels.

13 To check the brake shoe lining thickness without removing the brake drums, prise the rubber plugs from the backplates, and use an electric torch to inspect the linings of the leading brake shoes. Check that the thickness of the lining material on the brake shoes is not less than the recommendation given in the Specifications.

14 If it is difficult to determine the exact thickness of the brake shoe linings, or if you are at all concerned about the condition of the shoes, then remove the rear drums for a more comprehensive inspection (refer to Chapter 9) (see illustration).

15 With the drum removed, check the shoe return and hold-down springs for correct installation, and check the wheel cylinders for leakage of brake fluid. Check the friction surface of the brake drums for scoring and discoloration. If excessive, the drum should be resurfaced or renewed.

16 Before refitting the wheels, check all brake lines and hoses (refer to Chapter 9). On completion, apply the handbrake and check that the rear wheels are locked. The handbrake also requires periodic adjustment, and if its travel seems excessive, refer to Section 33.

24 Door and bonnet check and lubrication

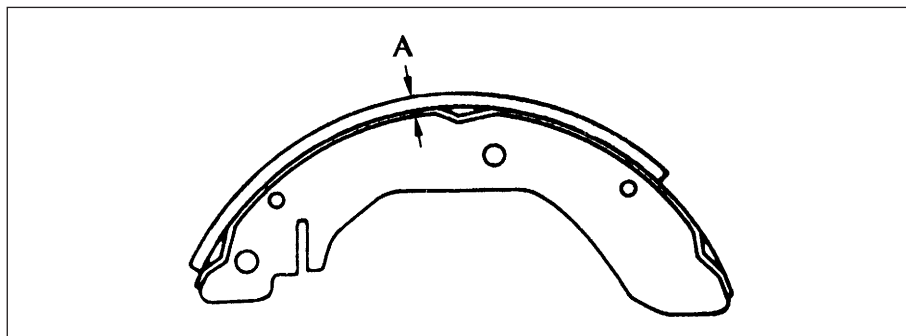


1 Check that the doors, bonnet and tailgate/boot lid close securely. Check that the bonnet safety catch operates correctly. Check the operation of the door check straps. **2** Lubricate the hinges, door check straps, the striker plates and the bonnet catch sparingly with a little oil or grease.

25 Roadwheel nut tightness check



1 Apply the handbrake. **2** Remove the wheel covers, using the flat end of the wheelbrace supplied in the tool kit



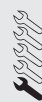
23.14 If the lining is bonded to the brake shoe, measure the lining thickness from the outer surface to the metal shoe, as shown here (A); if the lining is riveted to the shoe, measure from the lining outer surface to the rivet head

(on some models it will be necessary to unscrew the retaining bolts with a special key).

3 Check that the roadwheel nuts are tightened to the specified torque wrench setting.

4 Refit the wheel covers.

26 Road test



Check the operation and performance of the braking system

1 Make sure that the vehicle does not pull to one side when braking, and that the wheels do not lock prematurely when braking hard.

2 Check that there is no vibration through the steering when braking.

3 Check that the handbrake operates correctly, without excessive movement of the lever, and that it holds the vehicle stationary on a slope.

4 Test the operation of the brake servo unit as follows. With the engine switched off, depress the footbrake four or five times to exhaust the vacuum, then hold the pedal depressed. Start the engine, and there should be a noticeable "give" in the brake pedal as vacuum builds up. Allow the engine to run for at least two minutes, and then switch it off. If the brake pedal is depressed again, it should be possible to detect a hiss from the servo as the pedal is depressed. After about four or five applications, no further hissing should be heard, and the pedal should feel considerably firmer.

Steering and suspension

5 Check for any abnormalities in the steering, suspension, handling or road "feel".

6 Drive the vehicle, and check that there are no unusual vibrations or noises.

7 Check that the steering feels positive, with no excessive sloppiness or roughness, and check for any suspension noises when cornering and driving over bumps.

Drivetrain

8 Check the performance of the engine, transmission and driveshafts.

9 Check that the engine starts correctly, both when cold and when hot.

10 Listen for any unusual noises from the engine and transmission.

11 Make sure that the engine runs smoothly when idling, and that there is no hesitation when accelerating.

12 On manual transmission models, check that all gears can be engaged smoothly without noise, and that the gear lever action is not abnormally vague or "notchy".

13 On automatic transmission models, make sure that the drive seems smooth without jerks or engine speed "flare-ups". Check that all the gear positions can be selected with the vehicle at rest. If any problems are found, they should be referred to a Ford dealer.

14 Listen for a metallic clicking sound from the front of the vehicle, as the vehicle is driven slowly in a circle with the steering on full-lock. Carry out this check in both directions. If a clicking noise is heard, this indicates wear in a driveshaft joint, in which case renew the joint if necessary.

Clutch

15 Check that the clutch pedal moves smoothly and easily through its full travel, and that the clutch itself functions correctly, with no trace of slip or drag. If the movement is uneven or stiff in places, check that the cable is routed correctly, with no sharp turns.

16 Inspect both ends of the clutch inner cable, both at the transmission end and inside the car, for signs of wear and fraying.

17 Check the pedal self-adjusting mechanism as described in Chapter 8, if necessary.

Instruments and electrical equipment

18 Check the operation of all instruments and electrical equipment.

19 Make sure that all instruments read correctly, and switch on all electrical equipment in turn, to check that it functions properly.

Every 20 000 miles

27 Spark plug renewal



Note: Spark plug renewal at this service interval is only necessary on the HCS and CVH engines. On the Zetec engine, the recommended interval for spark plug renewal is every 30 000 miles or three years.

Spark plug check and renewal

1 It is vital for the correct running, full performance and proper economy of the engine that the spark plugs perform with maximum efficiency. The most important factor in ensuring this is that the plugs fitted are appropriate for the engine. The suitable type is given in the Specifications Section at the beginning of this Chapter, on the Vehicle Emissions Control Information (VECI) label located on the underside of the bonnet (only on models sold in some areas) or in the vehicle's Owner's Handbook. If the correct type is used and the engine is in good condition, the spark plugs should not need attention between scheduled renewal intervals. Spark plug cleaning is rarely necessary, and should not be attempted unless specialised equipment is available, as damage can easily be caused to the firing ends.

2 Spark plug removal and refitting requires a spark plug socket, with an extension which can be turned by a ratchet handle or similar. This socket is lined with a rubber sleeve, to protect the porcelain insulator of the spark plug, and to hold the plug while you insert it into the spark plug hole. You will also need a set of feeler gauges, to check the spark plug electrode gap, and a torque wrench to tighten the new plugs to the specified torque (see illustration).

3 To remove the spark plugs, first open the bonnet; the plugs are easily reached at the

top of the engine. Note how the spark plug (HT) leads are routed and secured by clips, and on some engines, how they're positioned along the channel in the cylinder head cover. To prevent the possibility of mixing up spark plug (HT) leads, it is a good idea to try to work on one spark plug at a time.

4 If the marks on the original-equipment spark plug (HT) leads cannot be seen, mark the leads 1 to 4, to correspond to the cylinder the lead serves (No 1 cylinder is at the timing belt/chain end of the engine). Pull the leads from the plugs by gripping the rubber boot sealing the cylinder head cover opening, not the lead, otherwise the lead connection may be fractured.

5 It is advisable to soak up any water in the spark plug recesses with a rag, and to remove any dirt from them using a clean brush, vacuum cleaner or compressed air before removing the plugs, to prevent any dirt or water from dropping into the cylinders.

Warning: Wear eye protection when using compressed air!

6 Unscrew the spark plugs, ensuring that the socket is kept in alignment with each plug - if the socket is forcibly moved to either side, the porcelain top of the plug may be broken off. If any undue difficulty is encountered when unscrewing any of the spark plugs, carefully check the cylinder head threads and tapered sealing surfaces for signs of wear, excessive corrosion or damage; if any of these conditions is found, seek the advice of a Ford dealer as to the best method of repair.

7 As each plug is removed, examine it as follows - this will give a good indication of the condition of the engine. If the insulator nose is covered with light tan to greyish-brown deposits, then the mixture is correct, and it is likely that the engine is in good condition.

8 If the tip and insulator nose are covered with hard black-looking deposits, then this is indicative that the mixture is too rich. Should the plug be black and oily, then it is likely that



27.2 Tools required for changing spark plugs

the engine is fairly worn, as well as the mixture being too rich.

9 If the insulator nose of the spark plug is clean and white, with no deposits, this is indicative of a weak mixture.

10 If you are renewing the spark plugs, purchase the new plugs, then check each of them first for faults such as cracked insulators or damaged threads. Note also that, whenever the spark plugs are renewed as a routine service operation, the spark plug (HT) leads should be checked as described below.

11 The spark plug electrode gap is of considerable importance as, if it is too large or too small, the size of the spark and its efficiency will be seriously impaired. The gap should be set to the value given in the Specifications Section of this Chapter. New plugs will not necessarily be set to the correct gap, so they should always be checked before fitting.

12 The spark plug gap is correct when the correct-size feeler gauge or wire gauge is a firm sliding fit between the electrodes (see illustrations).

13 To adjust the electrode gap, bend open, or close up, the outer plug electrode until the correct gap is achieved (see illustration). The centre electrode should never be bent, as this



27.12A Measuring a spark plug gap with a feeler gauge



27.12B Spark plug manufacturers recommend using a wire-type gauge when checking the gap - if the wire or feeler gauge does not slide between the electrodes with a slight drag, adjustment is required



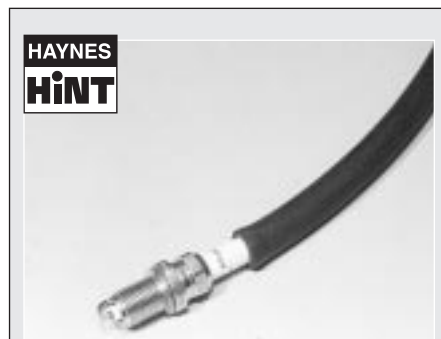
27.13 To change the gap, bend the outer electrode only, and be very careful not to crack or chip the porcelain insulator surrounding the centre electrode

1•26 Every 20 000 miles

may crack the insulation and cause plug failure, if nothing worse. If the outer electrode is not exactly over the centre electrode, bend it gently to align them. Special spark plug gap adjusting tools are available from motor accessory shops, or from certain spark plug manufacturers.

14 Before fitting the spark plugs, check that the threaded connector sleeves at the top of the plugs are tight, and that the plug exterior surfaces and threads are clean. Brown staining on the porcelain, immediately above the metal body, is quite normal, and does not necessarily indicate a "leak" between the body and insulator.

15 Apply a smear of copper-based grease or anti-seize compound to the threads of each plug, and screw them in by hand where possible. Take extra care to enter the plug threads correctly, as the cylinder head is of aluminium alloy.



It's often difficult to insert spark plugs into their holes without cross-threading them. To avoid this possibility, fit a short piece of rubber hose over the end of the spark plug. The flexible hose acts as a universal joint, to help align the plug with the plug hole. Should the plug begin to cross-thread, the hose will slip on the spark plug, preventing thread damage.

16 When each spark plug is started correctly on its threads, screw it down until it just seats

lightly, then tighten it to the specified torque wrench setting. If a torque wrench is not available - and this is one case where the use of a torque wrench is strongly recommended - tighten each spark plug through *no more than* 1/4 of a turn (CVH engines) or 1/16 of a turn (HCS engines) after it seats. HCS engines are fitted with taper-seat spark plugs, identifiable by not having a sealing washer, and these in particular should *NEVER* be overtightened - their tapered seats mean they are almost impossible to remove if abused.

17 Reconnect the spark plug (HT) leads in their correct order, using a twisting motion on the boot until it is firmly seated on the end of the spark plug and on the cylinder head cover.

Spark plug (HT) lead check

18 The spark plug (HT) leads should be checked whenever the plugs themselves are renewed. Start by making a visual check of the leads while the engine is running. In a darkened garage (make sure there is ventilation) start the engine and observe each lead. Be careful not to come into contact with any moving engine parts. If there is a break in the lead, you will see arcing or a small spark at the damaged area.

19 The spark plug (HT) leads should be inspected one at a time, to prevent mixing up the firing order, which is essential for proper engine operation. Each original lead should be numbered to identify its cylinder. If the number is illegible, a piece of tape can be marked with the correct number, and wrapped around the lead (the leads should be numbered 1 to 4, with No 1 lead nearest the timing belt end of the engine). The lead can then be disconnected.

20 Check inside the boot for corrosion, which will look like a white crusty powder. Clean this off as much as possible; if it is excessive, or if cleaning leaves the metal connector too badly eroded to be fit for further use, the lead must be renewed. Push the lead and boot back onto the end of the spark plug. The boot should fit tightly onto the end of the plug - if it doesn't, remove the lead and use pliers carefully to crimp the metal connector inside



27.22 Measure the resistance of the spark plug (HT) leads - if any exceeds the specified maximum value, renew all the leads as a set

the boot until the fit is snug.

21 Using a clean rag, wipe the entire length of the lead to remove built-up dirt and grease. Once the lead is clean, check for burns, cracks and other damage. Do not bend the lead sharply, because the conductor might break.

22 Disconnect the lead from the ignition coil by pressing together the plastic retaining catches and pulling the end fitting off the coil terminal. Check for corrosion and for a tight fit. If a meter with the correct measuring range is available, measure the resistance of the disconnected lead from its coil connector to its spark plug connector (**see illustration**). If the resistance recorded for any of the leads exceeds the value specified, all the leads should be renewed as a set. Refit the lead to the coil, noting that each coil terminal is marked with its respective cylinder number, so that there is no risk of mixing up the leads and upsetting the firing order.

23 Inspect the remaining spark plug (HT) leads, ensuring that each is securely fastened at the ignition coil and spark plug when the check is complete. If any sign of arcing, severe connector corrosion, burns, cracks or other damage is noticed, obtain new spark plug (HT) leads, renewing them as a set. If new spark plug leads are to be fitted, remove and refit them one at a time, to avoid mix-ups in the firing order.

Every 30 000 miles or 3 years

28 Coolant renewal



Note: If the antifreeze used is Ford's own, or of similar quality, the coolant need not be renewed for the life of the vehicle. If the vehicle's history is unknown, if antifreeze of lesser quality is known to be in the system, or simply if you prefer to follow conventional servicing intervals, the coolant should be changed periodically (typically, every 2 years) as described here. Refer also to "Antifreeze - notes on renewal" in this Section.



Warning: Do not allow antifreeze to come in contact with your skin or painted surfaces of the vehicle. Flush contaminated areas immediately with plenty of water. Don't store new coolant, or leave old coolant lying around, where it's accessible to children or pets - they're attracted by its sweet smell. Ingestion of even a small amount of coolant can be fatal! Wipe up garage-floor and drip-pan spills immediately. Keep antifreeze containers covered, and repair cooling system leaks as soon as they're noticed.

Warning: Never remove the expansion

tank filler cap when the engine is running, or has just been switched off, as the cooling system will be hot, and the consequent escaping steam and scalding coolant could cause serious injury.

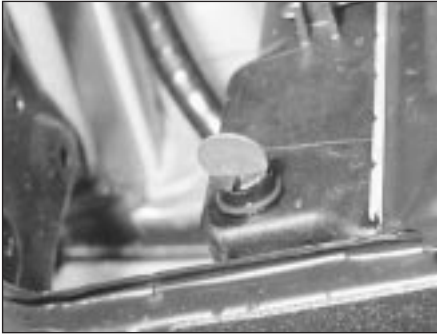
Coolant draining



Warning: Wait until the engine is cold before starting this procedure.

1 To drain the system, first remove the expansion tank filler cap (see Section 3).

2 If the additional working clearance is required, raise the front of the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands.



28.3 Use a small coin to unscrew the radiator drain plug

3 Where fitted, remove the radiator undershield (eight or nine screws), then place a large drain tray underneath, and unscrew the radiator drain plug - you can use a small coin to do this, as the plug's slotted for this purpose (see illustration). Direct as much of the escaping coolant as possible into the tray.

System flushing

4 With time, the cooling system may gradually lose its efficiency, as the radiator core becomes choked with rust, scale deposits from the water, and other sediment (refer also to "Antifreeze - notes on renewal" later in this Section). To minimise this, as well as using only good-quality antifreeze and clean soft water, the system should be flushed as follows whenever any part of it is disturbed, and/or when the coolant is renewed.

5 With the coolant drained, refit the drain plug, and refill the system with fresh water. Refit the expansion tank filler cap, start the engine and warm it up to normal operating temperature, then stop it and (after allowing it to cool down completely) drain the system again. Repeat as necessary until only clean water can be seen to emerge, then refill finally with the specified coolant mixture as described below.

6 If only clean, soft water and good-quality antifreeze (even if not to Ford's specification) has been used, and the coolant has been renewed at the suggested intervals, the above procedure will be sufficient to keep clean the system for a considerable length of time. If, however, the system has been neglected, a more thorough operation will be required, as follows.

7 First drain the coolant, then disconnect the radiator top and bottom hoses. Insert a garden hose into the top hose, and allow water to circulate through the radiator until it runs clean from the bottom outlet.

8 To flush the engine, insert the garden hose into the thermostat water outlet, and allow water to circulate until it runs clear from the bottom hose. If, after a reasonable period, the water still does not run clear, the radiator should be flushed with a good proprietary cleaning agent.

9 In severe cases of contamination, reverse-

flushing of the radiator may be necessary. To do this, remove the radiator (Chapter 3), invert it, and insert the garden hose into the bottom outlet. Continue flushing until clear water runs from the top hose outlet. A similar procedure can be used to flush the heater matrix.

10 The use of chemical cleaners should be necessary only as a last resort. Normally, regular renewal of the coolant will prevent excessive contamination of the system.

Coolant filling

11 With the cooling system drained and flushed, ensure that all disturbed hose unions are correctly secured, and that the radiator drain plug is securely tightened. Refit the radiator undershield, noting that it is located by three clips at its front edge; tighten the retaining screws securely. If it was raised, lower the vehicle to the ground.

12 Prepare a sufficient quantity of the specified coolant mixture (see below); allow for a surplus, so as to have a reserve supply for topping-up.

13 Slowly fill the system through the expansion tank; since the tank is the highest point in the system, all the air in the system should be displaced into the tank by the rising liquid. Slow pouring reduces the possibility of air being trapped and forming airlocks.

14 Continue filling until the coolant level reaches the expansion tank "MAX" level line, then cover the filler opening to prevent coolant splashing out.

15 Start the engine and run it at idle speed, until it has warmed-up to normal operating temperature and the radiator cooling fan has cut in; watch the temperature gauge to check for signs of overheating. If the level in the expansion tank drops significantly, top-up to the "MAX" level line, to minimise the amount of air circulating in the system.

16 Stop the engine, allow it to cool down completely (overnight, if possible), then uncover the expansion tank filler opening and top-up the tank to the "MAX" level line. Refit the filler cap, tightening it securely, and wash off any spilt coolant from the engine compartment and bodywork.

17 After refilling, always check carefully all components of the system (but especially any unions disturbed during draining and flushing) for signs of coolant leaks. Fresh antifreeze has a searching action, which will rapidly expose any weak points in the system.

18 Note: *If, after draining and refilling the system, symptoms of overheating are found which did not occur previously, then the fault is almost certainly due to trapped air at some point in the system, causing an airlock and restricting the flow of coolant; usually, the air is trapped because the system was refilled too quickly. In some cases, airlocks can be released by tapping or squeezing the various hoses. If the problem persists, stop the engine and allow it to cool down completely, before unscrewing the expansion tank filler cap or disconnecting hoses to bleed out the trapped air.*

Antifreeze mixture

19 If the antifreeze used is not to Ford's specification, it should always be renewed at the suggested intervals (typically, every 2 years). This is necessary not only to maintain the antifreeze properties, but also to prevent the corrosion which would otherwise occur as the corrosion inhibitors become progressively less effective. Always use an ethylene glycol-based antifreeze which is suitable for use in mixed-metal cooling systems.

20 If the antifreeze used is to Ford's specification, the levels of protection it affords are indicated in the Specifications Section of this Chapter. To give the recommended *standard* mixture ratio for this antifreeze, 40% (by volume) of antifreeze must be mixed with 60% of clean, soft water; if you are using any other type of antifreeze, follow its manufacturer's instructions to achieve the correct ratio. It is best to make up slightly more than the system's specified capacity, so that a supply is available for subsequent topping-up.

21 Before adding antifreeze, the cooling system should be completely drained, preferably flushed, and all hoses checked for condition and security. As noted earlier, fresh antifreeze will rapidly find any weaknesses in the system.

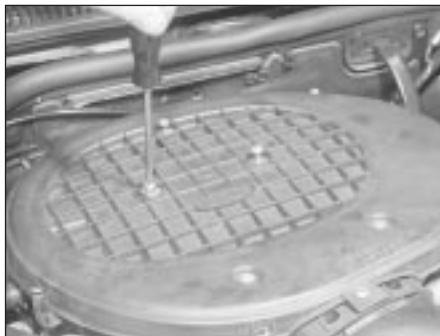
22 After filling with antifreeze, a label should be attached to the expansion tank, stating the type and concentration of antifreeze used, and the date installed. Any subsequent topping-up should be made with the same type and concentration of antifreeze. If topping-up using antifreeze to Ford's specification, note that a 50/50 mixture is permissible, purely for convenience.

23 Do not use engine antifreeze in the windscreen/tailgate washer system, as it will damage the vehicle's paintwork. A screenwash additive should be added to the washer system in its maker's recommended quantities.

Antifreeze - notes on renewal

24 Ford state that, where antifreeze to Ford specification ESD-M97B-49-A is used, it will last the lifetime of the vehicle. This is subject to it being used in the recommended concentration, unmixed with any other type of antifreeze or additive, and topped-up when necessary using only that antifreeze mixed 50/50 with clean water. If any other type of antifreeze is added, the lifetime guarantee no longer applies; to restore the lifetime protection, the system must be drained and thoroughly reverse-flushed before fresh coolant mixture is poured in.

25 If the vehicle's history (and therefore the quality of the antifreeze in it) is unknown, owners who wish to follow Ford's recommendations are advised to drain and thoroughly reverse-flush the system before refilling with fresh coolant mixture. If the appropriate quality of antifreeze is used, the coolant can then be left for the life of the vehicle.



29.1A On carburettor and CFI engines, undo the air cleaner cover retaining screws . . .



29.1B . . . and release the clips . . .



29.1C . . . then lift off the cover and withdraw the element

26 If any antifreeze other than Ford's is to be used, the coolant must be renewed at regular intervals to provide an equivalent degree of protection; the conventional recommendation is to renew the coolant every two years.

27 The above assumes the use of a mixture (in exactly the specified concentration) of clean, soft water and of antifreeze to Ford's specification or equivalent. It is also assumed that the cooling system is maintained in a scrupulously-clean condition, by ensuring that only clean coolant is added on topping-up, and by thorough reverse-flushing whenever the coolant is drained.

General cooling system checks

28 The engine should be cold for the cooling system checks, so perform the following procedure before driving the vehicle, or after it has been shut off for at least three hours.

29 Remove the expansion tank filler cap (see Section 3), and clean it thoroughly inside and out with a rag. Also clean the filler neck on the expansion tank. The presence of rust or corrosion in the filler neck indicates that the coolant should be changed. The coolant inside the expansion tank should be relatively clean and transparent. If it is rust- coloured, drain and flush the system, and refill with a fresh coolant mixture.

30 Carefully check the radiator hoses and heater hoses along their entire length; renew any hose which is cracked, swollen or deteriorated (see Section 12).

31 Inspect all other cooling system

components (joint faces, etc.) for leaks. A leak in the cooling system will usually show up as white- or rust-coloured deposits on the area adjoining the leak. Where any problems of this nature are found on system components, renew the component or gasket with reference to Chapter 3.

32 Clean the front of the radiator with a soft brush to remove all insects, leaves, etc, embedded in the radiator fins. Be careful not to damage the radiator fins, or cut your fingers on them.

29 Air cleaner element renewal



1 The air cleaner filter element is located in the air cleaner assembly mounted either on top of the carburettor or CFI unit, or on the left-hand side of the engine compartment. Undo the retaining screws and/or release the clips, and lift the air cleaner cover (see illustrations).

2 Lift out the element, and wipe out the housing. Check that no foreign matter is visible, either in the air inlet or in the air mass meter, as applicable.

3 If carrying out a routine service, the element must be renewed regardless of its apparent condition. Note that the small foam PCV filter in the rear right-hand corner of the air cleaner housing must be cleaned whenever the air filter element is renewed (see Section 30).

4 If you are checking the element for any other reason, inspect its lower surface; if it is oily or very dirty, renew the element. If it is only moderately dusty, it can be re-used after blowing it clean from the upper to the lower surface with compressed air.



Warning: Wear eye protection when using compressed air! Because it is a pleated-paper type filter, it cannot be washed or re-oiled. If it cannot be cleaned satisfactorily with compressed air, discard and renew it.



Caution: Never drive the vehicle with the air cleaner filter element removed. Excessive engine wear could result, and backfiring could even cause a fire under the bonnet.

5 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure. Ensure that the element and cover are securely seated, so that unfiltered air cannot enter the engine.

Air cleaner temperature control system check (carburettor fuel system)

6 In order for the engine to operate efficiently, the temperature of the air entering the inlet system must be controlled within certain limits.

7 The air cleaner has two sources of air, one direct from the outside of the engine compartment, and the other from a shroud on the exhaust manifold. On HCS engines, a wax-controlled thermostatic valve controls a



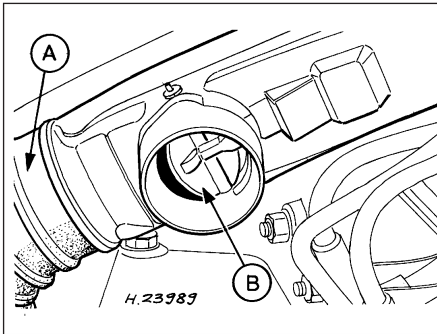
29.1D On EFI and SEFI engines, undo the air cleaner cover retaining screws . . .



29.1E . . . and release the clips . . .



29.1F . . . then lift off the cover and withdraw the element



29.8 Air cleaner inlet and flap valve on the HCS engine

A Main air cleaner inlet (cool air)
B Warm air duct (flap open)

flap inside the air cleaner inlet. When the ambient air temperature is below a predetermined level, the flap admits air heated from the exhaust manifold shroud; as the ambient temperature rises, the flap opens to admit more cool air from the engine compartment until eventually it is fully open. A similar system is used on CVH engines, except that a vacuum actuator modifies any opening or closing action of the temperature sensor on the flap valve, according to the level of the inlet manifold vacuum under running conditions.

HCS engines

8 This check must be made when the engine is cold. Detach and remove the air cleaner inlet trunking. Examine the position of the check valve within the duct. When the underbonnet air temperature is below 28°C, the valve must be open to allow hot air to enter the filter (see illustration).

9 Refit the inlet trunking. Start the engine and run it until it reaches its normal operating temperature, then stop the engine, remove the inlet trunking and check that the valve has closed off the air passage from the exhaust and opened the main (cool) air inlet.

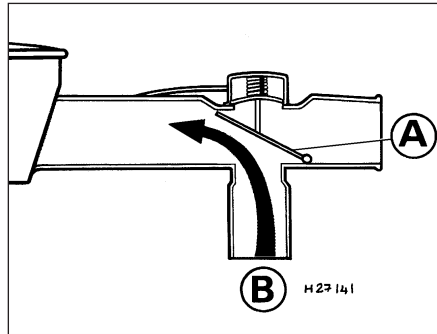
10 If the flap does not operate correctly, check that it is not seized. Apart from this there is no adjustment possible, and the unit should be renewed if faulty. Refit the air inlet trunking on completion.

CVH engines

11 This check must be made when the engine is cold. Disconnect the main air inlet duct, and visibly check that the flap to the hot-air inlet is closed (i.e. open to the passage of cold air).

12 Start the engine, and check that with the engine idling, the hot-air inlet is open to allow warm air from the exhaust manifold area to enter the air cleaner. If the flap operates as described, it is functioning correctly (see illustration).

13 If the flap fails to operate as described, check the condition of the vacuum pipe and its connections, and check that the flap valve has not seized. If these are in order, either the



29.12 Air cleaner inlet and flap valve on the CVH engine

A Flap open (cool air inlet closed)
B Warm air inlet

temperature sensor or vacuum actuator is faulty, and a new air cleaner assembly must be obtained. Refit the main air duct on completion.

30 Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system check and filter cleaning

1 The function of the crankcase ventilation system is to reduce the emission of unburned hydrocarbons from the crankcase, and to minimise the formation of oil sludge. By ensuring that a depression is created in the crankcase under most operating conditions, particularly at idle, and by positively inducing fresh air into the system, the oil vapours and "blow-by" gases collected in the crankcase are drawn from the crankcase, through the air cleaner or oil separator, into the inlet tract, to be burned by the engine during normal combustion.

2 On HCS engines, the system consists of a vented oil filler cap (with an integral mesh filter) and a hose connecting it to the oil separator/engine breather valve connector on the underside of the air cleaner housing. A further hose leads from the adapter/filter to the inlet manifold.

3 On CVH engines, a closed-circuit type crankcase ventilation system is used, the function of which is basically the same as that described for the HCS engine type, but the breather hose connects directly to the rocker cover. The oil filler cap incorporates a separate filter in certain applications.

4 On Zetec engines, the crankcase ventilation system main components are the oil separator mounted on the front (radiator) side of the cylinder block/crankcase, and the Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve set in a rubber grommet in the separator's left-hand upper end. The associated pipework consists of a crankcase breather pipe and two flexible hoses connecting the PCV valve to a union on the left-hand end of the inlet manifold, and a crankcase breather hose connecting the cylinder head cover to the air



30.8 The PCV system foam filter is located in the rear right-hand corner of the air cleaner housing on Zetec engines

cleaner assembly. A small foam filter in the air cleaner prevents dirt from being drawn directly into the engine.

5 Check that all components of the system are securely fastened, correctly routed (with no kinks or sharp bends to restrict flow) and in sound condition; renew any worn or damaged components.

6 If oil leakage is noted, disconnect the various hoses and pipes, and check that all are clear and unblocked. Remove the air cleaner assembly cover, and check that the hose from the cylinder head cover to the air cleaner housing is clear and undamaged.

7 Where fitted, the PCV valve is designed to allow gases to flow out of the crankcase only, so that a depression is created in the crankcase under most operating conditions, particularly at idle. Therefore, if either the oil separator or the PCV valve are thought to be blocked, they must be renewed (see Chapter 6). In such a case, however, there is nothing to be lost by attempting to flush out the blockage using a suitable solvent. The PCV valve should rattle when shaken.

8 While the air filter element is removed (see Section 29), wipe out the housing, and on Zetec engines, withdraw the small foam filter from its location in the rear right-hand corner of the housing (see illustration). If the foam is badly clogged with dirt or oil, it must be cleaned by soaking it in a suitable solvent, and allowed to dry before being refitted.

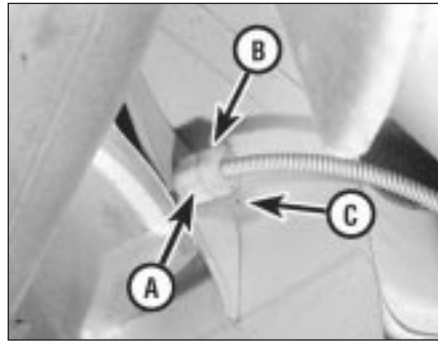
31 Oil filler cap check

1 On HCS engines, remove and inspect the cap to ensure that it is in good condition, and not blocked up with sludge.

2 Disconnect the hoses at the cap, and clean the cap if necessary by brushing the inner mesh filter with petrol, and blowing through with light pressure from an air line. Renew the cap if it is badly congested.



33.4A Handbrake adjustment plunger on drum brake models



33.4B Handbrake cable adjuster nut (A) locknut (B) and lockpin (C)

32 Automatic transmission fluid renewal



- 1 The automatic transmission fluid should only be changed when the transmission is cold.
- 2 Position the vehicle over an inspection pit, on vehicle ramps, or jack it up, but make sure that it is level.
- 3 Place a suitable container beneath the drain plug on the transmission sump pan. Remove the transmission fluid dipstick to speed up the draining operation.
- 4 Thoroughly clean the area around the drain plug in the transmission sump pan, then unscrew the plug and allow the fluid to drain into the container.
- 5 When all the fluid has drained (this may take quite some time) clean the drain plug, then refit it together with a new seal and tighten it securely.
- 6 Place a funnel with a fine mesh screen in the dipstick tube, and fill the transmission with the specified type of fluid. It is essential that no dirt is introduced into the transmission during this operation.
- 7 Depending on the extent to which the fluid was allowed to drain, it is possible that the amount of fluid required when filling the transmission may be more than the specified amount (see "Lubricants, fluids and capacities"). However, due to fluid remaining

in the system, it is more likely that less than the specified amount will be required. Add about half the specified amount, then run the engine up to its normal operating temperature and check the level on the dipstick. When the level approaches the maximum mark, proceed as detailed in Section 7 to check the level and complete the final topping-up as described.

33 Handbrake adjustment



- 1 Chock the front roadwheels and fully release the handbrake.
- 2 Raise the vehicle at the rear, and support it on axle stands.
- 3 Check that the handbrake cables are correctly routed and secured by the retaining clips at the appropriate points under the vehicle.

Drum brake models

- 4 The handbrake is checked for adjustment by measuring the amount of movement possible in the handbrake adjuster plungers. These are located on the inside face of each rear brake backplate (see illustration). The total movement of the two plungers combined should be between 0.5 and 2.0 mm. If the movement measured is outside of this tolerance, the handbrake is in need of

adjustment. Adjustment is made altering the position of the in-line cable adjuster sleeve (see illustration).

- 5 When adjustment to the handbrake is necessary, a new adjustment sleeve locking pin will be required, and this must therefore be obtained before making the adjustment.

- 6 To adjust the handbrake, first ensure that it is fully released, then firmly apply the footbrake a few times to ensure that the rear brake adjustment is taken up by the automatic adjusters. Extract the locking pin from the adjuster sleeve, then turn the sleeve to set the combined movement of the plungers within the tolerance range specified (0.5 to 2.0 mm). Turn the locking nut by hand as tight as is possible (two clicks) against the adjustment sleeve. Now grip the locknut with a suitable wrench, and turn it a further two clicks (maximum).

- 7 Secure the adjustment by inserting the new lock pin.

- 8 Check that the operation of the handbrake is satisfactory, then lower the vehicle to the ground, apply the handbrake and remove the chocks from the front wheels.

Disc brake models

- 9 Remove the blanking plug from the rear of the brake carrier plate, just below and to the rear of the brake caliper.

- 10 With the handbrake released, insert a screwdriver through the blanking plug hole and engage the end of the screwdriver in the teeth of the adjuster wheel. Move the screwdriver up and down to turn the adjuster wheel as necessary, until the wheel is just locked.

- 11 Now back off the adjuster wheel until the wheel can be turned freely without binding.

- 12 Repeat this procedure on the other brake assembly, then check the operation of the handbrake. Ensure that both wheels are locked when the handbrake lever is applied, and that both are released, with no trace of binding when the lever is fully released.

- 13 When all is satisfactory, refit the blanking plugs, and lower the vehicle to the ground. Reapply the handbrake and remove the chocks from the front wheels.

Every 60 000 miles

34 Timing belt renewal



Refer to Chapter 2, Part B or C as appropriate.

35 Fuel filter renewal



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so extra precautions must be taken when working on any part of the fuel system. Do

not smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, near the work area. Also, do not work in a garage if a natural gas-type appliance with a pilot light is present. While performing any work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a suitable (Class B) fire extinguisher on hand. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water.

1 On fuel-injected engines, an in-line fuel filter is provided in the fuel pump outlet line, and is located below and to the rear of the engine, above the driveshafts. The filter performs a vital role in keeping dirt and other foreign matter out of the fuel system, and so must be renewed at regular intervals, or whenever you have reason to suspect that it may be clogged. It is always unpleasant working under a vehicle - pressure-washing or hosing

clean the underbody in the filter's vicinity will make working conditions more tolerable, and will reduce the risk of getting dirt into the fuel system.

2 Relieve any residual pressure in the system by removing the fuel pump fuse (No 5) and starting the engine; allow the engine to idle until it dies. Turn the engine over once or twice on the starter, to ensure that all pressure is released, then switch off the ignition.



Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

3 Noting the comments made in Section 1 of Chapter 5, disconnect the battery earth terminal.

4 Jack up the front of the vehicle, and securely support it on axle stands.

5 Using rag to soak up any spilt fuel, release the fuel feed and outlet pipe unions from the filter, by squeezing together the protruding locking lugs on each union, and carefully pulling the union off the filter stub. Where the unions are colour-coded, the feed and outlet pipes cannot be confused; where both unions are the same colour, note carefully which pipe is connected to which filter stub, and ensure that they are correctly reconnected on refitting.

6 Noting the arrows and/or other markings on the filter showing the direction of fuel flow (towards the engine), slacken the filter clamp



35.7 Fuel filter as fitted to 1.6 litre EFI engines showing direction of flow arrow

screw and withdraw the filter. Note that the filter will still contain fuel; care should be taken, to avoid spillage and to minimise the risk of fire.

7 On installation, slide the filter into its clamp so that the arrow marked on it faces the correct way (see illustration), then slide each pipe union on to its (correct) respective filter stub, and press it down until the locking lugs click into their groove. Tighten the clamp screw carefully, until the filter is just prevented from moving; do not overtighten the clamp screw, or the filter casing may be crushed.

8 Refit the fuel pump fuse and reconnect the battery earth terminal, then switch the ignition on and off five times, to pressurise the system. Check for any sign of fuel leakage around the filter unions before lowering the vehicle to the ground and starting the engine.

Every 3 years

36 Brake fluid renewal



The procedure is similar to that for the bleeding of the hydraulic system as described in Chapter 9, except that the brake fluid reservoir should be emptied by syphoning,

and allowance should be made for the old fluid to be removed from the circuit when bleeding a section of the circuit.

Chapter 2 Part A:






HCS engine - in-car engine repair procedures

Contents

Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal	See Chapter 1	Flywheel - removal, inspection and refitting	19
Compression test - description and interpretation	3	General information	1
Crankshaft oil seals - renewal	17	Inlet manifold - removal and refitting	7
Crankshaft pulley - removal and refitting	11	Oil pump - dismantling, inspection and reassembly	16
Cylinder head - removal and refitting	10	Oil pump - removal and refitting	15
Cylinder head and valve components - cleaning and inspection	See Chapter 2D	Repair operations possible with the engine in the vehicle	2
Cylinder head rocker cover - removal and refitting	5	Spark plug renewal	See Chapter 1
Cylinder head rocker gear - removal, inspection and refitting	9	Sump - removal and refitting	14
Engine oil and filter change	See Chapter 1	Timing chain cover - removal and refitting	12
Engine oil level check	See Chapter 1	Timing chain, sprockets and tensioner - removal, inspection and refitting	13
Engine overhaul - general information	See Chapter 2D	Top Dead Centre (TDC) for No 1 piston - locating	4
Engine/transmission - removal and refitting	See Chapter 2D	Valve clearances - checking and adjustment	6
Engine/transmission mountings - inspection and renewal	18	Water pump - removal and refitting	See Chapter 3
Exhaust manifold - removal, inspection and refitting	8		

2A

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	--	---	--	---	--	--	--	---	--

Specifications

General

Engine type	Four-cylinder, in-line overhead valve
Engine code:	
Carburettor models	JBD
CFI fuel-injected models	J6A
Capacity	1297 cc
Bore	73.96 mm
Stroke	75.48 mm
Compression ratio:	
Carburettor models	9.5:1
CFI fuel-injected models	8.8:1
Firing order	1-2-4-3 (No 1 cylinder at timing chain end)
Direction of crankshaft rotation	Clockwise (seen from right-hand side of vehicle)

Valves

Valve clearance (cold):	
Inlet	0.20 mm
Exhaust	0.30 mm

Lubrication

Engine oil type/specification	See Chapter 1
Engine oil capacity	See Chapter 1
Oil pressure:	
At idle speed	0.60 bars
At 2000 rpm	1.50 bars
Oil pump clearances:	
Outer rotor-to-body	0.14 to 0.26 mm
Inner rotor-to-outer rotor	0.051 to 0.127 mm
Rotor endfloat	0.025 to 0.06 mm

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Camshaft thrust plate bolts	4 to 5	3 to 4
Camshaft sprocket bolt	16 to 20	12 to 14
Crankshaft pulley bolt	110 to 120	81 to 88
Rocker gear pedestal bolts	40 to 46	30 to 34
Flywheel bolts	64 to 70	47 to 51
Exhaust manifold	21 to 25	15 to 18
Inlet manifold	16 to 20	12 to 15
Sump:		
Stage 1	6 to 8	4 to 6
Stage 2	8 to 11	6 to 8
Stage 3 (with engine warm)	8 to 11	6 to 8
Oil pressure switch	13 to 15	10 to 11
Cylinder head bolts (may be re-used once only):		
Stage 1	30	22
Stage 2	Angle-tighten a further 90°	
Stage 3	Angle-tighten a further 90°	
Timing chain tensioner	7 to 9	5 to 6
Timing chain cover	7 to 10	5 to 7
Crankshaft rear oil seal housing	16 to 20	12 to 14
Rocker cover bolts	4 to 5	3 to 4
Oil pump	16 to 20	12 to 14
Oil pump cover	8 to 12	6 to 9

Note: Refer to Part D of this Chapter for remaining torque wrench settings.

1 General information

How to use this Chapter

This Part of Chapter 2 is devoted to repair procedures possible while the engine is still installed in the vehicle, and includes only the Specifications relevant to those procedures. Similar information concerning the 1.4 and 1.6 litre CVH engines, and the 1.6 and 1.8 litre

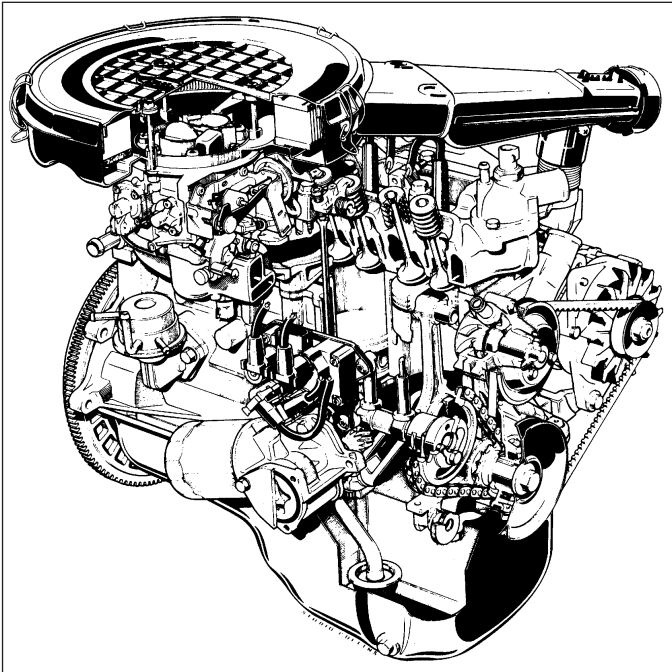
Zetec engines, will be found in Parts B and C of this Chapter respectively. Since these procedures are based on the assumption that the engine is installed in the vehicle, if the engine has been removed from the vehicle and mounted on a stand, some of the preliminary dismantling steps outlined will not apply.

Information concerning engine/transmission removal and refitting, and engine overhaul, can be found in Part D of this Chapter, which also includes the Specifications relevant to those procedures.

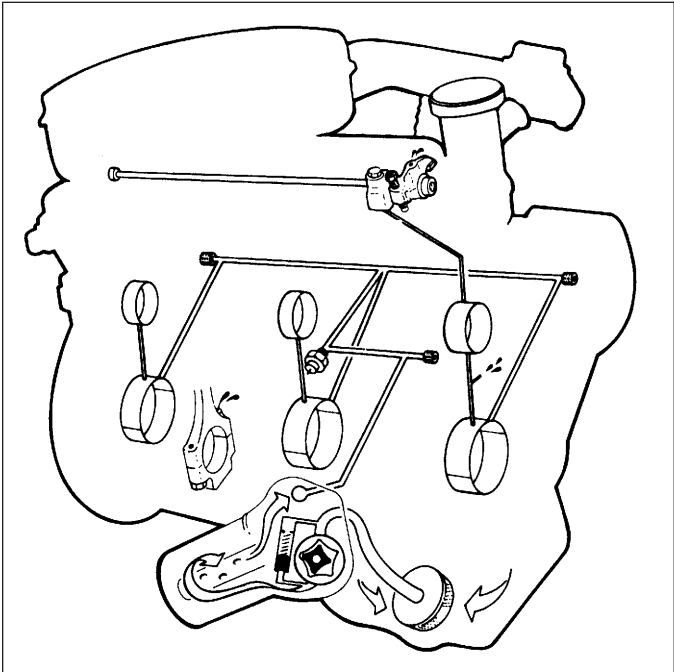
General description - HCS engine

The engine is an overhead valve, water-cooled, four cylinder in-line design, designated HCS (High Compression Swirl) (see illustration). It is mounted transversely at the front of the vehicle together with the transmission to form a combined power unit.

The crankshaft is supported in five shell-type main bearings. The connecting rod big-end bearings are also split shell-type, and are attached to the pistons by interference-fit



1.3 Cutaway view of the HCS engine



1.6 HCS engine lubrication circuit

gudgeon pins. Each piston is fitted with two compression rings and one oil control ring.

The camshaft, which runs on bearings within the cylinder block, is chain-driven from the crankshaft, and operates the valves via pushrods and rocker arms. The valves are each closed by a single valve spring, and operate in guides integral in the cylinder head.

The oil pump is mounted externally on the crankcase, incorporates a full-flow oil filter, and is driven by a skew gear on the camshaft (see illustration). On carburettor versions, the fuel pump is also driven from the camshaft, via an eccentric lobe.

2 Repair operations possible with the engine in the vehicle

The following major repair operations can be accomplished without removing the engine from the vehicle:

- a) *Compression pressure - testing.*
- b) *Cylinder head rocker cover - removal and refitting.*
- c) *Valve clearances - adjustment.*
- d) *Cylinder head and pistons - decarbonising.*
- e) *Rocker shaft assembly - removal and refitting.*
- f) *Crankshaft oil seals - renewal.*
- g) *Oil filter renewal.*
- h) *Oil pump - removal and refitting.*
- i) *Sump - removal and refitting.*
- j) *Piston/connecting rod assemblies - removal and refitting.*
- k) *Flywheel - removal, inspection and refitting.*
- l) *Engine/transmission mountings - removal and refitting.*

Clean the engine compartment and the exterior of the engine with some type of degreaser before any work is done. It will make the job easier, and will help to keep dirt out of the internal areas of the engine.

Depending on the components involved, it may be helpful to remove the bonnet, to improve access to the engine as repairs are performed (refer to Chapter 11 if necessary). Cover the wings to prevent damage to the paint; special covers are available, but an old bedspread or blanket will also work.

If vacuum, exhaust, oil or coolant leaks develop, indicating a need for component/gasket or seal replacement, the repairs can generally be made with the engine in the vehicle. The inlet and exhaust manifold gaskets, sump gasket, crankshaft oil seals and cylinder head gasket are all accessible with the engine in place.

Exterior components such as the inlet and exhaust manifolds, the sump, the oil pump, the water pump, the starter motor, the alternator and the fuel system components can be removed for repair with the engine in place.

Since the cylinder head can be removed without lifting out the engine, valve component servicing can also be accomplished with the engine in the vehicle.

In extreme cases caused by a lack of necessary equipment, repair or renewal of piston rings, pistons, connecting rods and big-end bearings is possible with the engine in the vehicle. However, this practice is not recommended, because of the cleaning and preparation work that must be done to the components involved, and because of the amount of preliminary dismantling work required - these operations are therefore covered in Part D of this Chapter.

3 Compression test - description and interpretation



1 When engine performance is down, or if misfiring occurs which cannot be attributed to the ignition or fuel systems, a compression test can provide diagnostic clues as to the engine's condition. If the test is performed regularly, it can give warning of trouble before any other symptoms become apparent.

2 The engine must be fully warmed-up to normal operating temperature, the oil level must be correct, the battery must be fully charged, and the spark plugs must be removed. The aid of an assistant will also be required.

3 Disconnect the 3-pin plug from the DIS ignition coil (under the inlet manifold).

4 Fit a compression tester to the No 1 cylinder spark plug hole - the type of tester which screws into the plug thread is to be preferred.

5 Arrange for an assistant to hold the accelerator pedal fully depressed to the floor, while at the same time cranking the engine over for several seconds on the starter motor. Observe the compression gauge reading. The compression will build up fairly quickly in a healthy engine. Low compression on the first stroke, followed by gradually-increasing pressure on successive strokes, indicates worn piston rings. A low compression on the first stroke which does not rise on successive strokes, indicates leaking valves or a blown head gasket (a cracked cylinder head could also be the cause). Deposits on the underside of the valve heads can also cause low compression. Record the highest gauge reading obtained, then repeat the procedure for the remaining cylinders.

6 Due to the variety of testers available, and the fluctuation in starter motor speed when cranking the engine, different readings are often obtained when carrying out the compression test. For this reason, actual compression pressure figures are not quoted by Ford. However, the most important factor is that the compression pressures are uniform in all cylinders, and that is what this test is mainly concerned with.

7 Add some engine oil (about three squirts from a plunger type oil can) to each cylinder through the spark plug holes, and then repeat the test.

8 If the compression increases after the oil is added, it is indicative that the piston rings are definitely worn. If the compression does not increase significantly, the leakage is occurring at the valves or the head gasket. Leakage past the valves may be caused by burned valve seats and/or faces, or warped, cracked or bent valves.

9 If two adjacent cylinders have equally low compressions, it is most likely that the head gasket has blown between them. The appearance of coolant in the combustion chambers or on the engine oil dipstick would verify this condition.

10 If one cylinder is about 20 percent lower than the other, and the engine has a slightly rough idle, a worn lobe on the camshaft could be the cause.

11 On completion of the checks, refit the spark plugs and reconnect the HT leads and the DIS ignition coil plug.

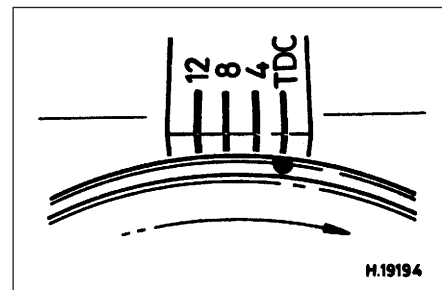
4 Top Dead Centre (TDC) for No 1 piston - locating



1 Top dead centre (TDC) is the highest point of the cylinder that each piston reaches as the crankshaft turns. Each piston reaches its TDC position at the end of its compression stroke, and then again at the end of its exhaust stroke. For the purpose of engine timing, TDC at the end of the compression stroke for No 1 piston is used. On the HCS engine, No 1 cylinder is at the crankshaft pulley/timing chain end of the engine. Proceed as follows.

2 Ensure that the ignition is switched off. Disconnect the HT leads from the spark plugs, then unscrew and remove the plugs as described in Chapter 1.

3 Turn the engine over by hand (using a spanner on the crankshaft pulley) to the point where the timing mark on the crankshaft pulley aligns with the TDC (0) mark on the timing cover (see illustration). As the pulley mark nears the timing mark, the No 1 piston is simultaneously approaching the top of its cylinder. To ensure that it is on its



4.3 Timing mark on the crankshaft pulley aligned with the TDC (0) mark on the timing cover



5.5A Engage tags of rocker cover gasket into the cut-outs in the cover



5.5B Refitting the rocker cover



6.5 Adjusting the valve clearances

compression stroke, place a finger over the No 1 cylinder plug hole, and feel to ensure that air pressure exits from the cylinder as the piston reaches the top of its stroke.

4 A further check to ensure that the piston is on its compression stroke can be made by first removing the air cleaner (see Chapter 4), then unbolting and removing the rocker cover, so that the movement of the valves and rockers can be observed.

5 With the TDC timing marks on the crankshaft pulley and timing cover in alignment, rock the crankshaft back and forth a few degrees each side of this position, and observe the action of the valves and rockers for No 1 cylinder. When No 1 piston is at the TDC firing position, the inlet and exhaust valve of No 1 cylinder will be fully closed, but the corresponding valves of No 4 cylinder will be seen to rock open and closed.

6 If the inlet and exhaust valves of No 1 cylinder are seen to rock whilst those of No 4 cylinder are shut, the crankshaft will need to be turned one full rotation to bring No 1 piston up to the top of its cylinder on the compression stroke.

7 Once No 1 cylinder has been positioned at TDC on the compression stroke, TDC for any of the other cylinders can then be located by rotating the crankshaft clockwise (in its normal direction of rotation), 180° at a time, and following the firing order (see Specifications).

5 Cylinder head rocker cover - removal and refitting



- 1 Remove the air cleaner as described in Chapter 4.
- 2 Detach the HT leads from the spark plugs. Pull on the connector of each lead (not the lead itself), and note the order of fitting.
- 3 Unscrew the four retaining bolts, and lift the rocker cover clear of the cylinder head. Remove the gasket.
- 4 Thoroughly clean the rocker cover, and scrape away any traces of old gasket remaining on the cover and cylinder head mating surfaces.
- 5 Fit a new gasket to the rocker cover, then

refit the rocker cover (see illustrations). Tighten the cover retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting, in a diagonal sequence.

6 Reconnect the HT leads, and refit the air cleaner as described in Chapter 4.

6 Valve clearances - checking and adjustment



1 This operation must be carried out with the engine cold. The air cleaner (see Chapter 4), the rocker cover and the spark plugs (see Chapter 1) must first be removed. As the plugs and their HT leads are removed, note their order of fitting, so that they may be refitted in their original locations.

2 Set the engine to TDC for No 1 piston, as described in Section 4.

3 Starting from the thermostat end of the cylinder head, the valves are numbered as follows:

Valve No	Cylinder No
1 - Exhaust	1
2 - Inlet	1
3 - Exhaust	2
4 - Inlet	2
5 - Inlet	3
6 - Exhaust	3
7 - Inlet	4
8 - Exhaust	4

4 Adjust the valve clearances following the sequence given in the following table. Turn the crankshaft pulley 180° (half a turn) after adjusting each pair of valve clearances.

Valves "rocking"	Valves to adjust
7 and 8	1 (exhaust), 2 (inlet)
5 and 6	3 (exhaust), 4 (inlet)
1 and 2	8 (exhaust), 7 (inlet)
3 and 4	6 (exhaust), 5 (inlet)

5 The clearances for the inlet and exhaust valves differ (refer to the Specifications). Use a feeler gauge of the appropriate thickness to check each clearance between the end of the valve stem and the rocker arm (see illustration). The gauge should be a firm sliding fit between the valve and rocker arm. Where adjustment is necessary, turn the adjuster bolt as required with a ring spanner to set the clearance to that specified. The

adjuster bolts are of stiff-thread type, and require no locking nut.

6 Refit the rocker cover, and tighten its retaining bolts to the specified torque setting in a diagonal sequence.

7 Refit the spark plugs, and reconnect the HT leads.

8 Refit the air cleaner as described in Chapter 4.

7 Inlet manifold - removal and refitting



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when disconnecting any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow naked flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural gas appliance (such as a clothes dryer or water heater) is installed. If you spill petrol on your skin, rinse it off immediately. Have a fire extinguisher rated for petrol fires handy, and know how to use it.

Removal

- 1 Drain the cooling system as described in Chapter 1.
- 2 Remove the carburettor or CFI unit (as applicable) as described in Chapter 4.
- 3 Noting their locations, disconnect the coolant, vacuum and breather hoses from the manifold.
- 4 Disconnect the wiring multi-plugs from the engine sensors at the inlet manifold. Disconnect the radio earth lead at the inlet manifold connector.
- 5 Undo the retaining bolts, and withdraw the manifold from the cylinder head. Remove the gasket.
- 6 With the manifold removed, clean all traces of the old gasket from the mating surfaces of the manifold and the cylinder head.

Refitting

- 7 Refitting is the reversal of removal. Use a new gasket, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque. Refit the remainder of the components with reference to the appropriate Chapters of this manual.



8.1 Exhaust manifold shroud/heat shield

8 Exhaust manifold - removal, inspection and refitting



Note: Never work on or near the exhaust system and in particular, the catalytic converter (where fitted), while it is still hot. If this is unavoidable, wear thick gloves, and protect yourself from burns should you accidentally touch a hot exhaust component.

Removal

1 The exhaust manifold is secured the cylinder head by studs and nuts, and is similarly attached to the exhaust downpipe. A shroud/heat shield is bolted to the manifold, to direct exhaust-heated air into the air inlet system when the engine is cold. Access to the exhaust manifold retaining nuts is gained by first removing this shroud (see illustration).

2 On vehicles equipped with a pulse-air system, remove the pulse-air piping as described in Chapter 6.

3 Support the exhaust downpipe on a jack or suitable blocks, and undo the downpipe-to-manifold retaining nuts. Separate the pipe from the manifold, and remove the gasket. On catalytic converter-equipped vehicles, take care not to stretch the oxygen sensor wiring, where applicable; if necessary, disconnect the sensor's multi-plug.

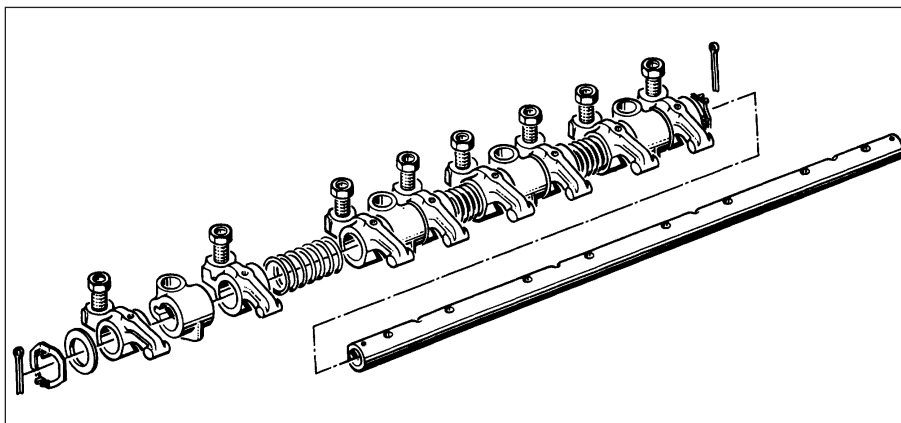
4 Undo the retaining nuts, and withdraw the manifold from the cylinder head studs. Remove the manifold gasket.

Inspection

5 Use a scraper to remove all traces of old gasket material and carbon deposits from the manifold and cylinder head mating surfaces. If the gasket was leaking, have the manifold checked for warpage at an automotive machine shop, and have it resurfaced if necessary.

6 Provided both mating surfaces are clean and flat, a new gasket will be sufficient to ensure the joint is gastight. *Do not* use any kind of exhaust sealant upstream of the catalytic converter, where fitted.

7 Note that on some models, the downpipe is secured to the manifold by two bolts, with a



9.4A Rocker shaft and associated components

coil spring, spring seat and self-locking nut on each. On refitting, tighten the nuts until they stop on the bolt shoulders; the pressure of the springs will then suffice to make a gastight joint.

8 Do not overtighten the nuts to cure a leak - the bolts will shear; renew the gasket and the springs if a leak is found. The bolts themselves are secured by spring clips to the manifold, and can be renewed easily if damaged.

Refitting

9 Refit the manifold in the reverse order of removal. Tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque - see previous paragraph. Ensure that all adjacent wiring and hoses are clear of the exhaust system and manifold, and on completion check the system joints for any signs of leaks.

9 Cylinder head rocker gear - removal, inspection and refitting



Removal

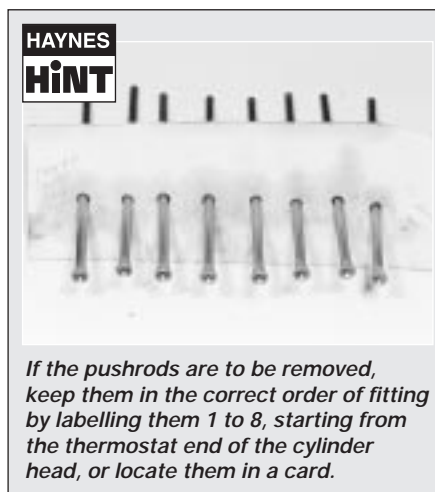
1 Remove the rocker cover as described in Section 5.

2 Unscrew the four retaining bolts, and lift the rocker gear assembly from the cylinder head.



9.4B Partially-dismantled rocker shaft

As the assembly is withdrawn, ensure that the pushrods remain seated in their positions in the engine.



If the pushrods are to be removed, keep them in the correct order of fitting by labelling them 1 to 8, starting from the thermostat end of the cylinder head, or locate them in a card.

Inspection

3 To dismantle the rocker shaft assembly, extract the split pin from one end of the shaft, then withdraw the spring and plain washers from the shaft.

4 Slide off the rocker arms, the support pedestals and coil springs from the shaft, but take care to keep them in their original order of fitting (see illustrations).

5 Clean the respective components, and inspect them for signs of excessive wear or damage. Check that the oil lubrication holes in the shaft are clear.

6 Check the rocker shaft and arm pads which bear on the valve stem end faces for wear and scoring, and check each rocker arm on the shaft for excessive wear. Renew any components as necessary.

Refitting

7 Apply clean engine oil to the rocker shaft prior to reassembling.

8 Reassemble in the reverse order of dismantling. Make sure that the "flat" on the



9.8 Flat on the rocker shaft (arrowed) to same side as rocker arm adjusting screws

rear end of the rocker shaft is to the same side as the rocker arm adjusting screws (closest to the thermostat end of the cylinder head when fitted) (see illustration). This is essential for the correct lubrication of the cylinder head components.

9 Refit the rocker shaft assembly. As it is fitted, ensure that the rocker adjuster screws engage with their corresponding pushrods.

10 Refit the rocker shaft retaining bolts, hand-tighten them and then tighten them to the specified torque wrench setting. As they are tightened, some of the rocker arms will apply pressure to the ends of the valve stems, and some of the rocker pedestals will not initially be in contact with the cylinder head - these should pull down as the bolts are tightened to their specified torque. If for any reason they do not, avoid the temptation to overtighten in order to pull them into position; loosen off the bolts, and check the cause of the problem. It may be that the rocker adjuster screws require loosening off in order to allow the assembly to be tightened down as required.

11 Adjust the valve clearances as described in Section 6.

10 Cylinder head - removal and refitting



Removal

1 On CFI-equipped engines, depressurise the fuel system as described in Chapter 4.

2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

3 Whenever you disconnect any vacuum lines, coolant or emissions hoses, wiring loom connectors, earth straps and fuel lines as part of the following procedure, always label them clearly, so that they can be correctly reassembled. Masking tape and/or a touch-up paint applicator work well for marking items. Take instant photos, or sketch the locations of components and brackets.

4 Refer to Section 5 and remove the rocker cover.

5 Refer to Chapter 1 and drain the cooling system.

6 Disconnect the hoses from the thermostat housing.



10.17 Withdraw the pushrods

7 Disconnect the heater (coolant) hoses from the inlet manifold and CFI unit, where applicable.

8 Disconnect the accelerator and choke cables from the carburettor or CFI unit, as applicable (see Chapter 4).

9 Disconnect the fuel and vacuum hoses from the carburettor/CFI unit and inlet manifold.

10 Disconnect the HT leads from the spark plugs and the support bracket. Unscrew and remove the spark plugs.

11 Disconnect the electrical leads from the temperature gauge sender, radiator cooling fan, the engine coolant temperature sender (beneath the inlet manifold), the radio earth lead on the inlet manifold, and the anti-run-on (anti-dieselling) valve at the carburettor.

12 Remove the engine oil filler cap and breather hose.

13 On vehicles equipped with a pulse-air system, remove the pulse-air piping as described in Chapter 6.

14 Apply the handbrake, then raise the vehicle at the front end, and support it on axle stands.

15 Undo the retaining nuts and bolts, and disconnect the exhaust downpipe from the manifold. Remove the flange gasket. (Note that both the gasket and the joint self-locking nuts must be renewed.) To prevent the exhaust system from being strained, tie the downpipe up using strong wire or a length of cord to support it. On catalytic converter-equipped vehicles, take care not to stretch the oxygen sensor wiring, where applicable; if necessary, disconnect the sensor's multi-plug. Lower the vehicle.



10.22A Cylinder head gasket top-face marking ("OBEN")

16 Undo the four retaining bolts and lift clear the rocker gear assembly from the cylinder head.

17 Lift out the pushrods. Keep them in order of fitting by labelling them 1 to 8, starting from the thermostat end of the cylinder head. Alternatively, push them through a piece of card in their fitted sequence (see illustration).

18 Progressively unscrew and loosen off the cylinder head retaining bolts in the reverse sequence to that shown for tightening (see illustration 10.24A). When they are all loosened off, remove the bolts, then lift the cylinder head clear and remove the gasket. The gasket must always be renewed; it should be noted that the cylinder head retaining bolts may be re-used, but only once. They should be marked accordingly with a punch or paint mark. If there is any doubt as to how many times the bolts have been used, they must be renewed.

19 To dismantle/overhaul the cylinder head, refer to Part D of this Chapter. It is normal for the cylinder head to be decarbonised and the valves to be reground whenever the head is removed.

Refitting

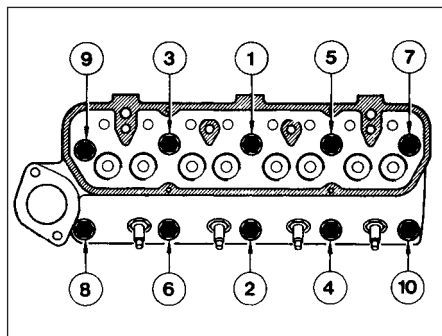
20 Prior to refitting the cylinder head, clean all carbon deposits, dirt and any traces of the old cylinder head gasket, from the mating faces of both the head and the cylinder block. Do not allow any dirt to drop into the cylinder bores, oil passages or waterways; if any does, remove it. Clean the threads of the cylinder head bolts or fit new ones (as applicable) and clean out the bolt holes in the block. Screwing a bolt into an oil-filled hole can (in extreme cases) cause the block to fracture, due to the hydraulic pressure.

21 If there is any doubt as to the condition of the exhaust and inlet manifold gaskets, the manifolds must be removed and the gaskets renewed, but ensure that the mating faces are clean before fitting new gaskets.

22 Check that the new cylinder head gasket is the same type as the original, and that the "TOP" (or "OBEN") marking is facing upwards. Locate the new cylinder head gasket onto the top face of the cylinder block and over the dowels. Ensure that it is correctly aligned with the coolant passages and oilways (see illustrations).



10.22B Cylinder head gasket in position on the top face of the cylinder block



10.24A Cylinder head bolt tightening sequence



10.24B Tightening the cylinder head bolts (Stage 1)



10.24C Cylinder head bolt tightening (Stages 2 and 3) using an angle gauge

23 Lower the cylinder head carefully into position, then insert the retaining bolts and hand-tighten them.

24 Tightening of the cylinder head bolts must done in three stages, and in the correct sequence (see illustration 10.18). First tighten all of the bolts in the sequence shown to the Stage 1 torque setting. When all of the bolts are tightened to the Stage 1 setting, further tighten each bolt (in sequence) through the Stage 2 specified angle of rotation. When the second stage tightening is completed on all of the bolts, further tighten them to the Stage 3 angle setting (in sequence) to complete. Where possible, use an angular torque setting gauge attachment tool for accurate tightening of stages two and three (see illustrations).

25 Lubricate the pushrods with clean engine oil, and then insert them into their original locations in the engine.

26 Refit the rocker shaft assembly. As it is fitted, ensure that the rocker adjuster screws engage with their corresponding pushrods.

27 Refit the rocker shaft retaining bolts, hand-tighten them and then tighten them to the specified torque wrench setting. As they are tightened, some of the rocker arms will apply pressure to the ends of the valve stems, and some of the rocker pedestals will not initially be in contact with the cylinder head - these should pull down as the bolts are tightened to their specified torque. If for any reason they do not, avoid the temptation to overtighten in order to pull them into position; loosen off the bolts, and check the cause of the problem. It may be that the rocker adjuster screws require loosening off in order to allow the assembly to be tightened down as required.

28 Adjust the valve clearances as described in Section 6.

29 Refit the spark plugs and tighten them to the specified torque (see Chapter 1).

30 Fit a new gasket to the rocker cover, then refit the rocker cover. Tighten the cover retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

31 The remainder of the refitting procedure is a reversal of the removal process. Tighten all fastenings to their specified torque setting

(where given). Refer to the appropriate Section in Chapter 4 for details on reconnecting the accelerator and choke cables. Ensure that all coolant, fuel, vacuum and electrical connections are securely made.

32 On completion, top-up the engine oil and coolant levels. When the engine is restarted, check for any sign of fuel, oil and/or coolant leakages from the various cylinder head joints.

11 Crankshaft pulley - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Apply the handbrake, then raise and support the vehicle at the front end on axle stands.

3 Undo the three retaining bolts and remove the plastic cover from the underside of the auxiliary drivebelt.

4 Loosen off the crankshaft pulley retaining bolt. To prevent the crankshaft from turning, unbolt and remove the clutch housing cover plate, and jam the starter ring gear on the flywheel.

5 Loosen off the alternator mounting/adjuster bolts, then pivot the alternator to slacken off the tension from the auxiliary drivebelt, and disengage the belt from the crankshaft pulley (see Chapter 1).

6 Unscrew and remove the crankshaft pulley bolt, and withdraw the pulley from the front end of the crankshaft. If it does not pull off by hand, lever it free using a pair of suitable levers positioned diagonally opposite each other behind the pulley.

7 If required, the crankshaft front oil seal can be renewed at this stage, as described in Section 17.

Refitting

8 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. When the pulley is refitted, tighten the retaining bolt to the specified torque setting. Relocate the drivebelt over the pulley,

and adjust the tension as described in Chapter 1.

9 Refit the drivebelt plastic cover, and lower the vehicle to complete.

12 Timing chain cover - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Remove the crankshaft pulley as described in the previous Section.

2 A combined timing cover and water pump gasket is fitted during production; if this is still in position, it will be necessary to drain the cooling system and remove the water pump as described in Chapter 3. If the water pump and/or the timing cover have been removed at any time, the single gasket used originally will have been replaced by an individual item, in which case the water pump can remain in position.

3 Unscrew the retaining bolts, and carefully prise free the timing chain cover. Note that two of the retaining bolts also secure the sump at the front end. Remove the engine front face-to-cover gasket. If the sump-to-timing cover gasket is damaged during the removal of the cover, it will be necessary to drain and remove the sump in order to renew the gasket, in which case refer to Section 14 for details.

4 Clean the mating faces of the timing chain cover and the engine.

5 If necessary, renew the crankshaft front oil seal in the timing cover prior to refitting the cover (see Section 17).

Refitting

6 Before refitting the cover into position, clean the contact faces at the point where the timing chain cover meets the sump gasket each side. Smear the faces at this point with sealant; it is important that a good seal is made. As previously mentioned, if the sump gasket is damaged on either side at the front, it must be renewed (see Section 14) prior to refitting the timing chain cover.

7 Lightly lubricate the front end of the



12.7 Fitting the timing chain cover.
Crankshaft pulley used as aid to centring



13.4 Oil slinger removal from crankshaft



13.5 Chain tensioner arm removal from the pivot pin. Note tensioner retaining bolts (arrowed)

crankshaft and the radial lip of the timing chain cover oil seal (already installed in the cover). Using a new gasket, fit the timing chain cover, centring it with the aid of the crankshaft pulley (see illustration) - lubricate the seal contact surfaces beforehand. Where applicable, leave out the timing cover bolt which also secures the water pump at this stage.

8 Where applicable, refit the water pump as described in Chapter 3.

9 Refit the crankshaft pulley as described in the previous Section. Refer to Chapter 1 for details on refitting and adjusting the auxiliary drivebelt.

13 Timing chain, sprockets and tensioner - removal, inspection and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Remove the timing chain cover as described in the previous Section.

3 Refer to Section 14 and remove the sump.

4 Remove the oil slinger from the front face of the crankshaft, noting its orientation (see illustration).

5 Retract the chain tensioner cam back against its spring pressure, then slide the chain tensioner arm from its pivot pin on the front main bearing cap (see illustration).

6 Unbolt and remove the chain tensioner.

7 Bend back the lockplate tabs from the camshaft sprocket bolts, then unscrew and remove the bolts.

8 Withdraw the sprocket complete with the timing chain.

Inspection

9 Examine the teeth on the timing sprockets for any signs of excessive wear or damage.

10 The timing chain should always be renewed during a major engine overhaul. Slack links and pins are indicative of a worn chain. Unless the chain is known to be relatively new, it should be renewed.

11 Examine the rubber cushion on the tensioner spring leaf. If grooved or deteriorated, it must be renewed.

Refitting

12 Commence reassembly by bolting the timing chain tensioner into position. Check that the face of the tensioner cam is parallel with the face of the cylinder block, ideally using a dial gauge. The maximum permissible error between the two measuring points is 0.2 mm. Release and turn the timing chain tensioner as required to achieve this (if necessary). Refer to the Specifications for the correct tightening torque.

13 Turn the crankshaft so that the timing mark on its sprocket is directly in line with the centre of the camshaft sprocket mounting flange.

14 Engage the camshaft sprocket with the timing chain, then engage the chain around

the teeth of the crankshaft sprocket. Push the camshaft sprocket onto its mounting flange, and check that the sprocket retaining bolt holes are in alignment. Also check that the timing marks of both sprockets face each other. If required, turn the camshaft/sprocket as required to achieve this. It may also be necessary to remove the camshaft from the chain in order to reposition it in the required location in the chain to align the timing marks. This is a "trial and error" procedure, which must be continued until the exact alignment of the bolt holes and the timing marks is made (see illustrations).

15 Insert and tighten the camshaft sprocket retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting. Bend up the tabs of the new lockplate to secure (see illustration).

16 Retract the timing chain tensioner cam, and then slide the tensioner arm onto its pivot pin. Release the cam so that it bears on the arm.

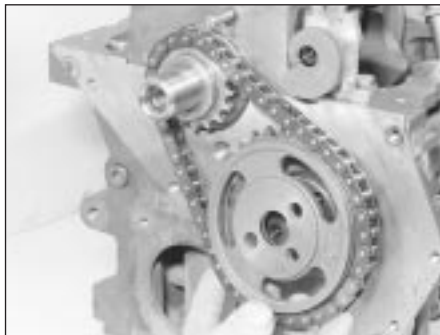
17 Refit the oil slinger to the front of the crankshaft sprocket so that its convex side faces the sprocket.

18 Refit the timing chain cover as described in the previous Section.

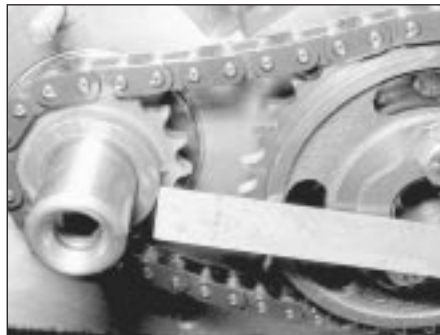
19 Refit the sump as described in Section 14. Top-up the engine oil level as described in Chapter 1.

20 Reconnect the battery.

21 When the engine is restarted, check for any sign of oil or coolant leaks from the sump and water pump (if disturbed).



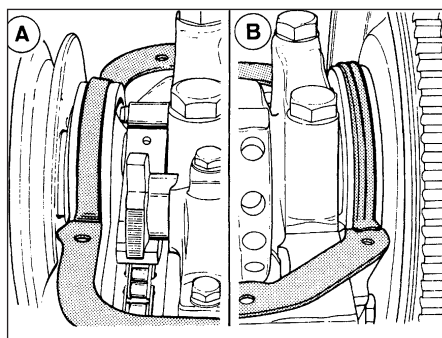
13.14A Fit the timing chain to the crankshaft and camshaft sprockets . . .



13.14B . . . and check that the timing marks on the sprockets are in alignment



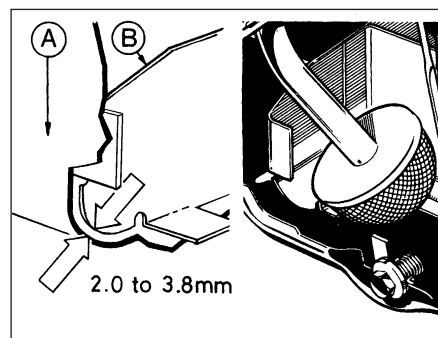
13.15 Bend locktabs against the camshaft retaining bolt heads to secure



14.8A Sump gasket fitting details at the timing chain cover end (A) and the flywheel end (B)



14.8B Lugs of cork gasket halves to fit under the cut-outs in the rubber gaskets



14.9 Sump (A) and oil baffle (B) clearance details

14 Sump - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Refer Chapter 1 and drain the engine oil. Refit the sump drain plug.
- 3 Undo the retaining nuts and detach the exhaust downpipe from the manifold flange. Note that the flange gasket should be renewed on reassembly. Allowing sufficient clearance for sump removal, tie the exhaust downpipe up with a suitable length of wire or cord to prevent the system straining the insulators. On catalytic converter-equipped vehicles, avoid straining the oxygen sensor wiring, where applicable; if necessary, disconnect the sensor's multi-plug.
- 4 Remove the starter motor (see Chapter 5).
- 5 Undo the two retaining bolts and remove the clutch housing cover plate.
- 6 Undo the eighteen bolts securing the sump to the base of the engine crankcase, then prise free and lower the sump. If the sump is stuck tight to the engine, cut around the flange gasket with a sharp knife, then lightly tap and prise it free. Keep the sump upright as it is lowered, to prevent spillage of any remaining oil in it. Also be prepared for oil drips from the crankcase when the sump is removed.
- 7 Remove any dirt and old gasket from the contact faces of the sump and crankcase, and wash the sump out thoroughly before refitting. Check that the mating faces of the sump are not distorted. Check that the oil pick-up strainer is clear, cleaning it if necessary.

Refitting

- 8 Remove the old gaskets from the timing chain cover end, and from the flywheel end, and clean their location faces. Apply a dab of sealing compound to the mating faces where the ends of each cork half-gasket are to be fitted (see illustration). Stick the new cork gaskets into position on the block face, using clean thick grease to retain them, then locate

the new rubber gaskets into their slots in the timing chain cover and rear oil seal carrier. The lugs of the cork gasket halves fit under the cut-outs in the rubber gaskets (see illustration).

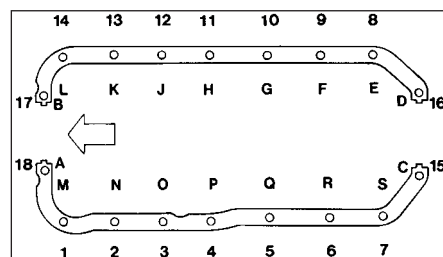
- 9 Before offering up the sump, check that the gap between the sump and the oil baffle is between 2.0 and 3.8 mm (see illustration). Do not use a dented or damaged sump, as the indicated dimension is important for correct engine lubrication.

- 10 Fit the sump into position, and fit the retaining bolts. Initially tighten them all finger-tight, then further tighten them in the sequence shown through Stages 1 and 2, to the torque wrench settings specified (see illustration). Note that different tightening sequences are specified for the tightening stages. Final (Stage 3) tightening is carried out after the engine has been started and warmed up.

- 11 Refit the lower plate to the front face of the clutch housing.
- 12 Refit the starter motor.

- 13 Check that the downpipe and manifold mating faces are clean, then locate a new gasket and reconnect the exhaust downpipe to the manifold. Where applicable, use new self-locking nuts, and tighten securely.

- 14 Check that the sump drain plug is fitted and tightened to the specified torque, then lower the vehicle to the ground.



14.10 Sump bolt tightening sequence - arrow indicates crankshaft pulley end of engine

Refer to Specifications for torque wrench settings

Stage 1 - Tighten in alphabetical order

Stage 2 - Tighten in numerical order

Stage 3 - Tighten in alphabetical order

- 15 Top-up the oil level in the sump as described in Chapter 1 (taking care not to over-fill).

- 16 Reconnect the battery, then start the engine and run it up to its normal operating temperature. Check that no oil leaks are evident around the sump joint.

- 17 After the engine has warmed up for approximately 15 minutes, switch it off. Tighten the sump bolts to the Stage 3 torque wrench setting given in the Specifications, in the sequence shown in illustration 14.10.

15 Oil pump - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 The oil pump is externally-mounted, on the rear-facing side of the crankcase.
- 2 Apply the handbrake, then raise and support the vehicle at the front end on axle stands, allowing sufficient working clearance underneath.
- 3 Unscrew and remove the oil filter cartridge. It should unscrew by hand, but will probably be tight. Use a strap wrench to loosen it off, if required. Catch any oil spillage in a suitable container.
- 4 Undo the three retaining bolts and withdraw the oil pump from the engine (see illustration).



15.4 Unscrewing the oil pump retaining bolts



15.7 Refitting the oil pump. Note the new gasket

5 Clean all traces of the old gasket from the mating surfaces of the pump and engine.

Refitting

6 If the original oil pump has been dismantled and reassembled and is to be re-used, or if a new pump is to be fitted, it must first be primed with engine oil prior to fitting. To do this, turn its driveshaft and simultaneously inject clean engine oil into it.

7 Locate a new gasket into position on the pump mounting flange, then insert the pump, engaging the drivegear as it is fitted (see illustration). Fit the retaining bolts, and tighten to the specified torque wrench setting.

8 Fit a new oil filter into position on the oil pump body, as described in Chapter 1.

9 Lower the vehicle to the ground, and top-up the engine oil level to replenish that lost during the previous operations.

16 Oil pump - dismantling, inspection and reassembly



Dismantling

1 To inspect the oil pump components for excessive wear, undo the retaining bolts and remove the cover plate from the pump body. Remove the O-ring seal from the cover face (see illustration).

2 Wipe the exterior of the pump housing clean housing.



16.1 Extract the O-ring from the groove in the oil pump

Inspection

3 Noting their orientation, extract and clean the rotors and the inner body of the pump housing. Inspect them for signs of severe scoring or excessive wear, which if evident will necessitate renewal of the complete pump.

4 Using feeler gauges, check the clearances between the pump body and the outer rotor, the inner-to-outer rotor clearance, and the amount of rotor endfloat (see illustrations).

5 Check the drivegear for signs of excessive wear or damage.

6 If the clearances measured are outside the specified maximum clearances and/or the drivegear is in poor condition, the complete pump unit must be renewed.

Reassembly

7 Refit the rotors into the pump (in their original orientation), lubricate the rotors and the new O-ring seal with clean engine oil, and refit the cover. Tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

17 Crankshaft oil seals - renewal



Front oil seal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Apply the handbrake, then raise the vehicle at the front end and support it on axle stands.

3 Refer to Section 11 for details and remove the crankshaft pulley.

4 Using a suitable claw tool, extract the oil seal from the timing chain cover, but take care not to damage the seal housing. As it is removed, note the fitted orientation of the seal in the cover.

5 Clean the oil seal housing in the timing chain cover. Lubricate the sealing lips of the new seal and the crankshaft stub with clean engine oil.

6 Locate the new seal into position so that it is squarely located on the crankshaft stub and in the housing, and is correctly orientated. Drift it initially into position by fitting a temporary distance piece against the seal, then draw it fully home by refitting the crankshaft pulley and retaining bolt.

7 When the seal is fully fitted, remove the crankshaft pulley bolt, pulley and distance piece.

8 Lightly lubricate the rubbing surface of the pulley, then refit the pulley as described in Section 11.

Rear oil seal

9 Remove the flywheel as described in Section 19.

10 Using a suitable claw tool, lever the seal from the rear seal housing (taking care not to damage the housing). As it is removed, note the fitted orientation of the seal.

11 Clean the seal housing, the crankshaft rear flange face and the flywheel mating surface.

12 One of two possible methods may be used to insert the new oil seal, depending on the tools available.

13 If Ford service tool No 21-011 is available, lubricate the crankshaft flange and the oil seal inner lip with clean engine oil. Position the seal onto the service tool (ensuring correct orientation), then press the seal into its housing.

14 If the service tool is not available, remove the engine sump (Section 14), then unscrew the Torx-head bolts retaining the rear seal housing in position, and remove the seal housing from the rear face of the cylinder block. New gaskets will be required for both the seal housing and the sump when refitting.



16.4A Checking the outer body-to-rotor clearance



16.4B Checking the inner rotor-to-outer rotor clearance



16.4C Checking the rotor endfloat



17.14A Positioning the crankshaft rear oil seal in its housing

Clean the seal housing seat and the mating surfaces of the sump and the crankcase. To fit the seal squarely into its housing without damaging either component, place a flat block of wood across the seal, then carefully tap the seal into position in the housing. Do not allow the seal to tilt as it is being fitted. Lubricate the crankshaft flange and the oil seal inner lip with clean engine oil, then with a new gasket located on the seal housing/crankcase face, fit the housing into position. Take care not damage the seal lips as it is passed over the crankshaft rear flange (see illustrations). Centralise the seal on the shaft, then insert and tighten the housing retaining bolts to the specified torque setting. Refit the sump with reference to Section 14.

15 Check that the crankshaft rear flange and the flywheel mating faces are clean, then refit the flywheel as described in Section 19.



17.14B Fitting the rear oil seal housing with a new gasket in position on the rear face of the cylinder block

or lever to attempt to move the mountings). If movement is noted, lower the engine and check-tighten the mounting fasteners.

Renewal

6 The engine mountings can be removed if the weight of the engine/transmission is

supported by one of the following alternative methods.

7 Either support the weight of the assembly from underneath using a jack and a suitable piece of wood between the jack saddle and the sump (to prevent damage), or from above by attaching a hoist to the engine. A third method is to use a suitable support bar with end pieces which will engage in the water channel each side of the bonnet lid aperture. Using an adjustable hook and chain connected to the engine, the weight of the engine and transmission can then be taken from the mountings.

8 Once the weight of the engine and transmission is suitably supported, any of the mountings can be unbolted and removed. The accompanying illustrations show the mountings and their attachments, and should be used for reference (see illustrations). As the mountings are disconnected and removed, note the location and orientation of the fixings and any associated fittings.

18 Engine/transmission mountings - inspection and renewal



Inspection

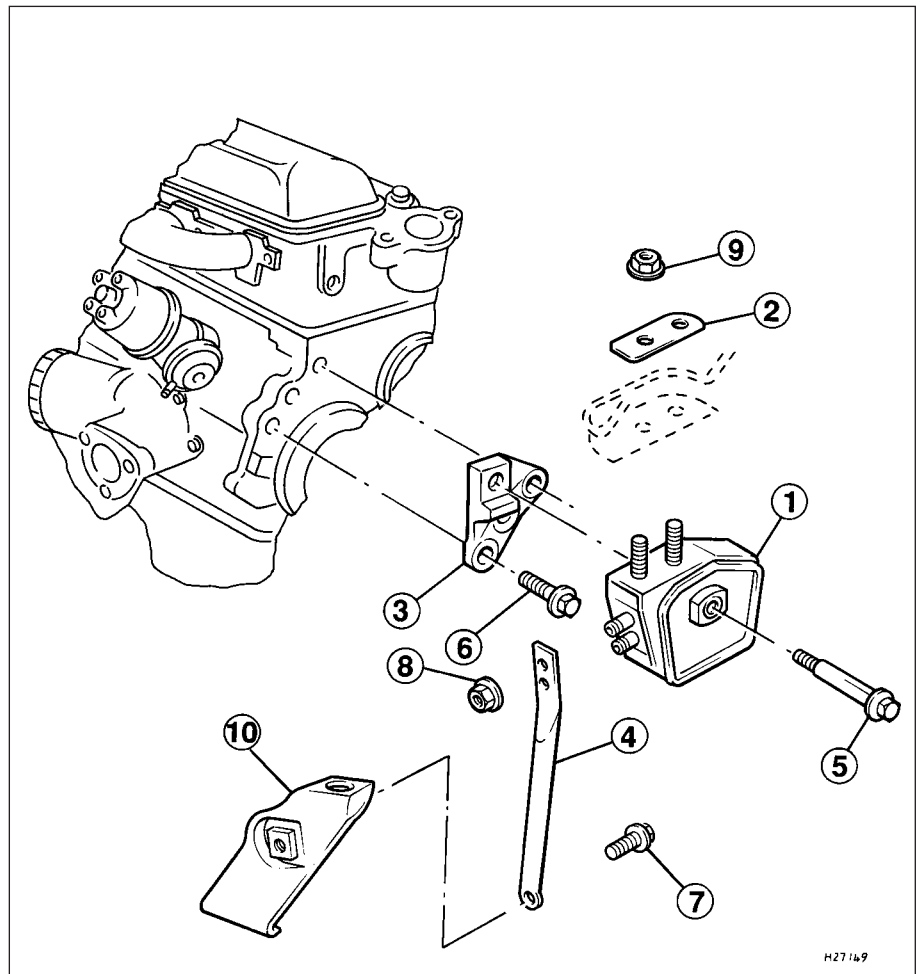
1 The engine/transmission mountings seldom require attention, but broken or deteriorated mountings should be renewed immediately, or the added strain placed on the driveline components may cause damage or wear.

2 During the check, the engine/transmission must be raised slightly, to remove its weight from the mountings.

3 Apply the handbrake, then raise the front of the vehicle, and support it securely on axle stands. Position a jack under the sump, with a large block of wood between the jack head and the sump, then carefully raise the engine/transmission just enough to take the weight off the mountings.

4 Check the mountings to see if the rubber is cracked, hardened or separated from the metal components. Sometimes, the rubber will split right down the centre.

5 Check for relative movement between each mounting's brackets and the engine/transmission or body (use a large screwdriver



18.8A Right-hand engine mounting components

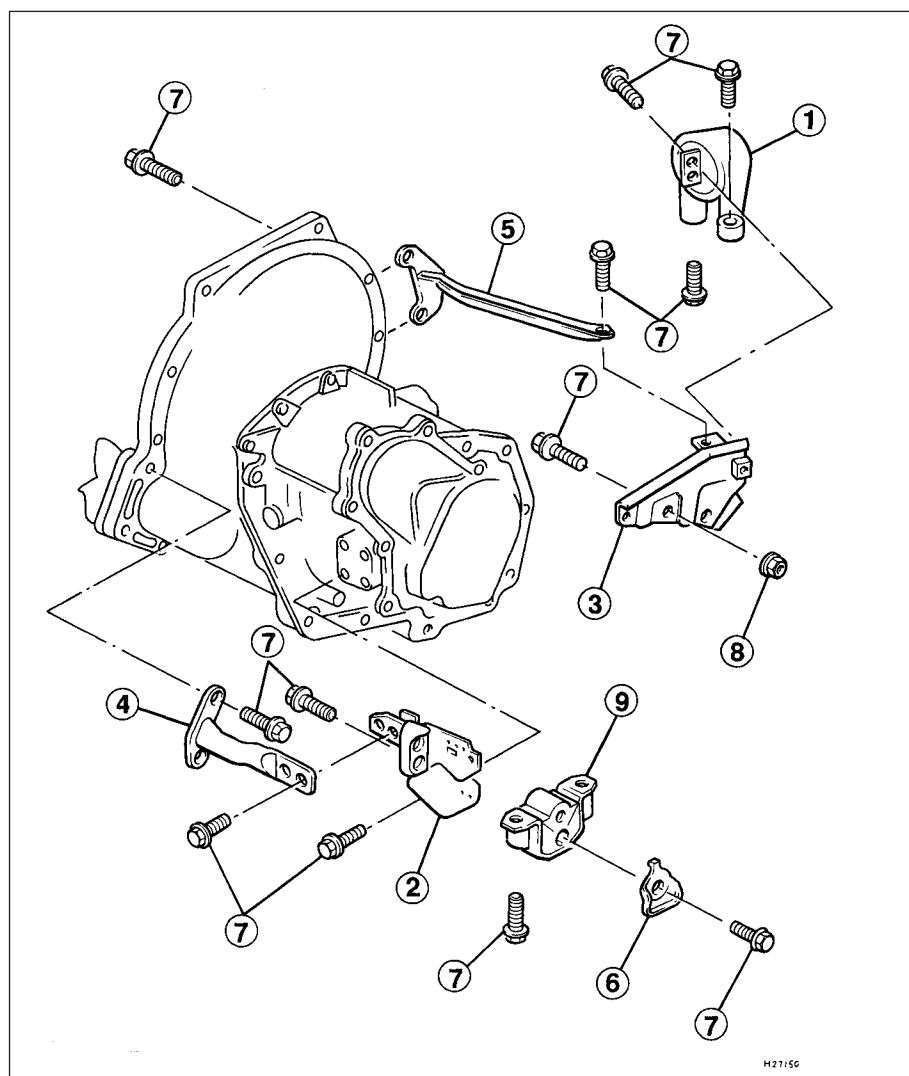
1 Insulator
2 Reinforcement
plate

3 Mounting bracket
4 Support
5 Bolt and washer

6 Bolt
7 Bolt
8 Self-locking nut

9 Self-locking nut
10 Insulator

H27/49



18.8B Left-hand engine/transmission mounting components

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Engine support insulator | 3 Bracket | 6 Retainer | 9 Engine support bracket |
| 2 Mounting bracket | 4 Support stay | 7 Bolt and washer | |
| | 5 Support stay | 8 Self-locking nut | |

9 Refitting of all mountings is a reversal of the removal procedure. Ensure that the original sequence of washers and associated fittings are correctly fitted.

10 Do not fully tighten the mounting fasteners until all of the mountings are in position. Check that the mounting rubbers do not twist or distort as the mounting bolts and nuts are tightened to their specified torque wrench settings.

19 Flywheel - removal, inspection and refitting

Refitting

1 Remove the transmission as described in Chapter 7A, then remove the clutch as described in Chapter 8.

2 Unscrew the six retaining bolts, and remove



19.5 Tightening the flywheel retaining bolts to the specified torque

Note the "peg" tool jamming the ring gear teeth to prevent the flywheel/crankshaft from rotating.

the flywheel from the rear end flange of the crankshaft - take care not to drop the flywheel, as it is heavy. A tool similar to that shown in illustration 19.5 can be fitted to prevent the flywheel/crankshaft from rotating as the bolts are removed. If on removal the retaining bolts are found to be in poor condition (stretched threads, etc) they must be renewed.

Inspection

3 Inspect the starter ring gear on the flywheel for any broken or excessively-worn teeth. If evident, the ring gear must be renewed; this is a task best entrusted to a Ford dealer or a competent garage. Alternatively, it may be cheaper to obtain a complete flywheel from a car breaker.

4 The clutch friction surface on the flywheel must be carefully inspected for grooving or hairline cracks (caused by overheating). If these conditions are evident, it may be possible to have the flywheel surface-ground to renovate it, providing that the balance is not upset. Regrinding is a task for an automotive engineer. If surface-grinding is not possible, the flywheel must be renewed.

Refitting

5 Check that the mating faces of the flywheel and the crankshaft are clean before refitting. Lubricate the threads of the retaining bolts with engine oil before they are screwed into position. Locate the flywheel onto the crankshaft, and insert the bolts. Hand-tighten them initially, then tighten them in a progressive sequence to the specified torque wrench setting (*see illustration*).

6 Refit the clutch as described in Chapter 6.

Chapter 2 Part B:






CVH engine - in-car engine repair procedures

Contents

Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal	See Chapter 1	Exhaust manifold - removal, inspection and refitting	7
Camshaft oil seal - renewal	12	Flywheel/driveplate - removal, inspection and refitting	20
Camshaft, rocker arms and tappets - removal, inspection and refitting	13	General information	1
Compression test - description and interpretation	3	Inlet manifold - removal and refitting	6
Crankshaft oil seals - renewal	18	Oil pump - dismantling, inspection and reassembly	17
Crankshaft pulley - removal and refitting	8	Oil pump - removal and refitting	16
Cylinder head - removal and refitting	14	Repair operations possible with the engine in the vehicle	2
Cylinder head and valve components - cleaning and inspection	See Chapter 2D	Spark plug renewal	See Chapter 1
Cylinder head rocker cover - removal and refitting	5	Sump - removal and refitting	15
Engine oil and filter change	See Chapter 1	Timing belt - removal, refitting and adjustment	10
Engine oil level check	See Chapter 1	Timing belt covers - removal and refitting	9
Engine overhaul - general information	See Chapter 2D	Timing belt tensioner and sprockets - removal, inspection and refitting	11
Engine/transmission - removal and refitting	See Chapter 2D	Top Dead Centre (TDC) for No 1 piston - locating	4
Engine/transmission mountings - renewal	19	Water pump - removal and refitting	See Chapter 3

2B

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

Specifications

General

Engine type	Four-cylinder, in-line overhead camshaft
Engine code:	
1.4 litre engine:	
Carburettor models	FUH
CFi fuel-injected models	F6F
1.6 litre engine:	
Carburettor models	LUK, LUJ
EFi fuel-injected models	LJE, LJF
Capacity:	
1.4 litre engine	1392 cc
1.6 litre engine	1596 cc
Bore:	
1.4 litre engine	77.42 mm
1.6 litre engine	79.96 mm
Stroke:	
1.4 litre engine	74.30 mm
1.6 litre engine	79.52 mm
Compression ratio:	
1.4 litre engine	8.5:1
1.6 litre engine:	
Carburettor models	9.5:1
EFi fuel-injected models	9.75:1
Firing order	1-3-4-2 (No 1 cylinder at timing belt end)
Direction of crankshaft rotation	Clockwise (seen from right-hand side of vehicle)

Cylinder head

Hydraulic tappet bore inside diameter 22.235 to 22.265 mm

Camshaft

Camshaft bearing journal diameter:

Bearing 1 44.75 mm

Bearing 2 45.00 mm

Bearing 3 45.25 mm

Bearing 4 45.50 mm

Bearing 5 45.75 mm

Camshaft bearing journal-to-cylinder head running clearance 0.033 to 0.058 mm

Camshaft endfloat 0.05 to 0.13 mm

Camshaft thrust plate thickness 4.99 to 5.01 mm

Lubrication

Engine oil type/specification See Chapter 1

Engine oil capacity See Chapter 1

Oil pressure:

Idling 1.0 bar

At 2000 rpm 2.8 bars

Oil pump clearances:

Outer rotor-to-body 0.060 to 0.190 mm

Inner rotor-to-outer rotor 0.05 to 0.18 mm

Rotor endfloat 0.014 to 0.100 mm

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Oil pump	8 to 11	6 to 8
Oil pump cover	8 to 12	6 to 8
Oil pump pick-up to cylinder block	17 to 23	12 to 17
Oil pump pick-up to pump	8 to 12	6 to 8
Oil cooler threaded sleeve to cylinder block	55 to 60	40 to 44
Engine oil drain plug	21 to 28	15 to 21
Rear oil seal housing	8 to 11	6 to 8
Flywheel	82 to 92	60 to 68
Cylinder head bolts:		
Stage 1	24 to 40	25 to 30
Stage 2	40 to 60	30 to 44
Stage 3	Angle-tighten a further 90°	
Stage 4	Angle-tighten a further 90°	
Crankshaft pulley bolt	100 to 115	74 to 85
Camshaft thrust plate	9 to 13	7 to 10
Camshaft toothed belt sprocket	54 to 59	40 to 44
Timing belt tensioner	16 to 20	12 to 15
Rocker studs in cylinder head	18 to 23	13 to 17
Rocker arms	25 to 29	18 to 21
Rocker cover	6 to 8	4 to 6
Inlet manifold	16 to 20	12 to 15
Exhaust manifold	14 to 17	10 to 12
Timing belt cover	9 to 11	7 to 8
Oil pressure switch	18 to 22	13 to 16

Note: Refer to Part D of this Chapter for remaining torque wrench settings.

1 General information

How to use this Chapter

This Part of Chapter 2 is devoted to repair procedures possible while the engine is still installed in the vehicle, and includes only the Specifications relevant to those procedures. Similar information concerning the 1.3 litre HCS engine, and on the 1.6 and 1.8 litre Zetec engines, will be found in Parts A and C of this Chapter respectively. Since these procedures

are based on the assumption that the engine is installed in the vehicle, if the engine has been removed from the vehicle and mounted on a stand, some of the preliminary dismantling steps outlined will not apply.

Information concerning engine/transmission removal and refitting, and engine overhaul, can be found in Part D of this Chapter, which also includes the Specifications relevant to those procedures.

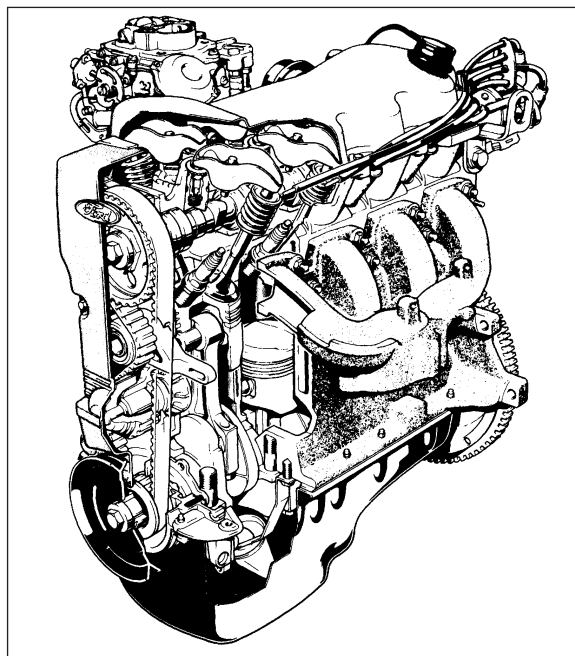
General description - CVH engine

The 1.4 and 1.6 litre CVH (Compound Valve angle, Hemispherical combustion chambers)

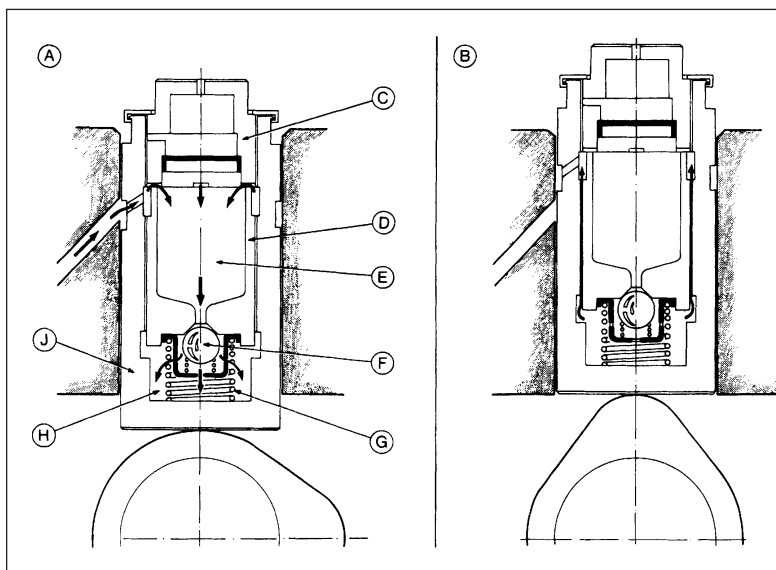
engines are of four-cylinder, in-line, overhead camshaft type, mounted transversely together with the transmission at the front of the vehicle (**see illustration**).

The crankshaft is supported in five split-shell type main bearings within the cast-iron crankcase. The connecting rod big-end bearings are split-shell type, and the pistons are attached by interference-fit gudgeon pins. Each piston has two compression rings and one oil control ring.

The cylinder head is of light alloy construction, and supports the camshaft in five bearings. Camshaft drive is by a toothed composite rubber timing belt, which is driven



1.3 Cutaway view of the CVH engine



1.6 Sectional views showing operation of the hydraulic tappets

A Valve closed

D Cylinder

G Coil spring

B Valve open

E Feed chamber

H Pressure chamber

C Plunger

F Non-return valve

J Body

by a sprocket on the front end of the crankshaft. The timing belt also drives the water pump, which is mounted below the cylinder head.

Hydraulic cam followers (tappets) operate the rocker arms and valves (see illustration). The tappets are operated by pressurised engine oil. When a valve closes, the oil passes through a port in the body of the cam follower, through four grooves in the plunger and into the cylinder feed chamber. From the chamber, the oil flows to a ball-type non-return valve and into the pressure chamber. The tension of the coil spring causes the plunger to press against the valve, and so eliminates any free play. As the cam lifts the follower, the oil pressure in the pressure chamber is increased, and the non-return valve closes off the port feed chamber. This in turn provides a rigid link between the cam follower, the cylinder and the plunger. These then rise as a unit to open the valve. The cam follower-to-cylinder clearance allows the specified quantity of oil to pass from the pressure chamber, oil only being allowed past the cylinder bore when the pressure is high during the moment of the valve opening. When the valve closes, the escape of oil will produce a small clearance, and no pressure will exist in the pressure chamber. The feed chamber oil then flows through the non-return valve and into the pressure chamber, so that the cam follower cylinder can be raised by the pressure of the coil spring, eliminating free play until the valve is operated again.

As wear occurs between the rocker arm and the valve stem, the quantity of oil that flows into the pressure chamber will be slightly more than the quantity lost during the expansion cycle of the cam follower.

Conversely, when the cam follower is compressed by the expansion of the valve, a slightly smaller quantity of oil will flow into the pressure chamber than was lost.

A rotor-type oil pump is mounted on the timing cover end of the engine, and is driven by a gear on the front end of the crankshaft (see illustration). A full-flow type oil filter is fitted, and is mounted on the side of the crankcase.

Valve clearances - general

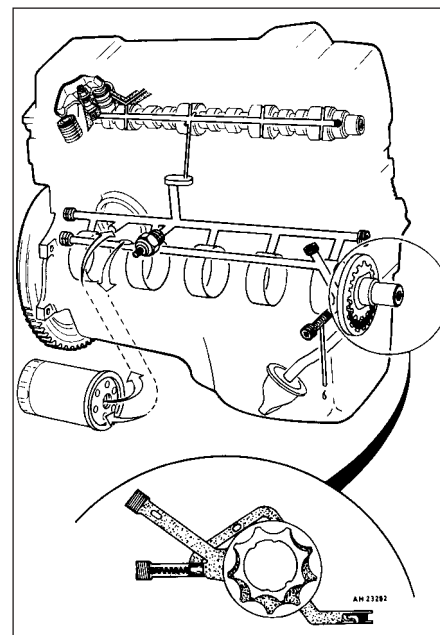
It is necessary for a clearance to exist between the tip of each valve stem and the valve operating mechanism, to allow for the expansion of the various components as the engine reaches normal operating temperature.

On most older engine designs, this meant that the valve clearances (also known as "tappet" clearances) had to be checked and adjusted regularly. If the clearances were allowed to be too slack, the engine would be very noisy, its power output would suffer, and its fuel consumption would increase. If the clearances were allowed to be too tight, the engine's power output would be reduced, and the valves and their seats could be severely damaged.

The CVH engine employs hydraulic tappets which use the lubricating system's oil pressure automatically to take up the clearance between each camshaft lobe and its respective valve stem. Therefore, there is no need for regular checking and adjustment of the valve clearances. However, it is **essential** that only good-quality oil of the recommended viscosity and specification is used in the engine, and that this oil is always changed at the recommended intervals. If this

advice is not followed, the oilways and tappets may become clogged with particles of dirt, or deposits of burnt (inferior) engine oil, so that the system cannot work properly; ultimately, one or more of the tappets may fail, and expensive repairs may be required.

On starting the engine from cold, there will be a slight delay while full oil pressure builds up in all parts of the engine, especially in the tappets; the valve components, therefore, may well "rattle" for about 10 seconds or so, and then quieten. This is a normal state of affairs, and is nothing to worry about,



1.8 CVH engine lubrication circuit

provided that all tappets quieten quickly and stay quiet.

After the vehicle has been standing for several days, the valve components may “rattle” for longer than usual, as nearly all the oil will have drained away from the engine’s top-end components and bearing surfaces. While this is only to be expected, care must be taken not to damage the engine under these circumstances - avoid high-speed running until all the tappets are refilled with oil and operating normally. With the vehicle stationary, hold the engine at no more than a fast idle speed (maximum 2000 to 2500 rpm) for 10 to 15 minutes, or until the noise ceases. Do not run the engine at more than 3000 rpm until the tappets are fully recharged with oil and the noise has ceased.

If the valve components are thought to be noisy, or if a light rattle persists from the top end after the engine has warmed up to normal operating temperature, take the vehicle to a Ford dealer for expert advice. Depending on the mileage covered and the usage to which each vehicle has been put, some vehicles may be noisier than others; only a good mechanic experienced in these engines can tell if the noise level is typical for the vehicle’s mileage, or if a genuine fault exists. If any tappet’s operation is faulty, it must be renewed (Section 13).

2 Repair operations possible with the engine in the vehicle

The following major repair operations can be accomplished without removing the engine from the vehicle:

- a) *Compression pressure - testing.*
- b) *Cylinder head rocker cover - removal and refitting.*
- c) *Timing belt - removal, refitting and adjustment.*
- d) *Camshaft oil seal - renewal.*
- e) *Camshaft - removal and refitting.*
- f) *Cylinder head - removal and refitting.*
- g) *Crankshaft oil seals - renewal.*
- h) *Sump - removal and refitting.*
- i) *Pistons/connecting rods - removal and refitting.*
- j) *Flywheel - removal, inspection and refitting.*
- k) *Engine/transmission mountings - removal and refitting.*

Clean the engine compartment and the exterior of the engine with a suitable degreasant before any work is done. It will make the job easier, and will help to keep dirt out of the internal areas of the engine.

Depending on the components involved, it may be helpful to remove the bonnet, to improve access to the engine as repairs are performed (refer to Chapter 11 if necessary). Cover the front wings, to prevent damage to the paint; special covers are available, but an old bedspread or blanket will also work.



4.6A Crankshaft pulley notch (arrowed) aligned with the TDC (0) mark on the timing belt cover



4.6B Camshaft sprocket timing mark aligned with the TDC mark on the front face of the cylinder head

If vacuum, exhaust, oil or coolant leaks develop, indicating a need for component/gasket or seal replacement, the repairs can generally be made with the engine in the vehicle. The inlet and exhaust manifold gaskets, sump gasket, crankshaft oil seals and cylinder head gasket are all accessible with the engine in place.

Exterior components such as the inlet and exhaust manifolds, the sump, the oil pump, the water pump, the starter motor, the alternator and the fuel system components can be removed for repair with the engine in place.

Since the cylinder head can be removed without lifting out the engine, camshaft and valve component servicing can also be accomplished with the engine in the vehicle, as can renewal of the timing belt and toothed pulleys.

In extreme cases caused by a lack of necessary equipment, repair or renewal of piston rings, pistons, connecting rods and big-end bearings is possible with the engine in the vehicle. However, this practice is not recommended, because of the cleaning and preparation work that must be done to the components involved, and because of the amount of preliminary dismantling work required - these operations are therefore covered in Part D of this Chapter.

3 Compression test - description and interpretation

Refer to Section 3 in Part A of this Chapter.

4 Top Dead Centre (TDC) for No 1 piston - locating

1 Top dead centre (TDC) is the highest point of the cylinder that each piston reaches as the crankshaft turns. Each piston reaches its TDC position at the end of its compression stroke, and then again at the end of its exhaust stroke. For the purpose of engine timing, TDC

on the compression stroke for No 1 piston is used. No 1 cylinder is at the timing belt end of the engine. Proceed as follows.

2 Undo the two retaining bolts and remove the upper timing belt cover.

3 Apply the handbrake, then raise the vehicle at the front end and support it on axle stands.

4 Undo the retaining bolts, and remove the cover from the underside of the crankshaft pulley.

5 Fit a spanner onto the crankshaft pulley bolt, and turn the crankshaft in its normal direction of rotation (clockwise, viewed from the pulley end) to the point where the crankshaft pulley timing notch is aligned with the TDC (0) timing mark on the timing belt cover. Turning the engine will be much easier if the spark plugs are removed first (see Chapter 1).

6 Although the crankshaft is now in top dead centre alignment, with piston Nos 1 and 4 at the top of their stroke, the No 1 piston may not be on its compression stroke. To confirm that it is, check that the timing pointer on the camshaft sprocket is exactly aligned with the TDC mark on the front face of the cylinder head (**see illustrations**). If the pointer is not aligned, turn the crankshaft pulley one further complete turn, and all the markings should now align.

7 With the engine set at No 1 piston on TDC compression, refit the crankshaft pulley cover, lower the vehicle and refit the upper timing belt cover.

5 Cylinder head rocker cover - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 On 1.4 litre engines, and 1.6 litre carburettor engines, remove the air cleaner unit as described in Chapter 4. Disconnect the crankcase ventilation hose from the rocker cover.

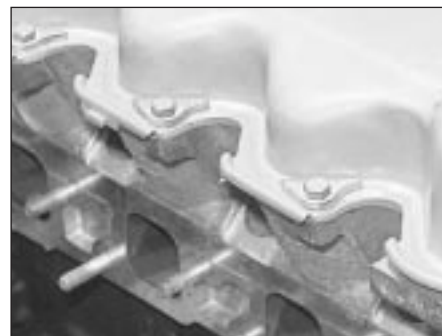
3 On 1.6 litre EFi engines, disconnect the HT leads from the spark plugs, then detach them



5.3 Air inlet duct-to-rocker cover attachment bolt on 1.6 litre EFi fuel-injected engine



5.9A Fitting a new gasket to the rocker cover



5.9B Rocker cover retaining bolts and plate washers

from the air inlet duct and the rocker cover. Position them out of the way. Loosen off the retaining clips, and detach the air inlet hose and the breather hose from the air inlet duct. Also detach the crankcase breather hose from the rocker cover. Undo the two retaining bolts, and remove the air inlet duct from the top of the rocker cover (**see illustration**).

4 Undo the two bolts retaining the upper half of the timing belt cover, and remove it.

5 Referring to Chapter 4 for details, disconnect the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage and from the adjuster bracket above the rocker cover. Position the cable out of the way.

6 Where applicable, disconnect the choke cable from the carburettor, referring to Chapter 4 for details.

7 Unscrew and remove the rocker cover retaining bolts and washers, then lift the cover from the cylinder head. Note that a new rocker cover gasket will be needed on refitting.

Refitting

8 Before refitting the rocker cover, clean the mating surfaces of both the cylinder head and the cover.

9 Locate the new gasket in position, then fit the cover retaining bolts and washers. Ensure that the grooves in the plate washers are facing upwards as they are fitted (**see illustrations**). Tighten the cover retaining

bolts to the specified torque wrench setting. Refer to Chapter 4 for details on reconnecting the accelerator cable, choke cable, air inlet duct and air cleaner (as applicable).

10 Refit the timing belt cover and reconnect the battery earth lead.

6 Inlet manifold - removal and refitting



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when disconnecting any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow naked flames or bare light bulbs in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural gas appliance (such as a clothes dryer or water heater) is installed. If you spill petrol on your skin, rinse it off immediately. Have a fire extinguisher rated for petrol fires handy, and know how to use it.

Removal

1 A single-piece cast-aluminium inlet manifold is used on all CVH engines except 1.6 EFi models, which have a two-piece manifold comprising an upper and lower section bolted together.

2 On CFI and EFi models, depressurise the fuel system as described in Chapter 4.

3 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

4 Remove the carburettor or CFI unit (as applicable) as described in Chapter 4.

5 On EFi models, remove the air inlet duct and disconnect the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage (see Chapter 4).

6 On EFi models, remove the fuel injectors and fuel rail (see Chapter 4).

7 Noting their locations, disconnect the coolant, vacuum and breather hoses from the manifold.

8 Disconnect the wiring multi-plugs from the engine sensors at the inlet manifold.

9 Undo the retaining bolts, and withdraw the manifold from the cylinder head. Note the location of the engine lifting bracket and earth lead, where fitted (**see illustration**). Remove the gasket.

10 With the manifold removed, clean all traces of the old gasket from the mating surfaces of the manifold and the cylinder head.

Refitting

11 Refitting is the reversal of removal. Use a new gasket, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque (**see illustration**). Refit the remainder of the components with reference to the appropriate Chapters of this manual.

7 Exhaust manifold - removal, inspection and refitting

Note: Never work on or near a hot exhaust system and in particular, the catalytic converter (where fitted).

Removal

1 The exhaust manifold is secured to the cylinder head by studs and nuts, and is similarly attached to the exhaust downpipe. A metal shroud is bolted to the manifold, to direct exhaust-heated air into the air inlet system when the engine is cold. Access to the exhaust manifold retaining nuts is



6.9 Inlet manifold retaining bolt securing the engine lifting bracket and earth lead



6.11 Always use a new gasket (arrowed) when refitting the inlet manifold



7.1A Removing the hot-air shroud from the 1.6 litre carburettor engine



7.1B Hot-air shroud removal from the 1.6 litre EFI fuel injected engine



7.4 Removing the exhaust manifold

gained by first removing the shroud (see illustrations).

2 On vehicles equipped with a pulse-air system, remove the pulse-air piping as described in Chapter 6.

3 Support the exhaust downpipe on a jack or suitable blocks, and undo the down pipe-to-manifold retaining nuts. Separate the pipe from the manifold, and remove the gasket. On catalytic converter-equipped vehicles, take care not to stretch the oxygen sensor wiring, where applicable; if necessary, disconnect the sensor's multi-plug.

4 Undo the retaining nuts and withdraw the manifold from the cylinder head studs (see illustration). Remove the manifold gasket.



7.9A Fit a new gasket to the exhaust manifold . . .



7.9B . . . and manifold-to-exhaust downpipe connection

Inspection

5 Use a scraper to remove all traces of old gasket material and carbon deposits from the manifold and cylinder head mating surfaces. If the gasket was leaking, have the manifold checked for warpage at an automotive machine shop, and have it resurfaced if necessary.

6 Provided both mating surfaces are clean and flat, a new gasket will be sufficient to ensure the joint is gastight. Do not use any kind of exhaust sealant upstream of the catalytic converter (where applicable).

7 Note that, on some models, the downpipe is secured to the manifold by two bolts, with a coil spring, spring seat and self-locking nut on each. On refitting, tighten the nuts until they stop on the bolt shoulders; the pressure of the springs will then suffice to make a gastight joint.

8 Do not overtighten the nuts to cure a leak - the bolts will shear; renew the gasket and the springs if a leak is found. The bolts themselves are secured by spring clips to the manifold, and can be renewed easily if damaged.

Refitting

9 Refit the manifold in the reverse order of removal, using new gaskets throughout (see illustrations). Tighten the retaining bolts to their specified torque wrench settings - see paragraph 8 above. Ensure that all adjacent

wiring and hoses are clear of the exhaust system and manifold, and on completion check the system joints for any signs of leaks.

8 Crankshaft pulley - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Apply the handbrake, then raise the vehicle at the front end, and support it on axle stands.

3 Unbolt and remove the cover from the underside of the crankshaft pulley.

4 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1.

5 If timing belt renewal is also intended, set the engine at TDC as described in Section 4 before removing the crankshaft pulley and retaining bolt.

6 To prevent the crankshaft from turning as the pulley bolt is loosened off, remove the starter motor as described in Chapter 5, and then jam the starter ring gear using a suitable lever (see illustration).

7 Unscrew and remove the crankshaft pulley retaining bolt and its washer. Withdraw the pulley from the front end of the crankshaft (see illustration). If necessary, lever it free using a pair of diagonally-opposed levers positioned behind the pulley.



8.6 Using a suitable bar to lock the flywheel ring gear



8.7 Crankshaft pulley removal

Refitting

8 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Tighten the pulley retaining bolt to the specified torque setting, and refer to Chapter 1 for details on refitting the auxiliary drivebelt.

9 On completion, reconnect the battery earth lead.

9 Timing belt covers - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Undo the two retaining bolts and remove the upper timing belt cover (**see illustration**).

3 Refer to the previous Section for details, and remove the crankshaft pulley.

4 Unscrew the two bolts securing the lower timing belt cover, and remove it (**see illustration**).

Refitting

5 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Tighten the cover retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

6 On completion, reconnect the battery earth lead.

10 Timing belt - removal, refitting and adjustment



Removal

1 Referring to the previous Sections for details, remove the rocker cover, the crankshaft pulley and the timing belt covers.

2 Check that the crankshaft is set with the No 1 piston at TDC (on its compression stroke) before proceeding. If necessary, refer to Section 4 for further details.

3 To check the timing belt for correct adjustment, proceed as described in paragraph 12 below. To remove the belt, proceed as follows.

4 Loosen off the two bolts securing the timing



9.2 Upper timing belt cover removal



9.4 Lower timing belt cover removal

belt tensioner. Using a large screwdriver, prise the tensioner to one side to release the timing belt tension. Secure the tensioner in this position by retightening the bolts (**see illustration**).

5 If the original timing belt is to be refitted, mark it for direction of travel and also the exact tooth engagement positions on all sprockets. Slip the belt from the camshaft, water pump and crankshaft sprockets (**see illustration**). Whilst the timing belt is removed, avoid any excessive movement of the sprockets, otherwise the piston crowns and valves may come into contact and be damaged.

6 If the belt is being removed for reasons other than routine renewal, check it carefully for any signs of uneven wear, splitting, cracks (especially at the roots of the belt teeth) or contamination with oil or coolant. Renew the belt if there is the slightest doubt about its condition. As a safety measure, the belt must be renewed as a matter of course at the intervals given in Chapter 1; if its history is unknown, the belt should be renewed irrespective of its apparent condition whenever the engine is overhauled.

Refitting

7 Before refitting the belt, check that the crankshaft is still at the TDC position, with the small projection on the belt sprocket front flange aligned with the TDC mark on the oil pump housing (**see illustration**). Also ensure that the camshaft sprocket is set with its TDC

pointer aligned with the corresponding timing mark on the cylinder head. If necessary, adjust the sprockets slightly. As previously mentioned, avoid any excessive movement of the sprockets whilst the belt is removed.

8 Engage the timing belt teeth with the teeth of the crankshaft sprocket, and then pull the belt vertically upright on its right-hand run. Keep it taut, and engage it with the teeth of the camshaft sprocket. If the original belt is being refitted, check that the belt's direction of travel is correct, and realign the belt-to-sprocket marks made during removal, to ensure that the exact original engagement positions are retained. When the belt is fully fitted on the sprockets, check that the sprocket positions have not altered.

9 Carefully manoeuvre the belt around the tensioner, and engage its teeth with the water pump sprocket, again ensuring that the TDC positions of the crankshaft and camshaft are not disturbed as the belt is finally located.

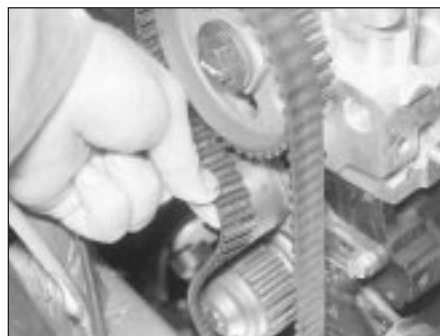
10 Refit the lower timing belt cover, and tighten its retaining bolts to the specified torque setting. Refit the crankshaft pulley, and tighten its retaining bolt to the specified torque setting.

11 To take up belt slack, loosen off the tensioner and move it towards the front of the car to apply an initial tension to the belt. Secure the tensioner in this position, then remove the flywheel ring gear locking device.

12 Rotate the crankshaft through two full revolutions in (the normal direction of travel), returning to the TDC position (camshaft



10.4 Timing belt tensioner retaining bolts (arrowed)



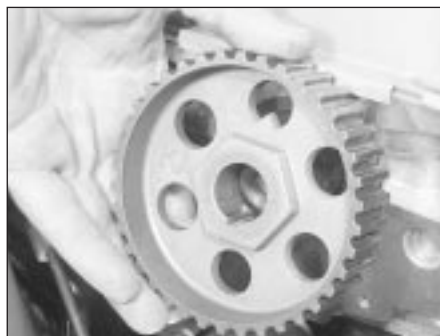
10.5 Timing belt removal



10.7 Sprocket and oil pump housing TDC marks in alignment



10.13 Checking the tension of the timing belt



11.13A Refit the camshaft sprocket . . .



11.13B . . . and tighten the retaining bolt to the specified torque whilst retaining the sprocket as shown

sprocket-to-cylinder head). Check that the crankshaft pulley notch is aligned with the TDC (0) mark on the lower half of the timing belt cover.

13 Grasp the belt between the thumb and forefinger, at the midway point between the crankshaft and camshaft sprockets on the right-hand side. If the belt tension is correct, it should just be possible to twist the belt through 90° at this point (see illustration). To adjust the belt, loosen off the tensioner retaining bolts, move the tensioner as required using a suitable screwdriver as a lever, then retighten the retaining bolts. Rotate the crankshaft to settle the belt, then recheck the tension. It may take two or three attempts to get the tension correct. On completion, tighten the tensioner bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

14 It should be noted that this setting is approximate, and the belt tension should be rechecked by a Ford dealer with the special tensioner-setting tool at the earliest opportunity.

15 Refit the starter motor (refer to Chapter 5).

16 Refit the rocker cover (see Section 5) and the upper timing belt cover (see Section 9).

17 Refit the auxiliary drivebelt, adjust its tension as described in Chapter 1, then refit the crankshaft pulley lower cover.

18 Refit the air cleaner and the air inlet ducting.

19 On completion, reconnect the battery earth lead.

11 Timing belt tensioner and sprockets - removal, inspection and refitting



Tensioner

1 Set the engine at TDC for No 1 piston as described in Section 4, then refer to Section 9 and remove the timing belt upper cover.

2 Loosen off the two bolts securing the timing belt tensioner. Using a large screwdriver, prise the tensioner to one side to release the timing belt tension.

3 Remove the tensioner bolts, and withdraw the tensioner from behind the timing belt.

4 Check the condition of the tensioner, ensuring that it rotates smoothly on its bearings, with no signs of roughness or excessive free play. Renew the tensioner if in doubt about its condition.

5 To refit the tensioner, first check that the engine is still positioned at TDC for No 1 piston, with both the camshaft and crankshaft sprocket timing marks correctly aligned as described in Section 4.

6 Refit the tensioner, guiding it in position around the timing belt, and secure with the two bolts. Move the tensioner towards the front of the car, to apply an initial tension to the belt. Secure the tensioner in this position.

7 Adjust the timing belt tension as described in Section 10, paragraphs 12 to 14.

8 Refit the timing belt upper cover on completion.

Camshaft sprocket

9 Set the engine at TDC for No 1 piston as described in Section 4, then refer to Section 9 and remove the timing belt upper cover.

10 Loosen off the two bolts securing the timing belt tensioner. Using a large screwdriver, prise the tensioner to one side to release the timing belt tension. Slip the timing belt off the camshaft sprocket.

11 Pass a bar through one of the holes in the camshaft sprocket to prevent the camshaft from rotating, then unscrew and remove the sprocket retaining bolt. Note that this bolt must be renewed when refitting the camshaft sprocket. Remove the sprocket, noting the Woodruff key fitted to the camshaft; if the key is loose, remove it for safekeeping.

12 Check the condition of the sprocket, inspecting carefully for any wear grooves, pitting or scoring around the teeth.

13 Install the Woodruff key, then fit the camshaft sprocket with a new retaining bolt. The threads of the bolt should be smeared with thread-locking compound prior to fitting. Tighten the retaining bolt to the specified torque wrench setting (see illustrations).

14 Check that the engine is still positioned at TDC for No 1 piston, with both the camshaft and crankshaft sprocket timing marks correctly aligned as described in Section 4.

15 Slip the timing belt over the camshaft sprocket, then move the tensioner towards the front of the car to apply an initial tension to the belt. Secure the tensioner in this position.

16 Adjust the timing belt tension as described in Section 10, paragraphs 12 to 14.

17 Refit the timing belt upper cover on completion.

Crankshaft sprocket

18 Remove the timing belt as described in Section 10.

19 The crankshaft sprocket can now be withdrawn. If it is a tight fit on the crankshaft, a puller or two large screwdrivers can be used to release its grip. Withdraw the thrustwasher and the Woodruff key from the crankshaft.

20 Check the condition of the sprocket, inspecting carefully for any wear grooves, pitting or scoring around the teeth.

21 Refit the thrustwasher with its curved side facing outwards, followed by the Woodruff key.

22 Lubricate the oil seal and the crankshaft sprocket with engine oil, then position the sprocket on the crankshaft with its thrust face facing outwards.

23 Using the auxiliary drivebelt pulley and its retaining bolt, draw the sprocket fully into position on the crankshaft. Remove the pulley.

24 Refit the timing belt as described in Section 10.

12 Camshaft oil seal - renewal



1 Remove the camshaft sprocket as described in the previous Section.

2 The oil seal is now accessible for removal. Note its direction of fitting, then using a suitable screwdriver or a tool with a hooked end to lever and extract the seal from its housing (but take care not to damage the housing with the tool) (see illustration).

3 Check that the housing is clean before fitting the new seal. Lubricate the lips of the seal and the running faces of the camshaft with clean engine oil. Carefully locate the seal



12.2 Camshaft front oil seal removal



12.3 Using a socket to tap the camshaft oil seal into place



13.5A Undo the rocker arm retaining nut ...

over the camshaft, and drive it squarely into position using a suitable tube or a socket (see illustration). An alternative method of fitting is to draw it squarely into position using the old sprocket bolt and a suitable distance piece.

4 With the seal fully inserted in its housing, refit the camshaft sprocket as described in the previous Section.

13 Camshaft, rocker arms and tappets - removal, inspection and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Refer to the appropriate earlier Sections in

this Chapter, and remove the timing belt upper cover and the rocker cover.

3 On carburettor models, refer to Chapter 4 and remove the fuel pump.

4 Detach, unbolt and remove the ignition coil, its support bracket and the interference capacitor from the end of the cylinder head, as described in Chapter 5.

5 Undo the retaining nuts and remove the guides, rocker arms and spacer plates (see illustrations). Keep the respective components in their original order of fitting by marking them with a piece of numbered tape, or by using a suitable sub-divided box.

6 Withdraw the hydraulic tappets, again keeping them in their original fitted sequence. The tappets should be placed in an oil bath while removed (see illustrations).

7 Unbolt and remove the lower cover beneath the crankshaft pulley, then with a spanner engaged on the crankshaft pulley bolt, turn the crankshaft over to set the engine on TDC. Refer to Section 4 for details.

8 Remove the camshaft sprocket as described in Section 11.

9 Extract the camshaft oil seal as described in Section 12.

10 Before removing the camshaft and its thrust plate, check and take note of the amount of camshaft endfloat, using a dial gauge or feeler gauges. With the camshaft endfloat measured and noted, unscrew the two retaining bolts and then extract the camshaft thrust plate from its pocket at the front end of the cylinder head (see illustrations).



13.5B ... withdraw the guide ...



13.5C ... followed by the rocker arm ...



13.5D ... and spacer plate



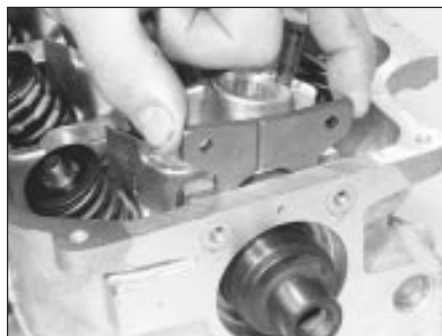
13.6A Removing a hydraulic tappet



13.6B Store tappets in clearly-marked container filled with oil to prevent oil loss



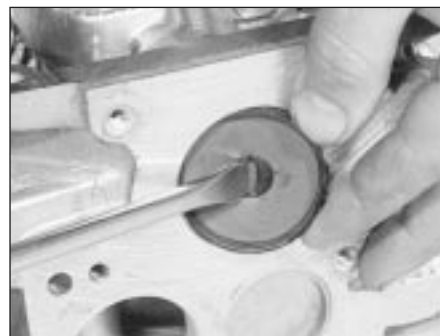
13.10A Undo the two retaining bolts (arrowed) ...



13.10B ... and lift out the camshaft thrust plate



13.11A Pierce the centre of the blanking plug ...



13.11B ... and lever it out of the cylinder head

11 At the rear end of the cylinder head, pierce the camshaft blanking plug with a suitable tool, and then lever it out of its aperture (see illustrations).

12 Withdraw the camshaft from the cylinder head at the rear (ignition coil) end (see illustration). Take care not to damage the bearings in the cylinder head as the shaft is withdrawn.

Inspection

13 Clean and inspect the various components removed for signs of excessive wear.

14 Examine the camshaft bearing journals and lobes for damage or wear. If evident, a new camshaft will be required.

15 Compare the previously-measured camshaft endfloat with that specified. If the

endfloat is outside of the specified tolerance, the thrust plate must be renewed.

16 The camshaft bearing bore diameters in the cylinder head should be measured and checked against the tolerances specified. A suitable measuring gauge will be required for this, but if this is not available, check for excessive movement between the camshaft journals and the bearings. If the bearings are found to be unacceptably worn, a new cylinder head is the only answer, as the bearings are machined directly into the head.

17 It is seldom that the hydraulic tappets are badly worn in the cylinder head bores but again, if the bores are found to be worn beyond an acceptable level, the cylinder head must be renewed.

18 If the contact surfaces of the cam lobes show signs of depression or grooving, they cannot be renovated by grinding, as the hardened surface will be removed and the overall length of the tappet(s) will be reduced. The self-adjustment point of the tappet will be exceeded as a result, so that the valve adjustment will be affected, resulting in noisy operation. Therefore, renewal of the camshaft is the only remedy in this case.

19 Inspect the rocker arm contact surfaces for excessive wear, and renew if necessary (see illustration).

Refitting

20 Refitting the camshaft and its associated components is a reversal of the removal

procedure, but note the following special points.

21 Lubricate the camshaft bearings, the camshaft and the thrust plate with clean engine oil prior to fitting them. As the camshaft is inserted, take care not to damage the bearings in the cylinder head. Refer to the Specifications for the thrust plate retaining bolt torque. When the thrust plate bolts are tightened, make a final check to ensure that the camshaft endfloat is as specified.

22 A new front oil seal must be fitted after the camshaft has been installed (see previous Section for details). It will also be necessary to insert a new blanking plug into the rear end of the cylinder head. Drive it squarely into position so that it is flush with the head (see illustration).

23 Refer to the procedure in Section 11 when refitting the camshaft sprocket.

24 Refit and tension the timing belt as described in Section 10.

25 Lubricate the hydraulic tappets with hypoid oil before refitting them into their original locations in the cylinder head.

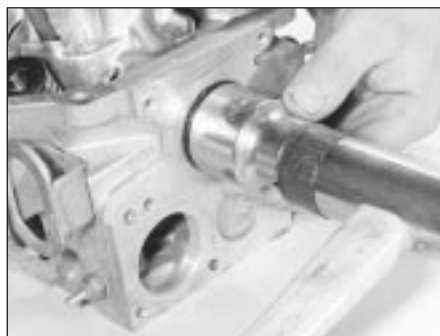
26 Lubricate and refit the rocker arms and guides in their original sequence, use new nuts and tighten them to the specified torque setting (see illustration). It is essential before each rocker arm is installed and its nut tightened, that the respective cam follower is positioned at its lowest point (in contact with the cam base circle). Turn the cam (using the



13.12 Withdraw the camshaft from the cylinder head



13.19 Inspect the rocker arm contact points indicated for excessive wear



13.22 Driving a new blanking plug into position



13.26 Lubricate the rocker arm assemblies as they are refitted

crankshaft pulley bolt) as necessary to achieve this.

27 Fit a new rocker cover gasket. To ensure that a good seal is made, check that its location groove is clear of oil, grease or any pieces of old gasket. When in position, tighten the cover retaining bolts to the specified torque setting. Ensure that the cover bolt plate washers are correctly orientated, with their grooves facing upwards.

28 Refit the remaining components with reference to the relevant Sections in this Chapter or elsewhere in the manual.

29 On completion, reconnect the battery earth lead.

14 Cylinder head - removal and refitting



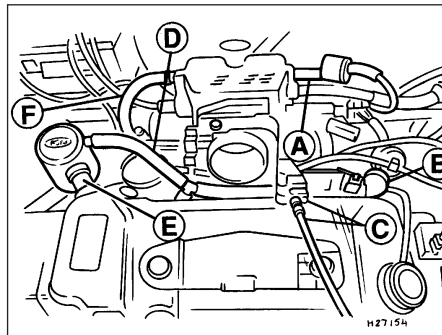
Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when disconnecting any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow naked flames or bare light bulbs in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural gas appliance (such as a clothes dryer or water heater) is installed. If you spill petrol on your skin, rinse it off immediately. Have a fire extinguisher rated for petrol fires handy, and know how to use it.

Removal

1 On fuel-injected engines, depressurise the fuel system as described in Chapter 4.

2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

3 Whenever you disconnect any vacuum lines, coolant and emissions hoses, wiring loom connectors, earth straps and fuel lines as part of the following procedure, always label them clearly, so that they can be correctly reassembled. Masking tape and/or a



14.7 Vacuum hoses and throttle cable connections on the 1.6 litre EFI fuel injected engine

- A Hose to MAP sensor
- B Crankcase ventilation breather hose
- C Throttle cable and clip
- D Oil trap hose and T-piece connector
- E Hose to oil trap
- F Hose to carbon canister solenoid valve

touch-up paint applicator work well for marking items. Take instant photos, or sketch the locations of components and brackets.

4 Remove the rocker cover as described in Section 5.

5 Loosen off the retaining clips and disconnect the upper coolant hose, the expansion tank hose and the heater hose from the thermostat housing. Also disconnect the heater hose from the inlet manifold.

6 On CFI models, disconnect the heated coolant hose from the injector unit.

7 On EFI models, disconnect the following (see illustration):

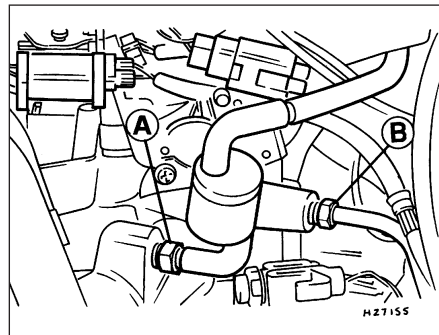
- a) The MAP sensor vacuum hose from the inlet manifold upper section.
- b) The carbon canister solenoid valve vacuum hose from the inlet manifold upper section.
- c) The oil trap vacuum hose at the "T" piece connector.
- d) The brake servo vacuum hose from the inlet manifold upper section by pressing in the clamp ring and simultaneously pulling the hose free from the connection.
- e) The coolant hose from the injector intermediate flange and at the thermostat housing.

8 Disconnect the following fuel supply/return hoses. Plug the hoses and connections, to prevent fuel spillage and the possible ingress of dirt.

- a) On carburettor models, disconnect the fuel supply hose from the pump and the return hose from the carburettor.
- b) On CFI models, pull free and detach the fuel return hose from the injection unit and the supply hose at the connector.
- c) On EFI models, detach the fuel supply hose from the fuel rail. Disconnect the return line from the fuel pressure regulator.

9 On CFI models, disconnect the brake servo vacuum hose from the inlet manifold, the MAP sensor vacuum hose from the sensor, and the carbon canister connecting hose at the injection unit (see illustration).

10 Noting their connections and routings, disconnect the following wiring connectors or multi-plugs from the following items, where applicable:



14.9 Vacuum hose to the MAP sensor (A) and the brake servo unit (B) on the 1.4 litre CFI fuel-injected engine

- a) Temperature gauge sender unit.
- b) DIS ignition coil.
- c) Coolant temperature sensor.
- d) Cooling fan thermostatic switch.
- e) Carburettor.
- f) Radio earth lead.
- g) Road speed sensor.
- h) Engine wiring loom.
- i) Inlet air temperature sensor.

11 On CFI models, detach the throttle control motor, throttle position sensor and injector lead multi-plugs (see illustration).

12 Where still attached, disconnect the HT leads from the DIS ignition coil and the spark plugs.

13 Loosen off the timing belt tensioner retaining bolts, and move the tensioner to release the tension from the drivebelt. Support the belt, and move it clear of the camshaft sprocket.

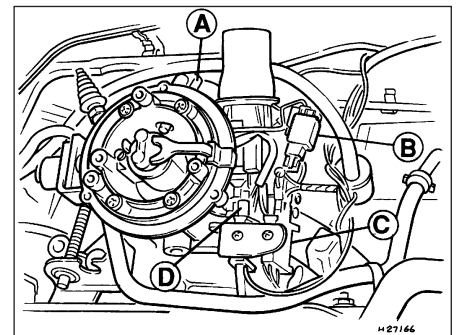
14 Apply the handbrake, then raise the vehicle at the front end, and support it on axle stands.

15 Unscrew the retaining nuts and detach the exhaust downpipe from the manifold. Remove the gasket; note that a new one must be fitted on reassembly. Tie the downpipe up to support it. Where applicable, disconnect the pulse-air supply hose from the check valve. Noting their connections (to ensure correct reassembly), disconnect the appropriate system vacuum hoses at the PVS (three port vacuum switch) under the inlet manifold.

16 Before it is released and removed, the cylinder head must first have cooled down to room temperature (about 20°C).

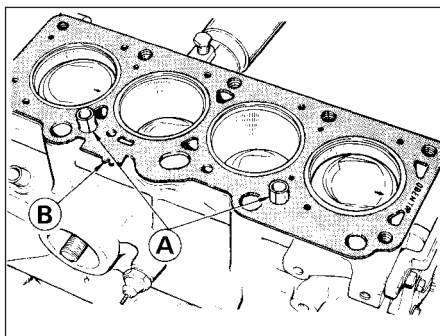
17 Unscrew the cylinder head retaining bolts progressively in the reverse order to that shown for tightening (see illustration 14.23C). The cylinder head bolts must be discarded and new bolts obtained for refitting the cylinder head.

18 Remove the cylinder head complete with its manifolds. If necessary, grip the manifolds and rock it free from the location dowels on the top face of the cylinder block. Do not



14.11 Wiring connections to be detached on the 1.4 litre CFI fuel injected engine

- A Coolant temperature sensor
- B Throttle plate control motor
- C Throttle position sensor
- D Injector



14.19 Cylinder head location dowels (A) and gasket identification teeth (B)



14.21 Position No 1 piston 20 mm down the bore



14.22A Fit the cylinder head gasket with the "OBEN/TOP" marking upwards . . .

attempt to tap it sideways or lever between the head and the block top face.

19 Remove the cylinder head gasket. This must always be renewed; it is essential that the correct type is obtained. Save the old gasket, so that the identification marks (teeth) can be used when ordering the new one (see illustration).

Refitting

20 Before refitting the cylinder head, the mating surfaces of both the head and the cylinder block must be perfectly clean, and the locating dowels must be in position. Clean the retaining bolt holes of oil. In extreme cases, it is possible for oil and coolant left in the bolt holes to crack the head due to the hydraulic effect when the bolts are inserted.



14.22B . . . and locate it over the dowels

21 To prevent the possibility of the valves and pistons coming into contact as the head is fitted, turn the crankshaft over to position No 1 piston approximately 20 mm below its TDC position in the bore (see illustration).

22 Locate the cylinder head gasket on the top face of the cylinder block, locating it over the dowels. Ensure that the gasket is fitted the correct way up, as indicated by its "OBEN-TOP" marking (see illustrations).

23 Lower the cylinder head into position, ensuring that it fits over the locating dowels, then insert the new retaining bolts. Hand-tighten the bolts initially, then tighten them in the order shown in the four stages to the specified torque setting (see illustrations). After the first two stages, mark the bolt heads with a dab of quick drying paint, so that the paint spots all face the same direction. Now tighten all the bolts in the sequence to the Stage 3 setting, by tightening them through the specified angle. Finally, angle-tighten all the bolts through the Stage 4 angle.

24 If all the bolts have been tightened equally, all of the paint spots should be facing the same direction. The bolts do not require any further tightening.

25 The camshaft toothed belt pulley should be positioned so that its TDC index mark pointer is in alignment with the TDC index spot mark on the front end face of the cylinder head (see illustration 4.6B).

26 Now turn the crankshaft pulley to bring its TDC notch in alignment with the TDC (0)

indicator on the front face of the timing belt cover, taking the shortest route (not vice-versa) (see illustration 4.5A).

27 Refit the timing belt over the camshaft sprocket, and then tension the belt as described in Section 10.

28 The remainder of the refitting procedures are a reversal of the removal. Refer to the appropriate Sections both in this Chapter, and in Chapters 3 and 4 for specific details when reconnecting the engine, cooling system and fuel system components.

29 On completion, check that the engine oil level is correct, and refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1.

30 Check that all wiring connections are securely and correctly made, and reconnect the battery on completion.

15 Sump - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Drain the engine oil as described in Chapter 1.

3 Check that the handbrake is fully applied, then raise the vehicle at the front end, and support it on axle stands.

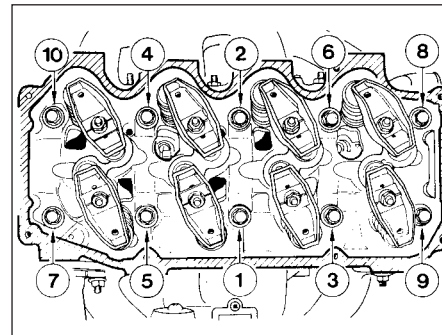
4 On models fitted with a controlled catalytic converter, pull free the oxygen sensor lead



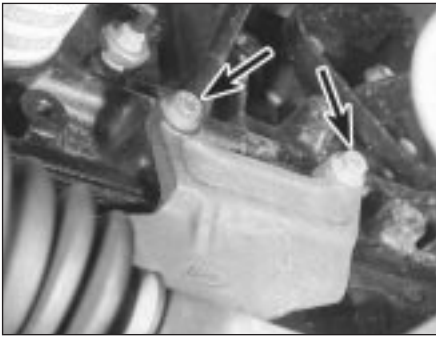
14.23A Lower the cylinder head into position



14.23B Insert the new cylinder head bolts



14.23C Cylinder head bolt tightening sequence



15.6A Auxiliary bracing bracket-to-engine bolts (oil filter side) - 1.6 litre engine only



15.6B Auxiliary bracing bracket removal from the starter motor side of the engine - 1.6 litre engine only



15.7 Removing the clutch cover plate

multi-plug, and disconnect it. If the engine has been recently run, take particular care against burning when working in the area of the catalytic converter.

5 Undo the retaining nuts, and detach the exhaust downpipe from the manifold. The flange gasket must be renewed when reconnecting. Where applicable, also detach the downpipe at the rear of the catalytic converter, and release it from the front mounting.

6 On 1.6 litre engines, undo the retaining bolts and remove the engine-to-transmission auxiliary bracing brackets (see illustrations).

7 Undo the retaining bolts, and remove the clutch cover plate from the front face of the bellhousing (see illustration).

8 Progressively unscrew the sump retaining bolts and remove them. Support and lower the sump pan, taking care not to spill any oil remaining in it as it is removed (see illustration). If the sump is stuck to the base of the crankcase, prise it free using screwdriver, but take care not to damage the sump flange face. If it is really stuck in position, check first that all of the bolts are removed, then cut around the sump gasket with a sharp knife to help in freeing the joint.

9 After the sump is removed, further oil will almost certainly continue to drip down from within the crankcase, some old newspapers

positioned underneath will soak up the spillage whilst the sump is removed.

10 Clean the sump of old oil and sludge, using paraffin or a suitable engine cleaner solution. Clean any traces of old gasket and sealer

from the mating faces of the sump and the crankcase.

Refitting

11 Smear a suitable sealing compound onto the junctions of the crankcase-to-oil seal carrier at the rear and the crankcase-to-oil pump housing at the front on each side (see illustrations).

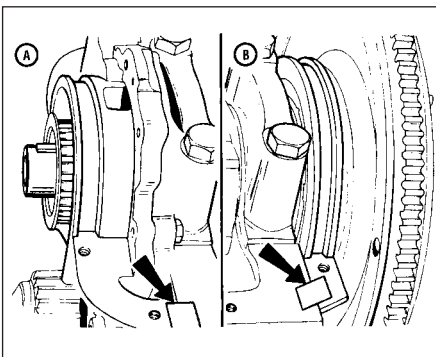
12 Insert a new rubber seal in the groove in the rear oil seal carrier and the oil pump case. As an aid to correct sump alignment when refitting it, screw ten M6 studs into the cylinder block, in the positions circled in illustration 15.14.

13 Fit a new gasket over the studs. Fit the sump into position, ensuring that the raised spacers sit in the gasket. Insert the bolts into the available holes, and finger-tighten them only at this stage. Now remove the studs and fit the remaining bolts, again finger-tight.

14 Tighten the sump bolts in a progressive, numerical sequence to the specified torque wrench setting (see illustration).

15 Fit the sump drain plug with a new sealing washer, and tighten it to the specified torque wrench setting.

16 Refit the clutch cover plate.



15.11A Sealing compound application points prior to refitting the sump

A Crankcase-to-oil pump housing
B Crankcase-to-rear oil seal carrier



15.11B Applying sealant to the oil pump-to-crankcase joint

16 Oil pump - removal and refitting



Removal

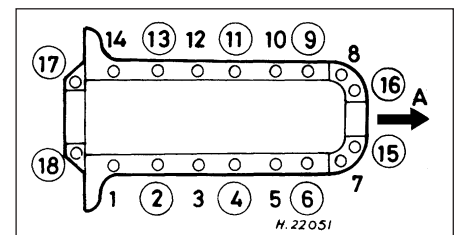
1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt (see Chapter 1).

3 Remove the crankshaft pulley (Section 8), the timing belt covers (Section 9), the timing



15.8 Removing the sump from the engine



15.14 Sump bolt tightening sequence

A Crankshaft pulley end of engine
Circled numbers indicate locations of studs for correct sump alignment (see text)



16.4 Removing the oil inlet pipe



16.8 Prime the oil pump prior to fitting



16.9A Refit the oil pump

belt, crankshaft sprocket and thrustwasher (Sections 10 and 11), and the sump (Section 15).

4 Unscrew the retaining nut/bolts and remove the oil pick-up pipe (see illustration).

5 Unbolt and withdraw the oil pump from the front face of the engine. Clean the oil pump for inspection. Refer to Section 17 for the inspection procedures. The oil seal in the oil pump housing should always be renewed (Section 18).

Refitting

6 Before refitting the oil pump and the associated fittings, clean off the respective mating faces. A new oil pump gasket must be obtained, as well as the seals and gaskets for

the other associated components to be refitted.

7 When refitting the oil pump, precautionary measures must be taken to avoid the possibility of damaging the new oil seal as it is engaged over the shoulder and onto its journal on the crankshaft. Extract the Woodruff key from the groove in the crankshaft, then cut a plastic guide which will furl over and protrude beyond the shoulder of the seal journal on the crankshaft. This will allow the seal to ride over the step, and avoid damaging the seal lip as it is pushed into position on the crankshaft.

8 If a new oil pump is being fitted or the old pump is to be re-used after cleaning and inspection, first prime the pump by squirting clean engine oil into it, and simultaneously rotating the drivegear a few times (see illustration).

9 Align the pump gear flats with those on the crankshaft, then fit the oil pump. Check that the sump mating faces of the oil pump and the base of the crankcase are flush each side, then tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque setting. Remove the protective guide (see illustrations).

10 Refit the oil pick-up tube to the oil pump, using a new gasket. Refer to the Specifications for the tightening torque details.

11 Slide the thrustwasher onto the front end of the crankshaft, then insert the Woodruff key into position in the groove in the crankshaft (see illustration). The key must be located with its flat edge parallel with the line of the

crankshaft, to ensure that the crankshaft sprocket slides fully into position as it is being refitted.

12 Refit the sump, crankshaft sprocket, the timing belt, timing belt cover and drivebelt pulley (as described in the appropriate earlier Sections of this Chapter). Refit and adjust the drivebelt as described in Chapter 1.

13 On completion, lower the vehicle and reconnect the battery.

17 Oil pump - dismantling, inspection and reassembly



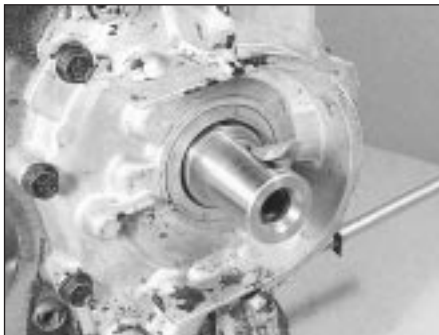
1 The oil pump fitted is a low-friction rotor-type, driven from the front end of the crankshaft. Where a high-mileage engine is being reconditioned, it is recommended that a new oil pump is fitted.

2 To inspect the rotor assembly, first remove the pump from the engine (Section 16), then undo the retaining screws and remove the cover plate (see illustration). Remove the O-ring seal.

3 Clean the rotors and the inside of the pump housing, then visually inspect the various components for signs of excessive wear and scoring. Check the pump components for wear using feeler gauges in the same manner as that described in Part A of this Chapter, Section 16. Refer to the accompanying illustrations, and to the Specifications Section at the start of Part B (see illustrations).



16.9B With the oil pump refitted, remove the protective guide (arrowed)



16.11 Locating the Woodruff key into the groove in the crankshaft



17.2 Oil pump cover plate retaining screws (arrowed)



17.3A Outer rotor-to-oil pump body clearance check



17.3B Outer-to-inner rotor clearance check



17.3C Rotor endfloat check



17.4 Inner and outer rotor matchmarks (arrowed)

4 When reassembling the pump, ensure that the inner (driving) and outer (driven) rotors are located with the corresponding indented matchmarks facing the same way (see illustration).

18 Crankshaft oil seals - renewal



Front oil seal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Apply the handbrake, then raise the vehicle at the front end, and support it on axle stands.
- 3 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1.
- 4 Remove the crankshaft pulley (Section 8), the timing belt covers (Section 9), the timing belt (Section 10) and crankshaft sprocket, Woodruff key and thrustwasher (Section 11).
- 5 The oil seal is now accessible for removal from the front face of the oil pump housing (see illustration). To withdraw the seal, a hooked tool will be required; if available, use Ford special tool No 21-096. Take care not to damage the oil pump housing during removal. As it is removed, note the fitted orientation of the seal in its housing.
- 6 Clean the oil pump housing and the crankshaft stub, then lubricate the lips of the new seal and the crankshaft front stub with clean engine oil.



18.5 Crankshaft front oil seal - seen from below (arrowed)

- 7 The oil seal should be drawn into position using the Ford special tool No 21-093A. Failing this, use a tube of suitable diameter, with the crankshaft pulley bolt and washers. Do not hammer the seal into position. To protect the seal lips as it is fitted onto the crankshaft, cut a thin sheet of plastic to suit and furl it round the front of the crankshaft, over the journal shoulder (see illustration 17.18 in Part C of this Chapter).
- 8 When the seal is fully fitted, remove the special tool (or fabricated tool) and withdraw the plastic protector. Check that the crankshaft is still at the TDC position and refit the Woodruff key, thrustwasher and sprocket. Refit and tension the timing belt, then refit the timing belt cover and crankshaft pulley as described in the appropriate Sections earlier in this Chapter.
- 9 Refit and adjust the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1.
- 10 On completion, lower the vehicle and reconnect the battery.

Rear oil seal

- 11 With the engine or transmission removed from the vehicle for access, remove the clutch as described in Chapter 8.
- 12 Remove the flywheel/driveplate as described in Section 20.
- 13 If available, use Ford tool No 21-151 or a suitable clawed tool to extract the seal from its housing. If the seal housing is removed from the rear face of the engine, the seal can

be removed as described in paragraph 18. As it is removed, note the direction of fitting, and take care not to damage the seal housing as the seal is extracted.

14 Clean the seal housing, the crankshaft rear flange face, and the flywheel/driveplate mating surfaces.

15 One of two possible methods may be used to insert the new oil seal, depending on the tools available.

16 If Ford special service tool No 21-095 is available, lubricate the seal lips of the seal and its running face on the crankshaft with clean engine oil. Position the seal (correctly orientated) into the special tool, then draw the seal into the housing using two flywheel/driveplate securing bolts so that the seal is against the stop.

17 If the correct Ford service tool is not available, it will be necessary to remove the oil seal carrier housing. To do this, first remove the sump as described in Section 15, then unscrew the seal housing retaining bolts and remove the housing from the rear face of the crankcase.

18 Drive the old seal from the housing by carefully tapping it from its aperture using a suitable punch as shown (see illustration). As it is removed, note the direction of fitting, and take care not to damage the seal housing as the seal is extracted.

19 New gaskets will be required for the seal housing and sump during reassembly. Clean the mating faces of the seal housing, the crankcase and sump. Insert the new seal



18.18 Rear oil seal removal



18.19 Rear oil seal installation - housing mounted in a vice with protected jaws



20.2 Flywheel retaining bolts

squarely into its housing. To avoid damaging the seal or the housing, place a flat piece of wood across the face of the seal, and carefully tap or draw the seal into place (**see illustration**). Do not allow the seal to tilt in the housing as it is being fitted.

20 Lubricate the running surface on the crankshaft and the oil seal lip with clean engine oil. Locate a new gasket onto the rear face of the crankcase, and refit the oil seal housing and seal. To avoid damaging the lips of the seal as it is passed over the end of the crankshaft, cut a thin sheet of plastic to suit and furl it round the rear flange of the crankshaft so that it protrudes, and press the seal over it. With the seal in position, withdraw the plastic protector. Centralise the seal on the shaft, check that the housing-to-sump flange faces are flush to the sump face on the

base of the crankcase, then insert and tighten the housing retaining bolts to the specified torque.

21 Refit the sump with reference to Section 15.

22 Refit the flywheel/driveplate as described in Section 20.

23 Refit the clutch as described in Chapter 8.

24 Refit the engine or transmission, as applicable.

19 Engine/transmission mountings - renewal



The procedures for renewing the engine/transmission mountings on the CVH engine are much the same as those described for the HCS engine in Part A of this Chapter. Refer to Part A for details.

20 Flywheel/driveplate - removal, inspection and refitting



Removal

1 Access to the flywheel (manual transmission) or driveplate (automatic transmission) is gained by first removing the transmission (Chapter 7). On manual transmission models, remove the clutch (Chapter 8).

2 Unscrew and remove the six flywheel/driveplate retaining bolts (**see illustration**), and carefully withdraw the flywheel/driveplate from the rear face of the crankshaft. Take care not to drop the flywheel, as it is heavy. Note that the retaining bolts must be renewed when refitting.

Inspection

3 The inspection procedures for the flywheel/driveplate are the same as those described for the HCS engine in Part A of this Chapter, but note that the grinding procedures do not apply to automatic transmission models (the driveplate cannot be reground).

Refitting

4 Check that the mating faces of the flywheel/driveplate and crankshaft are clean before refitting.

5 Smear the new retaining bolt threads with thread-locking compound. Fit the flywheel/driveplate into position on the rear end face of the crankshaft. Check that all of the bolt holes in the flywheel/driveplate are in exact alignment with the corresponding bolt holes in the crankshaft, then insert the bolts and tighten them in a progressive sequence to the specified torque wrench setting.

6 Refit the clutch (manual transmission models) as described in Chapter 8.

7 Refit the transmission (according to type) as described in Chapter 7.

Chapter 2 Part C:






Zetec engine - in-car engine repair procedures

Contents

Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal	See Chapter 1	Engine/transmission mountings - inspection and renewal	19
Camshaft oil seals - renewal	12	Exhaust manifold - removal, inspection and refitting	7
Camshafts and hydraulic tappets - removal, inspection and refitting	13	Flywheel/driveplate - removal, inspection and refitting	18
Compression test - description and interpretation	3	General information	1
Crankshaft oil seals - renewal	17	Inlet manifold - removal and refitting	6
Crankshaft pulley - removal and refitting	8	Oil pump - removal, inspection and refitting	16
Cylinder head - removal and refitting	14	Repair operations possible with the engine in the vehicle	2
Cylinder head and valve components - cleaning and inspection	See Chapter 2D	Spark plug renewal	See Chapter 1
Cylinder head cover - removal and refitting	5	Sump - removal and refitting	15
Engine oil and filter change	See Chapter 1	Timing belt - removal, refitting and adjustment	10
Engine oil level check	See Chapter 1	Timing belt covers - removal and refitting	9
Engine overhaul - general information	See Chapter 2D	Timing belt tensioner and toothed pulleys - removal, inspection and refitting	11
Engine/transmission - removal and refitting	See Chapter 2D	Top Dead Centre (TDC) for No 1 piston - locating	4
		Water pump - removal and refitting	See Chapter 3

2C

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

Specifications

General

Engine type	Four-cylinder, in-line, double overhead camshafts
Engine code:	
1.6 litre models	LIE
1.8 litre models	RDA, RQB
Capacity:	
1.6 litre models	1597 cc
1.8 litre models	1796 cc
Bore:	
1.6 litre models	76.0 mm
1.8 litre models	80.6 mm
Stroke - all models	88.0 mm
Compression ratio:	
1.6 litre models	10.3:1
1.8 litre models	10.0:1
Firing order	1-3-4-2 (No 1 cylinder at timing belt end)
Direction of crankshaft rotation	Clockwise (seen from right-hand side of vehicle)

Cylinder head

Hydraulic tappet bore inside diameter	28.395 to 28.425 mm
---------------------------------------	---------------------

Camshafts and hydraulic tappets

Camshaft bearing journal diameter	25.960 to 25.980 mm
Camshaft bearing journal-to-cylinder head running clearance	0.020 to 0.070 mm
Camshaft endfloat	0.080 to 0.220 mm

Lubrication

Engine oil type/specification	See Chapter 1
Engine oil capacity	See Chapter 1
Oil pressure	No information available at time of writing
Oil pump clearances	No information available at time of writing

Torque wrench settings	Nm	lbf ft
Cylinder head cover bolts:		
Stage 1	2	1.5
Stage 2	7	5
Camshaft toothed pulley bolts	68	50
Camshaft bearing cap bolts:		
Stage 1	10	7
Stage 2	19	14
Cylinder head bolts:		
Stage 1	25	18
Stage 2	45	33
Stage 3	Angle-tighten a further 105°	
Timing belt cover fasteners:		
Upper-to-middle (outer) cover bolts	4	3
Cover-to-cylinder head or block bolts	7	5
Cover studs-to-cylinder head or block	9 to 11	6.5 to 8
Timing belt tensioner bolt	38	28
Timing belt tensioner backplate locating peg	8 to 11	6 to 8
Timing belt tensioner spring retaining pin	10	7
Timing belt guide pulley bolts	35 to 40	26 to 30
Water pump pulley bolts	10	7
Auxiliary drivebelt idler pulley	48	35
Inlet manifold nuts and bolts	18	13
Alternator mounting bracket-to-cylinder block bolts	47	35
Cylinder head support plates:		
Front plate Torx screws - to power steering pump/air conditioning compressor mounting bracket and cylinder head	47	35
Rear plate/engine lifting eye to alternator mounting bracket and cylinder head bolts	47	35
Front engine lifting eye bolt	16	12
Inlet and exhaust manifold studs-to-cylinder head	10 maximum	7 maximum
Exhaust manifold heat shield bolts:		
Shield-to-cylinder head	7	5
Shield/dipstick tube	10	7
Shield/coolant pipe-to-manifold	23	17
Exhaust manifold nuts	16	12
Air conditioning refrigerant pipe-to-exhaust manifold bolts	10	7
Crankshaft pulley bolt	108 to 115	80 to 85
Oil pump-to-cylinder block bolts	10	7
Oil pick-up pipe-to-pump screws	10	7
Oil baffle/pump pick-up pipe nuts	19	14
Oil filter adapter-to-pump	18 to 25	13 to 18
Oil pressure warning light switch	27	20
Sump bolts	21 to 22	15 to 16
Coolant pipe-to-sump bolt	10	7
Flywheel/driveplate bolts	110 to 112	81 to 83
Crankshaft left-hand oil seal carrier bolts	22	16

Note: Refer to Part D of this Chapter for remaining torque wrench settings.

1 General information

How to use this Chapter

This Part of Chapter 2 is devoted to repair procedures possible while the engine is still installed in the vehicle, and includes only the Specifications relevant to those procedures. Similar information concerning the 1.3 litre HCS engine, and the 1.4 and 1.6 litre CVH engines, will be found in Parts A and B of this Chapter respectively. Since these procedures are based on the assumption that the engine is installed in the vehicle, if the engine has been removed from the vehicle and

mounted on a stand, some of the preliminary dismantling steps outlined will not apply.

Information concerning engine/transmission removal and refitting, and engine overhaul, can be found in Part D of this Chapter, which also includes the Specifications relevant to those procedures.

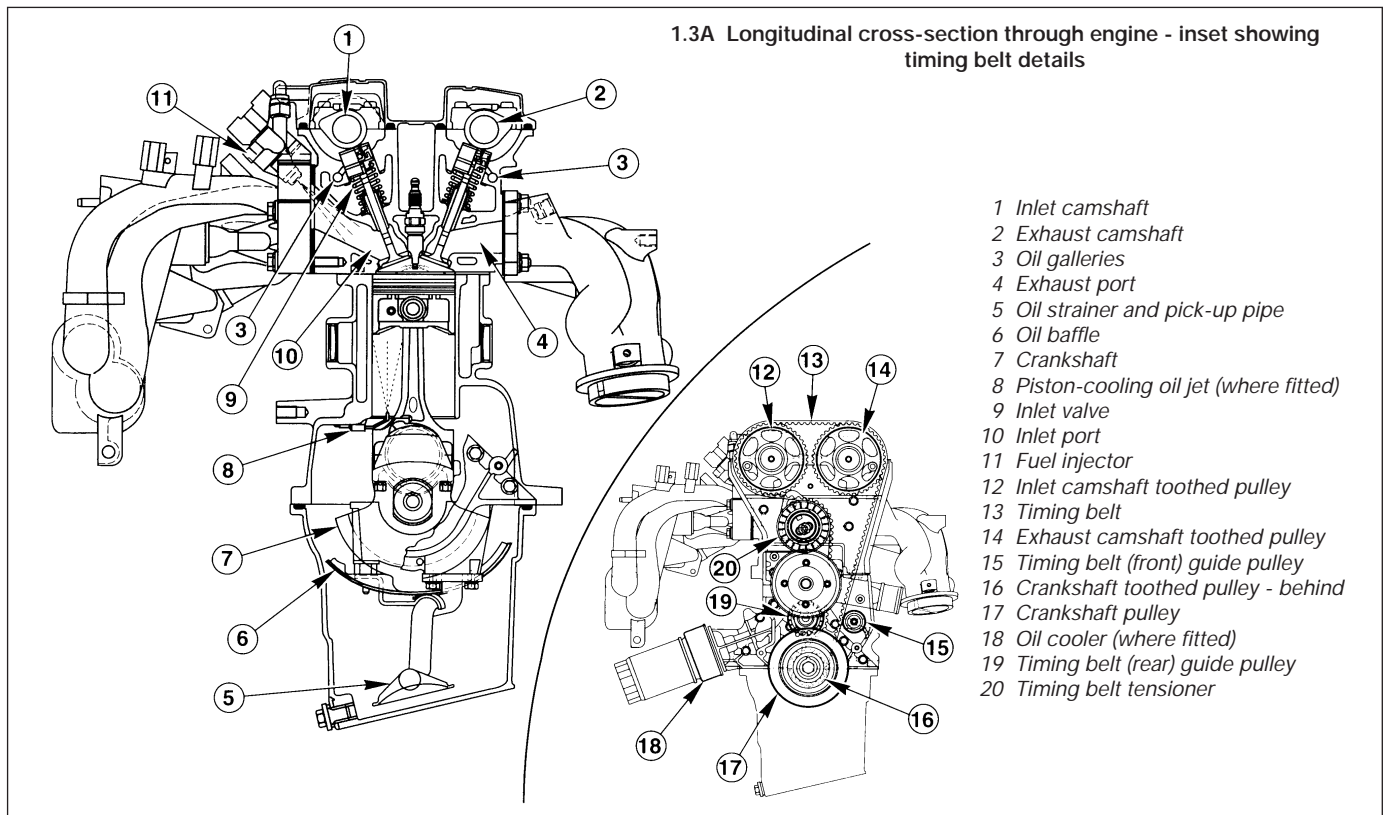
General description - Zetec engine

The Zetec engine, (formerly Zeta), is of sixteen-valve, double overhead camshaft (DOHC), four-cylinder, in-line type, mounted transversely at the front of the vehicle, with the (clutch and) transmission on its left-hand end (see illustrations).

Apart from the plastic timing belt covers and the cast-iron cylinder block/crankcase, all

major engine castings are of aluminium alloy.

The crankshaft runs in five main bearings, the centre main bearing's upper half incorporating thrustwashers to control crankshaft endfloat. The connecting rods rotate on horizontally-split bearing shells at their big-ends. The pistons are attached to the connecting rods by gudgeon pins which are an interference fit in the connecting rod small-end eyes. The aluminium alloy pistons are fitted with three piston rings: two compression rings and an oil control ring. After manufacture, the cylinder bores and piston skirts are measured and classified into three grades, which must be carefully matched together, to ensure the correct piston/cylinder clearance; no oversizes are available to permit reboring.



2C

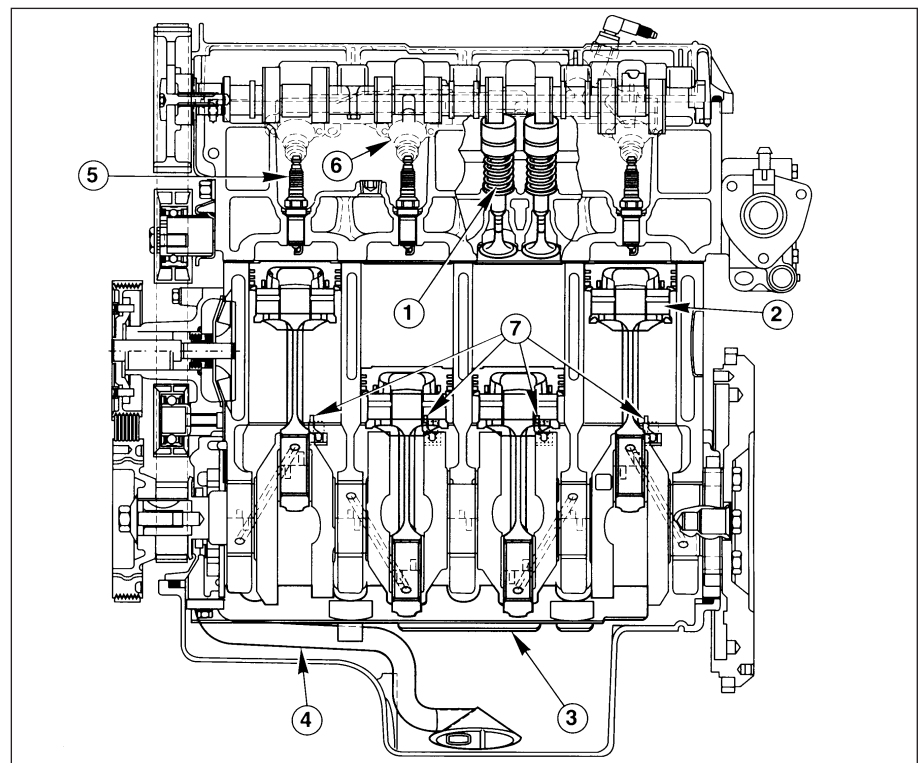
The inlet and exhaust valves are each closed by coil springs; they operate in guides which are shrink-fitted into the cylinder head, as are the valve seat inserts.

Both camshafts are driven by the same toothed timing belt, each operating eight valves via self-adjusting hydraulic tappets, thus eliminating the need for routine checking and adjustment of the valve clearances. Each camshaft rotates in five bearings that are line-bored directly in the cylinder head and the (bolted-on) bearing caps; this means that the bearing caps are not available separately from the cylinder head, and must not be interchanged with caps from another engine.

The water pump is bolted to the right-hand end of the cylinder block, inboard of the timing belt, and is driven with the power steering pump and alternator by a flat "polyvee"-type auxiliary drivebelt from the crankshaft pulley.

When working on this engine, note that Torx-type (both male and female heads) and hexagon socket (Allen head) fasteners are widely used; a good selection of bits, with the necessary adapters, will be required, so that these can be unscrewed without damage and, on reassembly, tightened to the torque wrench settings specified.

Lubrication is by means of an eccentric-rotor trochoidal pump, which is mounted on the crankshaft right-hand end, and draws oil through a strainer located in the sump. The pump forces oil through an externally-mounted full-flow cartridge-type filter - on

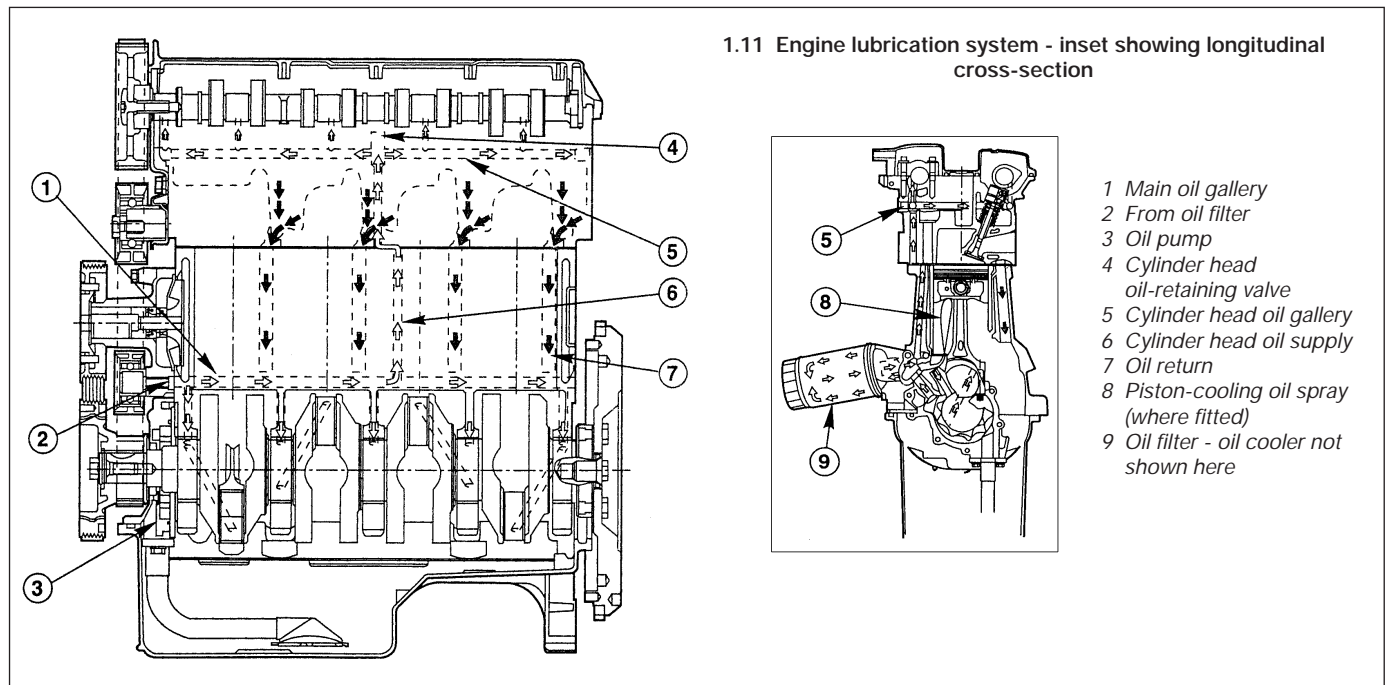


1.3B Lateral cross-section through engine

- 1 Exhaust valve
2 Piston
3 Oil baffle

- 4 Oil strainer and pick-up pipe
5 Spark plug

- 6 Fuel injector
7 Piston-cooling oil jets (where fitted)



some versions of the engine, an oil cooler is fitted to the oil filter mounting, so that clean oil entering the engine's galleries is cooled by the main engine cooling system (see illustration).

Valve clearances - general

It is necessary for a clearance to exist between the tip of each valve stem and the valve operating mechanism, to allow for the expansion of the various components as the engine reaches normal operating temperature.

On most older engine designs, this meant that the valve clearances (also known as "tappet" clearances) had to be checked and adjusted regularly. If the clearances were allowed to be too slack, the engine would be very noisy, its power output would suffer, and its fuel consumption would increase. If the clearances were allowed to be too tight, the engine's power output would be reduced, and the valves and their seats could be severely damaged.

The Zetec engine employs hydraulic tappets which use the lubricating system's oil pressure to automatically take up the clearance between each camshaft lobe and its respective valve stem. Therefore, there is no need for regular checking and adjustment of the valve clearances, but it is **essential** that only good-quality oil of the recommended viscosity and specification is used in the engine, and that this oil is always changed at the recommended intervals. If this advice is not followed, the oilways and tappets may become clogged with particles of dirt, or deposits of burnt (inferior) engine oil, so that the system cannot work properly; ultimately, one or more of the tappets may fail, and expensive repairs may be required.

On starting the engine from cold, there will be a slight delay while full oil pressure builds up in all parts of the engine, especially in the tappets; the valve components, therefore, may well "rattle" for about 10 seconds or so, and then quieten. This is a normal state of affairs, and is nothing to worry about, provided that all tappets quieten quickly and stay quiet.

After the vehicle has been standing for several days, the valve components may "rattle" for longer than usual, as nearly all the oil will have drained away from the engine's top-end components and bearing surfaces. While this is only to be expected, care must be taken not to damage the engine under these circumstances - avoid high speed running until all the tappets are refilled with oil and operating normally. With the vehicle stationary, hold the engine at no more than a fast idle speed (maximum 2000 to 2500 rpm) for 10 to 15 seconds, or until the noise ceases. *Do not run the engine at more than 3000 rpm until the tappets are fully recharged with oil and the noise has ceased.*

If the valve components are thought to be noisy, or if a light rattle persists from the top end after the engine has warmed up to normal operating temperature, take the vehicle to a Ford dealer for expert advice. Depending on the mileage covered and the usage to which each vehicle has been put, some vehicles may be noisier than others; only a good mechanic experienced in these engines can tell if the noise level is typical for the vehicle's mileage, or if a genuine fault exists. If any tappet's operation is faulty, it must be renewed (Section 13).

2 Repair operations possible with the engine in the vehicle

The following major repair operations can be accomplished without removing the engine from the vehicle. However, owners should note that any operation involving the removal of the sump requires careful forethought, depending on the level of skill and the tools and facilities available; refer to the relevant text for details:

- a) Compression pressure - testing.
- b) Cylinder head cover - removal and refitting.
- c) Timing belt covers - removal and refitting.
- d) Timing belt - renewal.
- e) Timing belt tensioner and toothed pulleys - removal and refitting.
- f) Camshaft oil seals - renewal.
- g) Camshafts and hydraulic tappets - removal and refitting.
- h) Cylinder head - removal, overhaul and refitting.
- i) Cylinder head and pistons - decarbonising.
- j) Sump - removal and refitting.
- k) Crankshaft oil seals - renewal.
- l) Oil pump - removal and refitting.
- m) Piston/connecting rod assemblies - removal and refitting (but see note below).
- n) Flywheel/driveplate - removal and refitting.
- o) Engine/transmission mountings - removal and refitting.

Clean the engine compartment and the exterior of the engine with some type of degreasant before any work is done. It will

make the job easier, and will help to keep dirt out of the internal areas of the engine.

Depending on the components involved, it may be helpful to remove the bonnet, to improve access to the engine as repairs are performed (refer to Chapter 11 if necessary). Cover the front wings to prevent damage to the paint; special covers are available, but an old bedspread or blanket will also work.

If vacuum, exhaust, oil or coolant leaks develop, indicating a need for component/gasket or seal replacement, the repairs can generally be made with the engine in the vehicle. The inlet and exhaust manifold gaskets, sump gasket, crankshaft oil seals and cylinder head gasket are all accessible with the engine in place.

Exterior components such as the inlet and exhaust manifolds, the sump, the oil pump, the water pump, the starter motor, the alternator and the fuel system components can be removed for repair with the engine in place.

Since the cylinder head can be removed without lifting out the engine, camshaft and valve component servicing can also be accomplished with the engine in the vehicle, as can renewal of the timing belt and toothed pulleys.

In extreme cases caused by a lack of necessary equipment, repair or renewal of piston rings, pistons, connecting rods and big-end bearings is possible with the engine in the vehicle. However, this practice is not recommended, because of the cleaning and preparation work that must be done to the components involved, and because of the amount of preliminary dismantling work required - these operations are therefore covered in Part D of this Chapter.

3 Compression test - description and interpretation



1 When engine performance is down, or if misfiring occurs which cannot be attributed to the ignition or fuel systems, a compression test can provide diagnostic clues as to the engine's condition. If the test is performed regularly, it can give warning of trouble before any other symptoms become apparent.

2 The engine must be fully warmed-up to normal operating temperature, the oil level must be correct, the battery must be fully charged, and the spark plugs must be removed. The aid of an assistant will be required also.

3 Disable the ignition system by unplugging the ignition coil's electrical connector, and remove fuse 14 to disconnect the fuel pump.

4 Fit a compression tester to the No 1 cylinder spark plug hole - the type of tester which screws into the plug thread is to be preferred.

5 Have the assistant hold the throttle wide open and crank the engine on the starter

motor; after one or two revolutions, the compression pressure should build up to a maximum figure, and then stabilise. Record the highest reading obtained.

6 Repeat the test on the remaining cylinders, recording the pressure developed in each.

7 Due to the variety of testers available, and the fluctuation in starter motor speed when cranking the engine, different readings are often obtained when carrying out the compression test. For this reason, actual compression pressure figures are not given by the manufacturer's, but a typical reading would be in excess of 12 bars. All cylinders should produce very similar pressures; any difference greater than 10% indicates the existence of a fault. Note that the compression should build up quickly in a healthy engine; low compression on the first stroke, followed by gradually-increasing pressure on successive strokes, indicates worn piston rings. A low compression reading on the first stroke, which does not build up during successive strokes, indicates leaking valves or a blown head gasket (a cracked head could also be the cause). Deposits on the undersides of the valve heads can also cause low compression.

8 If the pressure in any cylinder is considerably lower than the others, introduce a teaspoonful of clean oil into that cylinder through its spark plug hole, and repeat the test.

9 If the addition of oil temporarily improves the compression pressure, this indicates that bore or piston ring wear is responsible for the pressure loss. No improvement suggests that leaking or burnt valves, or a blown head gasket, may be to blame.

10 A low reading from two adjacent cylinders is almost certainly due to the head gasket having blown between them; the presence of coolant in the engine oil will confirm this.

11 If one cylinder is about 20 percent lower than the others and the engine has a slightly rough idle, a worn camshaft lobe or faulty hydraulic tappet could be the cause.

12 If the compression is unusually high, the combustion chambers are probably coated with carbon deposits. If this is the case, the cylinder head should be removed and decarbonised.

13 On completion of the test, refit the spark plugs, reconnect the ignition system, and refit the fuel pump fuse.

4 Top Dead Centre (TDC) for No 1 piston - locating



General

1 Top Dead Centre (TDC) is the highest point in its travel up and down its cylinder bore that each piston reaches as the crankshaft rotates. While each piston reaches TDC both at the top of the compression stroke and again at

the top of the exhaust stroke, for the purpose of timing the engine, TDC refers to the piston position (usually No 1 piston) at the top of its compression stroke.

2 It is useful for several servicing procedures to be able to position the engine at TDC.

3 No 1 piston and cylinder are at the right-hand (timing belt) end of the engine (right- and left-hand are always quoted as seen from the driver's seat). Note that the crankshaft rotates clockwise when viewed from the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Locating TDC

4 Remove all the spark plugs (Chapter 1).

5 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1) - unless the starter motor is to be used to turn the engine.

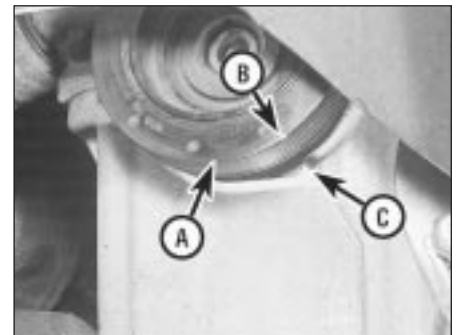
6 Apply the handbrake and ensure that the transmission is in neutral, then jack up the front right-hand side of the vehicle and support on an axle stand. Remove the roadwheel.

7 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt cover (see Chapter 1) to expose the crankshaft pulley and timing marks.

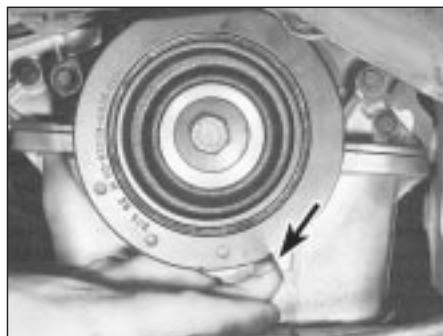
8 It is best to rotate the crankshaft using a spanner applied to the crankshaft pulley bolt; however, it is possible also to use the starter motor (switched on either by an assistant using the ignition key, or by using a remote starter switch) to bring the engine close to TDC, then finish with a spanner. If the starter is used, be sure to disconnect the battery lead immediately it is no longer required.

9 Note the two pairs of notches in the inner and outer rims of the crankshaft pulley. In the normal direction of crankshaft rotation (clockwise, seen from the right-hand side of the vehicle) the first pair of notches are irrelevant to the vehicles covered in this manual, while the second pair indicate TDC when aligned with the rear edge of the raised mark on the sump. Rotate the crankshaft clockwise until the second pair of notches align with the edge of the sump mark; use a straight edge extended out from the sump if greater accuracy is required (see illustrations).

10 Nos 1 and 4 cylinders are now at TDC, one of them on the compression stroke.



4.9A Do not use crankshaft pulley's first pair of notches "A" - align second pair of notches "B" with raised rib on sump "C" . . .



4.9B ... use a straight edge extended out from the sump (arrowed) if greater accuracy is required

Remove the oil filler cap; if No 4 cylinder exhaust cam lobe is pointing to the rear of the vehicle and slightly downwards, it is No 1 cylinder that is correctly positioned. If the lobe is pointing horizontally forwards, rotate the crankshaft one full turn (360°) clockwise until the pulley notches align again, and the lobe is pointing to the rear and slightly down. No 1 cylinder will then be at TDC on the compression stroke.

11 Once No 1 cylinder has been positioned at TDC on the compression stroke, TDC for any of the other cylinders can then be located by rotating the crankshaft clockwise 180° at a time and following the firing order (see Specifications).

12 An alternative method of locating TDC is to remove the cylinder head cover (see Section 5) and to rotate the crankshaft (clockwise, as described in paragraph 8 above) until the inlet valves for the cylinder concerned have opened and just closed again. Insert a length of wooden dowel (approximately 150 mm/6 in long) or similar into the spark plug hole until it rests on the piston crown, and slowly further rotate the crankshaft (taking care not to allow the dowel to be trapped in the cylinder) until the dowel stops rising - the piston is now at the top of its compression stroke, and the dowel can be removed.

13 There is a "dead" area around TDC (as the piston stops rising, pauses and then begins to descend) which makes difficult the exact



5.4 Disconnecting crankcase breather hose from cylinder head cover union

location of TDC by this method; if accuracy is required, either establish carefully the exact mid-point of the dead area, or refer to the timing marks (paragraph 9 above).

5 Cylinder head cover - removal and refitting

1 Remove the air inlet hose and inlet duct as described in Chapter 4B.

2 Disconnect the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage as described in Chapter 4B.

3 Remove the timing belt upper cover (see Section 9).

4 Disconnect the crankcase breather hose from the cylinder head cover union (see illustration).

5 Unplug the HT leads from the spark plugs and withdraw them, unclipping the leads from the cover.

6 Working progressively, unscrew the cylinder head cover retaining bolts, noting the spacer sleeve and rubber seal at each, then withdraw the cover (see illustration).

7 Discard the cover gasket; this *must* be renewed whenever it is disturbed. Check that the sealing faces are undamaged, and that the rubber seal at each retaining bolt is serviceable; renew any worn or damaged seals.

8 On refitting, clean the cover and cylinder



5.6 Removing cylinder head cover

head gasket faces carefully, then fit a new gasket to the cover, ensuring that it locates correctly in the cover grooves (see illustration).

9 Refit the cover to the cylinder head, then insert the rubber seal and spacer sleeve at each bolt location (see illustration). Start all bolts finger-tight, ensuring that the gasket remains seated in its groove.

10 Working in a diagonal sequence from the centre outwards, and in two stages (see Specifications), tighten the cover bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

11 Refit the HT leads, clipping them into place so that they are correctly routed; each is numbered, and can also be identified by the numbering on its respective coil terminal.

12 Reconnect the crankcase breather hose, and refit the timing belt upper cover. Reconnect and adjust the accelerator cable, then refit the air inlet hose and duct (see Chapter 4B).

6 Inlet manifold - removal and refitting



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when disconnecting any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow naked flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural gas appliance (such as a clothes dryer or water heater) is installed. If you spill petrol on your skin, rinse it off immediately. Have a fire extinguisher rated for petrol fires handy, and know how to use it.

Removal

1 Park the vehicle on firm, level ground and apply the handbrake firmly.

2 Depressurise the fuel system (see Chapter 4B).

3 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1.

4 Remove the air inlet hose and duct as described in Chapter 4B.

5 Referring to Chapter 4B if necessary,



5.8 Ensure gasket is located correctly in cover groove



5.9 Ensure rubber seal is fitted to each cover bolt spacer, as shown



6.5A Disconnect the end of the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage ...



6.5B ... then release the cable adjusting clip and withdraw the cable from the support bracket



6.10 Disconnecting the vacuum hoses from the inlet manifold

disconnect the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage (see illustrations).

6 Disconnect the crankcase breather hose from the cylinder head cover union.

7 Unbolt the upper part of the exhaust manifold heat shield.

8 Remove the two screws securing the wiring "rail" to the top of the manifold - this is simply so that it can be moved as required to reach the manifold bolts. Unplug their electrical connectors to disconnect the camshaft position sensor and the coolant temperature sensor, then unclip the wiring from the ignition coil bracket, and secure it to the manifold.

9 Remove the three screws securing the wiring "rail" to the rear of the manifold. Releasing its wire clip, unplug the large electrical connector (next to the fuel pressure regulator) to disconnect the wiring of the manifold components from the engine wiring loom.

10 Marking or labelling them as they are unplugged, disconnect the vacuum hoses as follows:

- a) One from the rear of the throttle housing (only the one hose - there is no need to disconnect the second hose running to the fuel pressure regulator).
- b) One from the union on the manifold's left-hand end (see illustration).
- c) The braking system vacuum servo unit hose (see Chapter 9 for details).

11 Equalise the pressure in the fuel tank by removing the filler cap, then undo the fuel

feed and return lines connecting the engine to the chassis (see Chapter 4B). Plug or cap all open fittings.

12 Unbolt the earth lead from the cylinder head rear support plate/engine lifting eye, then unscrew the bolt securing the support plate/lifting eye.

13 Unscrew the nuts and bolts securing the manifold to the cylinder head, and withdraw it. Take care not to damage vulnerable components as the manifold assembly is manoeuvred out of the engine compartment.

Refitting

14 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- a) When using a scraper and solvent to remove all traces of old gasket material and sealant from the manifold and cylinder head, be careful to ensure that you do not scratch or damage the mating faces of either components. If the gasket was leaking, have the mating surfaces checked for warpage at an automotive machine shop.
- b) Provided the relevant mating surfaces are clean and flat, a new gasket will be sufficient to ensure the joint is gastight. **Do not** use any kind of silicone-based sealant on any part of the fuel system or inlet manifold.
- c) Fit a new gasket, then locate the manifold on the head and install the nuts and bolts (see illustration).

- d) Tighten the nuts/bolts in three or four equal steps to the torque listed in this Chapter's Specifications. Work from the centre outwards, to avoid warping the manifold.
- e) Refit the remaining parts in the reverse order of removal - tighten all fasteners to the torque wrench settings specified.
- f) Before starting the engine, check the accelerator cable for correct adjustment and the throttle linkage for smooth operation.
- h) When the engine is fully warmed-up, check for signs of fuel, inlet and/or vacuum leaks.
- i) Road-test the vehicle, and check for proper operation of all disturbed components.

7 Exhaust manifold - removal, inspection and refitting



Warning: The engine must be completely cool before beginning this procedure.

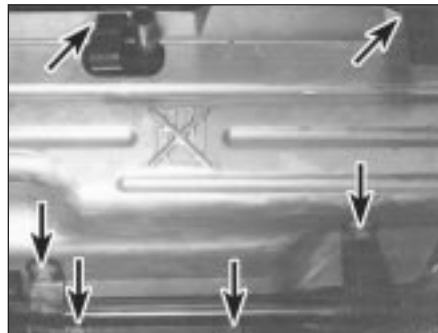
Note: In addition to the new gasket and any other parts, tools or facilities needed to carry out this operation, a new plastic guide sleeve will be required on reassembly.

Removal

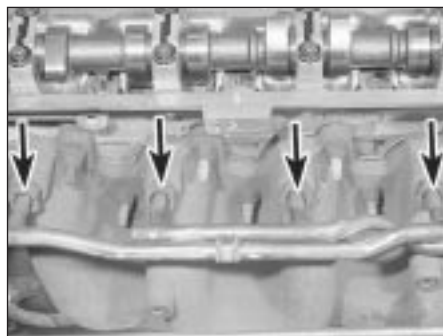
- 1** Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1.
- 2** Remove the air inlet hose and duct as described in Chapter 4B.
- 3** Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).
- 4** Disconnect the coolant hose and the coolant pipe/hose from the thermostat housing; secure them clear of the working area.
- 5** Unbolt the exhaust manifold heat shield, and withdraw both parts of the shield (see illustration).
- 6** While the manifold can be removed with the pulse-air system components attached - unbolt the filter housing and disconnect its vacuum hose if this is to be done - it is easier



6.14 Always renew inlet manifold gasket - do not rely on sealants



7.5 Exhaust manifold heat shield upper part securing bolts (arrowed)



7.6 Pulse-air system (sleeve nuts arrowed) need not be removed unless required - assembly can be withdrawn with exhaust manifold



7.8A Unscrew nuts (arrowed) to remove exhaust manifold . . .



7.8B . . . studs can be unscrewed also, if required, to provide additional working space



7.12B Renew exhaust system downpipe-to-manifold gasket to prevent leaks

to remove the pulse-air assembly first, as described in Chapter 6 (see illustration).

7 Unplug the oxygen sensor electrical connector, to avoid straining its wiring. Unscrew the nuts to disconnect the exhaust system front downpipe from the manifold (see Chapter 4B).

8 Remove the nuts and detach the manifold and gasket (see illustration). When removing the manifold with the engine in the vehicle, additional clearance can be obtained by unscrewing the studs from the cylinder head; a female Torx-type socket will be required (see illustration).

9 Always fit a new gasket on reassembly, to carefully-cleaned components (see below). Do not attempt to re-use the original gasket.

Inspection

10 Use a scraper to remove all traces of old gasket material and carbon deposits from the manifold and cylinder head mating surfaces. If the gasket was leaking, have the manifold checked for warpage at an automotive machine shop, and have it resurfaced if necessary.



Caution: When scraping, be very careful not to gouge or scratch the delicate aluminium alloy cylinder head.

11 Provided both mating surfaces are clean and flat, a new gasket will be sufficient to ensure the joint is gastight. Do not use any

kind of exhaust sealant upstream of the catalytic converter.

12 Note that the downpipe is secured to the manifold by two bolts, with a coil spring, spring seat and self-locking nut on each. On refitting, tighten the nuts until they stop on the bolt shoulders; the pressure of the springs will then suffice to make a gastight joint (see illustrations).

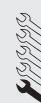
13 Do not overtighten the nuts to cure a leak - the bolts will shear; renew the gasket and the springs if a leak is found. The bolts themselves are secured by spring clips to the manifold, and can be renewed easily if damaged (see illustration).

Refitting

14 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- Position a new gasket over the cylinder head studs, and fit a new plastic guide sleeve to the stud nearest to the thermostat housing, so that the manifold will be correctly located (see illustration). Do not refit the manifold without this sleeve.
- Refit the manifold, and finger-tighten the mounting nuts.
- Working from the centre out, and in three or four equal steps, tighten the nuts to the torque wrench setting given in the Specifications Section of this Chapter.
- Refit the remaining parts in the reverse order of removal. Tighten all fasteners to the specified torque wrench settings.
- Refill the cooling system (see Chapter 1).
- Run the engine, and check for exhaust leaks. Check the coolant level when fully warmed-up to normal operating temperature.

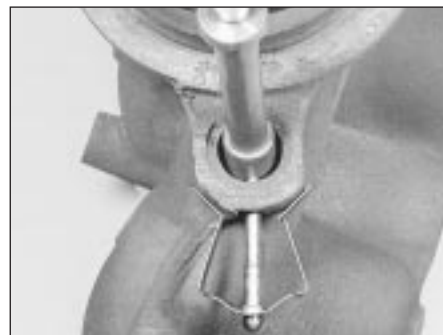
8 Crankshaft pulley - removal and refitting



1 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt - either remove the drivebelt completely, or just secure it clear of the crankshaft pulley, depending on the work to be carried out (see Chapter 1).



7.12A Showing exhaust downpipe-to-manifold securing bolts - note coil spring, and shoulder on bolt



7.13 Release spring clip to extract securing bolt from manifold, when required



7.14 Fit plastic guide sleeve to stud (arrowed) when refitting exhaust manifold

2 If necessary, rotate the crankshaft until the timing marks align (see Section 4).

3 The crankshaft must now be locked to prevent its rotation while the pulley bolt is unscrewed. To do this, remove the starter motor (Chapter 5) and lock the starter ring gear teeth using a suitable screwdriver.

4 Unscrew the pulley bolt and remove the pulley (see illustrations).

5 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure; ensure that the pulley's keyway is aligned with the crankshaft's locating key, and tighten the pulley bolt to the specified torque wrench setting.



8.4A Unscrew pulley bolt to release crankshaft pulley



8.4B Ensure pulley is located on crankshaft Woodruff key on reassembly

9 Timing belt covers - removal and refitting



Upper cover

1 Unscrew the cover's two mounting bolts and withdraw it.

2 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure; ensure that the cover edges engage correctly with each other, and note the torque wrench setting specified for the bolts.

Middle cover

3 Unscrew the nut securing the power steering pipe support clip to the stud at the rear of the middle cover. Lift the power steering fluid reservoir upwards out of its mounting bracket and move it clear, as far as the hoses will allow, for access. If insufficient clearance is obtained, disconnect the fluid unions as necessary, and collect the fluid in a suitable container. Plug or cover any disconnected unions.

4 Slacken the water pump pulley bolts.

5 Remove the timing belt upper cover (see paragraph 1 above).

6 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt (see Chapter 1).

7 Unbolt and remove the water pump pulley.

8 Unscrew the middle cover fasteners (one bolt at the front, one at the lower rear, one stud at the top rear) and withdraw the cover (see illustration).

9 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure. Ensure that the cover edges engage correctly with each other, and note the torque wrench settings specified for the various fasteners.

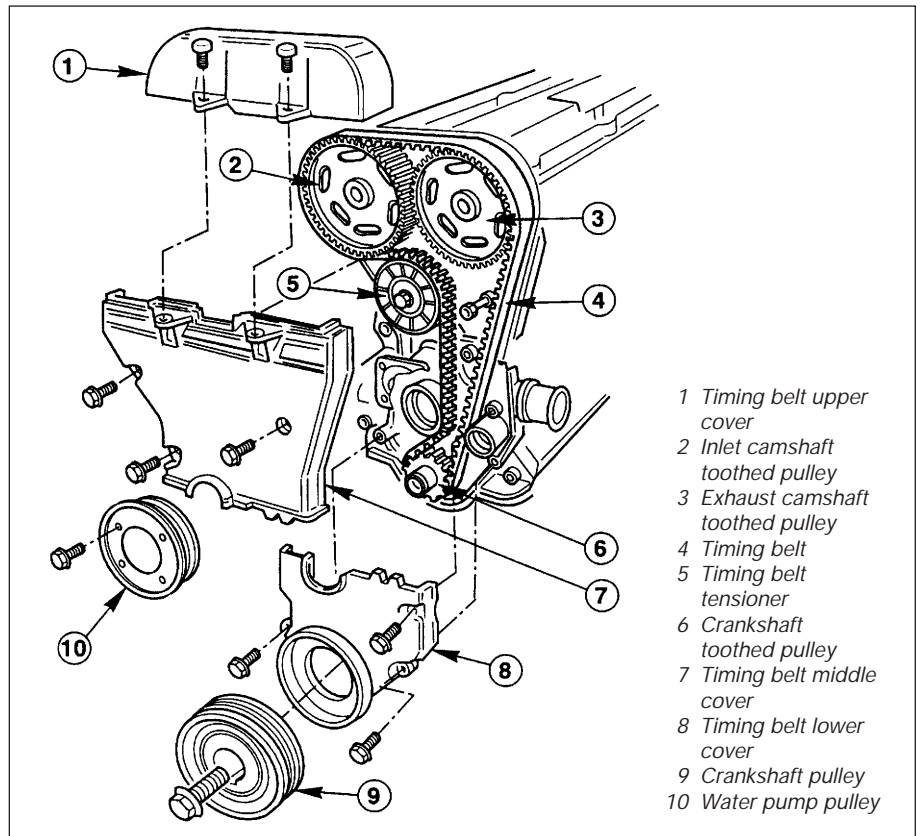
10 If the power steering hoses were disconnected, bleed the system as described in Chapter 10 after reconnection.

Lower cover

11 Remove the crankshaft pulley (see Section 8).

12 Unscrew the cover's three securing bolts, and withdraw it (see illustration).

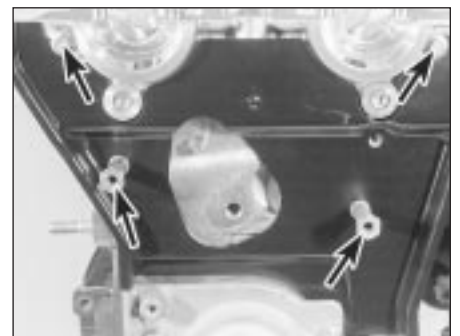
13 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure; ensure the cover edges engage correctly with each other, and note the torque wrench settings specified for the various fasteners.



9.8 Timing belt and cover details



9.12 Removing timing belt lower cover - bolt locations arrowed



9.15 Timing belt inner shield fasteners (arrowed)

Inner shield

14 Remove the timing belt, its tensioner components and the camshaft toothed pulleys (see Sections 10 and 11).

15 The shield is secured to the cylinder head by two bolts at the top, and by two studs lower down; unscrew these and withdraw the shield (see illustration).

16 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure; note the torque wrench settings specified for the various fasteners.

10 Timing belt - removal, refitting and adjustment



Note: To carry out this operation, a new timing belt (where applicable), a new cylinder head cover gasket, and some special tools (see text) will be required. If the timing belt is being removed for the first time since the vehicle left the factory, a tensioner spring and retaining pin must be obtained for fitting on reassembly.

1 With the vehicle parked on firm level ground, open the bonnet and disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1.

2 Slacken the water pump pulley bolts.

3 Remove the cylinder head cover (see Section 5).

4 Remove the spark plugs, covering their holes with clean rag, to prevent dirt or other foreign bodies from dropping in (see Chapter 1).

5 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt (see Chapter 1).

6 Rotate the crankshaft clockwise until the second pair of notches in the pulley rim align with the edge of the sump mark, so that Nos 1 and 4 cylinders are at TDC (see Section 4).

7 Unbolt and remove the water pump pulley and the auxiliary drivebelt idler pulley.

8 Obtain Ford service tool 21-162, or fabricate a substitute from a strip of metal 5 mm thick (while the strip's thickness is critical, its length and width are not, but should be approximately 180 to 230 mm by 20 to 30 mm). Check that Nos 1 and 4 cylinders are at Top Dead Centre (TDC) - No 1

on the compression stroke - by resting this tool on the cylinder head mating surface, and sliding it into the slot in the left-hand end of both camshafts (see illustration). The tool should slip snugly into both slots while resting on the cylinder head mating surface; if one camshaft is only slightly out of alignment, it is permissible to use an open-ended spanner to rotate the camshaft gently and carefully until the tool will fit.

9 If both camshaft slots (they are machined significantly off-centre) are below the level of the cylinder head mating surface, rotate the crankshaft through one full turn clockwise and fit the tool again; it should now fit as described in the previous paragraph.

10 With the camshaft aligning tool remaining in place, remove the crankshaft pulley. *Do not* use the locked camshafts to prevent the crankshaft from rotating - use only the locking method described in Section 8.

11 Remove the timing belt lower and middle covers (see Section 9).

12 With the camshaft-aligning tool still in place, slacken the tensioner bolt, and use an Allen key inserted into its centre to rotate the tensioner clockwise as far as possible away from the belt; retighten the bolt to secure the tensioner clear of the timing belt (see illustration).

13 If the timing belt is to be re-used, use white paint or similar to mark its direction of rotation, and note from the manufacturer's markings which way round it is fitted. Withdraw the belt. *Do not* rotate the crankshaft until the timing belt is refitted.

14 If the belt is being removed for reasons other than routine renewal, check it carefully for any signs of uneven wear, splitting, cracks (especially at the roots of the belt teeth) or contamination with oil or coolant. Renew the belt if there is the slightest doubt about its condition. As a safety measure, the belt must be renewed as a matter of course at the intervals given in Chapter 1; if its history is unknown, the belt should be renewed irrespective of its apparent condition whenever the engine is overhauled. Similarly, check the tensioner spring (where fitted), renewing it if there is any doubt about its

condition. Check also the toothed pulleys for signs of wear or damage, and ensure that the tensioner and guide pulleys rotate smoothly on their bearings; renew any worn or damaged components. If signs of oil or coolant contamination are found, trace the source of the leak and rectify it, then wash down the engine timing belt area and related components, to remove all traces of oil or coolant.

15 On reassembly, temporarily refit the crankshaft pulley, to check that the pulley notches and sump rib are aligned as described in paragraph 6 above, then ensure that both camshafts are aligned at TDC by the special tool (paragraph 8). If the engine is being reassembled after major dismantling, both camshaft toothed pulleys should be free to rotate on their respective camshafts; if the timing belt alone is being renewed, both pulleys should still be securely fastened.

16 A holding tool will be required to prevent the camshaft toothed pulleys from rotating while their bolts are slackened and retightened; either obtain Ford service tool 15-030A, or fabricate a substitute as follows. Find two lengths of steel strip, one approximately 600 mm long and the other about 200 mm, and three bolts with nuts and washers; one nut and bolt forming the pivot of a forked tool, with the remaining nuts and bolts at the tips of the "forks", to engage with the pulley spokes as shown in the accompanying illustrations. **Note:** *Do not use the camshaft-aligning tool (whether genuine Ford or not) to prevent rotation while the camshaft toothed pulley bolts are slackened or tightened; the risk of damage to the camshaft concerned and to the cylinder head is far too great. Use only a forked holding tool applied directly to the pulleys, as described.*

17 If it is being fitted for the first time, screw the timing belt tensioner spring retaining pin into the cylinder head, tightening it to the specified torque wrench setting. Unbolt the tensioner, hook the spring on to the pin and the tensioner backplate, then refit the tensioner, engaging its backplate on the locating peg (see illustrations).

18 In all cases, slacken the tensioner bolt (if



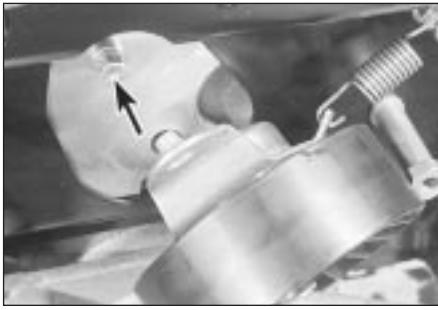
10.8 Fit camshaft-aligning tool to ensure engine is locked with Nos 1 and 4 cylinders at TDC



10.12 Slacken tensioner bolt, and use Allen key to rotate tensioner away from timing belt



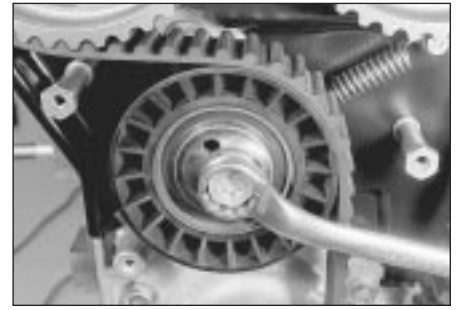
10.17A Fitting tensioner spring retaining pin



10.17B Hook spring onto tensioner and refit as shown - engage tensioner backplate on locating peg (arrowed) . . .



10.18 . . . then use Allen key to position tensioner so that timing belt can be refitted



10.20 Slacken tensioner bolt to give initial belt tension

necessary), and use an Allen key inserted into its centre to rotate the tensioner clockwise as far as possible against spring tension, then retighten the bolt to secure the tensioner (**see illustration**).

19 Fit the timing belt; if the original is being refitted, ensure that the marks and notes made on removal are followed, so that the belt is refitted the same way round, and to run in the same direction. Starting at the crankshaft toothed pulley, work anti-clockwise around the camshaft toothed pulleys and tensioner, finishing off at the rear guide pulley. The front run, between the crankshaft and the exhaust camshaft toothed pulleys, *must* be kept taut, without altering the position either of the crankshaft or of the camshaft(s) - if necessary, the position of the camshaft toothed pulleys can be altered by rotating each on its camshaft (which remains fixed by the aligning tool). Where the pulley is still fastened, use the holding tool described in paragraph 16 above to prevent the pulley from rotating while its retaining bolt is slackened - the pulley can then be rotated on the camshaft until the belt will slip into place; retighten the pulley bolt.

20 When the belt is in place, slacken the tensioner bolt gently until the spring pulls the tensioner against the belt; the tensioner should be retained correctly against the timing belt inner shield and cylinder head, but must be just free to respond to changes in belt tension (**see illustration**).

21 Tighten both camshaft toothed pulley bolts (or check that they are tight, as applicable) and remove the camshaft-aligning tool. Temporarily refit the crankshaft pulley,

and rotate the crankshaft through two full turns clockwise to settle and tension the timing belt, returning the crankshaft (pulley notches) to the position described in paragraph 6 above. Refit the camshaft-aligning tool; it should slip into place as described in paragraph 8. If all is well, proceed to paragraph 24 below.

22 If one camshaft is only just out of line, fit the forked holding tool to its toothed pulley, adjust its position as required, and check that any slack created has been taken up by the tensioner; rotate the crankshaft through two further turns clockwise, and refit the camshaft-aligning tool to check that it now fits as it should. If all is well, proceed to paragraph 24 below.

23 If either camshaft is significantly out of line, use the holding tool described in paragraph 16 above to prevent its pulley from rotating while its retaining bolt is slackened - the camshaft can then be rotated (gently and carefully, using an open-ended spanner) until the camshaft-aligning tool will slip into place; take care not to disturb the relationship of the pulley to the timing belt. Without disturbing the pulley's new position on the camshaft, tighten the pulley bolt to its specified torque wrench setting (**see illustration**). Remove the camshaft-aligning tool, rotate the crankshaft through two further turns clockwise, and refit the tool to check that it now fits as it should.

24 When the timing belt has been settled at its correct tension, and the camshaft-aligning tool fits correctly when the crankshaft pulley notches are exactly aligned, tighten the tensioner bolt to its specified torque wrench

setting (**see illustration**). Fitting the forked holding tool to the spokes of each pulley in turn, check that the pulley bolts are tightened to their specified torque wrench setting. Remove the camshaft-aligning tool, rotate the crankshaft through two further turns clockwise, and refit the tool to make a final check that it fits as it should.

25 The remainder of the reassembly procedure is the reverse of removal, ensuring that all fasteners are tightened to the specified torque.

11 Timing belt tensioner and toothed pulleys - removal, inspection and refitting



Tensioner

Note: If the tensioner is being removed for the first time since the vehicle left the factory, a tensioner spring and retaining pin must be obtained for fitting on reassembly.

1 While it is possible to reach the tensioner once the timing belt upper and middle covers only have been removed (**see Section 9**), the whole procedure outlined below must be followed, to ensure that the valve timing is correctly reset once the belt's tension has been disturbed.

2 Release the tension from the timing belt as described in Section 10, paragraphs 1 to 12.

3 Unscrew the tensioner bolt and withdraw the tensioner, unhooking the spring, if fitted (**see illustration**). Check the tensioner and spring as described in paragraph 14 of Section 10.



10.23 Using forked holding tool while camshaft toothed pulley bolt is tightened



10.24 When setting is correct, tighten tensioner bolt to specified torque wrench setting



11.3 Removing timing belt tensioner



11.8 Note "FRONT" marking on outside face of crankshaft toothed pulley - note which way round thrustwasher behind is fitted

4 On reassembly, if it is being fitted for the first time, screw the timing belt tensioner spring retaining pin into the cylinder head, tightening it to the specified torque wrench setting. Hook the spring onto the pin and the tensioner backplate, then refit the tensioner, engaging its backplate on the locating peg.

5 Use an Allen key inserted into its centre to rotate the tensioner clockwise as far as possible against spring tension, then tighten the bolt to secure the tensioner.

6 Reassemble, checking the camshaft alignment (valve timing) and setting the timing belt tension, as described in paragraphs 20 to 25 of Section 10.

Camshaft and crankshaft toothed pulleys

7 While it may be possible to remove any of these pulleys once the relevant belt covers have been removed, the complete timing belt removal/refitting procedure (see Section 10) must be followed, to ensure that the valve timing is correctly reset once the belt's tension has been disturbed.

8 With the timing belt removed, the camshaft toothed pulleys can be detached once their retaining bolts have been unscrewed as described in paragraphs 16 and 19 of Section 10. The crankshaft toothed pulley can be pulled off the end of the crankshaft, once the crankshaft (grooved) pulley and the timing belt have been removed. Note the "FRONT" marking identifying the pulley's outboard face, and the thrustwasher behind it; note which way round the thrustwasher is fitted (see illustration). Note the pulley-locating Woodruff key; if this is loose, it should be removed for safe storage with the pulley.

9 Check the pulleys as described in paragraph 14 of Section 10.

10 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Timing belt guide pulleys

11 Remove the timing belt covers (see Section 9).

12 Unbolt and withdraw the pulley(s); check their condition as described in paragraph 14 of Section 10.

13 Refitting is the reverse of the removal



11.13 Tighten timing belt guide pulley bolts to specified torque settings on refitting

procedure; tighten the pulley bolts to the specified torque wrench setting (see illustration).

12 Camshaft oil seals - renewal



Note: While it is possible to reach either oil seal, once the respective toothed pulley has been removed (see Section 11) to allow the seal to be prised out, this procedure is not recommended. Not only are the seals very soft, making this difficult to do without risk of damage to the seal housing, but it would be very difficult to ensure that the valve timing and the timing belt's tension, once disturbed, are correctly reset. Owners are advised to follow the whole procedure outlined below.

1 Release the tension from the timing belt as described in Section 10, paragraphs 1 to 12.

Note: If the timing belt is found to be contaminated by oil, remove it completely as described, then renew the oil seal (see below). Wash down the engine timing belt area and all related components, to remove all traces of oil. Fit a new belt on reassembly.

2 If the timing belt is still clean, slip it off the toothed pulley, taking care not to twist it too sharply; use the fingers only to handle the belt. Do not rotate the crankshaft until the timing belt is refitted. Cover the belt, and secure it so that it is clear of the working area



12.5 Using socket and toothed pulley bolt to install camshaft oil seal

and cannot slip off the remaining toothed pulley.

3 Unfasten the pulley bolt and withdraw the pulley (see Section 11).

4 Unbolt the camshaft right-hand bearing cap, and withdraw the defective oil seal. Clean the seal housing, and polish off any burrs or raised edges, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place.

5 To fit a new seal, Ford recommend the use of their service tool 21-009B, with a bolt (10 mm thread size, 70 mm long) and a washer, to draw the seal into place when the camshaft bearing cap is bolted down; a substitute can be made using a suitable socket (see illustration). Grease the seal lips and periphery to ease installation, and draw the seal into place until it is flush with the housing/bearing cap outer edge. Refit the bearing cap, using sealant and tightening the cap bolts as described in Section 13.

6 For most owners, the simplest answer will be to grease the seal lips, and to slide it onto the camshaft (until it is flush with the housing's outer edge). Refit the bearing cap, using sealant and tightening the cap bolts as described in Section 13 (see illustration). Take care to ensure that the seal remains absolutely square in its housing, and is not distorted as the cap is tightened down.

7 Refit the pulley to the camshaft, tightening the retaining bolt loosely, then slip the timing belt back onto the pulley (refer to paragraphs 16 and 19 of Section 10) and tighten the bolt securely.

8 The remainder of the reassembly procedure, including checking the camshaft alignment (valve timing) and setting the timing belt tension, is as described in paragraphs 20 to 25 of Section 10.

13 Camshafts and hydraulic tappets - removal, inspection and refitting



Removal

1 Release the tension from the timing belt as described in Section 10, paragraphs 1 to 12.

2 Either remove the timing belt completely (Section 10, paragraphs 13 and 14) or slip it



12.6 Alternatively, seal can be inserted when camshaft bearing cap is unbolted



13.3 Using forked holding tool while camshaft toothed pulley bolt is slackened

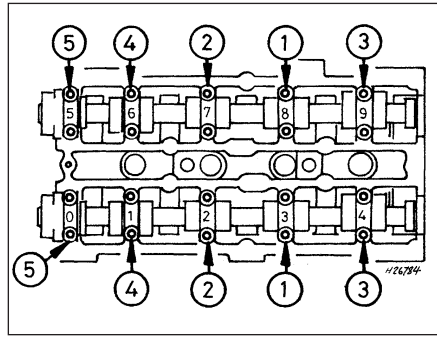
off the camshaft toothed pulleys, taking care not to twist it too sharply; use the fingers only to handle the belt. Cover the belt, and secure it so that it is clear of the working area. *Do not* rotate the crankshaft until the timing belt is refitted.

3 Unfasten the pulley bolts as described in Section 10, paragraphs 16 and 19, and withdraw the pulleys; while both are the same and could be interchanged, it is good working practice to mark them so that each is refitted only to its original location (*see illustration*).

4 Working in the sequence shown, slacken progressively, by half a turn at a time, the camshaft bearing cap bolts (*see illustration*). Work only as described, to release gradually and evenly the pressure of the valve springs on the caps.

5 Withdraw the caps, noting their markings and the presence of the locating dowels, then remove the camshafts and withdraw their oil seals. The inlet camshaft can be identified by the reference lobe for the camshaft position sensor; therefore, there is no need to mark the camshafts (*see illustrations*).

6 Obtain sixteen small, clean containers, and number them 1 to 16. Using a rubber sucker, withdraw each hydraulic tappet in turn, invert it to prevent oil loss, and place it in its respective container, which should then be filled with clean engine oil (*see illustrations*). Do not interchange the hydraulic tappets, or the rate of wear will be much increased. Do not allow them to lose oil, or they will take a



13.4 Camshaft bearing cap slackening sequence

Note: Viewed from front of vehicle, showing bearing cap numbers

long time to refill on restarting the engine, resulting in incorrect valve clearances.

Inspection

7 With the camshafts and hydraulic tappets removed, check each for signs of obvious wear (scoring, pitting etc) and for ovality, and renew if necessary.

8 Measure the outside diameter of each tappet (*see illustration*) - take measurements at the top and bottom of each tappet, then a second set at right-angles to the first; if any measurement is significantly different from the others, the tappet is tapered or oval (as applicable) and must be renewed. If the necessary equipment is available, measure the inside diameter of the corresponding cylinder head bore. Compare the measurements obtained to those given in the Specifications Section of this Chapter; if the tappets or the cylinder head bores are excessively worn, new tappets and/or a new cylinder head will be required.

9 If the engine's valve components have sounded noisy, particularly if the noise persists after initial start-up from cold, there is reason to suspect a faulty hydraulic tappet. Only a good mechanic experienced in these engines can tell whether the noise level is typical, or if renewal of one or more of the tappets is warranted. If faulty tappets are diagnosed, and the engine's service history is unknown, it is always worth trying the effect of



13.5A Note locating dowels when removing camshaft bearing caps



13.5B Inlet camshaft has lobe for camshaft position sensor

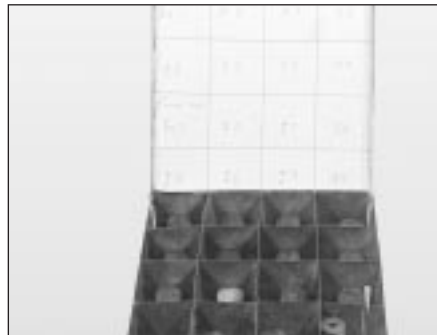
renewing the engine oil and filter (see Chapter 1), using *only* good-quality engine oil of the recommended viscosity and specification, before going to the expense of renewing any of the tappets - refer also to the advice in Section 1 of this Chapter.

10 Visually examine the camshaft lobes for score marks, pitting, galling (wear due to rubbing) and evidence of overheating (blue, discoloured areas). Look for flaking away of the hardened surface layer of each lobe. If any such signs are evident, renew the component concerned.

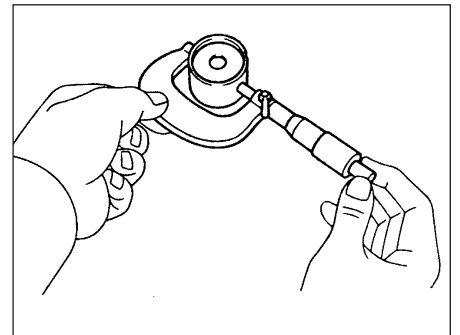
11 Examine the camshaft bearing journals and the cylinder head bearing surfaces for signs of obvious wear or pitting. If any such signs are evident, renew the component concerned.



13.6A Removing hydraulic tappets



13.6B Hydraulic tappets must be stored as described in text



13.8 Use a micrometer to measure diameter of hydraulic tappets



13.17 Oil liberally when refitting hydraulic tappets

12 Using a micrometer, measure the diameter of each journal at several points. If the diameter of any one journal is less than the specified value, renew the camshaft.

13 To check the bearing journal running clearance, remove the hydraulic tappets, use a suitable solvent and a clean lint-free rag to clean carefully all bearing surfaces, then refit the camshafts and bearing caps with a strand of Plastigage across each journal. Tighten the bearing cap bolts to the specified torque wrench setting (do not rotate the camshafts), then remove the bearing caps and use the scale provided to measure the width of the compressed strands. Scrape off the Plastigage with your fingernail or the edge of a credit card - don't scratch or nick the journals or bearing caps.

14 If the running clearance of any bearing is found to be worn to beyond the specified service limits, fit a new camshaft and repeat the check; if the clearance is still excessive, the cylinder head must be renewed.

15 To check camshaft endfloat, remove the hydraulic tappets, clean the bearing surfaces carefully, and refit the camshafts and bearing caps. Tighten the bearing cap bolts to the specified torque wrench setting, then measure the endfloat using a DTI (Dial Test Indicator, or dial gauge) mounted on the



13.19 Apply sealant to mating surface of camshaft right-hand bearing caps

cylinder head so that its tip bears on the camshaft right-hand end.

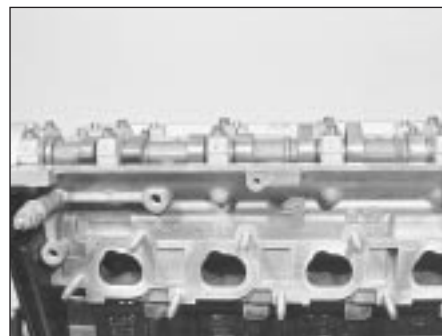
16 Tap the camshaft fully towards the gauge, zero the gauge, then tap the camshaft fully away from the gauge, and note the gauge reading. If the endfloat measured is found to be at or beyond the specified service limit, fit a new camshaft and repeat the check; if the clearance is still excessive, the cylinder head must be renewed.

Refitting

17 On reassembly, liberally oil the cylinder head hydraulic tappet bores and the tappets (see illustration). Note that if new tappets are being fitted, they must be charged with clean engine oil before installation. Carefully refit the tappets to the cylinder head, ensuring that each tappet is refitted to its original bore, and is the correct way up. Some care will be required to enter the tappets squarely into their bores.

18 Liberally oil the camshaft bearings and lobes. Ensuring that each camshaft is in its original location, refit the camshafts, locating each so that the slot in its left-hand end is approximately parallel to, and just above, the cylinder head mating surface.

19 Ensure that the locating dowels are pressed firmly into their recesses, and check that all mating surfaces are completely clean, unmarked and free from oil. Apply a thin film of suitable sealant (Ford recommend Loctite 518) to the mating surfaces of each



13.20 Etched marks on camshaft bearing caps must be arranged as shown, and face outwards

camshaft's right-hand bearing cap (see illustration). Referring to paragraph 6 of Section 12, some owners may wish to fit the new camshaft oil seals at this stage.

20 All camshaft bearing caps have a single-digit identifying number etched on them (see illustration). The exhaust camshaft's bearing caps are numbered in sequence 0 (right-hand cap) to 4 (left-hand cap), the inlet's 5 (right-hand cap) to 9 (left-hand cap); see illustration 13.21 for details. Each cap is to be fitted so that its numbered side faces outwards, to the front (exhaust) or to the rear (inlet).

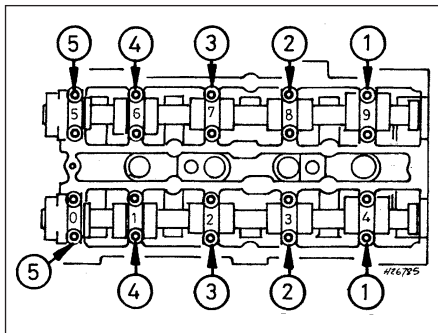
21 Ensuring that each cap is kept square to the cylinder head as it is tightened down, and working in the sequence shown, tighten the camshaft bearing cap bolts slowly and by one turn at a time, until each cap touches the cylinder head (see illustration). Next, go round again in the same sequence, tightening the bolts to the first stage torque wrench setting specified, then once more, tightening them to the second stage setting. Work only as described, to impose gradually and evenly the pressure of the valve springs on the caps. Fit the camshaft-aligning tool; it should slip into place as described in paragraph 8 of Section 10 (see illustration).

22 Wipe off all surplus sealant, so that none is left to find its way into any oilways. Follow the sealant manufacturer's instructions as to the time needed for curing; usually, at least an hour must be allowed between application of the sealant and starting the engine.

23 If using Ford's recommended procedure, fit new oil seals to the camshafts as described in paragraph 5 of Section 12.

24 Using the marks and notes made on dismantling to ensure that each is refitted to its original camshaft, refit the toothed pulleys to the camshafts, tightening the retaining bolts loosely. Slip the timing belt back onto the pulleys (refer to paragraph 19 of Section 10) and tighten the bolts securely - use the forked holding tool described in paragraph 16 of Section 10.

25 The remainder of the reassembly procedure, including checking the camshaft alignment (valve timing) and setting the timing belt tension, is as described in paragraphs 15 to 25 of Section 10.



13.21A Camshaft bearing cap tightening sequence

Note: View from front of vehicle - locate bearing caps according to etched numbers, aligned as described in text



13.21B Fit camshaft-aligning tool to set TDC position while camshaft toothed pulleys are refitted

14 Cylinder head - removal and refitting



Removal

Note: The following text assumes that the cylinder head will be removed with both inlet and exhaust manifolds attached. This simplifies the procedure, but makes it a bulky and heavy assembly to handle - an engine hoist will be required, to prevent the risk of injury, and to prevent damage to any delicate components as the assembly is removed and refitted. If it is wished first to remove the manifolds, proceed as described in Sections 6 and 7 of this Chapter; amend the following procedure accordingly.

1 Depressurise the fuel system (see Chapter 4B).

2 With the vehicle parked on firm level ground, open the bonnet and disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1.

3 Whenever you disconnect any vacuum lines, coolant and emissions hoses, wiring loom connectors, earth straps and fuel lines as part of the following procedure, always label them clearly, so that they can be correctly reassembled. Masking tape and/or a touch-up paint applicator work well for marking items. Take instant photos, or sketch the locations of components and brackets.

4 Refer to Chapter 4B and remove the air inlet hose and inlet duct.

5 Equalise the pressure in the fuel tank by removing the filler cap, then undo the fuel feed and return lines connecting the engine to the chassis (see Chapter 4B). Plug or cap all open fittings.

6 Disconnect the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage as described in Chapter 4B. Secure the cable clear of the engine/transmission.

7 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt (see Chapter 1).

8 Refer to Chapter 10 and remove the power steering pump. Releasing its wire clip, unplug the power steering pressure switch electrical connector, then unbolt the earth lead from the

cylinder head rear support plate/engine lifting eye.

9 Remove the three screws securing the wiring "rail" to the rear of the manifold. Releasing its wire clip, unplug the large electrical connector (next to the fuel pressure regulator) to disconnect the engine wiring from the main loom (see illustration). Unplug the electrical connectors on each side of the ignition coil, and the single connector from beneath the front of the thermostat housing, to disconnect the coil and coolant temperature gauge sender wiring (see illustration).

10 Marking or labelling them as they are unplugged, disconnect the vacuum hoses as follows:

- One from the rear of the throttle housing (only the one hose - there is no need to disconnect the second hose running to the fuel pressure regulator).
- One from the union on the inlet manifold's left-hand end.
- The braking system vacuum servo unit hose (see Chapter 9 for details).

11 Unbolt both parts of the exhaust manifold heat shield. Either remove the dipstick and tube, or swing them out of the way.

12 Unscrew the single bolt securing the pulse-air filter housing to the engine/transmission front mounting bracket, then disconnect its vacuum hose.

13 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).

14 Disconnect all coolant hoses from the thermostat housing (see illustration).

15 Unscrew the two nuts to disconnect the exhaust system front downpipe from the manifold (Chapter 4B); disconnect the oxygen sensor wiring, so that it is not strained by the weight of the exhaust system.

16 Support the weight of the engine/transmission using a trolley jack, with a wooden spacer to prevent damage to the sump.

17 Remove the timing belt and both camshafts (see Sections 10 and 13); if the cylinder head is to be dismantled, withdraw the hydraulic tappets.

18 Remove the timing belt inner shield (see Section 9).

19 Working in the reverse of the sequence shown in illustration 14.30A, slacken the ten cylinder head bolts progressively and by one turn at a time; a Torx key (TX 55 size) will be required. Remove each bolt in turn, and ensure that new replacements are obtained for reassembly; these bolts are subjected to severe stresses and so must be renewed, regardless of their apparent condition, whenever they are disturbed.

20 Lift the cylinder head away; use assistance if possible, as it is a heavy assembly. Remove the gasket, noting the two dowels, and discard it.

Refitting

21 The mating faces of the cylinder head and cylinder block must be perfectly clean before refitting the head. Use a hard plastic or wood scraper to remove all traces of gasket and carbon; also clean the piston crowns. Take particular care, as the soft aluminium alloy is easily damaged. Also, make sure that the carbon is not allowed to enter the oil and water passages - this is particularly important for the lubrication system, as carbon could block the oil supply to any of the engine's components. Using adhesive tape and paper, seal the water, oil and bolt holes in the cylinder block. Clean all the pistons in the same way.

HAYNES
HiNT

To prevent carbon entering the gap between the pistons and bores, smear a little grease in the gap. After cleaning each piston, use a small brush to remove all traces of grease and carbon from the gap, then wipe away the remainder with a clean rag.

22 Check the mating surfaces of the cylinder block and the cylinder head for nicks, deep scratches and other damage. If slight, they may be removed carefully with a file, but if excessive, machining may be the only alternative to renewal.

23 If warpage of the cylinder head gasket surface is suspected, use a straight edge to



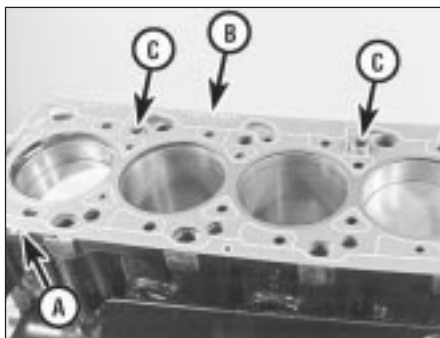
14.9A Unplug engine wiring loom connector alongside the inlet manifold



14.9B Unplug connectors (arrowed) to disconnect ignition coil wiring



14.14 Disconnect all coolant hoses from thermostat housing



14.25 Ensuring protruding tooth (or teeth) "A" are at front and marking "B" is upwards, locate new cylinder head gasket on dowels "C"

check it for distortion. Refer to Part D of this Chapter, if necessary.

24 Wipe clean the mating surfaces of the cylinder head and cylinder block. Check that the two locating dowels are in position in the cylinder block, and that all cylinder head bolt holes are free from oil.

25 Position a new gasket over the dowels on the cylinder block surface, so that the "TOP/OBEN" mark is uppermost, and with the tooth (or teeth, according to engine size) protruding from the front edge (see illustration).

26 Temporarily refit the crankshaft pulley, and rotate the crankshaft anti-clockwise so

that No 1 cylinder's piston is lowered to approximately 20 mm before TDC, thus avoiding any risk of valve/piston contact and damage during reassembly.

27 As the cylinder head is such a heavy and awkward assembly to refit with manifolds, it is helpful to make up a pair of guide studs from two 10 mm (thread size) studs approximately 90 mm long, with a screwdriver slot cut in one end - two old cylinder head bolts with their heads cut off would make a good starting point. Screw these guide studs, screwdriver slot upwards to permit removal, into the bolt holes at diagonally-opposite corners of the cylinder block surface (or into those where the locating dowels are fitted, as shown); ensure that approximately 70 mm of stud protrudes above the gasket.

28 Refit the cylinder head, sliding it down the guide studs (if used) and locating it on the dowels. Unscrew the guide studs (if used) when the head is in place.

29 Fit the new cylinder head bolts dry (do not oil their threads); carefully enter each into its hole and screw it in, by hand only, until finger-tight.

30 Working progressively and in the sequence shown, use first a torque wrench, then an ordinary socket extension bar and an angle gauge, to tighten the cylinder head bolts in the stages given in the Specifications Section of this Chapter (see illustrations). **Note:** Once tightened correctly, following this procedure, the cylinder head bolts do not require check-tightening, and must **not** be re-torqued.

31 Refit the hydraulic tappets (if removed), the camshafts, their oil seals and pulleys (see Sections 10, 11, 12 and 13, as appropriate). Temporarily refit the crankshaft pulley, and rotate the crankshaft clockwise to return the pulley notches to the position described in paragraph 6 of Section 10.

32 Refit the timing belt and covers, checking the camshaft alignment (valve timing) and setting the timing belt tension, as described in Section 10.

33 The remainder of reassembly is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

a) *Tighten all fasteners to the torque wrench settings specified.*

- b) *Refill the cooling system, and top-up the engine oil.*
- c) *Check all disturbed joints for signs of oil or coolant leakage, once the engine has been restarted and warmed-up to normal operating temperature.*
- d) *If the power steering hoses where disconnected, bleed the system as described in Chapter 10 after reconnection.*

15 Sump - removal and refitting



Removal

Note: The full procedure outlined below must be followed, so that the mating surfaces can be cleaned and prepared to achieve an oil-tight joint on reassembly, and so that the sump can be aligned correctly; depending on your skill and experience, and the tools and facilities available, it may be that this task can be carried out only with the engine removed from the vehicle. Note that the sump gasket must be renewed whenever it is disturbed.

1 With the vehicle parked on firm level ground, open the bonnet and disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1.

2 Drain the engine oil, then clean and refit the engine oil drain plug, tightening it to the specified torque wrench setting. Although not strictly necessary as part of the dismantling procedure, owners are advised to remove and discard the oil filter, so that it can be renewed with the oil (see Chapter 1).

3 Refer to Chapter 5 and remove the starter motor.

4 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt cover (see Chapter 1).

5 Unplug the electrical connector(s) to disconnect the oxygen sensor.

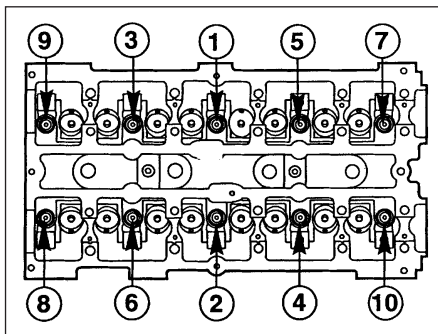
6 Unscrew the nuts to disconnect the exhaust system front downpipe from the manifold, then either unhook all the system's rubber mountings and withdraw the complete exhaust system from under the vehicle, or remove only the downpipe/catalytic converter (see Chapter 4B for details).

7 Unscrew the sump-to-transmission bolts, also any securing the engine/transmission lower adapter plate.

8 Progressively unscrew the sump retaining bolts. Break the joint by striking the sump with the palm of the hand, then lower the sump and withdraw it with the engine/transmission lower adapter plate (where fitted); note the presence of any shims between the sump and transmission.

9 Remove and discard the sump gasket; this must be renewed as a matter of course whenever it is disturbed.

10 While the sump is removed, take the opportunity to remove the oil pump pick-up/strainer pipe and to clean it (see Section 16).



14.30A Cylinder head bolt tightening sequence

Note: View from rear of vehicle



14.30B Tightening cylinder head bolts (Stages 1 and 2) using torque wrench . . .



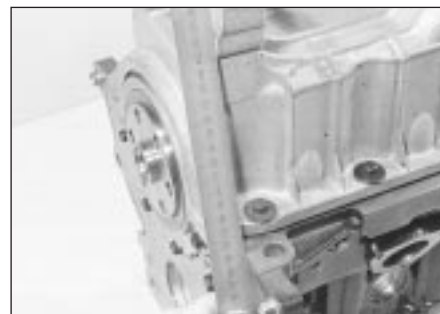
14.30C . . . and to Stage 3 using angle gauge



15.11 Ensure gasket is located correctly in sump groove



15.13A Apply sealant (arrowed) as directed when refitting sump



15.13B Checking alignment of sump with cylinder block/crankcase

Refitting

11 On reassembly, thoroughly clean and degrease the mating surfaces of the cylinder block/crankcase and sump, then use a clean rag to wipe out the sump and the engine's interior. If the oil pump pick-up/strainer pipe was removed, fit a new gasket and refit the pipe, tightening its screws to the specified torque wrench setting. Fit the new gasket to the sump mating surface so that the gasket fits into the sump groove (see illustration).

12 If the sump is being refitted with the engine/transmission still connected and in the vehicle, proceed as follows:

- Check that the mating surfaces of the sump, the cylinder block/crankcase and the transmission are absolutely clean and flat. Any shims found on removal of the sump must be refitted in their original locations.
- Apply a thin film of suitable sealant (Ford recommend Hylosil 102) to the junctions of the cylinder block/crankcase with the oil pump and the crankshaft left-hand oil seal carrier (see illustration). Without delay - the sump bolts must be fully tightened within 10 to 20 minutes of applying the sealant - offer up the sump and engine/transmission lower adapter plate, and refit the bolts, tightening them lightly at first.
- Ensuring that the engine/transmission lower adapter plate is correctly located, firmly press the sump against the transmission, and tighten the

transmission-to-sump (ie, engine) bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

- Without disturbing the position of the sump, and working in a diagonal sequence from the centre outwards, tighten the sump bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

- Proceed to paragraph 14.

13 If the sump is being refitted with the engine and transmission separated (in or out of the vehicle), proceed as follows:

- Apply a thin film of suitable sealant (Ford recommend Hylosil 102) to the junctions of the cylinder block/crankcase with the oil pump and the crankshaft left-hand oil seal carrier (see illustration). Without delay - the sump bolts must be fully tightened within 10 to 20 minutes of applying the sealant - offer up the sump to the cylinder block/crankcase, and insert the sump bolts, tightening them lightly at first.
- Using a suitable straight edge to check alignment across the flat-machined faces of each, move the sump as necessary so that its left-hand face - including any shims found on removal - is flush with that of the cylinder block/crankcase (see illustration). Without disturbing the position of the sump, and working in a diagonal sequence from the centre outwards, tighten the sump bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.
- Check again that both faces are flush before proceeding; if necessary, unbolt the sump again, clean the mating

surfaces, and repeat the full procedure to ensure that the sump is correctly aligned.

- If it is not possible to achieve exact alignment by moving the sump, shims are available in thicknesses of 0.25 mm (colour-coded yellow) or 0.50 mm (colour-coded black) to eliminate the discrepancy (see illustration).

14 The remainder of reassembly is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points.

- Tighten all fasteners to the torque wrench settings specified.
- Always renew any self-locking nuts disturbed on removal.
- Refill the cooling system (see Chapter 1).
- Refill the engine with oil, remembering that you are advised to fit a new filter (see Chapter 1).
- Check for signs of oil or coolant leaks once the engine has been restarted and warmed-up to normal operating temperature.

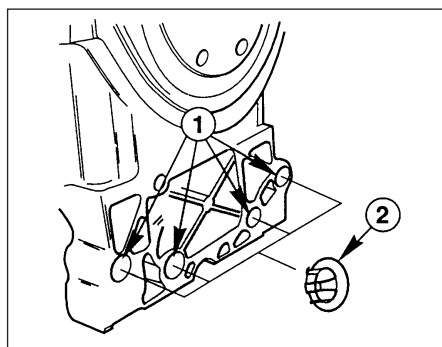
16 Oil pump - removal, inspection and refitting



Removal

Note: While this task is theoretically possible when the engine is in place in the vehicle, in practice, it requires so much preliminary dismantling, and is so difficult to carry out due to the restricted access, that owners are advised to remove the engine from the vehicle first. Note, however, that the oil pump pressure relief valve can be removed with the engine in situ - see paragraph 8.

- Remove the timing belt (see Section 10).
- Withdraw the crankshaft toothed pulley and the thrustwasher behind it, noting which way round the thrustwasher is fitted (see Section 11).
- Remove the sump (see Section 15).
- Undo the screws securing the oil pump pick-up/strainer pipe to the pump, then unscrew the nut and withdraw the oil pump pick-up/strainer pipe. Discard the gasket.
- Unbolt the pump from the cylinder block/crankcase (see illustration). Withdraw

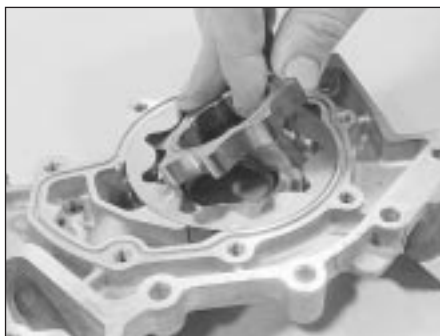


15.13C Sump-to-cylinder block/crankcase alignment shims

1 Fitting points on sump 2 Shim



16.5 Unscrew bolts (arrowed) to remove oil pump



16.6 Withdrawing oil pump inner rotor



16.9A Unscrew threaded plug - seen through right-hand wheel arch . . .



16.9B . . . to withdraw oil pressure relief valve spring and plunger

and discard the gasket, and remove the crankshaft right-hand oil seal. Thoroughly clean and degrease all components, particularly the mating surfaces of the pump, the sump, and the cylinder block/crankcase.

Inspection

6 Unscrew the Torx screws, and remove the pump cover plate; noting any identification marks on the rotors, withdraw the rotors (see illustration).

7 Inspect the rotors for obvious signs of wear or damage, and renew if necessary; if either rotor, the pump body, or its cover plate are scored or damaged, the complete oil pump assembly must be renewed.

8 The oil pressure relief valve can be dismantled, if required, without disturbing the pump. With the vehicle parked on firm level ground, apply the handbrake securely and raise its front end, supporting it securely on axle stands. Remove the front right-hand roadwheel and auxiliary drivebelt cover (see Chapter 1) to provide access to the valve.

9 Unscrew the threaded plug, and recover the valve spring and plunger (see illustrations). If the plug's sealing O-ring is worn or damaged, a new one must be obtained, to be fitted on reassembly.

10 Reassembly is the reverse of the dismantling procedure; ensure the spring and valve are refitted the correct way round, and tighten the threaded plug securely.

crankshaft (see illustration). Being careful not to disturb the gasket, move the pump into the correct position, and tighten its bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

14 Check that the pump is correctly located; if necessary, unbolt it again, and repeat the full procedure to ensure that the pump is correctly aligned.

15 Fit a new crankshaft right-hand oil seal (see Section 17).

16 Using grease to stick the gasket in place on the pump, refit the pick-up/strainer pipe, tightening its screws and nut to their specified torque wrench settings (see illustration).

17 The remainder of reassembly is the reverse of the removal procedure, referring to the relevant text for details where required.



16.12 Use new gasket when refitting oil pump



16.13 Oil pump must be centred on crankshaft, and square to cylinder block/crankcase-to-ump mating surface - use straight edge and feeler gauges to check that pump surface is an equal amount (within permissible limits) below crankcase surface on both sides of crankshaft

Refitting

11 The oil pump must be primed on installation, by pouring clean engine oil into it, and rotating its inner rotor a few turns.

12 Using grease to stick the new gasket in place on the cylinder block/crankcase, and rotating the pump's inner rotor to align with the flats on the crankshaft, refit the pump and insert the bolts, tightening them lightly at first (see illustration).

13 Using a suitable straight edge and feeler gauges, check that the pump is both centred exactly around the crankshaft, and aligned squarely so that its (sump) mating surface is exactly the same amount - between 0.3 and 0.8 mm - below that of the cylinder block/crankcase on each side of the

17 Crankshaft oil seals - renewal



Note: Don't try to prise these seals out without removing the oil pump or seal carrier - the seals are too soft, and the amount of space available is too small, for this to be possible without considerable risk of damage to the seal housing and/or the crankshaft journal. Follow exactly the procedure given below.

Right-hand seal

1 Remove the oil pump (see Section 16).

2 Drive the oil seal out of the pump from behind (see illustration).



16.16 Use new gasket when refitting oil pick-up pipe to pump



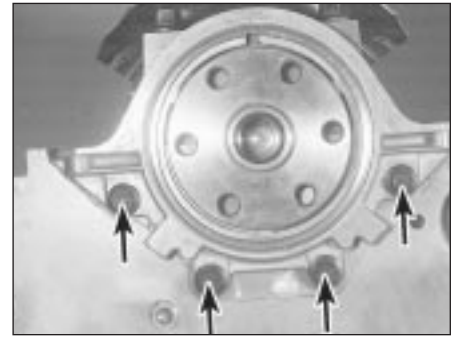
17.2 Driving out crankshaft right-hand oil seal



17.5 Socket of correct size can be used to replace Ford service tool, drawing new seal into place as described



17.6 If seal is tapped into place as shown, exercise great care to prevent seal from being damaged or distorted



17.12 Unscrew bolts (arrowed) to remove crankshaft left-hand oil seal carrier . . .

3 Clean the seal housing and crankshaft, polishing off any burrs or raised edges, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first place.

4 Refit the oil pump (see Section 16). Grease the lips and periphery of the new seal, to ease installation.

5 To fit a new seal, Ford recommend the use of their service tool 21-093A, with the crankshaft pulley bolt, to draw the seal into place; an alternative can be arranged using a socket of suitable size, with a washer to match the crankshaft pulley bolt (see illustration).

6 If such tools are not available, press the

seal squarely into place by hand; tap it in until it is flush with the pump housing, using a soft-faced mallet and a socket with an outside diameter only slightly smaller than the seal's (see illustration). This approach requires great care, to ensure that the seal is fitted squarely, without distortion or damage.

7 Wash off any traces of oil. The remainder of reassembly is the reverse of the removal procedure, referring to the relevant text for details where required. Check for signs of oil leakage when the engine is restarted.

Left-hand seal

8 Remove the transmission (see the relevant Part of Chapter 7).

9 Where appropriate, remove the clutch (Chapter 8).

10 Unbolt the flywheel/driveplate (see Section 18).

11 Remove the sump (see Section 15).

12 Unbolt the oil seal carrier (see illustration). Remove and discard its gasket.

13 Supporting the carrier evenly on wooden blocks, drive the oil seal out of the carrier from behind (see illustration).

14 Clean the seal housing and crankshaft, polishing off any burrs or raised edges, which may have caused the seal to fail in the first

place. Clean also the mating surfaces of the cylinder block/crankcase and carrier, using a scraper to remove all traces of the old gasket - be careful not to scratch or damage the material of either - then use a suitable solvent to degrease them.

15 Use grease to stick the new gasket in place on the cylinder block/crankcase, then offer up the carrier (see illustration).

16 Using a suitable straight edge and feeler gauges, check that the carrier is both centred exactly around the crankshaft, and aligned squarely so that its (sump) mating surface is exactly the same amount - between 0.3 and 0.8 mm - below that of the cylinder block/crankcase on each side of the crankshaft. Being careful not to disturb the gasket, move the carrier into the correct position, and tighten its bolts to the specified torque wrench setting (see illustration).

17 Check that the carrier is correctly located; if necessary, unbolt it again, and repeat the full procedure to ensure that the carrier is correctly aligned.

18 Ford's recommended method of seal fitting is to use service tool 21-141, with two flywheel bolts to draw the seal into place. If this is not available, make up a guide from a thin sheet of plastic or similar, lubricate the lips of the new seal and the crankshaft shoulder with grease, then offer up the seal, with the guide feeding the seal's lips over the crankshaft shoulder (see illustration). Press



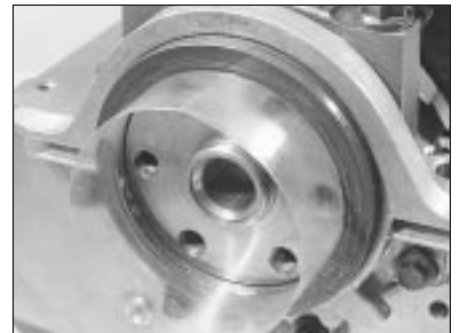
17.13 . . . and ensure that carrier is properly supported when driving out used oil seal - note notches provided in carrier for drift



17.15 Use new gasket when refitting left-hand oil seal carrier



17.16 Oil seal carrier must be centred on crankshaft, and square to cylinder block/crankcase-to-sump mating surface - use straight edge and feeler gauges to check that carrier surface is an equal amount (within permissible limits) below crankcase surface on both sides of crankshaft



17.18 Using guide made from thin sheet of plastic to slide oil seal lips over crankshaft shoulder



18.11 Note “peg” tool used to lock flywheel/driveplate while (new) bolts are tightened



19.8 Engine/transmission left-hand front mounting attachments



19.12 Engine/transmission left-hand rear mounting and mounting bracket attachments

the seal evenly into its housing by hand only, and use a soft-faced mallet gently to tap it into place until it is flush with the surrounding housing.

19 Wipe off any surplus oil or grease; the remainder of the reassembly procedure is the reverse of dismantling, referring to the relevant text for details where required. Check for signs of oil leakage when the engine is restarted.

18 Flywheel/driveplate - removal, inspection and refitting



Removal

1 Remove the transmission (see the relevant Part of Chapter 7). Now is a good time to check components such as oil seals, and renew them if necessary.

2 Where appropriate, remove the clutch (Chapter 8). Now is a good time to check or renew the clutch components and pilot bearing.

3 Use a centre-punch or paint to make alignment marks on the flywheel/driveplate and crankshaft, to ensure correct alignment during refitting.

4 Prevent the flywheel/driveplate from turning by locking the ring gear teeth, or by bolting a strap between the flywheel/driveplate and the cylinder block/crankcase. Slacken the bolts evenly until all are free.

5 Remove each bolt in turn, and ensure that new replacements are obtained for reassembly; these bolts are subjected to severe stresses, and so must be renewed, regardless of their apparent condition, whenever they are disturbed.

6 Noting the reinforcing plate (automatic transmission models only), withdraw the flywheel/driveplate; do not drop it - it is very heavy.

Inspection

7 Clean the flywheel/driveplate to remove grease and oil. Inspect the surface for cracks, rivet grooves, burned areas and score marks. Light scoring can be removed with emery

cloth. Check for cracked and broken ring gear teeth. Lay the flywheel/driveplate on a flat surface, and use a straight edge to check for warpage.

8 Clean and inspect the mating surfaces of the flywheel/driveplate and the crankshaft. If the crankshaft left-hand seal is leaking, renew it (see Section 17) before refitting the flywheel/driveplate.

9 While the flywheel/driveplate is removed, clean carefully its inboard (right-hand) face, particularly the recesses which serve as the reference points for the crankshaft speed/position sensor. Clean the sensor's tip, and check that the sensor is securely fastened.

Refitting

10 On refitting, ensure that the engine/transmission adapter plate is in place (where necessary), then fit the flywheel/driveplate to the crankshaft so that all bolt holes align - it will fit only one way - check this using the marks made on removal. Do not forget the reinforcing plate (automatic transmission models).

11 Lock the flywheel/driveplate by the method used on dismantling. Working in a diagonal sequence to tighten them evenly, and increasing to the final amount in two or three stages, tighten the new bolts to the specified torque wrench setting (see illustration).

12 The remainder of reassembly is the reverse of the removal procedure, referring to the relevant text for details where required.

19 Engine/transmission mountings - inspection and renewal



General

1 The engine/transmission mountings seldom require attention, but broken or deteriorated mountings should be renewed immediately, or the added strain placed on the driveline components may cause damage or wear.

2 The mounting arrangement varies considerably depending on whether manual

or automatic transmission is fitted, and if manual transmission is fitted, whether it is the BC type or MTX-75 type. This also has a significant bearing on the amount of peripheral dismantling necessary for access to the mountings, which will have to be assessed according to model.

Inspection

3 During the check, the engine/transmission must be raised slightly, to remove its weight from the mountings.

4 Raise the front of the vehicle, and support it securely on axle stands. Position a jack under the sump, with a large block of wood between the jack head and the sump, then carefully raise the engine/transmission just enough to take the weight off the mountings.



Warning: DO NOT place any part of your body under the engine when it is supported only by a jack!

5 Check the mountings to see if the rubber is cracked, hardened or separated from the metal components. Sometimes, the rubber will split right down the centre.

6 Check for relative movement between each mounting's brackets and the engine/transmission or body (use a large screwdriver or lever to attempt to move the mountings). If movement is noted, lower the engine and check-tighten the mounting fasteners.

Renewal

Left-hand front mounting

7 Position a jack under the transmission, with a block of wood between the jack head and the sump. Raise the jack to just take the weight off the mounting.

8 Undo the two bolts securing the mounting to the body side member, and the two bolts securing the mounting to the transmission bracket (see illustration). Withdraw the mounting from its location.

9 Refitting is the reversal of removal, tightening the retaining bolts to the specified torque.

Left-hand rear mounting

10 Remove the air cleaner unit as described in Chapter 4B.

11 Position a jack under the transmission, with a block of wood between the jack head and the transmission. Raise the jack to just take the weight off the mounting.

12 Undo the nuts and bolts securing the mounting brackets to the top of the transmission and to the mounting itself (**see illustration**). Remove the mounting brackets from the transmission.

13 Undo the two bolts, one from above and one from below, securing the mounting to the body. Remove the mounting from under the brake servo unit.

14 Refitting is the reversal of removal, tightening the retaining bolts to the specified torque.

Right-hand mounting

15 Raise the front of the vehicle, and securely support it on axle stands. For preference, raise the car on ramps.

16 Drain the engine oil, and remove the oil filter (see Chapter 1).

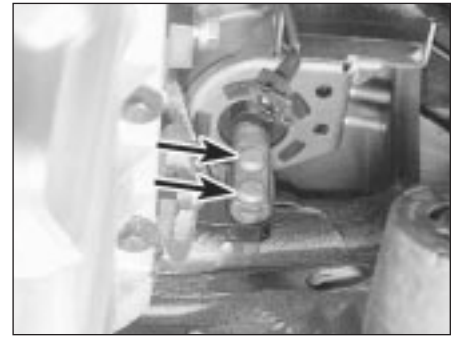


19.18 Engine right-hand mounting-to-body retaining nuts

17 Undo the two upper bolts and one lower bolt and remove the mounting support brace.

18 Undo the two upper nuts securing the mounting to the body (**see illustration**).

19 Undo the two lower nuts securing the mounting to the engine bracket (**see**



19.19 Engine right-hand mounting-to-engine bracket retaining bolts (arrowed)

illustration). Manipulate the mounting, complete with damper weight, out from under the car.

20 Refitting is the reversal of removal, tightening the retaining nuts and bolts to the specified torque.






Chapter 2 Part D: Engine removal and general engine overhaul procedures

Contents

Camshaft and tappets - removal, inspection and refitting (HCS engine)	11	Engine overhaul - general information	2
Compression test - description and interpretation	See Chapter 1	Engine overhaul - reassembly sequence	18
Crankshaft - inspection	16	Engine removal - methods and precautions	3
Crankshaft - refitting and main bearing running clearance check	20	Engine/transmission - removal and refitting (CVH engine)	5
Crankshaft - removal	13	Engine/transmission - removal and refitting (Zetec engine)	6
Cylinder block/crankcase - cleaning and inspection	14	General information	1
Cylinder head - dismantling	8	Main and big-end bearings - inspection	17
Cylinder head - reassembly	10	Piston/connecting rod assemblies - inspection	15
Cylinder head and valve components - cleaning and inspection	9	Piston/connecting rod assemblies - refitting and big-end bearing clearance check	21
Engine - initial start-up after overhaul	22	Piston/connecting rod assemblies - removal	12
Engine - removal and refitting (HCS engine)	4	Piston rings - refitting	19
Engine overhaul - dismantling sequence	7		

Degrees of difficulty

2D

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	--	---	--	---	--	--	--	---	--

Specifications

HCS engine

Cylinder head

Maximum permissible gasket surface distortion (measured over full length)	0.15 mm
Valve seat angle (inlet and exhaust)	45°
Valve seat width (inlet and exhaust)	1.18 to 1.75 mm*
*The inlet and exhaust valves have special inserts which cannot be recut using conventional tools.	

Valves - general

	Inlet	Exhaust
Valve lift	8.86 to 9.26 mm	8.96 to 9.36 mm
Valve length	103.7 to 104.4 mm	104.2 to 104.7 mm
Valve head diameter	34.40 to 34.60 mm	28.90 to 29.10 mm
Valve stem diameter	7.0 mm	7.0 mm
Valve stem-to-guide clearance	0.020 to 0.069	0.046 to 0.095

Pistons and piston rings

Piston diameter:	
Standard 1	73.91 to 73.92 mm
Standard 2	73.92 to 73.93 mm
Standard 3	73.93 to 73.94 mm
Oversize 0.5 mm	74.46 to 74.49 mm
Oversize 1.0 mm	74.96 to 74.99 mm
Piston-to-cylinder bore clearance	0.015 to 0.050 mm
Piston ring end gap - installed:	
Compression rings	0.25 to 0.45 mm
Oil control ring	0.20 to 0.40 mm
Ring gap position:	
Top compression ring	Offset 180° from oil control ring gap
Second compression ring	Offset 90° from oil control ring gap
Oil control ring	Aligned with gudgeon pin

2D•2 Engine removal and general engine overhaul procedures

Cylinder block

Cylinder bore diameter:

Standard 1	73.94 to 73.95 mm
Standard 2	73.50 to 73.96 mm
Standard 3	73.96 to 73.97 mm
Oversize 0.5 mm	74.50 to 74.51 mm
Oversize 1.0 mm	75.00 to 75.01 mm

Gudgeon pin

Length	63.3 to 64.6 mm
Diameter:	
White colour code	18.026 to 18.029 mm
Red colour code	18.029 to 18.032 mm
Blue colour code	18.032 to 18.035 mm
Yellow colour code	18.035 to 18.038 mm
Clearance in piston	0.008 to 0.014 mm
Interference fit in connecting rod	0.016 to 0.048 mm

Crankshaft and bearings

Main bearing journal diameter:

Standard	56.990 to 57.000 mm
0.254 mm undersize	56.726 to 56.746 mm
0.508 mm undersize	56.472 to 56.492 mm
0.762 mm undersize	56.218 to 56.238 mm

Main bearing journal-to-shell running clearance 0.009 to 0.056 mm

Crankpin (big-end) bearing journal diameter:

Standard	40.99 to 41.01 mm
0.254 mm undersize	40.74 to 40.76 mm
0.508 mm undersize	40.49 to 40.51 mm
0.762 mm undersize	40.24 to 40.26 mm

Crankpin (big-end) bearing journal-to-shell running clearance 0.006 to 0.060 mm

Crankshaft endfloat 0.075 to 0.285 mm

Thrustwasher thickness:

Standard	2.80 to 2.85 mm
Oversize	2.99 to 3.04 mm

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Main bearing cap	88 to 102	65 to 72
*Crankpin (big-end) bearing cap bolts:		
Stage 1	43	32
Stage 2	Angle-tighten a further 90°	
Engine-to-transmission bolts	35 to 45	26 to 33
Engine/transmission mountings:		
Right-hand mounting-to-cylinder block bracket	102 to 138	75 to 102
Right-hand mounting bracket-to-cylinder block	58 to 79	43 to 58
Right-hand mounting brace	58 to 79	43 to 58
Right-hand mounting-to-body	70 to 97	51 to 71
Left-hand rear mounting bracket-to-transmission	41 to 58	30 to 43
Left-hand rear mounting bracket-to-mounting	58 to 79	43 to 58
Left-hand front mounting bracket-to-mounting	58 to 79	43 to 58
Left-hand front mounting bracket brace	41 to 58	30 to 43

*New bolts must be used

Note: Refer to Part A of this Chapter for remaining torque wrench settings.

CVH engine

Valves - general

	Inlet	Exhaust
Valve lift:		
1.4 litre engine	9.3 to 9.7 mm	9.3 to 9.7 mm
1.6 litre engine: Carburettor models	9.5 to 9.9 mm	9.5 to 9.9 mm
EFI fuel-injected models	10.3 to 10.7 mm	10.3 to 10.7 mm
Valve length:		
1.4 litre engine	136.29 to 136.75 mm	132.97 to 133.43 mm
1.6 litre engine	134.54 to 135.00 mm	131.57 to 132.03 mm
Valve head diameter:		
1.4 litre engine	39.90 to 40.10 mm	33.90 to 34.10 mm
1.6 litre engine	41.90 to 42.10 mm	36.90 to 37.10 mm
Valve stem diameter (standard)	8.025 to 8.043 mm	7.999 to 8.017 mm
Valve stem diameter (0.2 mm oversize)	8.225 to 8.243 mm	8.199 to 8.217 mm
Valve stem diameter (0.4 mm oversize)	8.425 to 8.443 mm	8.399 to 8.417 mm
Valve stem-to-guide clearance	0.020 to 0.063 mm	0.046 to 0.089 mm

Cylinder head

Maximum permissible gasket surface distortion (measured over full length)	0.15 mm
Camshaft bearing bore diameters in cylinder head (standard):	
Bearing 1	44.783 to 44.808 mm
Bearing 2	45.033 to 45.058 mm
Bearing 3	45.283 to 45.308 mm
Bearing 4	45.533 to 45.558 mm
Bearing 5	45.783 to 45.808 mm
Camshaft bearing bore diameters in cylinder head (oversize):	
Bearing 1	45.188 to 45.163 mm
Bearing 2	45.438 to 45.413 mm
Bearing 3	45.668 to 45.663 mm
Bearing 4	45.983 to 45.913 mm
Bearing 5	46.188 to 46.163 mm
Valve tappet bore diameter (standard)	22.235 to 22.265 mm
Valve tappet bore diameter (oversize)	22.489 to 22.519 mm
Valve seat angle (inlet and exhaust)	44°30' to 45°30'
Valve seat width (inlet and exhaust)	1.75 to 2.32 mm*

*The cylinder head has valve seat rings on the exhaust side. These valve seats cannot be recut with conventional tools.

Cylinder block

Cylinder bore diameter:	
1.4 litre engine:	
Standard 1	77.22 to 77.23 mm
Standard 2	77.23 to 77.24 mm
Standard 3	77.24 to 77.25 mm
Standard 4	77.25 to 77.26 mm
Oversize A	77.51 to 77.52 mm
Oversize B	77.52 to 77.53 mm
Oversize C	77.53 to 77.54 mm
1.6 litre engine:	
Standard 1	79.94 to 79.95 mm
Standard 2	79.95 to 79.96 mm
Standard 3	79.96 to 79.97 mm
Standard 4	79.97 to 79.98 mm
Oversize A	80.23 to 80.24 mm
Oversize B	80.24 to 80.25 mm
Oversize C	80.25 to 80.26 mm

Crankshaft and bearings

Main bearing shell inside diameter - installed:	
Standard	58.011 to 58.038 mm
0.25 mm undersize	57.761 to 57.788 mm
0.50 mm undersize	57.511 to 57.538 mm
0.75 mm undersize	57.261 to 57.288 mm
Main bearing journal diameter:	
Standard	57.98 to 58.00 mm
0.25 mm undersize	57.73 to 57.75 mm
0.50 mm undersize	57.48 to 57.50 mm
0.75 mm undersize	57.23 to 57.25 mm
Main bearing journal-to-shell running clearance	0.011 to 0.058 mm
Big-end bearing shell inside diameter - installed:	
Standard	47.916 to 47.950 mm
0.25 mm undersize	47.666 to 47.700 mm
0.50 mm undersize	47.416 to 47.450 mm
0.75 mm undersize	47.166 to 47.200 mm
1.00 mm undersize	46.916 to 46.950 mm
Crankpin (big-end) bearing journal diameter:	
Standard	47.89 to 47.91 mm
0.25 mm undersize	47.64 to 47.66 mm
0.50 mm undersize	47.39 to 47.41 mm
0.75 mm undersize	47.14 to 47.16 mm
1.00 mm undersize	46.89 to 46.91 mm
Crankpin (big-end) bearing journal-to-shell running clearance	0.006 to 0.060 mm
Crankshaft endfloat	0.09 to 0.30 mm
Thrustwasher thickness:	
Standard	2.301 to 2.351 mm
Oversize	2.491 to 2.541 mm

2D•4 Engine removal and general engine overhaul procedures

Pistons and piston rings

Piston diameter (production):

1.4 litre engine:

Standard 1	77.190 to 77.200 mm
Standard 2	77.200 to 77.210 mm
Standard 3	77.210 to 77.220 mm
Standard 4	77.220 to 77.230 mm
Oversize A	77.480 to 77.490 mm
Oversize B	77.490 to 77.500 mm
Oversize C	77.500 to 77.510 mm

1.6 litre carburettor engine:

Standard 1	79.910 to 79.920 mm
Standard 2	79.920 to 79.930 mm
Standard 3	79.930 to 79.940 mm
Standard 4	79.940 to 79.950 mm
Oversize A	80.200 to 80.210 mm
Oversize B	80.210 to 80.220 mm
Oversize C	80.220 to 80.230 mm

1.6 litre EFI fuel-injected engine:

Standard 1	79.915 to 79.925 mm
Standard 2	79.925 to 79.935 mm
Standard 3	79.935 to 79.945 mm
Standard 4	79.945 to 79.955 mm
Oversize A	80.205 to 80.215 mm
Oversize B	80.215 to 80.225 mm
Oversize C	80.225 to 80.235 mm

Piston-to-cylinder bore clearance:

1.4 litre engine	0.020 to 0.040 mm
1.6 litre carburettor engine	0.020 to 0.040 mm
1.6 litre EFI fuel-injected engine	0.015 to 0.035 mm

Piston ring end gaps - installed:

Compression rings	0.30 to 0.50 mm
-------------------	-----------------

Oil control rings:

1.4 litre engine	0.40 to 1.40 mm
1.6 litre carburettor engine	0.40 to 1.40 mm
1.6 litre EFI fuel-injected engine	0.25 to 0.40 mm

Gudgeon pins

Length:

1.4 litre engine	63.000 to 63.800 mm
1.6 litre carburettor engine	66.200 to 67.000 mm
1.6 litre EFI fuel-injected engine	63.000 to 63.800 mm

Diameter:

White colour code	20.622 to 20.625 mm
Red colour code	20.625 to 20.628 mm
Blue colour code	20.628 to 20.631 mm
Yellow colour code	20.631 to 20.634 mm

Clearance in piston

0.005 to 0.011 mm

Interference fit in connecting rod

0.013 to 0.045 mm

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Main bearing caps	90 to 100	66 to 74
Big-end bearing caps	30 to 36	22 to 26
Engine-to-transmission bolts	35 to 45	26 to 33
Engine/transmission mountings:		
Right-hand mounting-to-cylinder block bracket	102 to 138	75 to 102
Right-hand mounting bracket-to-cylinder block	76 to 104	56 to 76
Right-hand mounting brace	58 to 79	43 to 58
Right-hand mounting-to-body	70 to 79	51 to 71
Left-hand rear mounting bracket-to-transmission	41 to 58	30 to 43
Left-hand rear mounting bracket-to-mounting	58 to 79	43 to 58
Left-hand front mounting bracket-to-mounting	58 to 79	43 to 58
Left-hand front mounting-to-bracket	41 to 58	30 to 43

Note: Refer to Part B of this Chapter for remaining torque wrench settings.

Zetec engine**Cylinder head**

Maximum permissible gasket surface distortion	0.10 mm
Valve seat included angle	90°
Valve guide bore	6.060 to 6.091 mm

Valves - general

	Inlet	Exhaust
Valve lift	7.500 to 7.685 mm	7.610 to 7.765 mm
Valve length	96.870 to 97.330 mm	96.470 to 96.930 mm
Valve head diameter:		
1.6 litre engine	26.0 mm	24.5 mm
1.8 litre engine	32.0 mm	28.0 mm
Valve stem diameter	6.028 to 6.043 mm	6.010 to 6.025 mm
Valve stem-to-guide clearance	0.017 to 0.064 mm	0.035 to 0.081 mm

Cylinder block

Cylinder bore diameter:	
1.6 litre engine:	
Class 1	76.000 to 76.010 mm
Class 2	76.010 to 76.020 mm
Class 3	76.020 to 76.030 mm
1.8 litre engine:	
Class 1	80.600 to 80.610 mm
Class 2	80.610 to 80.620 mm
Class 3	80.620 to 80.630 mm

Pistons and piston rings

Piston diameter	
1.6 litre engine:	
Class 1	75.975 to 75.985 mm
Class 2	75.985 to 75.995 mm
Class 3	75.995 to 76.005 mm
1.8 litre engine:	
Class 1	80.570 to 80.580 mm
Class 2	80.580 to 80.590 mm
Class 3	80.590 to 80.600 mm
Oversizes - all engines	None available
Piston-to-cylinder bore clearance	No information available at time of writing
Piston ring end gaps - installed:	
Compression rings	0.30 to 0.50 mm
Oil control ring:	
1.6 litre engine	0.25 to 1.00 mm
1.8 litre engine	0.38 to 1.14 mm

Gudgeon pin

Diameter:	
White colour code/piston crown marked "A"	20.622 to 20.625 mm
Red colour code/piston crown marked "B"	20.625 to 20.628 mm
Blue colour code/piston crown marked "C"	20.628 to 20.631 mm
Clearance in piston	0.010 to 0.016 mm
Connecting rod small-end eye internal diameter	20.589 to 20.609 mm
Interference fit in connecting rod	0.011 to 0.042 mm

Crankshaft and bearings

Main bearing shell standard inside diameter - installed	58.011 to 58.038 mm
Main bearing journal standard diameter	57.980 to 58.000 mm
Main bearing journal-to-shell running clearance	0.011 to 0.058 mm
Main bearing shell undersizes available	0.02 mm, 0.25 mm
Big-end bearing shell standard inside diameter - installed	46.926 to 46.960 mm
Crankpin (big-end) bearing journal standard diameter	46.890 to 46.910 mm
Crankpin (big-end) bearing journal-to-shell running clearance	0.016 to 0.070 mm
Big-end bearing shell undersizes available	0.02 mm, 0.25 mm
Crankshaft endfloat	0.090 to 0.310 mm

Torque wrench settings	Nm	lbf ft
Main bearing cap bolts and nuts	80	59
Big-end bearing cap bolts:		
Stage 1	18	13
Stage 2	Angle-tighten a further 90°	
Piston-cooling oil jet/blanking plug Torx screws	10	7
Cylinder block and head oilway blanking plugs:		
M6 x 10	8 to 11	6 to 8
M10 x 11.5 - in block	24	17
1/4 PTF plug - in block	25	18
Power steering pump/air conditioning compressor mounting bracket-to-cylinder block bolts	47	35
Exhaust manifold heat shield mounting bracket-to-cylinder block bolts	32	24
Crankcase breather system:		
Oil separator-to-cylinder block bolts	10	7
Pipe-to-cylinder head bolt	23	17
Transmission-to-engine bolts	40	30
Engine/transmission mountings:		
Right-hand mounting-to-cylinder block bracket	102 to 138	75 to 102
Right-hand mounting bracket-to-cylinder block	76 to 104	56 to 77
Right-hand mounting brace	58 to 79	43 to 58
Right-hand mounting-to-body	70 to 97	51 to 71
Left-hand rear mounting bracket-to-transmission	41 to 58	30 to 43
Left-hand rear mounting bracket-to-mounting	58 to 79	43 to 58
Left-hand front mounting bracket-to-mounting	58 to 79	43 to 58
Left-hand front mounting-to-bracket	41 to 58	30 to 43

Note: Refer to Part C of this Chapter for remaining torque wrench settings.

1 General information

How to use this Chapter

This Part of Chapter 2 is devoted to engine/transmission removal and refitting, to those repair procedures requiring the removal of the engine/transmission from the vehicle, and to the overhaul of engine components. It includes only the Specifications relevant to those procedures. Refer to Parts A, B and C for additional Specifications, if required.

General information

The information ranges from advice concerning preparation for an overhaul and the purchase of replacement parts, to detailed step-by-step procedures covering removal and installation of internal engine components and the inspection of parts.

The following Sections have been written based on the assumption that the engine has been removed from the vehicle. For information concerning in-vehicle engine repair, as well as removal and installation of the external components necessary for the overhaul, see Parts A, B and C of this Chapter, and Section 7 of this Part.

When overhauling the engine, it is essential to establish first exactly what replacement parts are available. On some of the engines covered in this Chapter, components such as the piston rings are not available separately from the piston/connecting rod assemblies; pistons, gudgeon pins and valve guides may also not be available separately, as may some

under- or oversized components. In some cases, depending on the extent of engine wear, it would appear that the easiest and most economically-sensible course of action is to replace a worn or damaged engine with an exchange unit.

2 Engine overhaul - general information

It's not always easy to determine when, or if, an engine should be completely overhauled, as a number of factors must be considered.

High mileage is not necessarily an indication that an overhaul is needed, while low mileage doesn't preclude the need for an overhaul. Frequency of servicing is probably the most important consideration. An engine that's had regular and frequent oil and filter changes, as well as other required maintenance, will most likely give many thousands of miles of reliable service. Conversely, a neglected engine may require an overhaul very early in its life.

Excessive oil consumption is an indication that piston rings, valve seals and/or valve guides are in need of attention. Make sure that oil leaks aren't responsible before deciding that the rings and/or guides are worn. Perform a cylinder compression check to determine the extent of the work required.

Loss of power, rough running, knocking or metallic engine noises, excessive valve train noise and high fuel consumption rates may also point to the need for an overhaul, especially if they're all present at the same

time. If a full service doesn't remedy the situation, major mechanical work is the only solution.

An engine overhaul involves restoring all internal parts to the specification of a new engine. **Note:** Always check first what replacement parts are available before planning any overhaul operation; refer to Section 1. Ford dealers, or a good engine reconditioning specialist/automotive parts supplier may be able to suggest alternatives which will enable you to overcome the lack of replacement parts.

During an overhaul, it is usual to renew the piston rings, and to rebore and/or hone the cylinder bores; where the rebore is done by an automotive machine shop, new oversize pistons and rings will also be installed - all these operations, of course, assume the availability of suitable replacement parts. The main and big-end bearings are generally renewed and, if necessary, the crankshaft may be reground to restore the journals. Generally, the valves are serviced as well, since they're usually in less-than-perfect condition at this point. While the engine is being overhauled, other components, such as the starter and alternator, can be renewed as well, or rebuilt, if the necessary parts can be found. The end result should be an as-new engine that will give many trouble-free miles. **Note:** Critical cooling system components such as the hoses, drivebelt, thermostat and water pump MUST be replaced with new parts when an engine is overhauled. The radiator should be checked carefully, to ensure that it isn't clogged or leaking (see Chapter 3). Also, as a general rule, the oil pump should be renewed when an engine is rebuilt.

Before beginning the engine overhaul, read through the entire procedure to familiarise yourself with the scope and requirements of the job. Overhauling an engine isn't difficult, but it is time-consuming. Plan on the vehicle being off the road for a minimum of two weeks, especially if parts must be taken to an automotive machine shop for repair or reconditioning. Check on availability of parts, and make sure that any necessary special tools and equipment are obtained in advance. Most work can be done with typical hand tools, although a number of precision measuring tools are required, for inspecting parts to determine if they must be replaced. Often, an automotive machine shop will handle the inspection of parts, and will offer advice concerning reconditioning and replacement.

Note: Always wait until the engine has been completely dismantled, and all components, especially the cylinder block/crankcase, have been inspected, before deciding what service and repair operations must be performed by an automotive machine shop. Since the block's condition will be the major factor to consider when determining whether to overhaul the original engine or buy a rebuilt one, never purchase parts or have machine work done on other components until the cylinder block/crankcase has been thoroughly inspected. As a general rule, time is the primary cost of an overhaul, so it doesn't pay to install worn or sub-standard parts.

As a final note, to ensure maximum life and minimum trouble from a rebuilt engine, everything must be assembled with care, in a spotlessly-clean environment.

3 Engine removal - methods and precautions

If you've decided that an engine must be removed for overhaul or major repair work, several preliminary steps should be taken.

Locating a suitable place to work is extremely important. Adequate work space, along with storage space for the vehicle, will be needed. If a workshop or garage isn't available, at the very least, a flat, level, clean work surface made of concrete or asphalt is required.

Cleaning the engine compartment and engine/transmission before beginning the removal procedure will help keep tools clean and organised.

On two of the engines covered in this manual, the unit can only be withdrawn by removing it complete with the transmission; the vehicle's body must be raised and supported securely, sufficiently high that the engine/transmission can be unbolted as a single unit and lowered to the ground; the engine/transmission unit can then be withdrawn from under the vehicle and separated. On all engines, an engine hoist or A-frame will be necessary. Make sure the

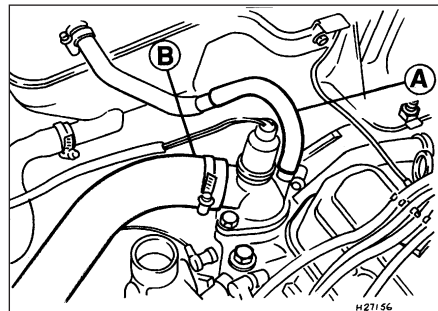
equipment is rated in excess of the combined weight of the engine and transmission. Safety is of primary importance, considering the potential hazards involved in removing the engine/transmission from the vehicle.

If this is the first time you have removed an engine, a helper should ideally be available. Advice and aid from someone more experienced would also be helpful. There are many instances when one person cannot simultaneously perform all of the operations required when removing the engine/transmission from the vehicle.

Plan the operation ahead of time. Arrange for, or obtain, all of the tools and equipment you'll need prior to beginning the job. Some of the equipment necessary to perform engine/transmission removal and installation safely and with relative ease, and which may have to be hired or borrowed, includes (in addition to the engine hoist) a heavy-duty trolley jack, a strong pair of axle stands, some wooden blocks, and an engine dolly (a low, wheeled platform capable of taking the weight of the engine/transmission, so that it can be moved easily when on the ground). A complete set of spanners and sockets (as described in "Tools and working facilities" at the rear of this manual) will obviously be needed, together with plenty of rags and cleaning solvent for mopping-up spilled oil, coolant and fuel. If the hoist is to be hired, make sure that you arrange for it in advance, and perform all of the operations possible without it beforehand. This will save you money and time.

Plan for the vehicle to be out of use for quite a while. A machine shop will be required to perform some of the work which the do-it-yourselfer can't accomplish without special equipment. These establishments often have a busy schedule, so it would be a good idea to consult them before removing the engine, to accurately estimate the amount of time required to rebuild or repair components that may need work.

Always be extremely careful when removing and installing the engine/transmission. Serious injury can result from careless actions. By planning ahead and taking your time, the job (although a major task) can be accomplished successfully.



4.6A Disconnect the overflow hose (A) and the top hose (B) from the thermostat housing

4 Engine - removal and refitting (HCS engine)

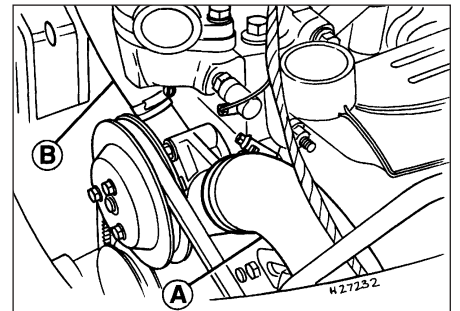


Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when disconnecting any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow naked flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area, and don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a clothes dryer or water heater) is installed. If you spill petrol on your skin, rinse it off immediately. Have a fire extinguisher rated for petrol fires handy, and know how to use it.

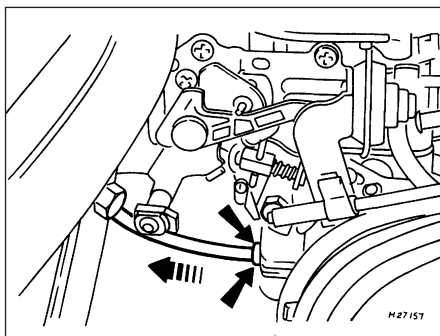
Note: Read through the entire Section, as well as reading the advice in the preceding Section, before beginning this procedure. The engine is removed separately from the transmission and is lifted upwards and out of the engine compartment.

Removal

- 1 On fuel-injected engines, refer to Chapter 4B and depressurise the fuel system.
- 2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 3 Referring to Chapter 1 for details, drain the coolant and engine oil. Refit the drain plug to the sump on completion.
- 4 Remove the bonnet as described in Chapter 11. Position it out of the way in a safe place where it will not get damaged.
- 5 Remove the air cleaner unit as described in Chapter 4.
- 6 Release the retaining clips and detach the following coolant hoses. Allow for coolant spillage as the hoses are detached, note their routing, and position them out of the way (see illustrations):
 - a) All hoses at the thermostat housing.
 - b) Bottom hose from the radiator to the water pump.
 - c) Heater hoses at the bulkhead and water pump.
 - d) Inlet manifold coolant supply hose (where applicable).
- 7 Disconnect the fuel trap vacuum hose from the inlet manifold.



4.6B Disconnect the bottom hose (A) and the heater hose (B) from the water pump



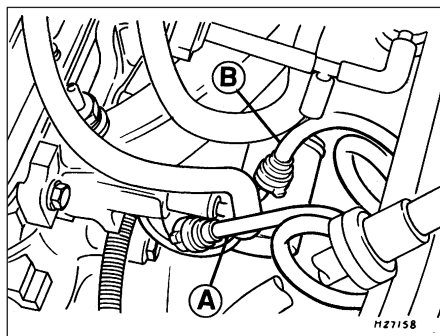
4.8 Detach the servo vacuum hose from the manifold

8 Disconnect the brake servo unit vacuum hose from the inlet manifold, by pushing the hose retainer in towards the manifold and simultaneously pulling free the hose (see illustration).

9 Refer to Chapter 4 for details, and detach the accelerator cable. Where applicable, detach the choke cable from the carburettor.

10 Compress the quick-release couplings at the sides, and detach the fuel supply hose and return hose from the fuel pump or CFI unit (see illustration). Allow for fuel spillage as the hoses are disconnected, and plug the exposed ends to prevent further spillage and the ingress of dirt. Position the hoses out of the way.

11 Note their locations and disconnect the



4.10 Fuel supply (A) and return (B) hose connections at the fuel pump

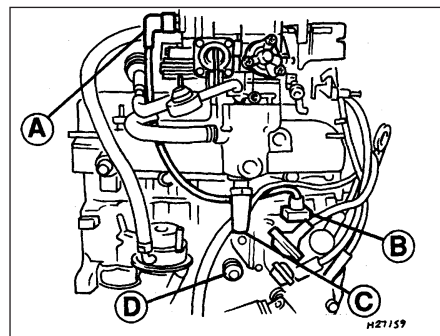
wiring connectors from the following (see illustrations):

- Coolant temperature gauge sender unit.
- The oil pressure switch.
- The radio earth lead.
- The cooling fan thermostatic switch.
- The DIS ignition coil.
- The crankshaft speed/position sensor.
- The engine coolant temperature sensor.
- The idle cut-off valve.

12 Apply the handbrake, then raise the vehicle at the front end and support it on axle stands.

13 Unscrew the retaining nuts, and detach the exhaust downpipe from the exhaust manifold. Remove the seal from the joint flange.

14 Refer to Chapter 5 for details, and remove the starter motor.



4.11A Wiring connections to the HCS engine

A Idle cut-off valve

B DIS ignition coil

C Engine coolant temperature sensor

D Oil pressure switch

15 Undo the two retaining bolts, and remove the clutch lower cover plate.

16 Unscrew the retaining bolt, and detach the gearshift stabiliser from the transmission.

17 Unscrew and remove the engine/transmission flange attachment bolts and also the bolt fitted from the front, securing the earth lead (from the underside) (see illustration).

18 Unscrew and remove the single bolt securing the engine mounting brace to the crossmember (see illustration).

19 Check that the appropriate underside attachments are disconnected and out of the way, then lower the vehicle to the ground.

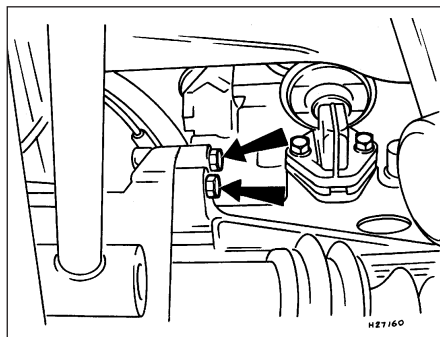
20 Unbolt and remove the heat shield from the exhaust manifold.

21 Attach a suitable hoist to the engine. It is possible to fabricate lifting eyes to connect the hoist to the engine, but make sure that they are strong enough, and connect them to the inlet and exhaust manifold at diagonally-opposite ends of the engine (see illustration).

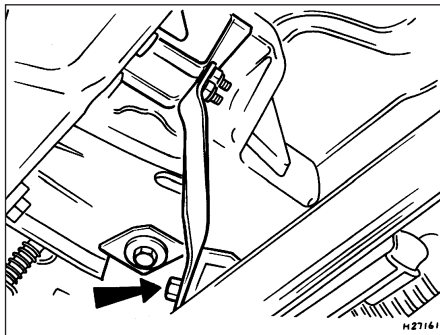
22 With the hoist securely connected, take the weight of the engine, then unscrew the two retaining nuts to detach the engine mounting from the apron panel, and the single bolt to disconnect it at the mounting bracket (see illustration).



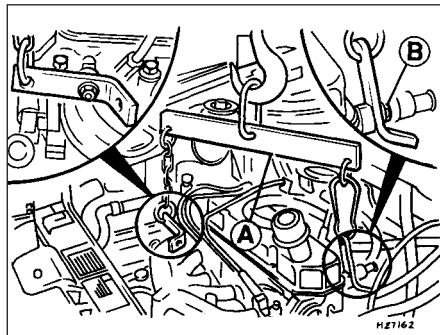
4.11B Engine crankshaft speed/position sensor and multi-plug



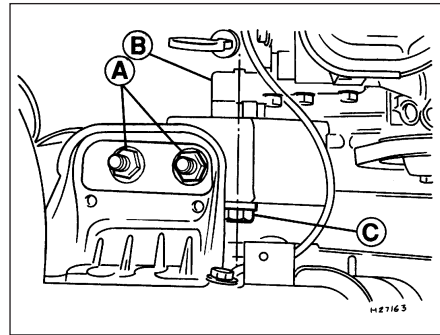
4.17 Engine-to-transmission flange attachment bolts (arrowed)



4.18 Mounting brace-to-crossmember bolt (arrowed)



4.21 Engine lifter and attachment points (A) and M8 x 35 bolt location (B)



4.22 Detach the engine mounting fixing at the points indicated

A Front apron panel bracket nuts

B Mounting bracket

C Bolt-to-engine bracket

23 Locate a jack under the transmission, and raise it to take the weight of the transmission.

24 Unscrew and remove the remaining engine-to-transmission retaining bolts on the upper flange.

25 Check around the engine to ensure that all of the relevant fixings and attachments are disconnected and out of the way for the removal.

26 Enlist the aid of an assistant, then move the engine forwards and away from the transmission, whilst simultaneously raising the transmission. When the engine is separated from the transmission, carefully guide it up and out of the engine compartment. Do not allow the weight of the engine to hang on the transmission input shaft at any point during the removal (or refitting) of the engine. When the engine sump is clear of the vehicle, swing the power unit out of the way, and lower it onto a trolley (if available). Unless a mobile hoist is being used, it will be necessary to move the vehicle rearwards and out of the way in order to allow the engine to be lowered for removal. In this instance, ensure that the weight of the transmission is well supported as the vehicle is moved.

27 While the engine is removed, check the mountings; renew them if they are worn or damaged. Similarly, check the condition of all coolant and vacuum hoses and pipes (see Chapter 1); components that are normally hidden can now be checked properly, and should be renewed if there is any doubt at all about their condition. Also, take the opportunity to overhaul the clutch components (see Chapter 8). It is regarded by many as good working practice to renew the clutch assembly as a matter of course, whenever major engine overhaul work is carried out. Check also the condition of all components (such as the transmission oil seals) disturbed on removal, and renew any that are damaged or worn.

Refitting

28 Refitting is in general, a reversal of the removal procedure, but the following special points should be noted.

29 Before coupling the engine to the transmission, apply a thin smear of high-melting-point grease onto the transmission input shaft splines. If the clutch has been removed, ensure that the clutch disc is centralised, and

disconnect the clutch cable from the release lever on the transmission casing.

30 Tighten all fixings to their recommended torque wrench settings.

31 Check that the mating faces are clean, and fit a new exhaust downpipe-to-manifold gasket and self-locking nuts when reconnecting this joint.

32 Ensure that all wiring connections are correctly and securely made.

33 Remove the plugs from the fuel lines before reconnecting them correctly and securely.

34 Reconnect and adjust the accelerator and choke cables as described in Chapter 4. The refitting details for the air cleaner unit are also given in that Chapter.

35 Renew any coolant hoses (and/or retaining clips) that are not in good condition.

36 Refer to Chapter 8 for details on reconnecting the clutch cable.

37 When the engine is fully refitted, check that the various hoses are connected, and then top-up the engine oil and coolant levels as described in Chapter 1.

38 When engine refitting is completed, refer to Section 22 for the engine start-up procedures.

5 Engine/transmission - removal and refitting (CVH engine)



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when disconnecting any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow naked flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area, and don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a clothes dryer or water heater) is installed. If you spill petrol on your skin, rinse it off immediately. Have a fire extinguisher rated for petrol fires handy, and know how to use it.

Note: Read through the entire Section, as well as reading the advice in the preceding Section, before beginning this procedure. The engine and transmission are removed as a unit, lowered to the ground and removed from underneath, then separated outside the vehicle.

Removal

1 On all fuel-injected engines, refer to

Chapter 4B and depressurise the fuel system. **2** Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Referring to Chapter 1 for details, drain the coolant and the engine oil. Refit the drain plug to the sump on completion.

4 Refer to Chapter 11 for details, and remove the bonnet. Store it in a safe area where it will not get damaged.

5 Remove the air cleaner unit as described in Chapter 4. On 1.6 litre EFi fuel-injected models, remove the air inlet components and the complete air cleaner unit.

6 Release the retaining clips and detach the coolant top hose, the heater hose and the radiator overflow hose from the thermostat housing. Disconnect the coolant hose from the inlet manifold, and the bottom hose from the water pump and/or the radiator (see illustrations). On 1.4 litre CFi fuel-injected models, also disconnect the coolant hose from the injection unit. On 1.6 EFi models, detach the heater hose Y-connector. Allow for coolant spillage as the hoses are detached, note their routing, and position them out of the way.

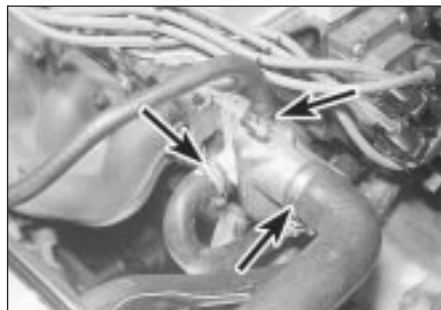
7 Refer to Chapter 4 for details, and disconnect the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage and support/adjuster bracket. Where applicable, also disconnect the choke cable. Position the cable(s) out of the way.

8 On carburettor models, disconnect the fuel supply hose from the fuel pump, and the return hose from the carburettor.

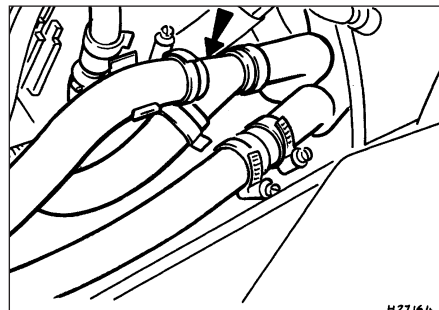
9 On CFi models, detach the fuel hose at the injector/pressure regulator unit, and the return line, by compressing the couplings whilst pulling the hoses free from their connections. On EFi models, unscrew the union nut to detach the fuel line from the fuel rail; release the retaining clip to detach the return pipe from the pressure regulator. Plug the exposed ends of the hoses and connections, to prevent fuel spillage and the ingress of dirt. Position the hoses out of the way.

10 Press the clamp ring inwards, and simultaneously pull free the brake servo hose from the inlet manifold. Position it out of the way.

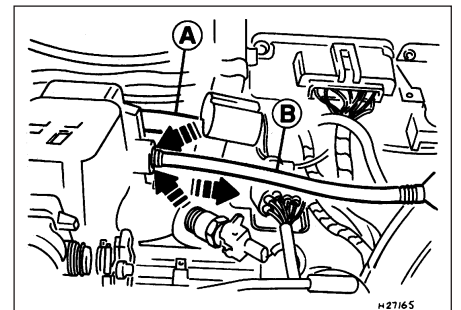
11 On CFi and EFi models, detach the vacuum hose from the MAP sensor, and the hose between the carbon canister and the fuel injection unit (see illustration).



5.6A Coolant hose connections to the thermostat (arrowed)



5.6B Heater coolant hoses and Y-connector on 1.6 litre EFi fuel-injected models



5.11 Vacuum hose to MAP sensor (A) and brake servo (B)



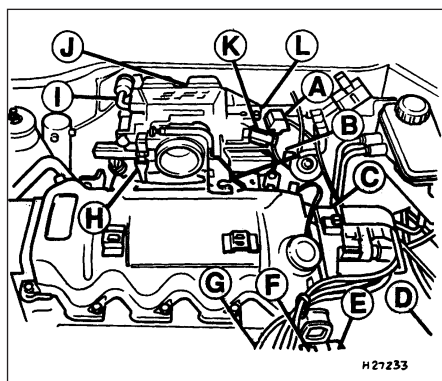
5.12A Disconnect the wiring at the temperature gauge sender unit . . .



5.12B . . . the oil pressure switch . . .

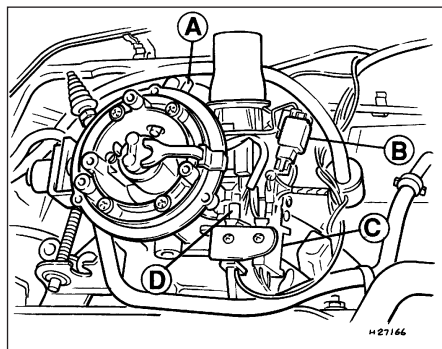


5.12C . . . and the crankshaft speed/position sensor



5.12D Engine and associated component wiring plug connections

- A Main wiring loom
- B Road speed sensor unit
- C DIS ignition coil
- D Reversing light switch
- E Cooling fan temperature sensor
- F Temperature gauge sender
- G Engine speed/crankshaft position sensor
- H Throttle position sensor
- I Idle speed control valve
- J Coolant temperature sensor
- K Intake air temperature sensor
- L Oil pressure switch



5.12E Wiring connections to the CFI unit on the 1.4 litre engine

- A Coolant temperature sensor
- B Throttle plate control motor
- C Throttle position sensor
- D Injector

12 Note their connections and routings, and detach the following wiring connections, according to model:

- a) Coolant temperature sender unit (see illustration).
- b) Oil pressure switch (see illustration).
- c) DIS ignition coil unit.
- d) Coolant temperature sensor.
- e) Cooling fan thermostatic switch.
- f) Carburettor.
- g) Earth lead (radio).
- h) Reversing light switch (from transmission).
- i) Crankshaft speed/position sensor (see illustration).
- j) Earth leads from the transmission and engine.

Additional items specific to CFI and EFI models only (see illustrations).

- a) Inlet air temperature sensor.
- b) Vehicle speed sensor.
- c) Throttle plate control motor (CFI models).
- d) Throttle position sensor.
- e) Injector harness connector.
- f) Idle speed control valve (EFI models).

13 Unscrew the retaining bolt and detach the bracket locating the wiring and coolant hoses above the transmission.

14 Disconnect the speedometer drive cable from the transmission.

15 On manual transmission models, disconnect the clutch cable from the release lever at the transmission (see Chapter 8 for details). Position the cable out of the way.

16 Unscrew the two retaining bolts, and detach the engine/transmission mounting from the mounting bracket (see illustration).

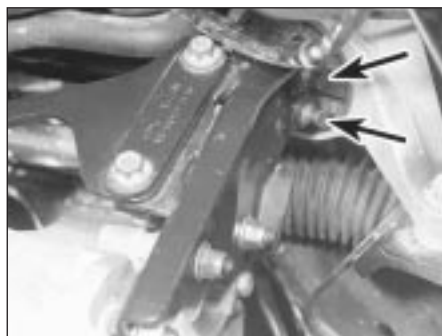
17 Apply the handbrake, then raise and support the vehicle at the front end on axle stands. Allow sufficient clearance under the vehicle to withdraw the engine and transmission units from under the front end.

18 Where applicable on catalytic converter-equipped vehicles, release the multi-plug from the bracket and disconnect the wiring connector from the oxygen sensor in the exhaust downpipe (see illustration).

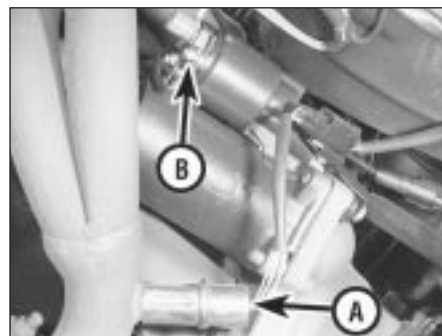
19 Undo the three retaining bolts, detach the exhaust downpipe from the manifold, and collect the gasket from the flange joint (see illustration). Now disconnect the exhaust downpipe from the rest of the system, and remove it from the vehicle. Where applicable, disconnect the pulse-air supply hose from the check valve. Noting their connections (to ensure correct reassembly), detach the appropriate system vacuum hoses at the PVS (three-port vacuum switch) under the inlet manifold.

20 Where fitted, undo the four retaining nuts and two bolts securing the front part of the exhaust heat shield to the floor, then remove the heat shield (see illustration).

21 Note their connections, and detach the wiring from the starter motor and the alternator. Unbolt and remove the starter motor.



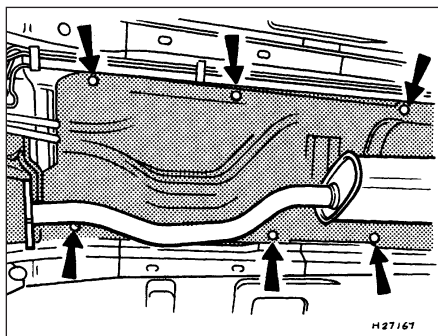
5.16 Engine/transmission mounting bracket bolts (arrowed)



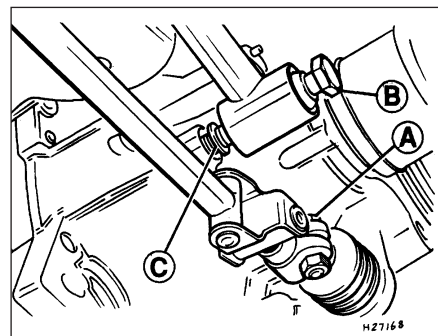
5.18 Wiring connections to the oxygen sensor (A) and starter motor (B)



5.19 Exhaust downpipe-to-manifold flange and securing bolts



5.20 Exhaust system heat shield, showing securing nut and bolt locations



5.22 Manual transmission shift rod clamp bolt (A), stabiliser-to-transmission bolt (B) and washer (C)

Manual transmission models

22 Select fourth gear, to assist in correct adjustment of the gearchange during reassembly. If it is likely that the gear lever will be moved from this position before refitting, mark the relative position of the transmission shift rod and the selector shaft before separating them. Undo the clamp bolt, and then pull free and detach the shift rod from the selector shaft (see illustration).

23 Unscrew the retaining bolt, and detach the shift rod stabiliser from the transmission. As it is detached, note the washer located between the stabiliser and the transmission. Tie the stabiliser and the shift rod up out of the way.

Automatic transmission models

24 Unclip and detach the wiring connector from the starter inhibitor switch (on the transmission housing).

25 Referring to Chapter 4 for details, unhook the accelerator (cam plate) cable from the carburettor or fuel injection unit (as applicable) at the transmission end of the cable. Undo the retaining bolt and detach the cable sheath bracket from the transmission. Detach the cam plate cable from the link.

26 Undo the two nuts from the selector cable bracket which connects it to the lever on the selector shaft. Disconnect the yoke from the lever on the selector shaft and the cable from the lever.

27 Unscrew the union nuts, and disconnect the oil cooler feed and return pipes from the transmission. Allow for a certain amount of spillage, and plug the connections to prevent the ingress of dirt.

All models

28 Note the direction of fitting, unscrew the retaining nut and withdraw the Torx-type clamp bolt securing the lower suspension arm to the spindle carrier on each side.

29 Refer to Chapter 10 for details, and detach the right-hand track rod end balljoint from the spindle carrier.

30 Insert a suitable lever between the right-hand driveshaft inner joint and the transmission housing, and prise free the driveshaft from the transmission; be prepared for oil spillage from the transmission case through the vacated driveshaft aperture. As it is being prised free, simultaneously pull the roadwheel outwards on that side, to enable the driveshaft inboard end to separate from the transmission. Once it is free, suspend and support the driveshaft from the steering gear, to prevent unnecessary strain being placed on the driveshaft joints. The outer joint must not be angled in excess of 45°, the inner joint no more than 20°, or the joints may be damaged. Refer to Chapter 8 for further details if necessary.

31 Insert a suitable plastic plug (or if available, an old driveshaft joint), into the

transmission driveshaft aperture, to immobilise the gears of the differential unit.

32 Proceed as described above in paragraphs 29 to 31, and disconnect the left-hand driveshaft from the transmission.

33 Unscrew the retaining bolts, and remove the brace between the transmission left front mounting bracket and the transmission flange (see illustration).

34 Connect a suitable lift hoist and sling to the engine, connecting to the lifting eyes (see illustration). When securely connected, take the weight of the engine/transmission unit so that the tension is relieved from the mountings.

35 Unscrew the two retaining bolts, and detach the transmission front mounting from the side member.

36 Unscrew the three retaining bolts, and remove the auxiliary drivebelt cover from under the crankshaft pulley.

37 Unscrew the two retaining nuts, and detach the right-hand engine mounting from the suspension strut mounting. On EFI engines, remove the MAP sensor (see illustration).

38 The engine/transmission unit should now be ready for removal from the vehicle. Check that all of the associated connections and fittings are disconnected from the engine and transmission, and positioned out of the way.

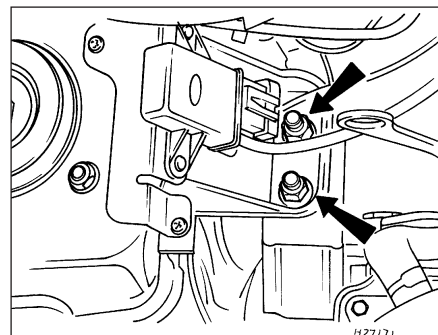
39 Enlist the aid of an assistant to help steady and guide the power unit down



5.33 Remove the brace between the transmission left front mounting bracket and the transmission flange



5.34 Connect a suitable lift hoist and sling to the engine, connecting to the lifting eyes



5.37 Right-hand engine mounting bracket and MAP sensor on EFI models



5.40 Removing the engine/transmission from under the vehicle

through the engine compartment as it is removed. If available, position a suitable engine trolley or crawler board under the engine/transmission so that when lowered, the power unit can be withdrawn from the front end of the vehicle, and then moved to the area where it is to be cleaned and dismantled. On automatic transmission models, particular care must be taken not to damage the transmission fluid pan (sump) during the removal and subsequent refitting processes.

40 Carefully lower the engine and transmission unit, ensuring that no fittings become snagged. Detach the hoist and remove the power unit from under the vehicle (see illustration).

41 Referring to the relevant Part of Chapter 7, separate the transmission from the engine.

42 While the engine/transmission is removed, check the mountings; renew them if they are worn or damaged. Similarly, check the condition of all coolant and vacuum hoses and pipes (see Chapter 1). Components that are normally hidden can now be checked properly, and should be renewed if there is any doubt at all about their condition. Where the vehicle is fitted with manual transmission, take the opportunity to inspect the clutch components (see Chapter 8). It is regarded by many as good working practice to renew the clutch assembly as a matter of course, whenever major engine overhaul work is carried out. Check also the condition of all components (such as the transmission oil seals) disturbed on removal, and renew any that are damaged or worn.

Refitting

43 Refitting is a reversal of removal, however note the following additional points:

- Refer to the applicable Chapters and Sections as for removal.
- Fit new spring clips to the grooves in the inboard end of the right- and left-hand driveshaft joints. Lubricate the splines with transmission oil prior to fitting.
- Renew the exhaust flange gasket when reconnecting the exhaust. Ensure that all wires are routed clear of the exhaust system and, on catalytic converter

- models, ensure that the heat shields are securely and correctly fitted.
- Ensure that all earth lead connections are clean and securely made.
- Tighten all nuts and bolts to the specified torque.
- Fit a new oil filter, and refill the engine and transmission with oil, with reference to Chapter 1.
- Refill the cooling system with reference to Chapter 1.

44 When engine and transmission refitting is complete, refer to the procedures described in Section 22 before restarting the engine.

6 Engine/transmission - removal and refitting (Zetec engine)



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when disconnecting any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow naked flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area, and don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a clothes dryer or water heater) is installed. If you spill petrol on your skin, rinse it off immediately. Have a fire extinguisher rated for petrol fires handy, and know how to use it.

Note: Read through the entire Section, as well as reading the advice in the preceding Section, before beginning this procedure. The engine and transmission are removed as a unit, lowered to the ground and removed from underneath, then separated outside the vehicle.

Removal

- Park the vehicle on firm, level ground, apply the handbrake firmly, and slacken the nuts securing both front roadwheels.
- Depressurise the fuel system as described in Chapter 4B.
- Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- Place protective covers on the wings, then remove the bonnet (see Chapter 11).
- Drain the cooling system and the engine oil

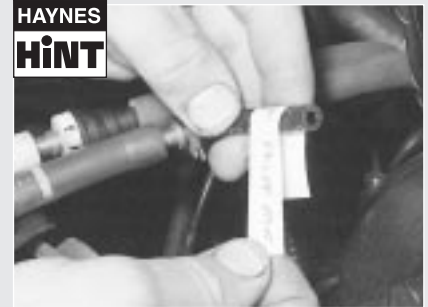


6.12 Unbolt the engine/transmission-to-body earth lead from the transmission

(see Chapter 1). Also drain the transmission (MTX-75 type only) as described in the relevant Part of Chapter 7.

6 Whenever you disconnect any vacuum lines, coolant and emissions hoses, wiring loom connectors, earth straps and fuel lines as part of the following procedure, always label them clearly, so that they can be correctly reassembled. Take instant photos, or sketch the locations of components and brackets.

HAYNES HINT



Masking tape and/or a touch-up paint applicator work well for marking items.

7 Remove the air inlet components and the complete air cleaner unit as described in Chapter 4B.

8 Equalise the pressure in the fuel tank by removing the filler cap, then release the fuel feed and return quick-release couplings, and pull the hoses off the fuel pipes. Plug or cap all open fittings.

9 Disconnect the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage as described in Chapter 4B. Secure the cable clear of the engine/transmission.

10 Releasing its wire clip, unplug the power steering pressure switch electrical connector, then disconnect the earth cable from the engine lifting eye. Refit the bolt after disconnecting the cable.

11 Marking or labelling all components as they are disconnected (see paragraph 6 above), disconnect the vacuum hoses as follows:

- From the rear of the inlet manifold.
- The braking system vacuum servo unit hose - from the inlet manifold (see Chapter 9 for details).
- While you are there, trace the vacuum line from the pulse-air filter housing, and disconnect it from the pulse-air solenoid valve.
- Secure all these hoses so that they won't get damaged as the engine/transmission is removed.

12 Unbolt the engine/transmission-to-body earth lead from the transmission (see illustration). Disconnect the speedometer drive cable (see Chapter 12) and secure it clear of the engine/transmission.

13 Disconnect the earth strap at the top of the engine/transmission flange, and the adjacent bolt securing the wiring harness clip.



6.15A Disconnect the wiring multi-plug (arrowed) from the ignition coil ..



6.15B ... the radio interference suppressor ...



6.15C ... and the reversing light switch

14 Where the vehicle is fitted with manual transmission, disconnect the clutch cable (see Chapter 8).

15 Marking or labelling all components as they are disconnected (see paragraph 5 above), disconnect the engine wiring connectors as follows:

- a) The multi-plug from the DIS ignition coil (see illustration).
- b) The radio interference suppressor from the DIS ignition coil (see illustration).
- c) The reversing light switch multi-plug (see illustration).
- d) The engine main wiring loom multi-plug behind the DIS ignition coil.
- e) The crankshaft speed/position sensor and vehicle speed sensor multi-plugs.
- f) The oxygen sensor multi-plug.

16 Unbolt the exhaust manifold heat shield, and lift it clear.

17 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt (see Chapter 1).

18 Marking or labelling all components as they are disconnected (see paragraph 6 above) and catching as much as possible of the escaping coolant in the drain tray, disconnect the cooling system hoses and pipes as follows - refer to Chapter 3 for further details, if required:

- a) The coolant hoses at the thermostat housing.
- b) The coolant hose at the metal cross pipe lower connection.
- c) The radiator top and bottom hoses.

19 Undo the nut securing the power steering pump pressure pipe clip to the timing belt cover. Release the unions and clips, and disconnect the pump pressure and return lines. Collect the fluid in a suitable container, and plug the disconnected unions. Lift the power steering fluid reservoir out of its bracket, and move it clear of the engine.

20 Apply the handbrake, then raise the vehicle and support it securely on axle stands, then remove the front roadwheels.

21 Refer to Chapter 5 if necessary, and disconnect the wiring from the starter motor and alternator.

22 Disconnect the oil pressure switch wiring connector.

23 On automatic transmission models, disconnect the starter inhibitor switch wiring and disconnect the selector cable (see Chapter 7B). Secure the cable clear of the engine/transmission.

24 Where the vehicle is fitted with manual transmission, disconnect the gearchange linkage and transmission support rod from the rear of the transmission - make alignment marks as they are disconnected (see illustrations).

25 On automatic transmission models, clean around the unions, then disconnect the fluid pipes from the transmission. Plug the openings in the transmission and the pipe unions after removal.

26 Unscrew the nuts to disconnect the exhaust system front downpipe from the

manifold (see illustration). Undo the nuts securing the catalytic converter to the rear part of the exhaust system, and remove the converter and downpipe assembly.

27 Where the vehicle is fitted with air conditioning, refer to Chapter 3 and disconnect any components that are likely to impede removal of the engine/transmission from below.



Warning: Do not disconnect the refrigerant hoses.

28 Disconnect both anti-roll bar links from their respective suspension struts, and both track rod end ball joints from their spindle carriers (see Chapter 10).

29 Noting the direction of fitting, unscrew the retaining nut and withdraw the Torx-type clamp bolt securing the lower suspension arm to the spindle carrier on each side.

30 Insert a suitable lever between the right-hand driveshaft inner joint and the transmission housing, and prise free the driveshaft from the transmission; be prepared for oil spillage from the transmission case through the vacated driveshaft aperture. As it is being prised free, simultaneously pull the roadwheel outwards on that side to enable the driveshaft inboard end to separate from the transmission. Once it is free, suspend and support the driveshaft from the steering gear, to prevent unnecessary strain being placed on the driveshaft joints. The outer joint must not be angled in excess of 45°, the inner joint no



6.24A Disconnect the gearchange linkage ...



6.24B ... and transmission support rod



6.26 Disconnect the exhaust system front downpipe from the manifold



6.40 Removing the engine/transmission unit from under the car

more than 20°. Refer to Chapter 8 for further details if necessary.

31 Insert a suitable plastic plug (or if available, an old driveshaft joint), into the transmission driveshaft aperture, to immobilise the gears of the differential unit.

32 Proceed as described above in paragraphs 30 and 31, and disconnect the left-hand driveshaft from the transmission.

33 Remove the oil filter, referring to Chapter 1 if necessary.

34 Undo the two upper bolts and one lower bolt, and remove the right-hand engine mounting support brace.

35 Connect a suitable lift hoist and sling to the engine, connecting to the lift eyes. When securely connected, take the weight of the engine/transmission unit so that the tension is relieved from the mountings.

36 From above, undo the two bolts securing the left-hand rear mounting to the transmission bracket.

37 Undo the two nuts securing the right-hand mounting to the body adjacent to the suspension strut tower.

38 Undo the two bolts securing the left-hand front mounting to the body side member.

39 The engine/transmission unit should now be hanging on the hoist only, with all components which connect it to the rest of the vehicle disconnected or removed, and secured well clear of the unit. Make a final check that this is the case.

40 Lower the engine/transmission to the ground, and withdraw it from under the vehicle (see illustration).

41 Referring to the relevant Part of Chapter 7, separate the transmission from the engine.

42 While the engine/transmission is removed, check the mountings; renew them if they are worn or damaged. Similarly, check the condition of all coolant and vacuum hoses and pipes (see Chapter 1); components that are normally hidden can now be checked properly, and should be renewed if there is any doubt at all about their condition. Where the vehicle is fitted with manual transmission, take the opportunity to overhaul the clutch components (see Chapter 8). It is regarded by many as good working practice to renew the clutch assembly as a matter of course, whenever major engine overhaul work is

carried out. Check also the condition of all components (such as the transmission oil seals) disturbed on removal, and renew any that are damaged or worn.

Refitting

43 Refitting is a reversal of removal, however note the following additional points:

- Refer to the applicable Chapters and Sections as for removal.
- Fit new spring clips to the grooves in the inboard end of the right- and left-hand driveshaft joints. Lubricate the splines with transmission oil prior to fitting.
- Renew the exhaust flange gaskets when reconnecting the exhaust. Ensure that all wires are routed clear of the exhaust system, and that the heat shields are securely and correctly fitted.
- Ensure that all earth lead connections are clean and securely made.
- Tighten all nuts and bolts to the specified torque.
- Fit a new oil filter, and refill the engine and transmission with oil, with reference to Chapter 1.
- Refill the cooling system with reference to Chapter 1.
- Bleed the power steering system with reference to Chapter 10.

44 When engine and transmission refitting is complete, refer to the procedures described in Section 22 before restarting the engine.

7 Engine overhaul - dismantling sequence

1 The engine dismantling and reassembly tasks are made easier if the engine is mounted on a portable engine stand. These stands can be hired from a tool hire shop. Before mounting the engine on a stand, the flywheel/driveplate must first be removed, to enable the engine-to-stand fixing bolts to be fitted.

2 If a stand is not available, it is possible to dismantle the engine with it suitably supported on a strong workbench or on the floor. Be careful not to tip or drop the engine when working without a stand.

3 If a reconditioned engine is to be fitted, all external components of the original engine must be removed in order to transfer them to the replacement unit (just as they will if you are doing a complete engine rebuild). These components include the following:

- Alternator and mounting brackets.
- DIS ignition coil unit (and mounting bracket), HT leads and spark plugs.
- The thermostat and housing cover.
- Carburettor/fuel injection system components.
- Inlet and exhaust manifolds.
- Oil filter.
- Fuel pump.
- Engine mountings.

i) Flywheel/driveplate.

j) Water pump.

Note: When removing the external components from the engine, pay close attention to details that may be helpful or important during refitting. Note the fitted positions of gaskets, seals, washers, bolts and other small items.

4 If you are obtaining a short motor (which consists of the cylinder block, crankshaft, pistons and connecting rods all assembled), the cylinder head, sump, oil pump and timing chain/belt will have to be removed also.

5 If a complete overhaul is planned, the engine can be dismantled and the internal components removed in the following order:

- Inlet and exhaust manifolds.
- Timing chain/belt, tensioner and sprockets.
- Cylinder head.
- Flywheel/driveplate.
- Sump.
- Oil pump.
- Pistons (with connecting rods).
- Crankshaft.
- Camshaft and tappets (HCS engine).

6 Before starting the dismantling and overhaul procedures, make sure that you have all of the correct tools for the jobs to tackled. Refer to the introductory pages at the start of this manual for further information.

8 Cylinder head - dismantling



Note: New and reconditioned cylinder heads are available from the manufacturers, and from engine overhaul specialists. Due to the fact that some specialist tools are required for the dismantling and inspection procedures, and new components may not be readily available (refer to Section 1), it may be more practical and economical for the home mechanic to purchase a reconditioned head, rather than to dismantle, inspect and recondition the original head.

HCS engine

1 Unscrew and remove the five retaining bolts, and lift off the inlet manifold (complete with carburettor). Remove the inlet manifold-to-cylinder head gasket.

2 Unscrew and remove the eight retaining nuts, and lift off the exhaust manifold from the cylinder head. Remove the exhaust manifold-to-cylinder head gasket.

3 Unscrew and remove the temperature gauge sender unit.

4 To remove the valve springs and valves from the cylinder head, a standard valve spring compressor will be required. Fit the spring compressor to the first valve and spring to be removed. Assuming that all of the valves and springs are to be removed, start by compressing the No 1 valve (nearest the timing cover end) spring. Take care not to



8.5 Compress the valve spring to remove the collets



8.6A Remove the valve spring retainer and spring . . .



8.6B . . . followed by the valve

damage the valve stem with the compressor, and do not over-compress the spring, or the valve stem may bend. When tightening the compressor, it may be found that the spring retainer does not release and the collets are then difficult to remove. In this instance, remove the compressor, then press a piece of tube (or a socket of suitable diameter) so that it does not interfere with the removal of the collets, against the retainer's outer rim. Tap the tube (or socket) with a hammer to unsettle the components.

5 Refit the compressor, and wind it in to enable the collets to be extracted (**see illustration**).

6 Loosen off the compressor, and remove the retainer and spring. Withdraw the valve from the cylinder head (**see illustrations**).

7 Prise up and remove the valve stem seal (**see illustration**).

8 Repeat the removal procedure with each of the remaining seven valve assemblies in turn. As they are removed, keep the individual valves and their components together, and in their respective order of fitting, by placing them in a separate labelled bag (**see illustration**).

CVH engine

9 Remove the camshaft, rocker arms and tappets as described in Part B of this Chapter, being careful to store the hydraulic tappets as described.

10 Valve removal should commence with No 1 valve (nearest the timing belt end).

11 Compress the valve spring of the No 1 valve using a suitable valve compressor. A conventional valve spring compressor will be ideal, but if preferred, a forked tool (Part No 21-097) can be purchased or fabricated. The tool engages on the rocker stud, and a nut and distance piece are used to compress it and the valve spring (**see illustration**).

12 Compress the valve spring (and upper retainer) just enough to enable the split collets to be released from the groove in the top of the valve stem, then separate and extract the split collets from the valve. Do not compress the spring any further than is necessary, or the valve stem may bend. If the valve spring retainer does not release from the collets as the spring is compressed, remove the compressor, and position a piece of suitable tube over the end of the retainer, so that it does not impinge on the collets. Place a small block of wood under the valve head (with the head resting face down on the workbench), then tap the end of the tube with a hammer. Now refit the compressor tool, and compress the valve spring. The collets should release.

13 Extract the split collets, then slowly unscrew, release and remove the compressor.

14 Withdraw the upper retainer and the valve spring from the valve stem, then remove the valve from the underside of the cylinder head. Use a suitable screwdriver to prise free and

remove the valve stem oil seal from the guide.

15 Remove the lower retainer.

16 Repeat the removal procedure with each of the remaining valve assemblies in turn. As they are removed, keep the valves and their associated components together, and in the originally-installed order, by placing them in a separate labelled bag (**see illustration 8.8**).

Zetec engine

17 Remove the camshafts and hydraulic tappets (Part C of this Chapter, Section 13), being careful to store the hydraulic tappets as described.

18 Remove the cylinder head (Part C of this Chapter, Section 14).

19 Using a valve spring compressor, compress each valve spring in turn until the split collets can be removed. A special valve spring compressor will be required, to reach into the deep wells in the cylinder head without risk of damaging the hydraulic tappet bores; such compressors are now widely available from most good motor accessory shops. Release the compressor, and lift off the spring upper seat and spring (**see illustrations**).

20 If, when the valve spring compressor is screwed down, the spring upper seat refuses to free and expose the split collets, gently tap the top of the tool, directly over the upper seat, with a light hammer. This will free the seat.



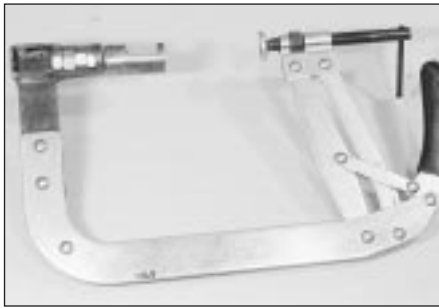
8.7 Prise off the valve stem oil seal



8.8 Use a labelled plastic bag to store and identify valve components



8.11 Compressing a valve spring using a forked type compressor



8.19A Standard valve spring compressor modified as shown . . .



8.19B . . . or purpose-built special version, is required to compress valve springs without damaging cylinder head . . .



8.19C . . . so that both valve split collets can be removed from the valve's stem - small magnetic pick-up tool prevents loss of small metal components on removal and refitting

21 Withdraw the valve through the combustion chamber. If it binds in the guide (won't pull through), push it back in, and deburr the area around the collet groove with a fine file or whetstone; take care not to mark the hydraulic tappet bores.

22 Ford recommend the use of their service tool 21-160 to extract the valve spring lower seat/stem oil seals; while this is almost indispensable if the seals are to be removed without risk of (extremely expensive) damage to the cylinder head, we found that a serviceable substitute can be made from a strong spring of suitable size. Screw on the tool or spring so that it bites into the seal, then draw the seal off the valve guide (see illustrations).

23 It is essential that the valves are kept together with their collets, spring seats and springs, and in their correct sequence (unless they are so badly worn that they are to be

renewed). If they are going to be kept and used again, place them in a labelled polythene bag or similar small container (see illustration 8.8). Note that No 1 valve is nearest to the timing belt end of the engine.

24 If the oil-retaining valve is to be removed (to flush out the cylinder head oil galleries thoroughly), seek the advice of a Ford dealer as to how it can be extracted; it may be that the only course of action involves destroying the valve as follows. Screw a self-tapping screw into its ventilation hole, and use the screw to provide purchase with which the valve can be drawn out; a new valve must be purchased and pressed into place on reassembly (see illustration).

9 Cylinder head and valve components - cleaning and inspection



Note: Always check first what replacement parts are available before planning any overhaul operation; refer to Section 1. A Ford dealer, or a good engine reconditioning specialist/automotive parts supplier, may be able to suggest alternatives which will enable you to overcome the lack of replacement parts.

1 Thorough cleaning of the cylinder head and valve components, followed by a detailed inspection, will enable you to decide how much valve service work must be carried out during the engine overhaul. **Note:** If the engine has been severely overheated, it is best to assume that the cylinder head is warped, and to check carefully for signs of this.



8.22A Ford service tool in use to remove valve spring lower seat/stem oil seals . . .



8.22B . . . can be replaced by home-made tool if suitable spring can be found



8.24 Cylinder head oil-retaining valve (arrowed)

Cleaning

2 Scrape away all traces of old gasket material and sealing compound from the cylinder head.

3 Scrape away the carbon from the combustion chambers and ports, then wash the cylinder head thoroughly with paraffin or a suitable solvent.

4 Scrape off any heavy carbon deposits that may have formed on the valves, then use a power-operated wire brush to remove deposits from the valve heads and stems.

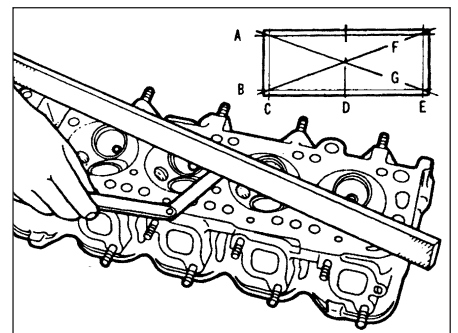
Inspection

Note: Be sure to perform all the following inspection procedures before concluding that the services of a machine shop or engine overhaul specialist are required. Make a list of all items that require attention.

Cylinder head

5 Inspect the head very carefully for cracks, evidence of coolant leakage, and other damage. If cracks are found, a new cylinder head should be obtained.

6 Use a straight edge and feeler blade to check that the cylinder head gasket surface is not distorted (see illustration). If it is, it may be possible to re-surface it.



9.6 Check the cylinder head gasket surfaces for warpage, in the planes indicated (A to G). Try to slip a feeler gauge under the precision straight edge (see the Specifications for the maximum distortion allowed, and use a feeler blade of that thickness)



9.12 Measuring the diameter of a valve stem - if any significant difference is found in the readings obtained, excessive valve stem wear is indicated

7 Examine the valve seats in each of the combustion chambers. If they are severely pitted, cracked or burned, then they will need to be renewed or re-cut by an engine overhaul specialist. If they are only slightly pitted, this can be removed by grinding-in the valve heads and seats with fine valve-grinding compound, as described below.

8 If the valve guides are worn, indicated by a side-to-side motion of the valve, new guides must be fitted. Measure the diameter of the existing valve stems (see below) and the bore of the guides, then calculate the clearance, and compare the result with the specified value; if the clearance is excessive, renew the valves or guides as necessary.

9 The renewal of valve guides is best carried out by an engine overhaul specialist.

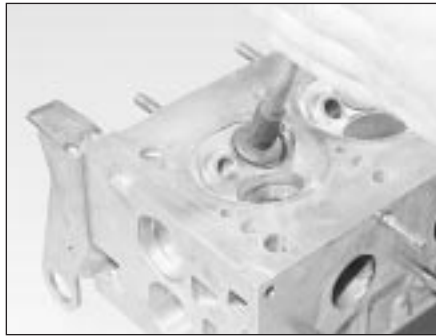
10 If the valve seats are to be re-cut, this must be done *only after* the guides have been renewed.

Valves

11 Examine the head of each valve for pitting, burning, cracks and general wear, and check the valve stem for scoring and wear ridges. Rotate the valve, and check for any obvious indication that it is bent. Look for pits and excessive wear on the tip of each valve stem. Renew any valve that shows any such signs of wear or damage.

12 If the valve appears satisfactory at this stage, measure the valve stem diameter at several points, using a micrometer (**see illustration**). Any significant difference in the readings obtained indicates wear of the valve stem. Should any of these conditions be apparent, the valve(s) must be renewed.

13 If the valves are in satisfactory condition, they should be ground (lapped) into their respective seats, to ensure a smooth gas-tight seal. If the seat is only lightly pitted, or if it has been re-cut, fine grinding compound *only* should be used to produce the required finish. Coarse valve-grinding compound should *not* be used unless a seat is badly burned or deeply pitted; if this is the case, the cylinder head and valves should be inspected by an expert, to decide whether seat re-



9.15 Grinding-in a valve seat - do not grind in the valves any more than absolutely necessary, or their seats will be prematurely sunk into the cylinder head

cutting, or even the renewal of the valve or seat insert, is required.

14 Valve grinding is carried out as follows. Place the cylinder head upside-down on a bench, with a block of wood at each end to give clearance for the valve stems.

15 Smear a trace of (the appropriate grade of) valve-grinding compound on the seat face, and press a suction grinding tool onto the valve head. With a semi-rotary action, grind the valve head to its seat, lifting the valve occasionally to redistribute the grinding compound (**see illustration**). A light spring placed under the valve head will greatly ease this operation.

16 If coarse grinding compound is being used, work only until a dull, matt even surface is produced on both the valve seat and the valve, then wipe off the used compound, and repeat the process with fine compound. When a smooth unbroken ring of light grey matt finish is produced on both the valve and seat, the grinding operation is complete. *Do not* grind in the valves any further than absolutely necessary, or the seat will be prematurely sunk into the cylinder head.

17 When all the valves have been ground-in, carefully wash off *all* traces of grinding compound, using paraffin or a suitable solvent, before reassembly of the cylinder head.

Valve components

18 Examine the valve springs for signs of damage and discolouration, and also measure



9.18 Checking the valve spring free length

their free length (**see illustration**). If possible, compare each of the existing springs with a new component.

19 Stand each spring on a flat surface, and check it for squareness. If any of the springs are damaged, distorted, or have lost their tension, obtain a complete set of new springs.

20 Check the spring upper seats and collets for obvious wear and cracks. Any questionable parts should be renewed, as extensive damage will occur if they fail during engine operation. Any damaged or excessively-worn parts must be renewed; the valve spring lower seat/stem oil seals must be renewed as a matter of course whenever they are disturbed.

21 Check the rocker gear components and hydraulic tappets as described in earlier parts of this Chapter according to engine type.

10 Cylinder head - reassembly



1 Before reassembling the cylinder head, ensure that it is perfectly clean, and no traces of grinding paste are left in the head or on the valves and guides. Use compressed air, if available, to blow out all the oil holes and passages.

2 Commence reassembly of the cylinder head by lubricating the valve stems and guides with clean engine oil.

HCS engine

3 Insert the first valve into its guide. Wipe the oil from the top of the valve stem, then wind some insulation tape over the split collet location groove, to protect the new valve stem seal as it is fitted over the valve and into position. As the seal is fitted, support the valve to prevent it from falling out; push the seal down the valve, and locate it flush to the valve guide. Press the seal down firmly and evenly using a suitable diameter tube or socket, and take care not to distort the seal as it is located. Check that the seal spring is correctly located to ensure that it seals correctly, then remove the tape from the valve stem (**see illustrations**).

4 Locate the valve spring and its retainer over the valve stem, and engage the valve spring



10.3A Tape the end of the valve stem before fitting the valve stem seal



10.3B Press the seal into position using a suitable socket



10.7 Fit the lower retainer



10.8 Locate the seal, and tap it into position over the guide

compressor. Compress the spring and retainer just enough to allow the split collets to be inserted in the location groove in the valve stem. Holding the collets in position, slowly release and remove the valve spring compressor.



A little grease applied to the collet groove will help retain them in position.

5 Repeat the operation on the remaining valves, ensuring that each valve is fitted in its appropriate location.

6 On completion, support the cylinder head on a suitable piece of wood, and lightly strike the end of each valve stem in turn with a

plastic- or copper-faced hammer to fractionally open the valve and seat the valve components.

CVH engine

7 Working on one valve at a time, fit the lower retainer into position (see illustration).

8 Check for correct orientation, then fit the new oil seal into position over the guide. Drive or press the seal squarely into place, using a suitable tube or socket (see illustration).

9 To protect the seal lips from being damaged by the collet grooves in the valve stem as it is passed through the seal, wipe any oil from the stem at the top, and mask the split collet groove on the stem with insulating tape. Lubricate the lips of the valve stem seal, and insert the valve (see illustration).

10 Remove the tape from the grooved section of the valve stem, then locate the spring and the upper retainer over the valve (see illustrations).

11 Locate the valve spring compressor into position, and compress the spring and cup down the valve stem so that the collet's groove is exposed above the upper retainer. Lightly grease the collet's groove in the stem, (to retain the collets in position) then locate the split collets into the groove in the stem. Slowly release and remove the valve spring compressor. As the compressor is released, ensure that the collets remain fully seated in the groove, and the upper retainer rides up

over them to secure them in position (see illustration).

12 Repeat the above operations on the remaining valves, ensuring that each valve assembly is returned to its original position, or where new valves have been fitted, onto the seat to which it was ground.

13 When all of the valves have been fitted, support the cylinder head on a wooden block, and using a plastic or copper-faced hammer, lightly tap the end of each valve stem in turn to seat the respective valve assemblies.

14 Refit the camshaft, tappets and rocker arms to the cylinder head as described in Section 13 of Part B.

Zetec engine

15 Beginning at one end of the head, lubricate and install the first valve. Apply molybdenum disulphide-based grease or clean engine oil to the valve stem, and refit the valve. Where the original valves are being re-used, ensure that each is refitted in its original guide. If new valves are being fitted, insert them into the locations to which they have been ground.

16 Fit the plastic protector supplied with new valve spring lower seat/stem oil seals to the end of the valve stem, then put the new seal squarely on top of the guide, and leave it there; the action of refitting the valve spring



10.9 Insert the valve . . .



10.10A Fit the spring . . .



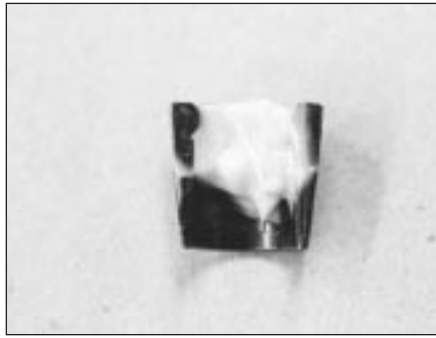
10.10B . . . and the retainer



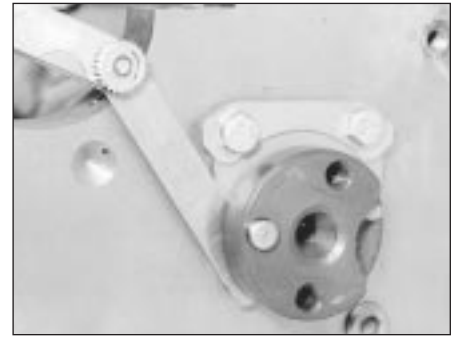
10.11 Insert the split collets into the groove in the valve stem



10.16 Valve spring pressure is sufficient to seat lower seat/stem oil seals on reassembly



10.18 Apply a small dab of grease to each collet before installation - it will hold them in place on the valve stem until the spring is released



11.5 Checking the camshaft endfloat

presses the lower seat/stem oil seal into place (see illustration).

17 Refit the valve spring and upper seat.

18 Compress the spring with a valve spring compressor, and carefully install the collets in the stem groove. Apply a small dab of grease to each collet to hold it in place if necessary (see illustration). Slowly release the compressor, and make sure the collets seat properly.

19 When the valve is installed, place the cylinder head flat on the bench and, using a hammer and interposed block of wood, tap the end of the valve stem gently, to settle the components.

20 Repeat the procedure for the remaining valves. Be sure to return the components to their original locations - don't mix them up!

21 Refit the hydraulic tappets (Part C of this Chapter, Section 13).

11 Camshaft and tappets - removal, inspection and refitting (HCS engine)



Removal

1 Remove the cylinder head as described in Part A, Section 10.

2 Remove the timing chain and the camshaft sprocket as described in Part A, Section 13.

3 Remove the sump as described in Part A, Section 14.



11.7 Withdrawing the camshaft from the front of the engine



11.8 Tappet withdrawal using a valve grinding tool suction cup

4 Invert the engine so that it is supported on its cylinder head face (on a clean work area). This is necessary to make all of the tappets slide to the top of their stroke, thus allowing the camshaft to be withdrawn. Rotate the camshaft through a full turn, to ensure that all of the tappets slide up their bores, clear of the camshaft.

5 Before removing the camshaft, check its endfloat using a dial gauge mounted on the front face of the engine or feeler gauges. Pull the camshaft fully towards the front (timing case) end of the engine, then insert feeler gauges between the camshaft sprocket flange and the camshaft thrust plate to assess the endfloat clearance (see illustration). The camshaft endfloat must be as specified.

6 Undo the two retaining bolts, and remove the camshaft thrust plate.

7 Carefully withdraw the camshaft from the front end of the engine (see illustration).

8 Extract each tappet in turn. Keep them in order of fitting by inserting them in a card with eight holes in it, numbered 1 to 8 (from the timing case end of the engine). A valve grinding tool will be found to be useful for the removal of tappets (see illustration).

Inspection

9 Examine the camshaft bearing journals and lobes for damage or excessive wear. If evident, the camshaft must be renewed.

10 Examine the camshaft bearing internal diameters for signs of damage or excessive wear. If evident, the bearings must be renewed by a Ford dealer.

11 If not carried out on removal, check the camshaft endfloat as described in paragraph 5. If the endfloat is exceeds the specified tolerance, renew the thrust plate.

12 It is seldom that the tappets wear excessively in their bores, but it is likely that after a high mileage, the cam lobe contact surfaces will show signs of depression or grooving.

13 Where this condition is evident, renew the tappets. Grinding out the grooves and wear marks will reduce the thickness of the surface hardening, and will accelerate further wear.

Refitting

14 To refit the tappets and the camshaft, it is essential that the crankcase is inverted.

15 Lubricate their bores and the tappets. Insert each tappet fully into its original bore in the cylinder block.

16 Lubricate the camshaft bearings, camshaft and thrust plate, then insert the camshaft into the crankcase from the timing case end.

17 Fit the thrust plate and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque setting (see illustration). Check that the camshaft is able to rotate freely, and that the endfloat is as specified.



11.17 Refitting the camshaft thrust plate

12 Piston/connecting rod assemblies - removal



Note: Always check first what replacement parts are available before planning any overhaul operation; refer to Section 1. A Ford dealer, or a good engine reconditioning specialist/automotive parts supplier, may be able to suggest alternatives which will enable you to overcome the lack of replacement parts.

HCS engine

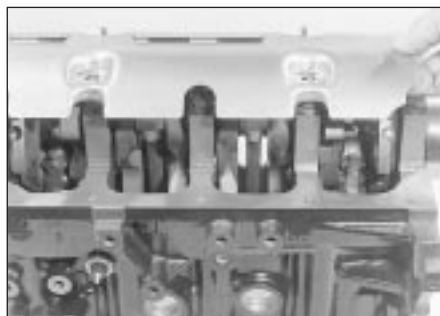
- 1 Remove the cylinder head as described in Part A, Section 10.
- 2 Remove the sump as described in Part A, Section 14, then remove the oil pick-up pipe and strainer.
- 3 Temporarily refit the crankshaft pulley, so that the crankshaft can be rotated. Check that the connecting rod big-end caps have adjacent matching numbers facing towards the camshaft side of the engine. If no marks can be seen, make your own before disturbing any of the components, so that you can be certain of refitting each piston/connecting rod assembly the right way round, to its correct (original) bore, with the cap also the right way round.

CVH engine

- 4 Remove the cylinder head as described in Part B, Section 14.
- 5 Remove the sump as described in Part B, Section 15, then remove the oil pick-up pipe and strainer.
- 6 Temporarily refit the crankshaft pulley, so that the crankshaft can be rotated. Check that the connecting rods have identification numbers - these should be found on the exhaust side of the big-ends. No 1 assembly is at the timing belt end of the engine. If no marks can be seen, make your own before disturbing any of the components, so that you can be certain of refitting each piston/connecting rod assembly the right way round, to its correct (original) bore, with the cap also the right way round.

Zetec engine

Note: While this task is theoretically possible when the engine is in place in the vehicle, in practice, it requires so much preliminary dismantling, and is so difficult to carry out due to the restricted access, that owners are advised to remove the engine from the vehicle first. In addition to the new gaskets and other replacement parts required, a hoist will be needed. Alternatively, an adjustable engine support bar, fitting into the water drain channels on each side of the bonnet aperture, and having a hook which will engage the engine lifting eyes and allow the height of the engine to be adjusted, could be used. Lifting equipment such as this can be hired from most tool hire shops - be sure that any such equipment is rated well in excess of the combined weight of the engine/transmission unit.



12.10 Removing the oil baffle to provide access to crankshaft and bearings

- 7 Remove the cylinder head as described in Part C, Section 14.
- 8 Bolt lifting eyes to suitable points on the engine and transmission, then attach the lifting equipment so that the engine/transmission unit is supported securely.
- 9 Remove the sump as described in Part C, Section 15.
- 10 Undo the screws securing the oil pump pick-up/strainer pipe to the pump, then unscrew the four nuts, and withdraw the oil pump pick-up/strainer pipe and oil baffle (see illustration).
- 11 Temporarily refit the crankshaft pulley, so that the crankshaft can be rotated. Note that each piston/connecting rod assembly can be identified by its cylinder number (counting from the timing belt end of the engine) etched into the flat-machined surface of both the connecting rod and its cap. The numbers are visible from the front (exhaust side) of the engine (see illustration). Furthermore, each piston has an arrow stamped into its crown, pointing towards the timing belt end of the engine. If no marks can be seen, make your own before disturbing any of the components, so that you can be certain of refitting each piston/connecting rod assembly the right way round, to its correct (original) bore, with the cap also the right way round.

All engines

- 12 Use your fingernail to feel if a ridge has formed at the upper limit of ring travel (about a quarter-inch down from the top of each cylinder). If carbon deposits or cylinder wear have produced ridges, they must be completely removed with a special tool. Follow the tool manufacturer's instructions provided. Failure to remove the ridges before attempting to remove the piston/connecting rod assemblies may result in piston ring breakage.
- 13 Slacken each of the big-end bearing cap bolts half a turn at a time, until they can be removed by hand. Remove the No 1 cap and bearing shell. Don't drop the shell out of the cap.
- 14 Remove the upper bearing shell, and push the connecting rod/piston assembly out through the top of the engine. Use a wooden hammer handle to push on the connecting rod's bearing recess. If resistance is felt,



12.11 Each connecting rod and big-end bearing cap will have a flat-machined surface visible from the front (exhaust) side of the engine, with the cylinder number etched in it

double-check that all of the ridge was removed from the cylinder.

- 15 Repeat the procedure for the remaining cylinders.

16 After removal, reassemble the big-end bearing caps and shells on their respective connecting rods, and refit the bolts finger-tight. Leaving the old shells in place until reassembly will help prevent the bearing recesses from being accidentally nicked or gouged. New shells should be used on reassembly.

13 Crankshaft - removal



Note: The crankshaft can be removed only after the engine has been removed from the vehicle. It is assumed that the transmission, flywheel/driveplate, timing belt/chain, cylinder head, sump, oil pump pick-up/strainer, oil baffle, oil pump, and piston/connecting rod assemblies, have already been removed. The crankshaft left-hand oil seal carrier/housing must be unbolted from the cylinder block/crankcase before proceeding with crankshaft removal.

- 1 Before the crankshaft is removed, check the endfloat. Mount a DTI (Dial Test Indicator, or dial gauge) with the stem in line with the crankshaft and just touching the crankshaft (see illustration).



13.1 Checking crankshaft endfloat with a dial gauge



13.3 Checking crankshaft endfloat with a feeler gauge

2 Push the crankshaft fully away from the gauge, and zero it. Next, lever the crankshaft towards the gauge as far as possible, and check the reading obtained. The distance that the crankshaft moved is its endfloat; if it is greater than specified, check the crankshaft thrust surfaces for wear. If no wear is evident, new thrustwashers should correct the endfloat. 3 If no dial gauge is available, feeler gauges can be used. Gently lever or push the crankshaft all the way towards the right-hand end of the engine. Slip feeler gauges between the crankshaft and the main bearing incorporating the thrustwashers to determine the clearance (*see illustration*).

HCS engine

4 Check that the main bearing caps have marks to indicate their respective fitted positions in the block. They also have arrow marks pointing towards the timing chain cover end of the engine to indicate correct orientation (*see illustration*).

5 Unscrew the retaining bolts, and remove the main bearing caps. If the caps are reluctant to separate from the block face, lightly tap them free using a plastic- or copper-faced hammer. If the bearing shells are likely to be used again, keep them with their bearing caps for safekeeping. However, unless the engine is known to be of low mileage, it is recommended that they be renewed.

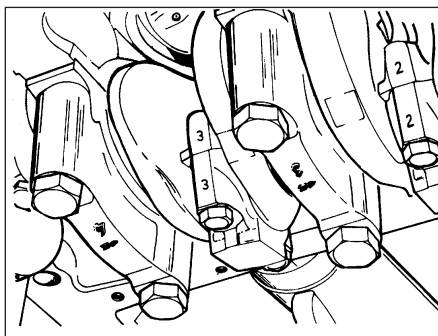
6 Lift the crankshaft out from the crankcase, then extract the upper bearing shells and side thrustwashers. Keep them with their respective caps for correct repositioning if they are to be used again.

7 Remove the crankshaft oil seals from the timing cover and the rear oil seal housing.

CVH engine

8 Check that each main bearing cap is numerically marked for position. Each cap should also have an arrow marking to indicate its direction of fitting (arrow points to the timing belt end).

9 Unscrew the retaining bolts, and remove the main bearing caps. As they are removed, keep each bearing shell with its cap (in case they are to be used again). Note that the bearing shells in the main bearing caps are plain (no



13.4 Connecting rod big-end bearing cap and main bearing cap markings

groove). It is recommended that the shells be renewed, unless the engine is known to be of low mileage.

10 Lift out the crankshaft from the crankcase.

11 Remove each bearing shell in turn from the crankcase, and keep them in order of fitting. Note that the upper shell halves are grooved. Also remove the semi-circular thrustwasher from each side of the central main bearing web, and keep them in their order of fitting.

Zetec engine

12 Check the main bearing caps, to see if they are marked to indicate their locations (*see illustration*). They should be numbered consecutively from the timing belt end of the engine - if not, mark them with number-stamping dies or a centre-punch. The caps will also have an embossed arrow pointing to the timing belt end of the engine. Noting the different fasteners (for the oil baffle nuts) used on caps 2 and 4, slacken the cap bolts a quarter-turn at a time each, starting with the left- and right-hand end caps and working toward the centre, until they can be removed by hand.

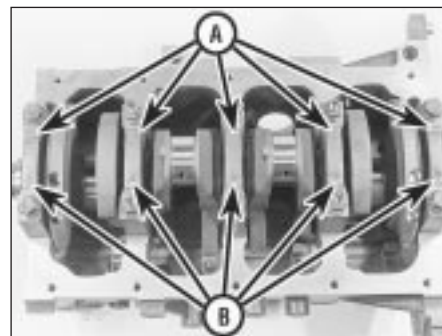
13 Gently tap the caps with a soft-faced hammer, then separate them from the cylinder block/crankcase. If necessary, use the bolts as levers to remove the caps. Try not to drop the bearing shells if they come out with the caps.

14 Carefully lift the crankshaft out of the engine.

15 Remove each bearing shell in turn from the cylinder block/crankcase, and keep them in order of fitting.



14.1A Unbolt blanking plugs (where fitted) to clean out oilways . . .



13.12 Before unbolting crankshaft main bearing caps, note arrows pointing to timing belt end of engine (A), and bearing numbers (B) consecutive from timing belt end

14 Cylinder block/crankcase - cleaning and inspection



Note: Always check first what replacement parts are available before planning any overhaul operation; refer to Section 1. A Ford dealer, or a good engine reconditioning specialist/automotive parts supplier, may be able to suggest alternatives which will enable you to overcome the lack of replacement parts.

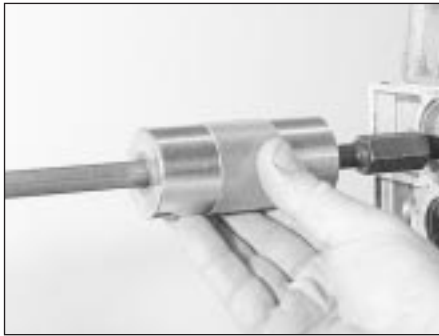
Cleaning

1 Prior to cleaning, remove all external components and senders. On the HCS engine, make sure that the camshaft and tappets are removed before carrying out thorough cleaning of the block (*see Section 11*). On the CVH engine, remove the engine ventilation cap from the recess in the rear corner of the cylinder block and if still fitted, undo the retaining screw and withdraw the engine speed sensor from the bellhousing face. On the Zetec engine, unbolt the piston-cooling oil jets or blanking plugs (as applicable); note that Ford state that the piston-cooling oil jets (where fitted) must be renewed whenever the engine is dismantled for full overhaul (*see illustrations*).

2 Remove all oil gallery plugs (where fitted). The plugs are usually very tight - they may



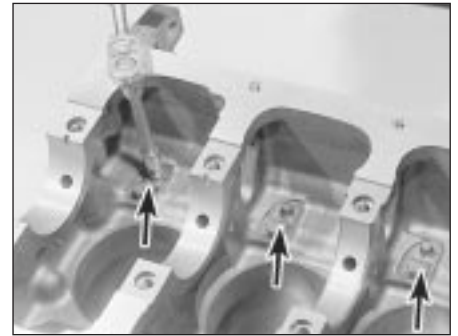
14.1B . . . but note that piston-cooling oil jets (where fitted) must be renewed as a matter of course whenever engine is overhauled - Zetec engine



14.2 The core plugs should be removed with a puller - if they're driven into the block, they may be impossible to retrieve



14.6 All bolt holes in the block - particularly the main bearing cap and head bolt holes - should be cleaned and restored with a tap (be sure to remove debris from the holes after this is done)



14.8 Do not forget to refit all components - such as oilway blanking plugs (three of four arrowed) - tighten fasteners to torque wrench settings specified

have to be drilled out, and the holes re-tapped. Use new plugs when the engine is reassembled. Drill a small hole in the centre of each core plug, and pull them out with a car bodywork dent puller (see illustration).



Caution: The core plugs (also known as freeze or soft plugs) may be difficult or impossible to retrieve if they are driven into the block coolant passages.

3 If any of the castings are extremely dirty, all should be steam-cleaned.

4 After the castings are returned from steam-cleaning, clean all oil holes and oil galleries one more time. Flush all internal passages with warm water until the water runs clear, then dry thoroughly, and apply a light film of oil to all machined surfaces, to prevent rusting. If you have access to compressed air, use it to speed the drying process, and to blow out all the oil holes and galleries.



Warning: Wear eye protection when using compressed air!

5 If the castings are not very dirty, you can do an adequate cleaning job with hot soapy water (as hot as you can stand!) and a stiff brush. Take plenty of time, and do a thorough job. Regardless of the cleaning method used, be sure to clean all oil holes and galleries very

thoroughly, and to dry all components completely; protect the machined surfaces as described above, to prevent rusting.

6 All threaded holes must be clean and dry, to ensure accurate torque readings during reassembly; now is also a good time to clean and check the threads of all principal bolts - however, note that some, such as the cylinder head and flywheel/driveplate bolts, are to be renewed as a matter of course whenever they are disturbed. Run the proper-size tap into each of the holes, to remove rust, corrosion, thread sealant or sludge, and to restore damaged threads (see illustration). If possible, use compressed air to clear the holes of debris produced by this operation; a good alternative is to inject aerosol-applied water-dispersant lubricant into each hole, using the long spout usually supplied.



Warning: Wear eye protection when cleaning out these holes in this way, and be sure to dry out any excess liquid left in the holes.

7 When all inspection and repair procedures are complete (see below) and the block is ready for reassembly, apply suitable sealant to the new oil gallery plugs, and insert them into the holes in the block. Tighten them securely. After coating the sealing surfaces of the new core plugs with suitable sealant, install them in the cylinder block/crankcase.

Make sure they are driven in straight and seated properly, or leakage could result. Special tools are available for this purpose, but a large socket with an outside diameter that will just slip into the core plug, used with an extension and hammer, will work just as well.

8 On the Zetec engine, refit the blanking plugs or (new) piston-cooling oil jets (as applicable), tightening their Torx screws to the torque wrench setting specified (see illustration). On all engines, refit all other external components removed, referring to the relevant Chapter of this manual for further details where required. Refit the main bearing caps, and tighten the bolts finger-tight.

9 If the engine is not going to be reassembled right away, cover it with a large plastic bag to keep it clean; protect the machined surfaces as described above, to prevent rusting.

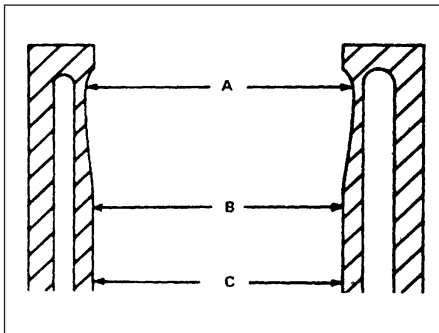
Inspection

10 Visually check the castings for cracks and corrosion. Look for stripped threads in the threaded holes. If there has been any history of internal coolant leakage, it may be worthwhile having an engine overhaul specialist check the cylinder block/crankcase for cracks with special equipment. If defects are found, have them repaired, if possible, or renew the assembly.

11 Check each cylinder bore for scuffing and scoring.

12 The cylinder bores must be measured with all the crankshaft main bearing caps bolted in place (without the crankshaft and bearing shells), and tightened to the specified torque wrench settings. Measure the diameter of each cylinder at the top (just under the ridge area), centre and bottom of the cylinder bore, parallel to the crankshaft axis. Next, measure each cylinder's diameter at the same three locations across the crankshaft axis (see illustrations). Note the measurements obtained.

13 Measure the piston diameter at right-angles to the gudgeon pin axis, just above the bottom of the skirt; again, note the results (see illustration).



14.12 Measure the diameter of each cylinder just under the wear ridge (A), at the centre (B) and at the bottom (C)



14.13 Measure the piston skirt diameter at right-angles to the gudgeon pin axis, just above the base of the skirt

14 If it is wished to obtain the piston-to-bore clearance, measure the bore and piston skirt as described above, and subtract the skirt diameter from the bore measurement. If the precision measuring tools shown are not available, the condition of the pistons and bores can be assessed, though not quite as accurately, by using feeler gauges as follows. Select a feeler gauge of thickness equal to the specified piston-to-bore clearance, and slip it into the cylinder along with the matching piston. The piston must be positioned exactly as it normally would be. The feeler gauge must be between the piston and cylinder on one of the thrust faces (at right-angles to the gudgeon pin bore). The piston should slip through the cylinder (with the feeler gauge in place) with moderate pressure; if it falls through or slides through easily, the clearance is excessive, and a new piston will be required. If the piston binds at the lower end of the cylinder, and is loose toward the top, the cylinder is tapered. If tight spots are encountered as the piston/feeler gauge is rotated in the cylinder, the cylinder is out-of-round (oval).

15 Repeat these procedures for the remaining pistons and cylinder bores.

16 Compare the results with the Specifications at the beginning of this Chapter; if any measurement is beyond the dimensions specified for that class (check the piston crown marking to establish the class of piston fitted), or if any bore measurement is significantly different from the others (indicating that the bore is tapered or oval), the piston or bore is excessively-worn.

17 Worn pistons must be renewed; on some engines, the pistons are available as Ford replacement parts only as part of the complete piston/connecting rod assembly. See a Ford dealer or engine reconditioning specialist for advice.

18 If any of the cylinder bores are badly scuffed or scored, or if they are excessively-worn, out-of-round or tapered, the usual course of action would be to have the cylinder block/crankcase rebored, and to fit new, oversized, pistons on reassembly. See a Ford dealer or engine reconditioning specialist for advice.

19 If the bores are in reasonably good condition and not excessively-worn, then it may only be necessary to renew the piston rings.

20 If this is the case, the bores should be honed, to allow the new rings to bed in correctly and provide the best possible seal; before honing the bores, refit the main bearing caps (without the bearing shells), and tighten the bolts to the specified torque wrench setting. **Note:** If you don't have the tools, or don't want to tackle the honing operation, most engine reconditioning specialists will do it for a reasonable fee.

21 Two types of cylinder hones are commonly available - the flex hone or "bottle-brush" type, and the more traditional

surfacing hone with spring-loaded stones. Both will do the job, and are used with a power drill, but for the less-experienced mechanic, the "bottle-brush" hone will probably be easier to use. You will also need some paraffin or honing oil, and rags. Proceed as follows:

a) Mount the hone in the drill, compress the stones, and slip it into the first bore. Be sure to wear safety goggles or a face shield!

b) Lubricate the bore with plenty of honing oil, switch on the drill, and move the hone up and down the bore, at a pace that will produce a fine cross-hatch pattern on the cylinder walls. Ideally, the cross-hatch lines should intersect at approximately a 60° angle (see illustration). Be sure to use plenty of lubricant, and don't take off any more material than is absolutely necessary to produce the desired finish.

Note: Piston ring manufacturers may specify a different cross-hatch angle - read and follow any instructions included with the new rings.

c) Don't withdraw the hone from the bore while it's running. Instead, switch off the drill, and continue moving the hone up and down the bore until it comes to a complete stop, then compress the stones and withdraw the hone. If you're using a "bottle-brush" hone, switch off the drill, then turn the chuck in the normal direction of rotation while withdrawing the hone from the bore.

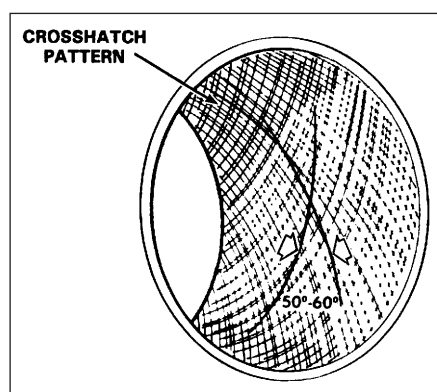
d) Wipe the oil out of the bore, and repeat the procedure for the remaining cylinders.

e) When all the cylinder bores are honed, chamfer the top edges of the bores with a small file, so the rings won't catch when the pistons are installed. Be very careful not to nick the cylinder walls with the end of the file.

f) The entire cylinder block/crankcase must be washed very thoroughly with warm, soapy water, to remove all traces of the abrasive grit produced during the honing operation. **Note:** The bores can be considered clean when a lint-free white cloth - dampened with clean engine oil - used to wipe them out doesn't pick up any more honing residue, which will show up as grey areas on the cloth. Be sure to run a brush through all oil holes and galleries, and flush them with running water.

g) When the cylinder block/crankcase is completely clean, rinse it thoroughly and dry it, then lightly oil all exposed machined surfaces, to prevent rusting.

22 The cylinder block/crankcase should now be completely clean and dry, with all components checked for wear or damage, and repaired or overhauled as necessary. Refit as many ancillary components as possible, for safekeeping (see paragraphs 7 and 8 above). If reassembly is not to start immediately, cover the block with a large



14.21 The cylinder hone should leave a smooth, cross-hatch pattern with the lines intersecting at approximately a 60° angle

plastic bag to keep it clean, and protect the machined surfaces as described above to prevent rusting.

15 Piston/connecting rod assemblies - inspection



Note: Always check first what replacement parts are available before planning any overhaul operation: refer to Section 1. A Ford dealer, or a good engine reconditioning specialist/automotive parts supplier, may be able to suggest alternatives which will enable you to overcome the lack of replacement parts.

1 Before the inspection process can be carried out, the piston/connecting rod assemblies must be cleaned, and the original piston rings removed from the pistons. The rings should have smooth, polished working surfaces, with no dull or carbon-coated sections (showing that the ring is not sealing correctly against the bore wall, so allowing combustion gases to blow by) and no traces of wear on their top and bottom surfaces. The end gaps should be clear of carbon, but not polished (indicating a too-small end gap), and all the rings (including the elements of the oil control ring) should be free to rotate in their grooves, but without excessive up-and-down movement. If the rings appear to be in good condition, they are probably fit for further use; check the end gaps (in an unworn part of the bore) as described in Section 19. If any of the rings appears to be worn or damaged, or has an end gap significantly different from the specified value, the usual course of action is to renew all of them as a set. **Note:** While it is usual always to renew piston rings when an engine is overhauled, this of course assumes that rings are available separately - if not, it follows that great care must be taken not to break or damage any of the rings during the following procedures, and to ensure that each ring is marked on removal so that it is refitted **only** the original way up, and **only** to the same groove.



15.2 Using feeler gauge blades to remove piston rings

2 Using a piston ring installation tool, carefully remove the rings from the pistons. If such a tool is not available, the rings can be removed by hand, expanding them over the top of the pistons. The use of two or three old feeler blades will be helpful in preventing the rings dropping into empty grooves (**see illustration**). Be careful not to nick or gouge the pistons in the process, and mark or label each ring as it is removed, so that its original top surface can be identified on reassembly, and so that it can be returned to its original groove. Take care also with your hands - piston rings are sharp!

3 Scrape all traces of carbon from the top of the piston. A hand-held wire brush or a piece of fine emery cloth can be used, once the majority of the deposits have been scraped away. *Do not*, under any circumstances, use a wire brush mounted in a drill motor to remove deposits from the pistons - the piston material is soft, and may be eroded away by the wire brush.

4 Use a piston ring groove-cleaning tool to remove carbon deposits from the ring grooves. If a tool isn't available, but replacement rings have been found, a piece broken off the old ring will do the job. Be very careful to remove only the carbon deposits - don't remove any metal, and do not nick or scratch the sides of the ring grooves. Protect your fingers - piston rings are sharp!

5 Once the deposits have been removed, clean the piston/rod assemblies with solvent, and dry them with compressed air (if available). Make sure that the oil return holes in the back sides of the ring grooves, and the oil hole in the lower end of each rod, are clear.

6 If the pistons and cylinder walls aren't damaged or worn excessively - refer to Section 14 for details of inspection and measurement procedures - and if the cylinder block/crankcase is not rebored, new pistons won't be necessary. Normal piston wear appears as even vertical wear on the piston thrust surfaces, and slight looseness of the top ring in its groove.

7 Carefully inspect each piston for cracks around the skirt, at the pin bosses, and at the ring lands (between the ring grooves).

8 Look for scoring and scuffing on the thrust faces of the skirt, holes in the piston crown,



15.12 Check that the connecting rod oilway on CVH engines is clear

and burned areas at the edge of the crown. If the skirt is scored or scuffed, the engine may have been suffering from overheating and/or abnormal combustion, which caused excessively-high operating temperatures. The cooling and lubrication systems should be checked thoroughly. A hole in the piston crown is an indication that abnormal combustion (pre-ignition) was occurring. Burned areas at the edge of the piston crown are usually evidence of spark knock (detonation). If any of the above problems exist, the causes must be corrected, or the damage will occur again. The causes may include inlet air leaks, incorrect fuel/air mixture or incorrect ignition timing.

9 Corrosion of the piston, in the form of small pits, indicates that coolant is leaking into the combustion chamber and/or the crankcase. Again, the cause must be corrected, or the problem may persist in the rebuilt engine.

10 Check the piston-to-rod clearance by twisting the piston and rod in opposite directions. Any noticeable play indicates excessive wear, which must be corrected. The piston/connecting rod assemblies should be taken to a Ford dealer or engine reconditioning specialist to have the pistons, gudgeon pins and rods checked, and new components fitted as required.

11 *Don't* attempt to separate the pistons from the connecting rods (even if non-genuine replacements are found elsewhere). This is a task for a Ford dealer or similar engine reconditioning specialist, due to the special heating



16.3 Rubbing a penny lengthwise along each journal will reveal its condition - if copper rubs off and is embedded in the crankshaft, the journals should be reground

equipment, press, mandrels and supports required to do the job. If the piston/connecting rod assemblies do require this sort of work, have the connecting rods checked for bend and twist, since only such engine repair specialists will have the facilities for this purpose.

12 Check the connecting rods for cracks and other damage. Also on CVH engines, check that the oilway in the base of the connecting rod is clear by probing with a piece of wire (**see illustration**). Temporarily remove the big-end bearing caps and the old bearing shells, wipe clean the rod and cap bearing recesses, and inspect them for nicks, gouges and scratches. After checking the rods, replace the old shells, slip the caps into place, and tighten the bolts finger-tight.

16 Crankshaft - inspection



Note: Always check first what replacement parts are available before planning any overhaul operation; refer to Section 1. A Ford dealer, or a good engine reconditioning specialist/automotive parts supplier, may be able to suggest alternatives which will enable you to overcome the lack of replacement parts.

1 Clean the crankshaft, and dry it with compressed air if available.

Warning: Wear eye protection when using compressed air! Be sure to clean the oil holes with a pipe cleaner or similar probe.

2 Check the main and crankpin (big-end) bearing journals for uneven wear, scoring, pitting and cracking.

3 Rub a penny across each journal several times (**see illustration**). If a journal picks up copper from the penny, it is too rough.

4 Remove all burrs from the crankshaft oil holes with a stone, file or scraper.

5 Using a micrometer, measure the diameter of the main bearing and crankpin (big-end) journals, and compare the results with the Specifications at the beginning of this Chapter (**see illustration**).



16.5 Measure the diameter of each crankshaft journal at several points, to detect taper and out-of-round conditions

6 By measuring the diameter at a number of points around each journal's circumference, you will be able to determine whether or not the journal is out-of-round. Take the measurement at each end of the journal, near the webs, to determine if the journal is tapered.

7 If the crankshaft journals are damaged, tapered, out-of-round, or worn beyond the limits specified in this Chapter, the crankshaft must be taken to an engine overhaul specialist, who will regrind it, and who can supply the necessary undersize bearing shells.

8 Check the oil seal journals at each end of the crankshaft for wear and damage. If either seal has worn an excessive groove in its journal, consult an engine overhaul specialist, who will be able to advise whether a repair is possible, or whether a new crankshaft is necessary.

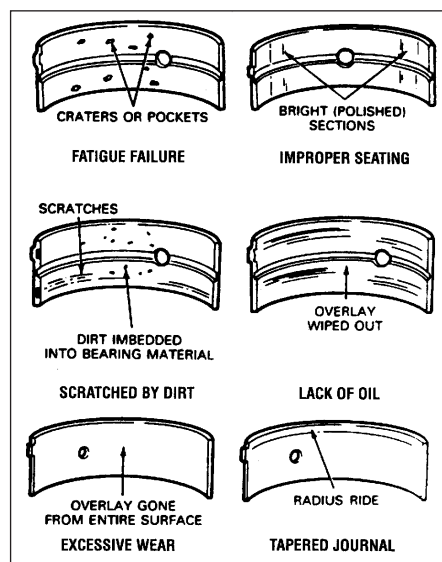
17 Main and big-end bearings - inspection



Note: Always check first what replacement parts are available before planning any overhaul operation; refer to Section 1. A Ford dealer, or a good engine reconditioning specialist/automotive parts supplier, may be able to suggest alternatives which will enable you to overcome the lack of replacement parts.

1 Even though the main and big-end bearing shells should be renewed during the engine overhaul, the old shells should be retained for close examination, as they may reveal valuable information about the condition of the engine (see illustration).

2 Bearing failure occurs because of lack of



17.1 When inspecting the main and big-end bearings, look for these problems

lubrication, the presence of dirt or other foreign particles, overloading the engine, and corrosion. Regardless of the cause of bearing failure, it must be corrected before the engine is reassembled, to prevent it from happening again.

3 When examining the bearing shells, remove them from the cylinder block/crankcase and main bearing caps, and from the connecting rods and the big-end bearing caps, then lay them out on a clean surface in the same general position as their location in the engine. This will enable you to match any bearing problems with the corresponding crankshaft journal. *Do not* touch any shell's bearing surface with your fingers while checking it, or the delicate surface may be scratched.

4 Dirt or other foreign matter gets into the engine in a variety of ways. It may be left in the engine during assembly, or it may pass through filters or the crankcase ventilation system. It may get into the oil, and from there into the bearings. Metal chips from machining operations and normal engine wear are often present. Abrasives are sometimes left in engine components after reconditioning, especially when parts are not thoroughly cleaned using the proper cleaning methods. Whatever the source, these foreign objects often end up embedded in the soft bearing material, and are easily recognised. Large particles will not embed in the material, and will score or gouge the shell and journal. The best prevention for this cause of bearing failure is to clean all parts thoroughly, and to keep everything spotlessly-clean during engine assembly. Frequent and regular engine oil and filter changes are also recommended.

5 Lack of lubrication (or lubrication breakdown) has a number of inter-related causes. Excessive heat (which thins the oil), overloading (which squeezes the oil from the bearing face) and oil leakage (from excessive bearing clearances, worn oil pump or high engine speeds) all contribute to lubrication breakdown. Blocked oil passages, which usually are the result of misaligned oil holes in a bearing shell, will also starve a bearing of oil, and destroy it. When lack of lubrication is the cause of bearing failure, the bearing material is wiped or extruded from the shell's steel backing. Temperatures may increase to the point where the steel backing turns blue from overheating.

6 Driving habits can have a definite effect on bearing life. Full-throttle, low-speed operation (labouring the engine) puts very high loads on bearings, which tends to squeeze out the oil film. These loads cause the shells to flex, which produces fine cracks in the bearing face (fatigue failure). Eventually, the bearing material will loosen in pieces, and tear away from the steel backing. Short-distance driving leads to corrosion of bearings, because insufficient engine heat is produced to drive off condensed water and corrosive gases. These products collect in the engine oil,

forming acid and sludge. As the oil is carried to the engine bearings, the acid attacks and corrodes the bearing material.

7 Incorrect shell refitting during engine assembly will lead to bearing failure as well. Tight-fitting shells leave insufficient bearing running clearance, and will result in oil starvation. Dirt or foreign particles trapped behind a bearing shell result in high spots on the bearing, which lead to failure. *Do not* touch any shell's bearing surface with your fingers during reassembly; there is a risk of scratching the delicate surface, or of depositing particles of dirt on it.

18 Engine overhaul - reassembly sequence

1 Before reassembly begins ensure that all new parts have been obtained and that all necessary tools are available. Read through the entire procedure to familiarise yourself with the work involved, and to ensure that all items necessary for reassembly of the engine are at hand. In addition to all normal tools and materials, jointing and thread locking compound will be needed during engine reassembly. For general-purpose applications, it is recommended that Loctite 275 setting sealer or Hylomar PL32M non-setting sealer be used for joints where required, and Loctite 270 for stud and bolt thread-locking. For specific applications on the Zetec engine, Hylosil 102 for the cylinder block/crankcase-to-sump/oil pump/oil seal carrier joints, and Loctite 518 for the camshaft right-hand bearing caps should be used. These are recommended by, and obtained from, Ford dealers. In all other cases, provided the relevant mating surfaces are clean and flat, new gaskets will be sufficient to ensure joints are oil-tight. *Do not* use any kind of silicone-based sealant on any part of the fuel system or inlet manifold, and *never* use exhaust sealants upstream of the catalytic converter.

2 In order to save time and avoid problems, engine reassembly can be carried out in the following order (as applicable).

- Engine ventilation cap (CVH engine).
- Tappets and camshaft (HCS engine).
- Crankshaft and main bearings.
- Pistons and connecting rods.
- Oil pump.
- Sump.
- Flywheel/driveplate.
- Cylinder head.
- Timing sprockets and chain/belt.
- Engine external components.

3 Ensure that everything is clean prior to reassembly. As mentioned previously, dirt and metal particles can quickly destroy bearings and result in major engine damage. Use clean engine oil to lubricate during reassembly.

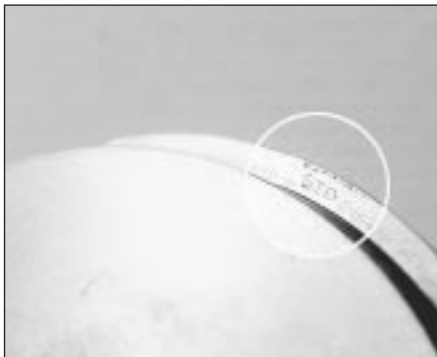
19 Piston rings - refitting



- 1 Before installing new piston rings, check the end gaps. Lay out each piston set with a piston/connecting rod assembly, and keep them together as a matched set from now on.
- 2 Insert the top compression ring into the first cylinder, and square it up with the cylinder walls by pushing it in with the top of the piston. The ring should be near the bottom of the cylinder, at the lower limit of ring travel.
- 3 To measure the end gap, slip feeler gauges between the ends of the ring, until a gauge equal to the gap width is found. The feeler gauge should slide between the ring ends with a slight amount of drag. Compare the measurement to the value given in the Specifications in this Chapter; if the gap is larger or smaller than specified, double-check to make sure you have the correct rings before proceeding. If you are assessing the condition of used rings, have the cylinder bores checked and measured by a Ford dealer or similar engine reconditioning specialist, so that you can be sure of exactly which component is worn, and seek advice as to the best course of action to take.
- 4 If the end gap is still too small, it must be opened up by careful filing of the ring ends



19.3 With the ring square in the bore, measure the end gap with a feeler gauge



19.6 Look for etched markings ("STD" - indicating a standard-sized ring - shown here) identifying piston ring top surface

using a fine file. If it is too large, this is not as serious, unless the specified limit is exceeded, in which case very careful checking is required of the dimensions of all components, as well as of the new parts.

- 5 Repeat the procedure for each ring that will be installed in the first cylinder, and for each ring in the remaining cylinders. Remember to keep rings, pistons and cylinders matched up.
- 6 Refit the piston rings as follows. Where the original rings are being refitted, use the marks or notes made on removal, to ensure that each ring is refitted to its original groove and the same way up. New rings generally have their top surfaces identified by markings (often an indication of size, such as "STD", or the word "TOP") - the rings must be fitted with such markings uppermost (**see illustration**).

Note: Always follow the instructions printed on the ring package or box - different manufacturers may require different approaches. Do not mix up the top and second compression rings, as they usually have different cross-sections.

- 7 The oil control ring (lowest one on the piston) is usually installed first. It is composed of three separate elements. Slip the spacer/expander into the groove. If an anti-rotation tang is used, make sure it is inserted into the drilled hole in the ring groove. Next, install the lower side rail. Don't use a piston ring installation tool on the oil ring side rails, as they may be damaged. Instead, place one end of the side rail into the groove between the spacer/expander and the ring land, hold it firmly in place, and slide a finger around the piston while pushing the rail into the groove. Next, install the upper side rail in the same manner.

- 8 After the three oil ring components have been installed, check that both the upper and lower side rails can be turned smoothly in the ring groove.

- 9 The second compression (middle) ring is installed next, followed by the top compression ring - ensure their marks are uppermost, and be careful not to confuse them. Don't expand either ring any more than necessary to slide it over the top of the piston.

- 10 On the HCS engine, when all of the rings

are fitted to each piston, arrange them so that the gaps are positioned as specified.

- 11 On the CVH engine, when all of the rings are fitted to each piston, arrange them so that the gaps are spaced at 120° intervals, with no gaps positioned above the gudgeon pin hole.

- 12 On the Zetec engine, when all the rings are fitted to each piston, space the ring gaps (including the elements of the oil control ring) uniformly around the piston at 120° intervals.

20 Crankshaft - refitting and main bearing running clearance check



- 1 It is assumed at this point that the cylinder block/crankcase and crankshaft have been cleaned, inspected and repaired or reconditioned as necessary. Position the engine upside-down.

- 2 Remove the main bearing cap bolts, and lift out the caps. Lay the caps out in the proper order, to ensure correct installation.

- 3 If they're still in place, remove the old bearing shells from the block and the main bearing caps. Wipe the bearing recesses of the block and caps with a clean, lint-free cloth. They must be kept spotlessly-clean!

Main bearing running clearance check

HCS engine

- 4 Wipe clean the main bearing shell seats in the crankcase, and clean the backs of the bearing shells. Insert the respective upper shells (dry) into position in the crankcase. Note that the upper shells have grooves in them (the lower shells are plain, and have a wider location lug). Where the old main bearings are being refitted, ensure that they are located in their original positions. Make sure that the tab on each bearing shell fits into the notch in the block or cap.

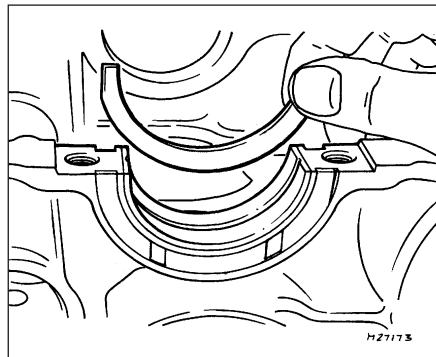


Caution: Don't hammer the shells into place, and don't nick or gouge the bearing faces. No lubrication should be used at this time.

- 5 Place the crankshaft thrustwashers into position in the crankcase, so that their oil grooves are facing outwards (away from the central web) (**see illustration**).

CVH engine

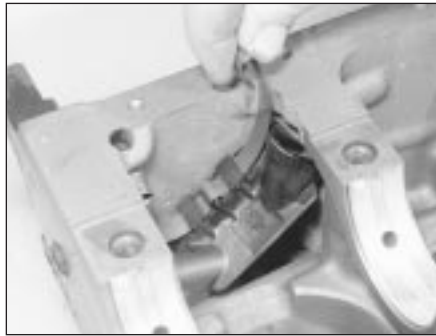
- 6 Wipe clean the main bearing shell seats in the crankcase, and clean the backs of the bearing shells. Insert the respective upper shells (dry) into position in the crankcase. Note that with the exception of the front main bearing, the upper shells have grooves in them (the lower half bearings are plain). The upper and lower front shells are narrower in section, and both have an oil groove in them. Where the old main bearings are being refitted, ensure that they are located in their



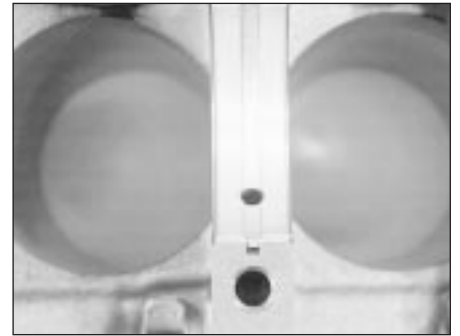
20.5 Place the crankshaft thrustwashers into position in the crankcase so that their oil grooves are facing outwards



20.6 Fit the bearing shells to the main bearing housings in the crankcase



20.7 Fit the crankcase ventilation cap and its retaining spring



20.9 Tab on each bearing shell must engage with notch in block or cap, and oil holes in upper shells must align with block oilways

original positions (see illustration). Make sure that the tab on each bearing shell fits into the notch in the block or cap.



Caution: Don't hammer the shells into place, and don't nick or gouge the bearing faces. No lubrication should be used at this time.

7 Relocate the crankcase ventilation cap and its retaining spring into position in the crankcase (see illustration).

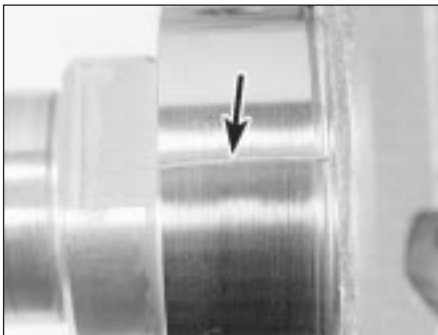
8 Place the crankshaft thrustwashers into position in the crankcase so that their oil grooves are facing outwards (away from the central web).

Zetec engine

9 Wipe clean the main bearing shell seats in the crankcase, and clean the backs of the new main bearing shells. Fit the shells with an oil groove in each main bearing location in the block; note the thrustwashers integral with the No 3 (centre) main bearing upper shell. Fit the other shell from each bearing set in the corresponding main bearing cap. Make sure the tab on each bearing shell fits into the notch in the block or cap. Also, the oil holes in the block must line up with the oil holes in the bearing shell (see illustration).



Caution: Don't hammer the shells into place, and don't nick or gouge the bearing faces. No lubrication should be used at this time.



20.11 Lay the Plastigage strips (arrowed) on the main bearing journals, parallel to the crankshaft centre-line



20.12 Refit the main bearing caps and tighten the bolts as specified

All engines

10 Clean the bearing surfaces of the shells in the block, and the crankshaft main bearing journals with a clean, lint-free cloth. Check or clean the oil holes in the crankshaft, as any dirt here can go only one way - straight through the new bearings.

11 Once you're certain the crankshaft is clean, carefully lay it in position in the main bearings. Trim several pieces of the appropriate-size Plastigage (they must be slightly shorter than the width of the main bearings), and place one piece on each crankshaft main bearing journal, parallel with the crankshaft centre-line (see illustration).

12 Clean the bearing surfaces of the cap shells, and install the caps in their respective positions (don't mix them up) with the arrows pointing to the timing belt end of the engine (see illustration). Don't disturb the Plastigage.

13 Working on one cap at a time, from the centre main bearing outwards (and ensuring that each cap is tightened down squarely and evenly onto the block), tighten the main bearing cap bolts to the specified torque wrench setting. Don't rotate the crankshaft at any time during this operation!

14 Remove the bolts, and carefully lift off the main bearing caps. Keep them in order. Don't disturb the Plastigage or rotate the crankshaft. If any of the main bearing caps are difficult to remove, tap them gently from

side-to-side with a soft-faced mallet to loosen them.

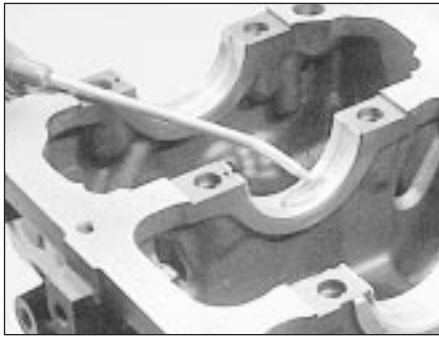
15 Compare the width of the crushed Plastigage on each journal with the scale printed on the Plastigage envelope to obtain the main bearing running clearance (see illustration). Check the Specifications to make sure that the clearance is correct.

16 If the clearance is not as specified, seek the advice of a Ford dealer or similar engine reconditioning specialist - if the crankshaft journals are in good condition (see Section 16), it may be possible simply to renew the shells to achieve the correct clearance. If this is not possible, the crankshaft must be reground by a specialist who can supply the necessary undersized shells. First though, make sure that no dirt or oil was between the bearing shells and the caps or block when the clearance was measured. If the Plastigage is noticeably wider at one end than the other, the journal may be tapered (see Section 16).

17 Carefully scrape all traces of the Plastigage material off the main bearing journals and the bearing surfaces. Be very careful not to scratch the bearing - use your fingernail or the edge of a credit card.



20.15 Compare the width of the crushed Plastigage to the scale on the envelope to determine the main bearing oil clearance (always take the measurement at the widest point of the Plastigage). Be sure to use the correct scale; Imperial and metric scales are included



20.18 Ensure bearing shells are absolutely clean, lubricate liberally . . .

Final refitting

18 Carefully lift the crankshaft out of the engine. Clean the bearing surfaces of the shells in the block, then apply a thin, uniform layer of clean molybdenum disulphide-based grease, engine assembly lubricant, or clean engine oil to each surface (*see illustration*). Coat the thrustwasher surfaces as well.

19 Lubricate the crankshaft oil seal journals with molybdenum disulphide-based grease, engine assembly lubricant, or clean engine oil. **20** Make sure the crankshaft journals are clean, then lay the crankshaft back in place in the block (*see illustration*). Clean the bearing surfaces of the shells in the caps, then lubricate them. Install the caps in their respective positions, with the arrows pointing to the timing belt/chain end of the engine.

21 Working on one cap at a time, from the centre main bearing outwards (and ensuring that each cap is tightened down squarely and evenly onto the block), tighten the main bearing cap bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

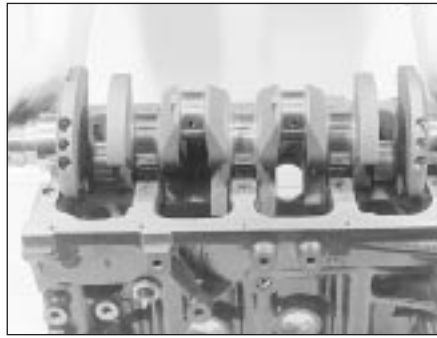
22 Rotate the crankshaft a number of times by hand, to check for any obvious binding.

23 Check the crankshaft endfloat (*see Section 13*). It should be correct if the crankshaft thrust faces aren't worn or damaged.

24 Refit the crankshaft left-hand oil seal carrier, and install a new seal (*see Part A, B or C of this Chapter according to engine type*).



21.3 Tab on each big-end bearing shell must engage with notch in connecting rod or cap



20.20 . . . and refit the crankshaft

21 Piston/connecting rod assemblies - refitting and big-end bearing clearance check



Note: On the HCS engine, new big-end bearing cap retaining bolts will be required for reassembly.

1 Before refitting the piston/connecting rod assemblies, the cylinder bores must be perfectly clean, the top edge of each cylinder must be chamfered, and the crankshaft must be in place.

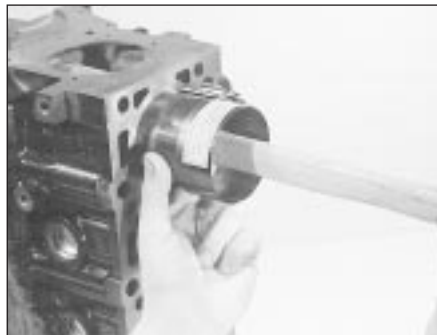
2 Remove the big-end bearing cap from No 1 cylinder connecting rod (refer to the marks noted or made on removal). Remove the original bearing shells, and wipe the bearing recesses of the connecting rod and cap with a clean, lint-free cloth. They must be kept spotlessly-clean!

Big-end bearing clearance check

3 Clean the back of the new upper bearing shell, fit it to the connecting rod, then fit the other shell of the bearing set to the big-end bearing cap. Make sure that the tab on each shell fits into the notch in the rod or cap recess (*see illustration*).

Caution: Don't hammer the shells into place, and don't nick or gouge the bearing face.

Don't lubricate the bearing at this time.



21.9 The piston can be driven gently into the cylinder bore with the end of a wooden or plastic hammer handle

4 It's critically important that all mating surfaces of the bearing components are perfectly clean and oil-free when they're assembled.

5 Position the piston ring gaps as described in Section 19, lubricate the piston and rings with clean engine oil, and attach a piston ring compressor to the piston. Leave the skirt protruding about a quarter-inch, to guide the piston into the cylinder bore. The rings must be compressed until they're flush with the piston.

6 Rotate the crankshaft until No 1 crankpin (big-end) journal is at BDC (Bottom Dead Centre), and apply a coat of engine oil to the cylinder walls.

7 Arrange the No 1 piston/connecting rod assembly so that the arrow on the piston crown points to the timing belt/chain end of the engine. Gently insert the assembly into the No 1 cylinder bore, and rest the bottom edge of the ring compressor on the engine block.

8 Tap the top edge of the ring compressor to make sure it's contacting the block around its entire circumference.

9 Gently tap on the top of the piston with the end of a wooden hammer handle (*see illustration*), while guiding the connecting rod's big-end onto the crankpin. The piston rings may try to pop out of the ring compressor just before entering the cylinder bore, so keep some pressure on the ring compressor. Work slowly, and if any resistance is felt as the piston enters the cylinder, stop immediately. Find out what's binding, and fix it before proceeding. *Do not*, for any reason, force the piston into the cylinder - you might break a ring and/or the piston.

10 To check the big-end bearing running clearance, cut a piece of the appropriate-size Plastigage slightly shorter than the width of the connecting rod bearing, and lay it in place on the No 1 crankpin (big-end) journal, parallel with the crankshaft centre-line (*see illustration 20.11*).

11 Clean the connecting rod-to-cap mating surfaces, and refit the big-end bearing cap. Tighten the cap bolts evenly - on the HCS and Zetec engines, first use a torque wrench to tighten the bolts to the Stage 1 torque setting, then use an ordinary socket extension bar and an angle gauge to tighten the bolts further through the Stage 2 angle (*see illustrations*). On the CVH engine, tighten the bolts progressively to the specified torque; further angle-tightening is not required on these engines. Use a thin-wall socket, to avoid erroneous torque readings that can result if the socket is wedged between the cap and nut. If the socket tends to wedge itself between the nut and the cap, lift up on it slightly until it no longer contacts the cap. Don't rotate the crankshaft at any time during this operation!

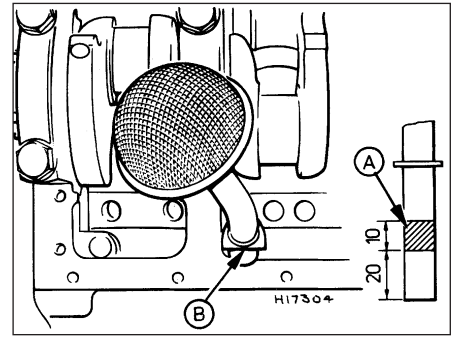
12 Unscrew the bolts and detach the cap, being very careful not to disturb the Plastigage.



21.11A Angle-tightening the big-end bolts using the correct tool . . .



21.11B . . . or a fabricated type as shown



21.21 Oil inlet pipe refitting details on the HCS engine

A Area of sealant application - dimensions in mm

B Edge must be parallel with engine longitudinal axis

13 Compare the width of the crushed Plastigage to the scale printed on the Plastigage envelope, to obtain the running clearance (see illustration 20.15). Compare it to the Specifications, to make sure the clearance is correct.

14 If the clearance is not as specified, seek the advice of a Ford dealer or similar engine reconditioning specialist - if the crankshaft journals are in good condition (see Section 16), it may be possible simply to renew the shells to achieve the correct clearance. If this is not possible, the crankshaft must be reground by a specialist, who can also supply the necessary undersized shells. First though, make sure that no dirt or oil was trapped between the bearing shells and the connecting rod or cap when the clearance was measured. Also, recheck the crankpin diameter. If the Plastigage was wider at one end than the other, the crankpin journal may be tapered (see Section 16).

15 Carefully scrape all traces of the Plastigage material off the journal and the bearing surface. Be very careful not to scratch the bearing - use your fingernail or the edge of a credit card.

Final piston/connecting rod refitting

16 Make sure the bearing surfaces are perfectly clean, then apply a uniform layer of clean molybdenum disulphide-based grease, engine assembly lubricant, or clean engine oil, to both of them. You'll have to push the piston into the cylinder to expose the bearing surface of the shell in the connecting rod.

17 Slide the connecting rod back into place on the crankpin (big-end) journal, refit the big-end bearing cap, and then tighten the bolts as described above.

18 Repeat the entire procedure for the remaining piston/connecting rod assemblies.

19 The important points to remember are:

- Keep the backs of the bearing shells and the recesses of the connecting rods and caps perfectly clean when assembling them.*
- Make sure you have the correct piston/rod assembly for each cylinder - use the etched cylinder numbers to identify the front-facing side of both the rod and its cap.*
- The arrow on the piston crown must face the timing belt/chain end of the engine.*
- Lubricate the cylinder bores with clean engine oil.*
- Lubricate the bearing surfaces when refitting the big-end bearing caps after the running clearance has been checked.*

20 After all the piston/connecting rod assemblies have been properly installed, rotate the crankshaft a number of times by hand, to check for any obvious binding.

21 On the HCS engine, if the oil pick-up pipe and strainer was removed, this is a good time to refit it. First clean the joint area, then coat the area indicated with the specified activator (available from Ford dealers) (see illustration). Wait for a period of ten minutes, then smear the shaded area with the specified adhesive and immediately press the inlet pipe into position in the crankcase.

22 Engine - initial start-up after overhaul

1 With the engine refitted in the vehicle, double-check the engine oil and coolant levels. Make a final check that everything has been reconnected, and that there are no tools or rags left in the engine compartment.

2 With the spark plugs removed and the ignition system disabled by unplugging the ignition coil's electrical connector, remove fuse 5 (fuel-injected engines) to disconnect

the fuel pump. Turn the engine on the starter until the oil pressure warning light goes out.

3 Refit the spark plugs, and connect all the spark plug (HT) leads (Chapter 1). Reconnect the ignition coil. On fuel-injected engines, refit the fuel pump fuse, switch on the ignition and listen for the fuel pump; it will run for a little longer than usual, due to the lack of pressure in the system.

4 Start the engine, noting that this also may take a little longer than usual, due to the fuel system components being empty.

5 While the engine is idling, check for fuel, coolant and oil leaks. Don't be alarmed if there are some odd smells and smoke from parts getting hot and burning off oil deposits. If the hydraulic tappets (where applicable) have been disturbed, some valve gear noise may be heard at first; this should disappear as the oil circulates fully around the engine, and normal pressure is restored in the tappets.

6 Keep the engine idling until hot water is felt circulating through the top hose, check that it idles reasonably smoothly and at the usual speed, then switch it off.

7 After a few minutes, recheck the oil and coolant levels, and top-up as necessary (Chapter 1).

8 If they were tightened as described, there is no need to re-tighten the cylinder head bolts once the engine has first run after reassembly - in fact, Ford state that the bolts *must not* be re-tightened.

9 If new components such as pistons, rings or crankshaft bearings have been fitted, the engine must be run-in for the first 500 miles (800 km). Do not operate the engine at full-throttle, or allow it to labour in any gear during this period. It is recommended that the oil and filter be changed at the end of this period.






Chapter 3

Cooling, heating and air conditioning systems

Contents

Air conditioning system check	See Chapter 1	Cooling system servicing (draining, flushing and refilling)	See Chapter 1
Air conditioning system - general information and precautions	13	Heater/air conditioning controls - removal and refitting	12
Air conditioning system components - removal and refitting	14	Heater/ventilation components - removal and refitting	11
Antifreeze - general information	2	General information	1
Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal	See Chapter 1	Radiator and expansion tank - removal, inspection and refitting	7
Coolant level check	See Chapter 1	Radiator electric cooling fan assembly - testing, removal and refitting	5
Coolant renewal	See Chapter 1	Thermostat - removal, testing and refitting	4
Cooling system checks (coolant leaks, hose condition)	See Chapter 1	Water pump (CVH engine) - removal and refitting	9
Cooling system electrical switches and sensors - testing, removal and refitting	6	Water pump (HCS engine) - removal and refitting	8
Cooling system hoses - disconnection and renewal	3	Water pump (Zetec engine) - removal and refitting	10

Degrees of difficulty

Easy, suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy, suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult, suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult, suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

Specifications

Coolant

Mixture type	See Chapter 1
Cooling system capacity	See Chapter 1

System pressure

Pressure test	1.2 bars - should hold this pressure for at least 10 seconds
---------------	--

Expansion tank filler cap

Pressure rating	1.2 bars approximately - see cap for actual value
-----------------	---

Thermostat

Starts to open	85°C to 89°C
----------------	--------------

Coolant temperature sensor

Resistance:	
At 0°C	89 to 102 kilohms
At 20°C	35 to 40 kilohms
At 100°C	1.9 to 2.5 kilohms
At 120°C	1.0 to 1.4 kilohms

Air conditioning system

Refrigerant	R12 or R134a
-------------	--------------

Torque wrench settings	Nm	lbf ft
Thermostat housing/water outlet:		
HCS engine	18 to 22	13 to 16
CVH engine	9 to 12	7 to 9
Zetec engine	18 to 22	13 to 16
Water pump pulley	8 to 12	6 to 9
Water pump retaining bolts:		
HCS engine	7 to 10	5 to 7
CVH engine	7 to 10	5 to 7
Zetec engine	16 to 20	12 to 15
Coolant temperature gauge sender:		
HCS engine	5 to 7	3.5 to 5
CVH engine	5 to 7	3.5 to 5
Zetec engine	6 to 10	4 to 7
Coolant temperature sensor:		
HCS engine	20 to 25	15 to 18
CVH engine	18 to 20	13 to 15
Zetec engine	12 to 18	9 to 13
Radiator retaining bolts	20 to 27	15 to 20
Cooling fan motor-to-shroud	9 to 12	7 to 9
Cooling fan shroud-to-radiator	3 to 5	2 to 3.5
Heater housing to body	7 to 11	5 to 8
Air conditioning system components:		
Condenser to side member	7 to 9	5 to 7
Shroud to radiator	3 to 5	2 to 3.5
Dehydrator to radiator bracket	5 to 8	3.5 to 6
High pressure switch to dehydrator	12 to 15	9 to 11
Expansion valve to evaporator	4 to 5	3 to 3.5
Air conditioner housing to cowl panel	6 to 8	4 to 6
Low and high pressure pipes to compressor	20 to 26	15 to 19
Low pressure liquid pipe to expansion valve	6 to 8	4 to 6
Dehydrator connecting pipe to condenser	14 to 19	10 to 14
Pipes to dehydrator	14 to 19	10 to 14
Compressor to bracket	20 to 27	15 to 20
Compressor driveplate to compressor	11 to 16	8 to 12

1 General information

Engine cooling system


The cooling system is of the pressurised type consisting of a belt-driven pump, aluminium crossflow radiator, expansion tank, electric cooling fan and a thermostat. The system functions as follows. Cold coolant in the bottom of the radiator passes through the bottom hose to the water pump, where it is pumped around the cylinder block and head passages. After cooling the cylinder bores, combustion surfaces and valve seats, the coolant reaches the underside of the thermostat, which is initially closed. The coolant passes through the heater and inlet manifold and is returned to the water pump.

When the engine is cold, the coolant circulates through the cylinder block, cylinder head, heater and inlet manifold. When the coolant reaches a predetermined temperature, the thermostat opens, and the coolant then passes through the top hose to the radiator. As the coolant circulates through the radiator, it is cooled by the inrush of air when the car is in forward motion. Airflow is

supplemented by the action of the electric cooling fan when necessary. Upon reaching the bottom of the radiator, the coolant is now cooled, and the cycle is repeated.

When the engine is at normal operating temperature, the coolant expands, and some of it is displaced into the expansion tank. This coolant collects in the tank, and is returned to the radiator when the system cools.

The electric cooling fan, mounted behind the radiator, is controlled by a thermostatic switch. At a predetermined coolant temperature, the switch contacts close, thus actuating the fan.



Warning: DO NOT attempt to remove the expansion tank filler cap, or to disturb any part of the cooling system, while it or the engine is hot, as there is a very great risk of scalding. If the expansion tank filler cap must be removed before the engine and radiator have fully cooled down (even though this is not recommended) the pressure in the cooling system must first be released. Cover the cap with a thick layer of cloth, to avoid scalding, and slowly unscrew the filler cap until a hissing sound can be heard. When the hissing has stopped, showing that pressure is released, slowly unscrew the filler cap

further until it can be removed; if more hissing sounds are heard, wait until they have stopped before unscrewing the cap completely. At all times, keep well away from the filler opening.

Warning: Do not allow antifreeze to come in contact with your skin, or with the painted surfaces of the vehicle. Rinse off spills immediately with plenty of water. Never leave antifreeze lying around in an open container, or in a puddle in the driveway or on the garage floor. Children and pets are attracted by its sweet smell, but antifreeze can be fatal if ingested.

Warning: If the engine is hot, the electric cooling fan may start rotating even if the engine is not running, so be careful to keep hands, hair and loose clothing well clear when working in the engine compartment.

Heating system

The heating system consists of a blower fan and heater matrix (radiator) located in the heater unit, with hoses connecting the heater matrix to the engine cooling system. Hot engine coolant is circulated through the heater matrix. When the heater temperature control on the facia is operated, a flap door opens to expose the heater matrix to the

passenger compartment. Air entering the vehicle passes over the matrix and is thus heated - the supply of air can be supplemented by operating the blower fan as required.

Air conditioning system

See Section 13.

2 Antifreeze - general information



Warning: Do not allow antifreeze to come in contact with your skin, or with the painted surfaces of the vehicle. Rinse off spills

immediately with plenty of water.

Antifreeze is highly toxic if ingested. Never leave antifreeze lying around in an open container, or in puddles on the floor; children and pets are attracted by its sweet smell, and may drink it. Check with local authorities about disposing of used antifreeze - many have collection centres which will see that antifreeze is disposed of safely.

The cooling system should be filled with a water/ethylene glycol-based antifreeze solution, of a strength which will prevent freezing down to at least -25°C, or lower if the local climate requires it. Antifreeze also provides protection against corrosion, and increases the coolant boiling point.

The cooling system should be maintained according to the schedule described in Chapter 1. If antifreeze is used that is not to Ford's specification, old or contaminated coolant mixtures are likely to cause damage, and encourage the formation of corrosion and scale in the system. Use distilled water with the antifreeze, if available - if not, be sure to use only soft water. Clean rainwater is suitable.

Before adding antifreeze, check all hoses and hose connections, because antifreeze tends to leak through very small openings. Engines don't normally consume coolant, so if the level falls regularly, find the cause and correct it.

The exact mixture of antifreeze-to-water which you should use depends on the relative weather conditions. The mixture should contain at least 40% antifreeze, but not more than 70%. Consult the mixture ratio chart on the antifreeze container before adding coolant. Hydrometers are available at most automotive accessory shops to test the coolant. Use only good-quality ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze which meets the vehicle manufacturer's specifications.

3 Cooling system hoses - disconnection and renewal



Note: Refer to the warnings given in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

1 If the checks described in Chapter 1 reveal a faulty hose, it must be renewed as follows.

2 First drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1); if the antifreeze is not due for renewal, the drained coolant may be re-used, if it is collected in a clean container.

3 To disconnect any hose, use a pair of pliers to release the spring clamps (or a screwdriver to slacken screw-type clamps), then move them along the hose clear of the union. Carefully work the hose off its stubs. The hoses can be removed with relative ease when new - on an older car, they may have stuck.

4 If a hose proves stubborn, try to release it by rotating it on its unions before attempting to work it off. Gently prise the end of the hose with a blunt instrument (such as a flat-bladed screwdriver), but do not apply too much force, and take care not to damage the pipe stubs or hoses. Note in particular that the radiator hose unions are fragile; do not use excessive force when attempting to remove the hoses. If all else fails, cut the hose with a sharp knife, then slit it so that it can be peeled off in two pieces. While expensive, this is preferable to buying a new radiator. Check first, however, that a new hose is readily available.

5 When refitting a hose, first slide the clamps onto the hose, then work the hose onto its unions. If the hose is stiff, use soap (or

washing-up liquid) as a lubricant, or soften it by soaking it in boiling water, but take care to avoid scalding.

6 Work each hose end fully onto its union, then check that the hose is settled correctly and is properly routed. Slide each clip along the hose until it is behind the union flared end, before tightening it securely.

7 Refill the system with coolant (see Chapter 1).

8 Check carefully for leaks as soon as possible after disturbing any part of the cooling system.

4 Thermostat - removal, testing and refitting



Note: Refer to the warnings given in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).

HCS and CVH engines

3 Loosen the clips, and disconnect the radiator top hose and expansion tank hose (HCS engines) or the radiator top hose, expansion tank hose and heater hose (CVH engines) from the thermostat housing (see illustrations).

4 Disconnect the thermostatic switch wire multi-plug from the thermostat housing.

5 Unscrew the retaining bolts, and remove the thermostat housing (see illustration).

6 Remove the gasket from the mating face of the thermostat housing, then using suitable pliers, compress the thermostat retaining clip and remove it from the housing. Extract the thermostat from the housing (noting its direction of fitting) and where applicable, remove the O-ring seal (see illustrations).

Zetec engines

7 Disconnect the expansion tank hose and the radiator top hose from the thermostat housing's water outlet.



4.3A Detaching the expansion tank top hose from the thermostat housing on the HCS engine. Thermostatic switch is also shown (arrowed)



4.3B Detaching the heater hose from the thermostat housing (CVH engine)



4.5 Removing the thermostat housing (CVH engine)



4.6A Release the retaining clip . . .



4.6B . . . extract the thermostat . . .



4.6C . . . and where applicable, remove the O-ring seal

8 Unscrew the retaining bolts, and remove the water outlet from the thermostat housing (see illustration).

9 Withdraw the thermostat from the housing noting the position of the air bleed valve, and how the thermostat is installed (which end is facing outwards).

Testing

General check

10 Before assuming the thermostat is to blame for a cooling system problem, check the coolant level, auxiliary drivebelt tension and condition (see Chapter 1) and temperature gauge operation. When checking the coolant level, don't rely on the fact that the expansion bottle is full - where possible,



4.8 Unscrew the retaining bolts, and remove the water outlet from the thermostat housing

remove the radiator cap and check the level in the radiator.

11 If the engine seems to be taking a long time to warm up (based on heater output or temperature gauge operation), the thermostat is probably stuck open. Renew the thermostat.

12 If the engine runs hot, use your hand to check the temperature of the radiator top hose. If the hose isn't hot, but the engine is, the thermostat is probably stuck closed, preventing the coolant inside the engine from escaping to the radiator - renew the thermostat.



Caution: Don't drive the vehicle without a thermostat. The lack of a thermostat will slow warm-up time. The engine management system's ECU will then stay in warm-up mode for longer than necessary, causing emissions and fuel economy to suffer.

13 If the radiator top hose is hot, it means that the coolant is flowing and the thermostat is open. Consult the "Fault finding" section at the end of this manual to assist in tracing possible cooling system faults.

Thermostat test

14 If the thermostat remains in the open position at room temperature, it is faulty, and must be renewed as a matter of course.

15 To test it fully, suspend the (closed) thermostat on a length of string in a container of cold water, with a thermometer beside it;

ensure that neither touches the side of the container (see illustration).

16 Heat the water, and check the temperature at which the thermostat begins to open; compare this value with that specified. It's not possible to check the fully-open temperature, because this occurs above the boiling point of water at normal atmospheric pressure. If the temperature at which the thermostat began to open was as specified, then it is most likely that the thermostat's OK. Remove the thermostat, and allow it to cool down; check that it closes fully.

17 If the thermostat does not open and close as described, if it sticks in either position, or if it does not open at the specified temperature, it must be renewed.

Refitting

All models

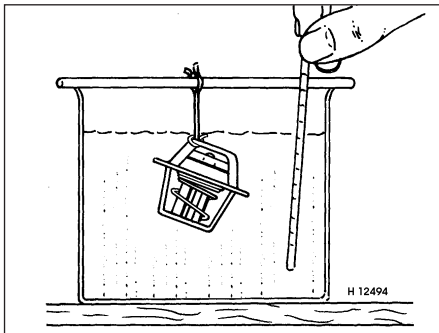
18 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Clean the mating surfaces carefully, and renew the thermostat's O-ring seal or housing gasket, as applicable (see illustration).

19 On Zetec engines, ensure that the thermostat is fitted with its air bleed valve uppermost (see illustration).

20 Tighten the thermostat housing/water outlet bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

21 Refill the cooling system (see Chapter 1).

22 Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature, then check for leaks and proper thermostat operation.



4.15 Testing the thermostat



4.18 Use a new gasket when refitting the thermostat housing



4.19 Ensure that the thermostat is fitted as shown



5.2A Cooling fan thermostatic switch location (arrowed) in the thermostat housing (CVH engine)



5.2B Cooling fan thermostatic switch location (arrowed) in the radiator top hose (Zetec engine)



5.5A Detach the cooling fan motor wiring connector . . .

5 Radiator electric cooling fan assembly - testing, removal and refitting



Note: Refer to the warnings given in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

Testing

1 If it is suspected that the cooling fan is not operating when high engine temperature would normally require it to do so, first check the relevant fuses and relays (see Chapter 12).
2 Detach the wiring multi-plug from the thermostatic switch, which is located in the thermostat housing on HCS and CVH engines, or in the radiator top hose on Zetec engines (see illustrations). Using a suitable piece of wire, bridge the two connections within the plug. Switch the ignition on and check if the cooling fan operates. If the fan now operates, the thermostatic switch is at fault, and should be renewed as described in Section 6. Remove the bridging wire from the plug, and reconnect the wiring connector to complete the test.
3 If the fan failed to operate in the previous test, either the fan motor is at fault, or there is a fault in the wiring loom (see Chapter 12 for testing details).

Removal

Note: Refer to Section 14 for removal and

refitting procedures on models equipped with air conditioning.

4 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

5 Detach the wiring multi-plug from the fan motor, and then unclip and remove the wiring from the retaining clips on the shroud (see illustrations). Also where applicable, disconnect the coolant heater hose from the location clips on the cooling fan shroud, or unscrew the metal coolant pipe retaining bolts.

6 Unscrew the two nuts (one each side) securing the cooling fan shroud to the radiator (see illustration).

7 Lift the fan unit complete with its shroud so that the shroud is clear of the radiator

attachments, then lower and remove the assembly from underneath the vehicle (see illustration). Take care not to damage the core of the radiator as the fan assembly is withdrawn.

8 If required, the fan motor can be detached from the shroud by unscrewing the three retaining nuts (see illustration).

Refitting

9 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Tighten the shroud-to-radiator bolts and the fan-to-shroud nuts to the specified torque setting. Ensure that the wiring connection is cleanly and securely made, and locate the loom in the retaining clips.



5.5B . . . and release the wiring from the shroud/motor support arm . . .



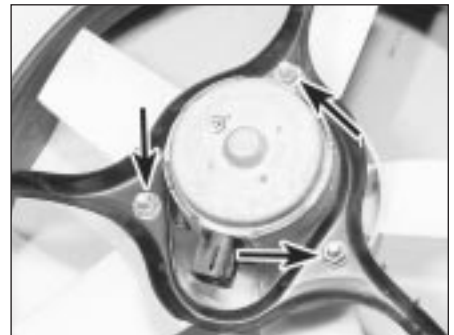
5.5C . . . and from the locating clip



5.6 Cooling fan shroud-to-radiator retaining nut



5.7 Withdrawing the cooling fan shroud and motor from under the vehicle



5.8 Fan motor-to-shroud nuts (arrowed)

6 Cooling system electrical switches and sensors - testing, removal and refitting



Note: Refer to the warnings given in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

Coolant temperature gauge sender

Testing

1 If the coolant temperature gauge is inoperative, check the fuses first (see Chapter 12).

2 If the gauge indicates overheating at any time, consult the "Fault finding" section at the end of this manual, to assist in tracing possible cooling system faults.

3 If the gauge indicates overheating shortly after the engine is started from cold, unplug the coolant temperature sender's electrical connector. The sender is located below the thermostat housing on HCS engines, adjacent to the thermostat housing on CVH engines, and on the forward-facing side of the thermostat housing on Zetec engines. If the gauge reading now drops, renew the sender. If the reading remains high, the wire to the gauge may be shorted to earth, or the gauge is faulty.

4 If the gauge fails to indicate after the engine has been warmed up (approximately 10 minutes) and the fuses are known to be sound, switch off the engine. Unplug the sender's electrical connector, and use a jumper wire to ground the connector to a clean earth point (bare metal) on the engine. Switch on the ignition without starting the engine. If the gauge now indicates Hot, renew the sender.

5 If the gauge still does not work, the circuit may be open, or the gauge may be faulty. See Chapter 12 for additional information.

Removal

6 Refer to Chapter 4 and remove the air cleaner or air inlet hoses, according to engine type as necessary, to gain access to the sender unit.

7 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).

8 On the Zetec engine, disconnect the expansion tank coolant hose and the radiator top hose from the thermostat housing's water outlet.

9 Unplug the electrical connector from the sender unit.

10 Unscrew the sender and withdraw it.

Refitting

11 Clean as thoroughly as possible the sender unit location, then apply a light coat of sealant to the sender's threads. Screw in the sender, tighten it to the specified torque wrench setting, and plug in its electrical connector.

12 Reconnect the hoses, and refit any components disconnected for access. Top-up the cooling system (see Chapter 1) and run the engine. Check for leaks and proper gauge operation.

Engine coolant temperature sensor

Testing

13 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (see Chapter 5, Section 1).

14 Locate the coolant temperature sensor, which will be found below the inlet manifold on HCS engines, on the side or centre of the inlet manifold on CVH engines, or on top of the thermostat housing on Zetec engines. Once located, refer to Chapter 4 and remove the air cleaner or air inlet hoses, according to engine type as necessary, to improve access to the sensor unit.

15 Unplug the electrical connector from the sensor.

16 Using an ohmmeter, measure the resistance between the sensor terminals. Depending on the temperature of the sensor tip, the resistance measured will vary, but should be within the broad limits given in the Specifications Section of this Chapter. If the sensor's temperature is varied - by removing it (see below) and placing it in a freezer for a while, or by warming it gently - its resistance should alter accordingly.

17 If the results obtained show the sensor to be faulty, renew it.

18 On completion, plug in the connector and refit any components removed for access, then reconnect the battery.

Removal

19 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (see Chapter 5, Section 1).

20 Locate the sensor as described previously, and remove any components as necessary for access.

21 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).

22 Unplug the electrical connector from the sensor.

23 Unscrew the sensor and withdraw it.

Refitting

24 Clean as thoroughly as possible the sensor location, then apply a light coat of sealant to the sensor's threads. Refit and tighten the sensor to the specified torque wrench setting, and plug in its electrical connector.

25 Top-up the cooling system (see Chapter 1) and run the engine, checking for leaks.



7.6A Detach the top hose . . .

Radiator electric cooling fan thermostatic switch

Testing

26 Refer to the procedures contained in Section 5.

Removal

27 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

28 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).

29 Disconnect the wiring multi-plug from the thermostatic switch, and then unscrew the switch from the thermostat housing or radiator top hose, as applicable. Remove the sealing washer.

Refitting

30 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but fit a new sealing washer and tighten the switch securely. Refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1, then reconnect the battery.

7 Radiator and expansion tank - removal, inspection and refitting



Note: Refer to the warnings given in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

Radiator

Removal

Note: If leakage is the reason for removing the radiator, bear in mind that minor leaks can often be cured using a radiator sealant with the radiator in situ.

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 On carburettor engines, refer to Chapter 4A and remove the air cleaner inlet if necessary, for access.

3 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).

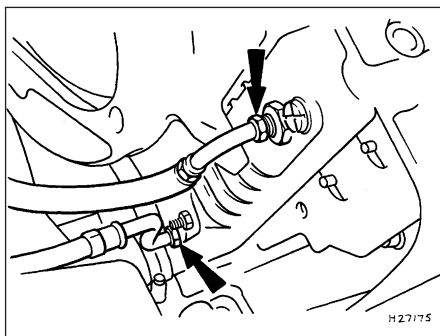
4 Remove the cooling fan assembly as described in Section 5.

5 Apply the handbrake, then raise and support the vehicle at the front end on axle stands.

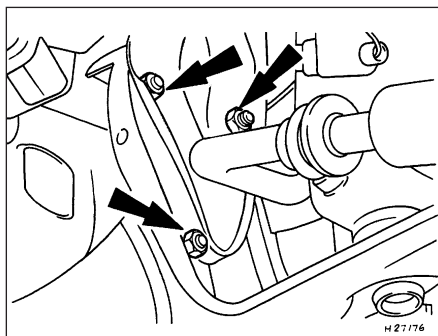
6 Loosen off their retaining clips, and detach the top, bottom and expansion tank hoses from the radiator (see illustrations).



7.6B . . . the bottom hose and expansion tank hose from the radiator



7.7A Automatic transmission fluid cooling pipe connections to the radiator (arrowed)



7.7B Air conditioner condenser retaining nuts (arrowed)



7.8 Radiator retaining bolts (arrowed)

7 Where applicable, disconnect the automatic transmission fluid cooling pipes from the radiator - be prepared for fluid loss (see illustration). As they are disconnected, plug the fluid hoses and connections, to prevent further loss of fluid and the ingress of dirt into the system. If air conditioning is fitted, remove the splash shield (see paragraph 9), then undo the three retaining nuts and detach the air conditioning condenser from the side of the radiator side deflector (see illustration).

8 Unscrew the two retaining bolts on each side of the radiator (underneath the radiator), then supporting it, lower the radiator clear of the mounting studs at the top, and carefully withdraw it from underneath the front end of the vehicle (see illustration).

9 Detach the rubber mounts, the side

deflectors and the bottom mounting from the radiator. If required, the splash shield can be removed from the radiator by undoing the six retaining screws or drilling out the pop-rivets and extracting the retaining clips (according to type) (see illustrations).

10 With the radiator removed, it can be inspected for leaks and damage. If it needs repair, have a radiator specialist or dealer service department perform the work, as special techniques are required.

11 Insects and dirt can be removed from the radiator with a garden hose or a soft brush. Don't bend the cooling fins as this is done.

Refitting

12 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but check the mounting bushes, and if necessary renew them. If the splash shield was detached from the base of the radiator, refit it using new pop-rivets or retaining clips, according to type (see illustration). Refill the cooling system with reference to Chapter 1. On automatic transmission models check, and if necessary top-up, the automatic transmission fluid level.

Expansion tank

Removal

13 Partially drain the cooling system, so that the coolant level drops below the expansion tank. Refer to Chapter 1 for details.

14 Where fitted, withdraw the power steering fluid reservoir from the side of the expansion tank, and move it aside as far as the hoses will permit.



7.9A Radiator mounting rubber



7.9B Drilling out a radiator-to-splash shield rivet



7.12 Pop-riveting the anti-splash shield to the radiator

15 Before disconnecting the coolant hoses from the expansion tank, it is advisable to clamp them just short of their connections to the expansion tank, to prevent spillage of coolant and the ingress of air when they are detached.

16 Loosen off the coolant hose clips at the expansion tank, and detach the hoses from it. If they are not clamped, secure them so that their ends are raised, to minimise coolant spillage.

17 Unscrew the two retaining screws, and remove the expansion tank from the inner wing panel.

Refitting

18 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Top-up the cooling system as described in Chapter 1.

8 Water pump (HCS engine) - removal and refitting



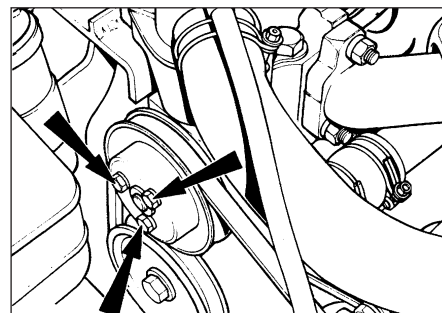
Note: Refer to the warnings given in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

Removal

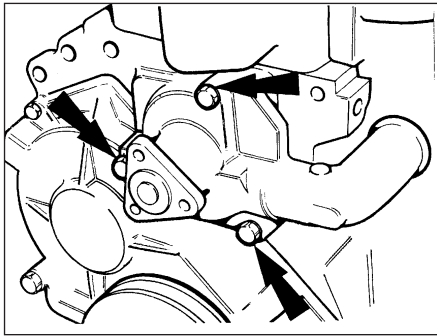
1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).

3 Slacken the water pump pulley retaining bolts, then remove the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1 (see illustration).



8.3 Slacken the water pump drivebelt pulley retaining bolts (arrowed) while the drivebelt is still in place



8.6 Unscrew the water pump retaining bolts (arrowed)

- 4 Remove the retaining bolts, and remove the drivebelt pulley from the water pump.
- 5 Loosen off the coolant hose securing clips, and disconnect the hoses from the water pump.
- 6 Unscrew the retaining bolts, and withdraw the water pump from the engine (see illustration).

Refitting

- 7 Clean all traces of gasket from the engine and the water pump mating faces. Ensure that the mating faces are clean and dry. Note that the water pump gasket fitted during production is integral with the timing cover gasket, and this will need to be cut away using a sharp knife, keeping as close to the timing cover as possible.
- 8 No provision is made for the repair of the



8.9 Refitting the water pump to the engine. Note the new gasket

- water pump; if it is noisy or defective in any way, it must be renewed.
- 9 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Use a new gasket, lightly smeared with jointing compound, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque setting (see illustration).
 - 10 Refit and adjust the auxiliary drivebelt as described in Chapter 1.
 - 11 Refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1, and reconnect the battery.

9 Water pump (CVH engine) - removal and refitting



Note: Refer to the warnings given in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).
- 3 Remove the timing belt and tensioner (see Chapter 2B). If the belt is fouled with coolant, it must be renewed as a matter of course.
- 4 Loosen off the coolant hose retaining clip, and detach the coolant hose from the water pump (see illustration).
- 5 Unscrew and remove the four bolts securing the water pump to the front end face of the cylinder block, and then withdraw the pump from the vehicle (see illustration).



9.4 Detach the coolant hose from the water pump



9.5 Removing the water pump from the CVH engine



10.5 Unscrew the bolts (arrowed) to remove the water pump

Refitting

- 6 Clean the engine water pump mating faces. Ensure that the mating faces are clean and dry.
- 7 No provision is made for the repair of the water pump; if it is noisy or defective in any way, it must be renewed.
- 8 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque, and ensure that the coolant hose connection to the water pump is securely made.
- 9 Refit the timing belt and tensioner as described in Chapter 2B.
- 10 Top-up the cooling system as described in Chapter 1, and reconnect the battery.

10 Water pump (Zetec engine) - removal and refitting



Note: Refer to the warnings given in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work.

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Drain the cooling system (see Chapter 1).
- 3 Remove the timing belt and tensioner (see Chapter 2C). If the belt is fouled with coolant, it must be renewed as a matter of course.
- 4 Disconnect the radiator bottom hose from the pump union. It is easier to reach this union if the power steering pump is unbolted and moved aside, as described in Chapter 10. There is no need to disconnect any of the power steering system hoses.
- 5 Unbolt and remove the water pump (see illustration). If the pump is to be renewed, unbolt the timing belt guide pulleys, and transfer them to the new pump.

Refitting

- 6 Clean the mating surfaces carefully; the gasket must be renewed whenever it is disturbed (see illustration).
- 7 On refitting, use grease to stick the new gasket in place, refit the pump, and tighten the pump bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.



10.6 Always use a new gasket, and clean all mating surfaces carefully

8 The remainder of refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Refit the timing belt and tensioner as described in Chapter 2C, noting that a new tensioner spring and retaining pin must be fitted if the timing belt has been removed for the first time. Tighten all fasteners to the specified torque wrench settings, and refill the system with coolant as described in Chapter 1.

11 Heater/ventilation components - removal and refitting



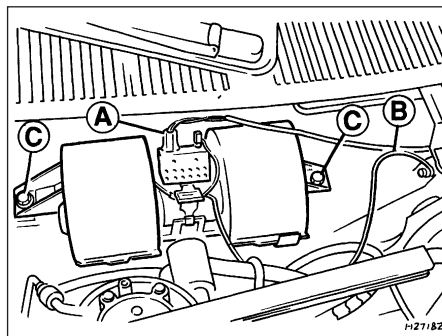
Heater blower motor

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 For improved access, refer to Chapter 4 for details, and remove the air cleaner (where applicable).
- 3 Peel back the seal strip from the top edge of the bulkhead.
- 4 Cut the ties and detach the hose and wiring loom from the bulkhead.
- 5 Undo the six retaining bolts, and remove the cover from the air chamber (see illustration).
- 6 Release the heater blower cover from its guides, and remove it.
- 7 Disconnect the wires from the blower motor, then undo the two retaining nuts and withdraw the blower motor from the air chamber (see illustration).
- 8 To remove the motor from its housing, prise free the locking clips and release the securing lugs using a pin punch (see illustration). Detach the connector from the blower resistor unit, bend the retaining tabs up, and then separate the motor (with resistor) from the retainer. Remove the motor from the housing.

Refitting

- 9 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. When reassembling the blower motor housing covers, ensure that the locating lugs are fully engaged.



11.7 Heater blower motor unit

- A Resistor multi-plug
B Earth lead
C Blower unit securing nuts

Heater blower motor resistor

Removal

- 10 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 11 For improved access, refer to Chapter 4 for details, and remove the air cleaner (where applicable).
- 12 Peel back the seal strip from the top edge of the bulkhead.
- 13 Cut the ties and detach the hose and wiring loom from the bulkhead.
- 14 Undo the six retaining bolts, and remove the cover from the air chamber.
- 15 Detach the wiring connector and the multi-plug from the resistor unit. Bend up the securing tabs, and withdraw the resistor unit from the heater motor assembly.

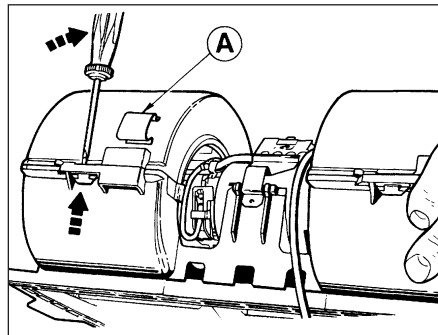
Refitting

- 16 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Ensure that the resistor retaining tabs are fully engaged and secure.

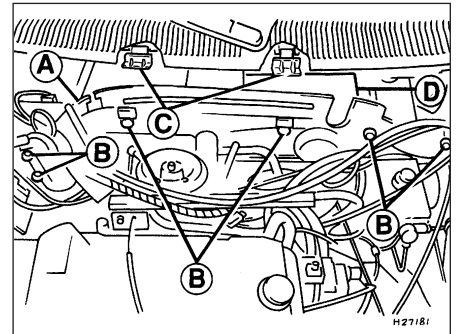
Heater unit and matrix

Removal

- 17 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 18 Drain the cooling system as described in Chapter 1.
- 19 Undo the retaining clips, and detach the heater coolant supply and return hoses at their bulkhead connections (see illustration).
- 20 A small amount of coolant (about half a litre), will have remained in the heater matrix after draining. In order to prevent the possibility of the coolant spilling onto the carpets during the removal of the heater, it is advisable to blow through one of the connections to eject the remaining coolant out through the other open connection.
- 21 Undo the two retaining screws, and detach the heater matrix cover plate and gasket from the bulkhead.
- 22 Refer to Chapter 12 for details, and remove the radio/cassette unit from the facia.
- 23 Undo the two retaining screws, and remove the stowage unit from under the radio/cassette aperture.
- 24 Peel back the front door weatherstrip (seal) from the "A" pillar adjacent to the facia.



11.8 Heater blower unit locking clip (A) removal

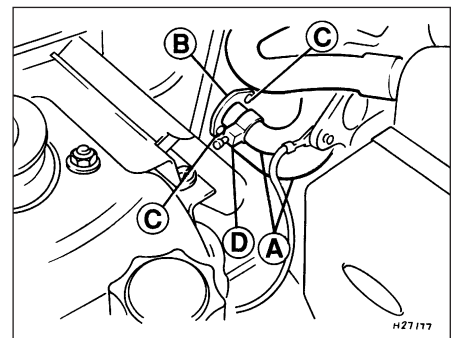


11.5 Air chamber and associated components

- A Bulkhead cover
B Cover retaining bolts
C Blower cover guides
D Blower cover

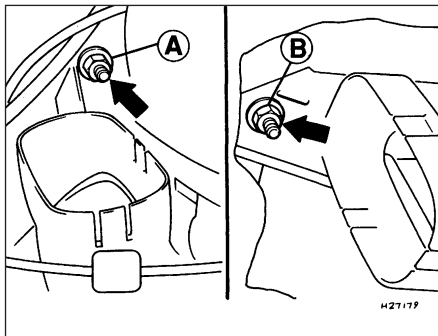
Undo the retaining screw, and remove the "A" pillar trim. Repeat the procedure on the opposite side.

- 25 Undo the two retaining screws, and remove the upper steering column shroud.
- 26 Similarly, undo the four retaining screws and remove the lower steering column shroud.
- 27 Referring to Chapter 11, undo the facia retaining screws as necessary.
- 28 Undo the single retaining screw, and withdraw the multi-function switch from the steering column. Disconnect the wiring multi-plugs.
- 29 Refer to Chapter 11 for details, and remove the centre console.
- 30 Pull free the covers from the right- and left-hand heater control levers, then unclip and disconnect the cables from their connections on the heater unit each side.
- 31 Prise free the cover from each of the three facia securing bolt apertures on the top face of the facia, also the cover from the radio/cassette recess.
- 32 Unscrew and remove the ten Torx-type retaining bolts, and pull the facia rearwards to partially withdraw it, taking care not to stretch the wiring harnesses under the facia (see Chapter 11).

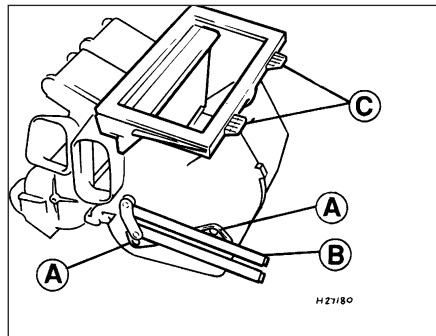


11.19 Coolant heater hose connections to heater at bulkhead

- A Coolant hoses
B Cover plate
C Screws
D Clip



11.35 Left-hand (A) and right-hand (B) heater housing securing nuts (arrowed)



11.36 Heater unit showing matrix retaining screws (A), matrix (B) and unit locating lugs (C)



11.45 Prising free the left-hand side vent

33 Pull free the footwell air vent from the heater housing connection.

34 Pull free the air ducts from the heater housing connections (two each side, and two in the centre).

35 Undo the two retaining nuts, and disconnect the heater housing from the cowl panel by withdrawing it downwards and removing it from the side (see illustration).

36 To remove the heater matrix (radiator) from the heater unit, undo the two retaining screws and carefully withdraw it (see illustration).

Refitting

37 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. When fitting the heater unit into position, engage the lugs of its flange with the support bracket on the cowl panel, and guide the matrix into position through the opening in the bulkhead.

38 Check that all wiring, coolant hose and air duct connections are securely made. Tighten the housing retaining nuts to the specified torque.

39 On completion, refill the cooling system as described in Chapter 1, then reconnect the battery.

Face-level air vent (right-hand)

Removal

40 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

41 Undo the two retaining screws from its

upper edge, and withdraw the instrument panel surround.

42 Undo the two retaining screws, and withdraw the face-level vent from the fascia. Where applicable, detach the wiring connectors from the switches in the panel.

Refitting

43 Refitting is the reversal of removal.

Face-level air vent (left-hand)

Removal

44 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

45 Open the glovebox lid, then unscrew the vent retaining screw from the underside of the box roof (directly under the vent). Carefully prise free and remove the vent (see illustration).

Refitting

46 Refitting is the reversal of removal.

Face-level air vent (centre)

Removal

47 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

48 Undo the two retaining screws from its upper edge, and withdraw the instrument panel surround.

49 Carefully prise free the three heater/fresh air and blower/air conditioning switch control knobs. Loosen off the centre air vent retaining screws, and partially withdraw the air vent unit

just enough to allow access to the wiring connectors on the inside face of the unit (see illustrations).

50 Where applicable, disconnect the wiring multi-plugs from the heated rear window and rear foglight or heated windscreen switches, then remove the centre air vent unit.

Refitting

51 Refitting is the reversal of removal.

12 Heater/air conditioning controls - removal and refitting



Heater/air conditioning control panel

Removal

1 Remove the centre face-level air vent as described in the previous Section.

2 Pull free the covers, then disconnect the control cables from each side of the heater unit. The right-hand side cable operates the temperature control valve, and the left-hand cable operates the air distribution valve (see illustration).

3 Undo the two screws securing the heater control panel to the fascia. Withdraw the panel from the fascia just enough to allow the heater blower/air conditioning switch wiring plug to be detached, then fully withdraw the control panel, and feed the control cables through the fascia aperture (see illustrations).



11.49A Prise free the control knobs . . .



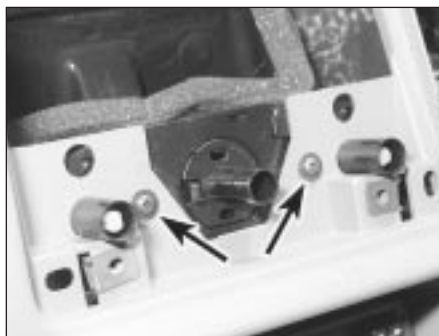
11.49B . . . undo the retaining screws . . .



11.49C . . . and partially withdraw the air vent unit



12.2 Heater temperature control cable connection on the right-hand side of the heater unit



12.3A Control panel retaining screws (arrowed)



12.3B Control panel removal

Refitting

4 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Ensure that the control cables are correctly re-routed (with no tight bends). Check that the cables and the wiring connectors are securely refitted.

Heater/air conditioning control cables

Removal

5 Remove the control panel as previously described.

6 Bend the retaining tabs straight, and then detach the cover from the baseplate to open the heater control unit (see illustration).

7 Cut the cable retaining clips free, then release the cables from the toothed guide strips to remove them. Note that the retaining clips will need to be renewed during reassembly.

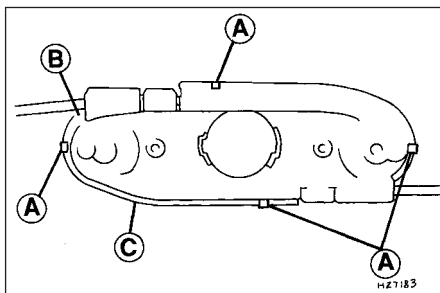
Refitting

8 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure.

13 Air conditioning system - general information and precautions

General information

The air conditioning system consists of a condenser mounted in front of the radiator, an evaporator mounted adjacent to the heater matrix, a compressor mounted on the engine,



12.6 Heater control unit retaining tabs (A), cover (B) and baseplate (C)

a dehydrator, and the plumbing connecting all of the above components (see illustration).

A blower fan forces the warmer air of the passenger compartment through the evaporator core (rather like a radiator in reverse), transferring the heat from the air to the refrigerant. The liquid refrigerant boils off into low-pressure vapour, taking the heat with it when it leaves the evaporator.

Precautions

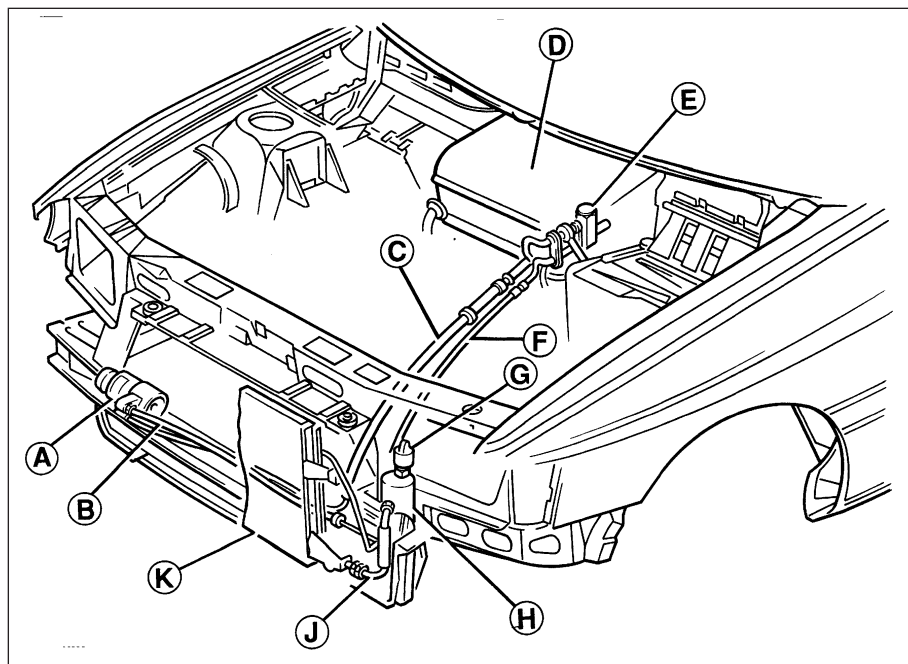


Warning: The air conditioning system is under high pressure. Do not loosen any fittings or remove any components until after the system has been discharged. Air conditioning refrigerant should be properly discharged into an approved type of

container, at a dealer service department or an automotive air conditioning repair facility capable of handling the refrigerant safely. Always wear eye protection when disconnecting air conditioning system fittings.

When an air conditioning system is fitted, it is necessary to observe the following special precautions whenever dealing with any part of the system, its associated components, and any items which necessitate disconnection of the system:

- While the refrigerant used on later models - R134a - is less damaging to the environment than the previously-used R12, both are very dangerous substances. They must not be allowed into contact with the skin or eyes, or there is a risk of



13.1 Air conditioning system layout

- A Compressor
- B Compressor-to-condenser pipe
- C Compressor-to-expansion valve
- D Evaporator and blower
- E Expansion valve

- F Expansion valve-to-dehydrator pipe
- G High-pressure switch
- H Dehydrator
- J Dehydrator-to-condenser pipe
- K Condenser

frostbite. They must also not be discharged in an enclosed space, as there is a risk of suffocation. The refrigerant is heavier than air, and so must never be discharged over a pit.

- b) The refrigerant must not be allowed to come in contact with a naked flame, otherwise a poisonous gas will be created - under certain circumstances, this can form an explosive mixture with air. For similar reasons, smoking in the presence of refrigerant is highly dangerous, particularly if the vapour is inhaled through a lighted cigarette.
- c) Never discharge the system to the atmosphere - R134a is not an ozone-depleting ChloroFluoroCarbon (CFC) as is R12, but is instead a hydrofluorocarbon, which causes environmental damage by contributing to the "greenhouse effect" if released into the atmosphere.
- d) R134a refrigerant must not be mixed with R12: the system uses different seals (now green-coloured, previously black) and has different fittings requiring different tools, so that there is no chance of the two types of refrigerant becoming mixed accidentally.
- e) If for any reason the system must be disconnected, entrust this task to your Ford dealer or a refrigeration engineer.
- f) It is essential that the system be professionally discharged prior to using any form of heat - welding, soldering, brazing, etc - in the vicinity of the system, before having the vehicle oven-dried at a temperature exceeding 70°C after repainting, and before disconnecting any part of the system.

14 Air conditioning system components - removal and refitting



Warning: Refer to the precautions given in the previous Section before proceeding.

Note: This Section refers to the components of the air conditioning system itself - refer to Sections 11 and 12 for details of components common to the heating/ventilation system.

Condenser

- 1 Have the refrigerant discharged at a dealer service department or an automotive air conditioning repair facility.
- 2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (see Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 3 Secure the radiator to the front body panel using string or wire to prevent it dropping when the mounting bracket is removed in a subsequent operation.
- 4 Apply the handbrake, then raise the front of the vehicle and securely support it on axle stands.
- 5 Undo the six plastic screws, and remove the cover from under the condenser/radiator mounting bracket.

6 Using the Ford service tool 34-001, disconnect the refrigerant lines from the condenser. Immediately cap the open fittings, to prevent the entry of dirt and moisture.

7 Undo the two bolts and one nut securing the dehydrator to the condenser/radiator mounting bracket, and move the dehydrator to one side.

8 Undo the two bolts each side securing the condenser/radiator mounting bracket to the body side members.

9 Detach the condenser and mounting bracket from the right-hand then the left-hand upper radiator mountings, and withdraw the assembly from under the car.

10 Release the clips and remove the air deflector from the condenser, then undo the two nuts and remove the mounting bracket. If required, unscrew the two mountings.

11 Refitting is the reversal of removal.

12 Have the system evacuated, charged and leak-tested by the specialist who discharged it.

Evaporator and blower motor

13 Have the refrigerant discharged at a dealer service department or an automotive air conditioning repair facility.

14 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1), followed by the positive lead, then remove the battery from its location.

15 For improved access, refer to Chapter 4 for details, and remove the air cleaner (where applicable).

16 Peel back the seal strip from the top edge of the bulkhead.

17 Cut the ties and detach the hose and wiring loom from the bulkhead.

18 Undo the three bolts, and detach the air conditioning pipe gasket retaining plate complete with gasket, from the bulkhead.

19 Undo the six retaining bolts, and remove the cover from the air chamber.

20 Release the evaporator housing cover from its guides and remove it.

21 Undo the retaining bolt, and disconnect the compressor low-pressure pipe and the dehydrator liquid pipe from the front of the expansion valve.

22 Disconnect the blower motor resistor multi-plug, and disconnect the blower motor earth lead at the connection on the body.

23 At the vacuum reservoir, disconnect the multi-plugs for the vacuum motor switch and de-ice switch, and detach the two vacuum hoses. Undo the screw and remove the vacuum reservoir assembly from the evaporator housing.

24 Disconnect the two condensation hoses from the front of the evaporator housing.

25 Undo the two bolts and two nuts, and remove the evaporator housing from the vehicle.

26 From the side of the evaporator housing, release the vacuum motor linkage clamp screw, then undo the two nuts and remove the vacuum motor. Undo the two screws

securing the de-ice switch, and withdraw the switch sensor.

27 Disconnect the blower motor resistor wiring plug, then undo the three screws and withdraw the evaporator housing cover.

28 Undo the two screws, release all the retaining clips securing the upper and lower halves of the evaporator housing, and lift off the upper half.

29 Undo the two screws, and detach the expansion valve from the side of the evaporator. Recover the valve seals.

30 Lift the evaporator out of the lower half of the housing.

31 To remove the blower motor, undo the securing bolt from the motor retaining strap, and lift out the motor.

32 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, but use new seals where applicable, and tighten all fastenings to the specified torque wrench settings (where given).

33 Have the system evacuated, charged and leak-tested by the specialist who discharged it.

Compressor

34 Have the refrigerant discharged at a dealer service department or an automotive air conditioning repair facility.

35 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (see Chapter 5, Section 1).

36 Apply the handbrake, then raise the front of the vehicle and securely support it on axle stands.

37 Remove the auxiliary drivebelt (see Chapter 1).

38 Undo the six plastic screws, and remove the cover from under the condenser/radiator mounting bracket.

39 Disconnect the compressor clutch wiring multi-plug, then undo the retaining bolt to detach the compressor high- and low-pressure pipes.

40 Undo the four bolts, and remove the compressor from its mounting bracket. **Note:** Keep the compressor level during handling and storage. If the compressor has seized, or if you find metal particles in the refrigerant lines, the system must be flushed out by an air conditioning technician, and the dehydrator must be renewed.

41 Refit the compressor in the reverse order of removal; renew all seals disturbed.

42 Have the system evacuated, charged and leak-tested by the specialist that discharged it.

Dehydrator

43 Have the refrigerant discharged at a dealer service department or an automotive air conditioning repair facility.

44 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (see Chapter 5, Section 1).

45 Unscrew the pipe to the expansion valve and the compressor connecting pipe at the dehydrator.

46 Disconnect the high-pressure switch

multi-plug, then remove the high-pressure switch.

47 Apply the handbrake, then raise the front of the vehicle and securely support it on axle stands.

48 Undo the six plastic screws, and remove the cover from under the condenser/radiator mounting bracket.

49 Undo the two bolts and one nut securing the dehydrator to the condenser/radiator mounting bracket, and remove the dehydrator from under the vehicle.

50 Refit the dehydrator in the reverse order of removal; renew all seals disturbed.

51 Have the system evacuated, charged and leak-tested by the specialist that discharged it.

Electric cooling fan motor

52 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

53 Detach the wiring multi-plugs from the air conditioning fan motor and the motor resistor. Cut free the cable ties securing the wires to the bracket.

54 Working from above, unscrew the left-hand retaining nut from the fan motor support frame. Apply the handbrake, then raise and support the vehicle, then working from underneath, unscrew and remove the right-hand retaining nut from the support frame.

55 Undo the four retaining bolts, and detach the transmission brace (where fitted) from the bearer and transmission flange.

56 Remove the starter motor (Chapter 5).

57 Detach and remove the exhaust downpipe (Chapter 4).

58 Lift the support frame and fan motor from the mounting each side, and withdraw it from underneath the vehicle. If required, undo the three retaining nuts and detach the fan unit from the support frame (**see illustration**).

59 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Tighten all fastenings to their specified torque wrench settings (where given). Ensure that all wiring connections are securely made and, where applicable, relocate the wiring using new cable ties.

De-ice switch

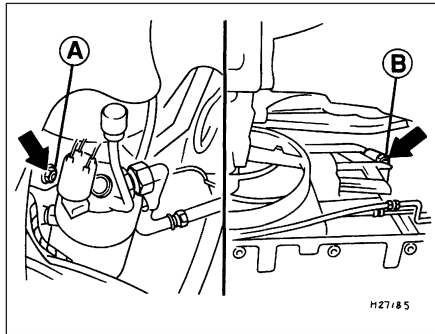
60 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1), followed by the positive lead, then remove the battery from its location.

61 For improved access, refer to Chapter 4 for details, and remove the air cleaner (where applicable).

62 Peel back the seal strip from the top edge of the bulkhead.

63 Cut the ties and detach the hose and wiring loom from the bulkhead.

64 Undo the three bolts, and detach the air conditioning pipe gasket retaining plate complete with gasket, from the bulkhead.



14.58 Left-hand (A) and right-hand (B) fan motor-to-support frame retaining nuts (arrowed)

65 Undo the six retaining bolts, and remove the cover from the air chamber.

66 Release the evaporator housing cover from its guides and remove it.

67 At the vacuum reservoir, disconnect the multi-plugs for the vacuum motor switch and de-ice switch, and detach the two vacuum hoses. Undo the screw, and remove the vacuum reservoir assembly from the evaporator housing.

68 Undo the two bolts and two nuts, and remove the evaporator housing from the vehicle.

69 Undo the two screws securing the de-ice switch, and withdraw the switch from the housing.

70 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure.

Air conditioning control switch

71 The switch is located in the main heating and ventilation control panel. Remove the control panel from the fascia as described in Section 12, then unclip the air conditioning/blower motor switch from the control unit.

72 Disconnect the wiring multi-plug and the light lead from the switch.

73 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

Vacuum motor switch

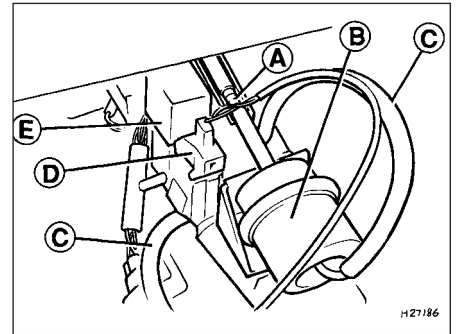
74 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1), followed by the positive lead, then remove the battery from its location.

75 Detach the wiring multi-plug from the vacuum motor switch, then undo the two retaining screws and remove the switch from the vacuum reservoir.

76 Refit in the reverse order of removal, but ensure that the seal is seated correctly.

Vacuum motor

77 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1), followed by the positive lead, then remove the battery from its location.



14.84 Vacuum motor assembly

A Vacuum motor linkage clamp screw

B Vacuum motor

C Vacuum hoses

D Vacuum motor switch

E De-ice switch

78 For improved access, refer to Chapter 4 for details, and remove the air cleaner (where applicable).

79 Peel back the seal strip from the top edge of the bulkhead.

80 Cut the ties and detach the hose and wiring loom from the bulkhead.

81 Undo the three bolts, and detach the air conditioning pipe gasket retaining plate complete with gasket, from the bulkhead.

82 Undo the six retaining bolts and remove the cover from the air chamber.

83 Release the evaporator housing cover from its guides and remove it.

84 From the side of the evaporator housing, release the vacuum motor linkage clamp screw, then undo the two nuts and remove the vacuum motor. As it is withdrawn, detach the vacuum hose (**see illustration**).

85 Refit in the reverse order of the removal. Ensure that the vacuum hose and wiring connections are securely made. Renew the cable ties to relocate the wiring to the bulkhead cover.

Vacuum reservoir

86 Proceed as described in paragraphs 77 to 83 inclusive above, then continue as follows.

87 Detach the two vacuum hoses from the vacuum reservoir. Detach the wiring multi-plug from the vacuum motor switch, then undo the retaining screw and remove the vacuum reservoir from the evaporator housing.

88 Undo the two retaining screws and remove the vacuum motor switch from the reservoir.

89 Refit in the reverse order of the removal. Ensure that the vacuum hose and wiring connections are securely made. Renew the cable ties to relocate the wiring to the bulkhead cover.






Chapter 4 Part A:

Fuel and exhaust systems - carburettor engines

Contents

Accelerator (cam plate) cable (CTX automatic transmission models) - adjustment	4	Choke cable - removal, refitting and adjustment	6
Accelerator cable (manual transmission models) - removal, refitting and adjustment	3	Exhaust manifold - removal and refitting	See Chapter 2
Accelerator pedal - removal and refitting	5	Exhaust system - general information and component renewal	25
Air cleaner - removal and refitting	2	Exhaust system check	See Chapter 1
Air cleaner element renewal	See Chapter 1	Fuel gauge sender unit - removal and refitting	9
Automatic choke (Weber TLD carburettor) - adjustment	21	Fuel pump - testing, removal and refitting	7
Automatic choke (Weber TLD carburettor) - removal, inspection and refitting	22	Fuel tank - removal, inspection and refitting	8
Carburettor (Weber TLD) - fast idle speed adjustment	19	Fuel tank filler pipe - removal and refitting	11
Carburettor (Weber TLD) - description	18	General information and precautions	1
Carburettor (Weber TLD) - dismantling, cleaning/inspection and reassembly	24	General fuel system checks	See Chapter 1
Carburettor (Weber TLD) - removal and refitting	23	Inlet manifold - removal and refitting	See Chapter 2
Carburettor (Weber TLDM) - description	12	Needle valve and float (Weber TLD carburettor) - removal, refitting and adjustment	20
Carburettor (Weber TLDM) - dismantling, cleaning, inspection and reassembly	17	Needle valve and float (Weber TLDM carburettor) - removal, refitting and adjustment	14
Carburettor (Weber TLDM) - fast idle speed adjustment	13	Oxygen sensor	See Chapter 6
Carburettor (Weber TLDM) - removal and refitting	16	Throttle kicker unit (Weber TLDM carburettor) - removal, refitting and adjustment	15
Catalytic converter	See Chapter 6	Roll-over valve - removal and refitting	10
		Underbody fuel/brake line check	See Chapter 1
		Underbonnet hose check	See Chapter 1

Degrees of difficulty

Easy, suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy, suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult, suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult, suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult, suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

Specifications

Fuel grade

Fuel octane requirement	95 RON unleaded
-------------------------	-----------------

Fuel pump

Delivery pressure	0.24 to 0.38 bars
-------------------	-------------------

Carburettor (general)

Type	Twin choke, downdraught
Application/identification:	
1.3 HCS engine	Weber 2V TLDM
1.4 and 1.6 CVH engines	Weber 2V TLD
Choke type	Manual or automatic

Weber TLDM carburettor

Idle speed and mixture settings	See Chapter 1 Specifications
Fast idle speed	2500 rpm
Float height	28 to 30 mm
Throttle kicker operating speed (automatic transmission)	1800 to 2000 rpm

	Primary	Secondary
Venturi diameter	19	20
Main jet	90	122
Emulsion jet	F113	F75
Air correction jet	185	130

Weber TLD carburettor

Idle speed and mixture settings	See Chapter 1 Specifications	
Float height:		
1.4 litre	31.0 ± 0.5 mm	
1.6 litre (without air conditioning)	31.0 ± 0.5 mm	
1.6 litre (with air conditioning)	29.0 ± 0.5 mm	
Choke vacuum pull-down:		
1.4 litre	3.1 ± 0.5 mm	
1.6 litre	2.7 ± 0.5 mm	
Choke fast idle (on kickdown step):		
1.4 litre	1900 ± 50 rpm	
1.6 litre (with manual steering)	1750 ± 50 rpm	
1.6 litre (with power steering)	Module-controlled	
Venturi diameter:	Primary	Secondary
1.4 litre	20	22
1.6 litre	21	23
Main jet:		
1.4 litre	107	140
1.6 litre (without air conditioning)	115	140
1.6 litre (with air conditioning)	115	127
Emulsion tube		
1.4 litre	F105	F75
1.6 litre (without air conditioning)	F105	157
1.6 litre (with air conditioning)	F105	171
Air correction jet:		
1.4 litre	195	170
1.6 litre (without air conditioning)	180	150
1.6 litre (with air conditioning)	185	125
Throttle kicker speed:		
1.4 litre	1400 rpm	
1.6 litre	1300 rpm	

1 General information and precautions

The fuel system on all models with carburettor induction comprises a rear-mounted fuel tank, a mechanical diaphragm fuel pump, a carburettor and an air cleaner.

The fuel tank is mounted at the rear, under the floorpan behind the rear seats. The tank has a “ventilation-to-atmosphere system” through a combined roll-over/anti-trickle fill valve assembly, located in the left-hand rear wheel arch. A filler neck sensing pipe, integral with the fuel tank filler pipe, will shut off the fuel pump filler gun when the predetermined maximum level of fuel is reached in the tank, so preventing spillage and wastage. A conventional fuel level sender unit is mounted in the top face of the fuel tank.

One of two fuel pump types will be fitted, depending on the engine type. On HCS engines, the fuel pump is operated by a pivoting rocker arm; one end rests on an eccentric lobe on the engine camshaft, and the other end is attached to the fuel pump diaphragm. The pump fitted to the CVH engine is operated by a separate pushrod, one end rests on an eccentric lobe on the engine camshaft, and the other rests on the pump actuating rod which operates the diaphragm. Both types of mechanical pump incorporate a nylon filter, and are of sealed type (they cannot be serviced or overhauled).

A twin-venturi Weber carburettor is fitted, further details being given in later Sections of this Chapter.

The air cleaner incorporates a “waxstat” controlled air intake, supplying either hot air from a shroud mounted around the exhaust manifold, or cool air from a duct in the front of the vehicle.

Precautions



Warning: Many of the procedures in this Chapter require the removal of fuel lines and connections, which may result in some fuel spillage. Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand. Before carrying out any operation on the fuel system, refer also to the precautions given in “Safety first!” at the beginning of this manual, and follow them implicitly. Petrol is a highly-dangerous and volatile liquid, and the precautions necessary when handling it cannot be overstressed.

Reference must also be made to Chapter 5, Section 1 for precautionary notes concerning the ignition system and battery disconnection, and to any further safety-related text contained within the appropriate Section, before working on the vehicle. When disconnecting the automatic choke or other coolant hoses, ensure that the cooling system is not pressurised (refer to Chapter 2). *Do not work on or near a hot cooling system.*

Certain adjustment points in the fuel system are protected by tamperproof caps, plugs or seals. In some territories, it is an offence to drive a vehicle with broken or missing tamperproof seals. Before disturbing a tamperproof seal, first check that no local or national laws will be broken by doing so, and fit a new tamperproof seal after adjustment is complete, where required by law. Do not break tamperproof seals on any vehicle whilst it is still under warranty.

When working on fuel system components, scrupulous cleanliness must be observed, and care must be taken not to introduce any foreign matter into the fuel lines or components. Carburettors in particular are delicate instruments, and care must be taken not to disturb any components unnecessarily. Before attempting work on a carburettor, ensure that the relevant spares are available; it should be noted that a complete strip down of a carburettor is unlikely to cure a fault which is not immediately obvious, without introducing new problems. If persistent problems occur, it is recommended that the



2.4A Disconnecting the oil separator/crankcase ventilation hose from the air cleaner (CVH engine)

services of a Ford dealer or a carburettor specialist are sought. Most dealers will be able to provide carburettor rejetting and servicing facilities. Where necessary, it may be possible to purchase a reconditioned carburettor.

2 Air cleaner - removal and refitting



Note: Air cleaner element renewal and air cleaner temperature control system checks are described in Chapter 1.

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 On CVH engine models, pull free and release the accelerator cable from the locating clip on the side of the air cleaner.
- 3 Undo the three retaining bolts, and partially lift the air cleaner from the carburettor so that the hose and wiring connections to the underside of the air cleaner body are accessible.
- 4 Note their connections and routings, then detach the wiring and hoses from the underside of the air cleaner. On CVH engines, also disconnect the vacuum hose from the inlet manifold (see illustrations).
- 5 Lift the air cleaner clear from the carburettor.
- 6 If required, the intake air temperature



3.2 Disconnecting the accelerator cable from the pedal



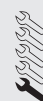
2.4B Disconnecting the vacuum hose from the inlet manifold (CVH engine)

sensor can be unscrewed and removed from the base of the air cleaner (where fitted).

Refitting

- 7 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Renew any hoses that are perished or cracked, and ensure that all fittings are securely and correctly reconnected.

3 Accelerator cable (manual transmission models) - removal, refitting and adjustment

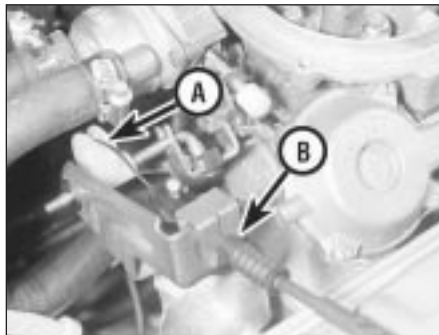


Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Working inside the vehicle, disconnect the cable from the top of the accelerator pedal, release the grommet and pull the cable free from the pedal (see illustration). Withdraw the cable through the engine side of the bulkhead.
- 3 Refer to Section 2 and remove the air cleaner.
- 4 Detach the inner cable from the carburettor linkage (see illustrations).
- 5 Prise free the retaining clip, detach the outer cable from the support bracket, and remove the cable.

Refitting and adjustment

- 6 To refit the cable, feed the inner cable



3.4A Accelerator inner (A) and outer (B) cable connection to the CVH engine



2.4C Disconnecting the intake air temperature sensor connector (CVH engine)

through the bulkhead, and reconnect the inner cable to the accelerator pedal.

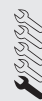
- 7 Locate the grommet in the bulkhead, then push the outer cable into it to secure it in the bulkhead.

8 Lubricate the cable grommet at the carburettor end with a mild soapy solution, then reconnect the cable to the carburettor. Locate the outer cable by pulling it towards the rocker cover.

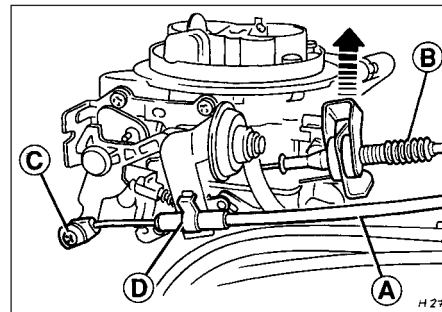
- 9 Have an assistant depress the accelerator pedal fully, and hold it in this position. The outer cable should be seen to move in its grommet. Refit the securing clip to the bracket, then release the accelerator pedal.

- 10 Depress the accelerator pedal, then release it and check that the throttle opens and shuts fully. Further adjust if necessary before refitting the air cleaner and reconnecting the battery.

4 Accelerator (cam plate) cable (CTX automatic transmission models) - adjustment

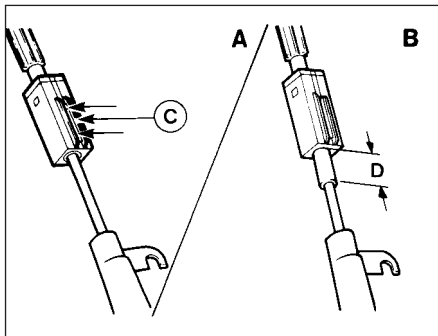


- 1 Refer to Section 2 and remove the air cleaner.
- 2 Release the cable by pressing the orange (or red) button on the cable auto adjuster mechanism. As the cable is released, it will be



3.4B Cable connections to the carburettor on the HCS engine

- A Choke cable
B Accelerator cable
C Choke cable inner cable connection
D Choke cable support bracket connection



4.2 Cam plate cable release showing cable taut (A) and released (B). Also shown are the release button (C) and 20 mm pre-adjustment/10 mm post-adjustment minimum protrusion (D)

heard to click. The cable shoulder will now be seen to protrude from the adjuster mechanism by approximately 20 mm (see illustration).

3 Turn the cam plate by hand so that the throttle moves to the fully-open position. Now release the cam plate and close the throttle. The cable will automatically adjust as required, and the adjuster will be heard to click as it makes the adjustment. The cable shoulder will now be seen to protrude from the auto adjuster mechanism by approximately 10 mm.

4 Remove the clip from the cable adjusting sleeve at the carburettor bracket, and pull the adjusting sleeve right out (see illustration).

5 Have an assistant fully depress the accelerator pedal, then refit the clip to the cable adjusting sleeve. Release the pedal.

6 Depress the accelerator pedal once or twice, to check that the throttle opens fully. If necessary, repeat paragraphs 4 and 5.

7 Refit the air cleaner as described in Section 2, and reconnect the battery earth lead.

5 Accelerator pedal - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

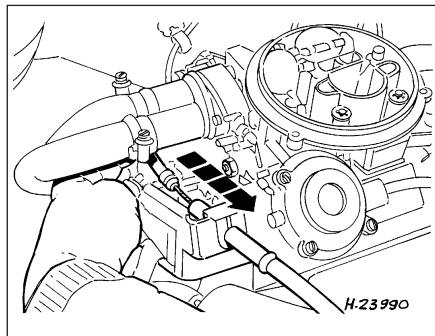
2 Peel back the carpet and insulation from the driver's footwell to allow access to the accelerator pedal.

3 Detach the accelerator cable from the pedal (see Section 3), then release the circlip from the pivot shaft and remove the accelerator pedal.

Refitting

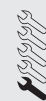
4 Refit in the reverse order of removal. On completion, check the action of the pedal and the cable to ensure that the throttle has full unrestricted movement, and fully returns when released.

5 Reconnect the battery earth lead.



4.4 Remove the clip from the cable adjusting sleeve at the carburettor bracket, and pull the adjusting sleeve right out

6 Choke cable - removal, refitting and adjustment



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Refer to Section 2 and remove the air cleaner.

3 Carefully prise free the choke inner cable from its linkage connection on the carburettor, then release the outer cable from the support bracket.

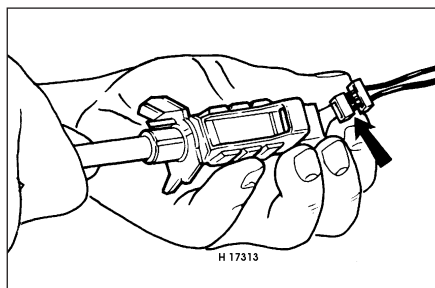
4 Release the choke control knob from the cable by depressing the retaining pin on the underside of the knob.

5 Undo the choke control-to-trim retaining collar.

6 Undo and remove the screw securing the choke control recessed trim, and remove the trim and cable control. Detach the "choke on" warning light lead from the control, then withdraw the choke cable from the fascia trim (passing it through the bulkhead) (see illustration).

Refitting

7 To refit the cable, first pass it through the bulkhead and trim panel, then refit the retaining collar and attach the wiring connector. Fit the trim recess to the main trim



6.6 Disconnecting the wiring connector from the choke control (control unit removed for clarity)

panel, and tighten the retaining screw to secure. Push the knob into position on the choke cable control so that it is felt to lock into engagement.

8 Reconnect the inner choke cable to the carburettor linkage.

9 Pull the choke control knob fully out (to the full-on position). Return to the carburettor end, and move the choke lever by hand to its full-on position; hold it there whilst simultaneously reconnecting the outer cable to its support bracket.

Adjustment

10 To check that the choke cable is correctly adjusted, the control knob must be pulled out to the full-on position and the choke lever must be in contact with its stop (see illustration). Adjust as required if necessary.

11 Press the choke knob fully in (to the off position), then check that the choke linkage at the carburettor has fully returned to its off position and the choke valve plate in the carburettor is at a right angle (90°) to the venturi.

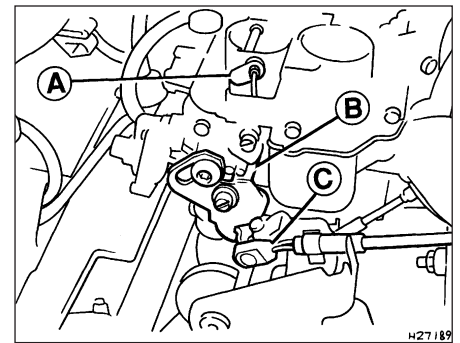
12 Refit the air cleaner.

13 Reconnect the battery, turn the ignition on, operate the choke and check that the choke warning light operates correctly.

7 Fuel pump - testing, removal and refitting

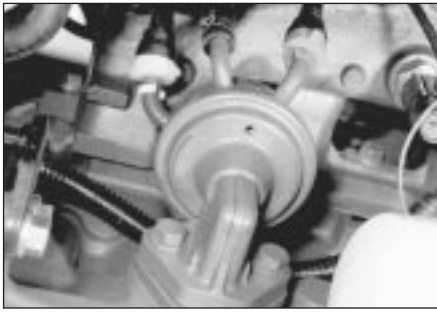


Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.



6.10 Choke cable adjustment

A Choke lever B Full choke stop
C Cable in "full-on" position



7.1A Underside view of the fuel pump fitted to the HCS engine



7.1B Fuel pump location on the CVH engine



7.10 Fuel pump removal from the CVH engine

Testing

1 Access to the fuel pump on HCS engine models is best gained from underneath the vehicle (see illustrations). Apply the handbrake, then raise and support it on axle stands at the front end.

2 The fuel pump may be tested by disconnecting the fuel feed pipe from the carburettor, and placing the pipe's open end in a suitable container.

3 Detach the multi-plug from the DIS ignition coil, to prevent the engine from firing.

4 Actuate the starter motor. If the fuel pump is in good working order, regular well-defined spurts of fuel should eject from the open end of the disconnected fuel pipe.

5 If this does not occur, and there is fuel in the tank, the pump is defective and must be renewed. The fuel pump is a sealed unit, and cannot be repaired.

Removal

6 Two types of mechanical fuel pump are fitted, the application depending on the engine type. Some models may also be fitted with a fuel vapour separator; if this is removed, its hoses should be labelled to avoid the possibility of confusion and incorrect attachment on refitting.

7 To remove the fuel pump, first disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

8 Where applicable, remove the air cleaner to improve access to the fuel pump (see Section 2).

9 Disconnect the fuel hoses from the fuel pump, noting their respective connections for refitting. Where quick-release couplings are used on the fuel hoses, release the protruding locking lugs on each union, by squeezing them together and carefully pulling the coupling apart. Use rag to soak up any spill fuel. Where the unions are colour-coded, the pipes cannot be confused. Where both unions are the same colour, note carefully which pipe is connected to which, and ensure that they are correctly reconnected on refitting. Plug the hoses to prevent fuel spillage and the ingress of dirt.

10 Unscrew and remove the retaining bolts or nuts (as applicable) and remove the fuel pump (see illustration).

11 Recover the gasket/spacer and if required, withdraw the pump operating pushrod (CVH engines only) (see illustration).

12 Thoroughly clean the mating faces on the pump and engine.

Refitting

13 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Be sure to use a new gasket, and tighten the securing bolts/nuts securely. Ensure that the hoses are correctly and securely reconnected. If they were originally secured with crimped type hose clips, discard them and fit screw clamp type clips. Where quick-release couplings are fitted, press them together until the locking lugs snap into their groove.

14 When the engine is restarted, check the pump connections for any signs of fuel leaks.

8 Fuel tank - removal, inspection and refitting



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas type appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Removal

1 Run the fuel level as low as possible prior to removing the tank.

2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

3 Remove the fuel filler cap, then syphon or pump out the remaining fuel from the fuel tank (there is no drain plug). The fuel must be emptied into a suitable container for storage.

4 Chock the front wheels, then raise and support the vehicle on axle stands at the rear.

5 Disconnect the fuel filler pipe from the fuel tank (see illustration). Drain any remaining fuel into the container for safe storage, and plug the hose and tank connections.



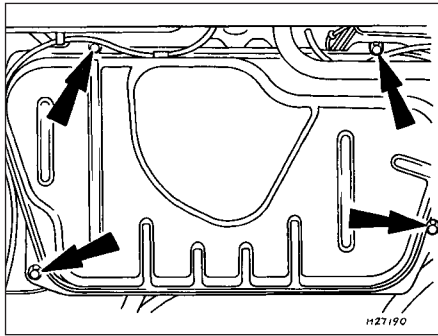
7.11 Withdrawing the fuel pump pushrod from the CVH engine



8.5 Fuel filler pipe connection to the fuel tank. Note the handbrake cable locating strap



8.6 Fuel tank sensing hose-to-pipe connection (arrowed)



8.7A Fuel tank retaining bolt locations (arrowed)

Disconnect the handbrake cable locating strap from the fuel filler pipe on the tank.

6 Disconnect the filler neck sensing hose from the rear of the tank (see illustration).

7 Support the underside of the fuel tank to hold it in position, then remove the four tank retaining bolts (see illustrations).

8 Partially lower the fuel tank, and detach the ventilation tube from the tank top surface. Also disconnect the fuel gauge sender unit wiring multi-plug and the fuel hoses. Where quick-release couplings are used on the fuel hoses, release the protruding locking lugs on each union, by squeezing them together and carefully pulling the coupling apart.

9 Slowly lower the tank, and as it is withdrawn, detach the filler pipe.

Inspection

10 Whilst removed, the fuel tank can be inspected for damage or deterioration. Removal of the sender unit (see Section 9) will allow a partial inspection of the interior. If the tank is contaminated with sediment or water, swill it out with clean petrol. Do not under any circumstances undertake any repairs on a leaking or damaged fuel tank; this work must be carried out by a professional who has experience in this critical and potentially-dangerous work.

11 Whilst the fuel tank is removed from the vehicle, it should not be placed in an area where sparks or open flames could ignite the fumes coming out of the tank. Be especially careful inside garages where a natural-gas type appliance is located, because the pilot light could cause an explosion.

12 Check the condition of the filler pipe seal in the fuel tank, and renew it if necessary.

Refitting

13 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Apply a light smear of grease to the filler pipe seal, to ease fitting. Ensure that all connections are securely fitted. Where quick-release fuel couplings are fitted, press them together until the locking lugs snap into their groove. If evidence of contamination was found, do not return any previously-drained fuel to the tank unless it is carefully filtered first.



8.7B Fuel tank securing bolt at the front edge

9 Fuel gauge sender unit - removal and refitting



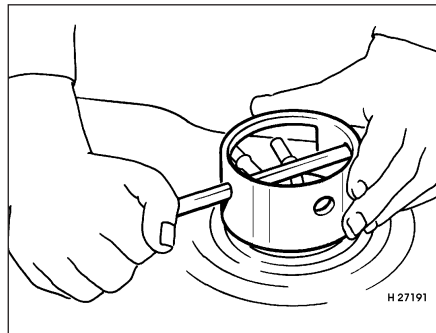
Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas type appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Note: Ford specify the use of their service tool 23-014 or 23-026 (a large box spanner with projecting teeth to engage the fuel gauge sender unit retaining ring's slots) for this task. While alternatives are possible, in view of the difficulty experienced in removing and refitting the sender unit, owners are strongly advised to obtain the correct tool before starting work. The help of an assistant will be required.

Removal

1 Remove the fuel tank as described in Section 8.

2 Engage the special tool into the sender unit then carefully turn the sender unit and release it from the tank (see illustration).



9.2 Sender unit removal from the fuel tank using special tool No 23-014

Refitting

3 Refit the sender unit in the reverse order of removal. Be sure to fit a new seal, and lubricate it with a smear of grease to prevent it from distorting when fitting the sender unit.

10 Roll-over valve - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Chock the front wheels, then raise and support the vehicle at the rear on axle stands. Remove the rear wheel on the fuel filler cap side to improve the access under the wheel arch.

3 Undo the retaining screw, withdraw the roll-over valve from the filler pipe, detach the vent hoses and remove the valve (see illustration).

Refitting

4 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

11 Fuel tank filler pipe - removal and refitting



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Removal

1 Refer to Section 8 and remove the fuel tank.

2 Detach the roll-over valve clamp, undo the filler pipe securing screws, then lower the pipe from the vehicle.



10.3 Roll-over valve location on fuel filler pipe

Refitting

3 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Lubricate the filler pipe seal to ease assembly prior to fitting.

4 When the fuel tank is refitted, refill with fuel, and check for any signs of leaks from the filler pipe and associated connections.

12 Carburettor (Weber TLDM) - description

The carburettor is of twin venturi, downdraught type, featuring a fixed size main jet system, adjustable idle system, a mechanically-operated accelerator pump, and a vacuum-operated power valve. A manually-operated cold start choke is fitted, and a throttle kicker is utilised on some models (see illustration).

In order to comply with emission control regulations and maintain good fuel consumption, the main jets are calibrated to suit the 1/4 to 3/4 throttle range. The power valve is therefore only used to supply additional fuel during full-throttle conditions.

The accelerator pump is fitted to ensure a smooth transmission from the idle circuit to the main jet system. As the accelerator pedal is depressed, a linkage moves the diaphragm within the accelerator pump, and a small quantity of fuel is injected into the venturi, to prevent a momentary weak mixture and resultant engine hesitation.

The manually-operated choke features a vacuum-operated pull-down mechanism which controls the single choke plate under certain vacuum conditions.

The throttle kicker (where fitted) acts as an idle speed compensator, which operates when required under certain operating conditions to prevent stalling.

An anti-dieselling (fuel cut-off) solenoid is fitted to prevent the possibility of the engine running on after the ignition is switched off.

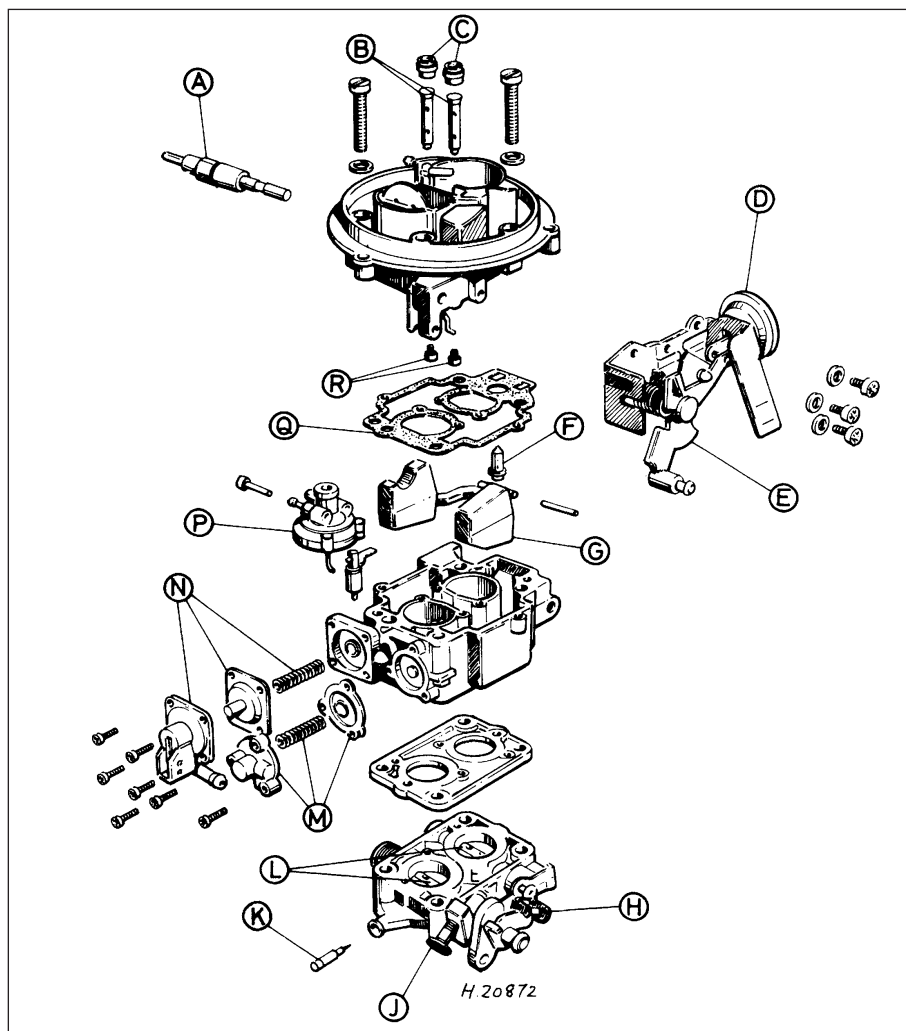
Adjustment procedures are described in Chapter 1, but it is important to note that accurate adjustments can only be made using the necessary equipment.

13 Carburettor (Weber TLDM) - fast idle adjustment



Note: Before carrying out any carburettor adjustments, ensure that the spark plug gaps are set as specified, and that all electrical and vacuum connections are secure. To carry out checks and adjustments, an accurate tachometer and an exhaust gas analyser (CO meter) will be required.

1 Check the idle speed and mixture settings are as specified (as described in Chapter 1).



12.1 Exploded view of the Weber TLDM carburettor

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| A Anti-dieselling (fuel cut-off) solenoid | J Idle speed adjustment screw |
| B Emulsion tubes | K Fuel mixture adjustment screw |
| C Air correction jets | L Throttle plates |
| D Choke pull-down diaphragm unit | M Power valve |
| E Manual choke linkage | N Accelerator pump |
| F Needle valve | P Throttle kicker (where fitted) |
| G Float | Q Upper body gasket |
| H Fast idle adjustment screw | R Main jets |

These must be correct before checking/adjusting the fast idle speed.

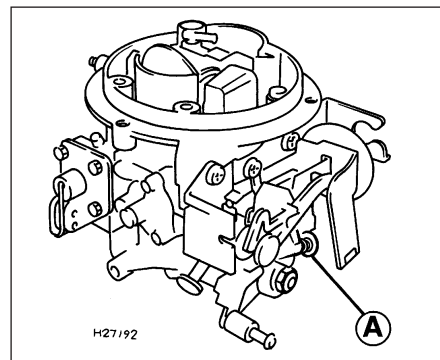
2 Switch the engine off, then remove the air cleaner as described in Section 2.

3 Actuate the choke by pulling the control knob fully out, then start the engine and note the engine fast idle speed. Compare it with the specified speed.

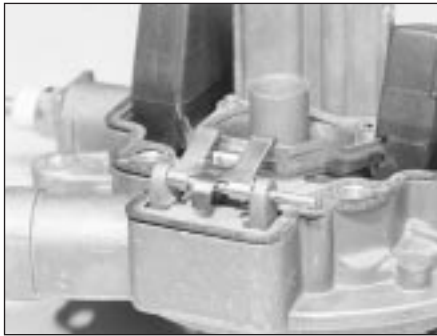
4 If adjustment is required, turn the fast idle adjuster screw clockwise to decrease, or anti-clockwise to increase, the fast idle speed (see illustration).

5 Recheck the fast idle and basic idle speeds.

6 On completion of the adjustment, stop the engine, detach the tachometer and CO meter, reconnect the radiator cooling fan lead, and refit the air cleaner.



13.4 Fast idle adjuster screw location (A) in the Weber TLDM carburettor



14.6A Slide out the float retaining pin ...



14.6B ... then detach the float and needle valve



14.7 Remove the needle valve housing and its washer

14 Needle valve and float (Weber TLDM carburettor) - removal, refitting and adjustment



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Note: New gaskets and a washer (seal) will be required when reassembling. A tachometer and an exhaust gas analyser (CO meter) will also be required to check the idle speed and mixture settings on completion.

Removal and refitting

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Remove the air cleaner as described in Section 2.
- 3 Clean the exterior of the carburettor, then disconnect the fuel supply hose and the anti-dieselling solenoid wiring.
- 4 Disconnect the choke control cable.
- 5 Undo and remove the six retaining screws (four of which are Torx type) and carefully lift the carburettor upper body clear.
- 6 Invert and support the upper body of the carburettor for access to the float and pivot. Lightly tap out the float pivot pin, then withdraw the float, taking care not to distort the arms of the float (see illustrations).
- 7 Unscrew the needle valve housing, and extract it from the carburettor upper body (see illustration). Collect the washer from the threads of the needle valve housing.
- 8 Clean and inspect the components for signs of damage or wear, particularly the pivot holes in the float arm. Check the float for signs of leakage, by shaking it to see if it contains fuel. Clean the float chamber and jets (refer to

Section 17 for details). Renew any components as necessary.

9 Fit a new washer over the needle valve housing threads, and then carefully screw the valve unit into position in the upper body.

10 Refit the needle valve, float and retaining pin, ensuring that the tag on the float engages with the ball and clip of the needle valve.

11 Before refitting the upper body to the carburettor, check and if necessary adjust the float level as described in paragraphs 16 to 18. Also check the float and needle valve for free movement.

12 Clean the gasket contact faces, then locate a new gasket and refit the upper body to the carburettor.

13 Reconnect the fuel supply hose, anti-dieselling solenoid wiring and the choke cable. Adjust the choke cable as described in Section 6. If the fuel hose was originally secured with a crimped type clip, discard it and fit a screw clamp type.

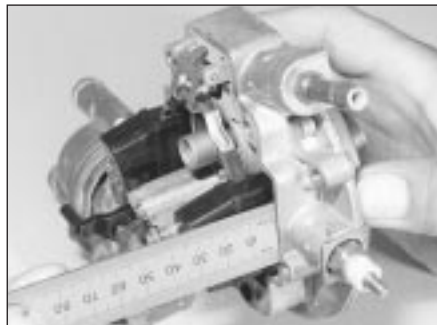
14 Refit the air cleaner as described in Section 2.

15 Reconnect the battery earth lead, then restart the engine and check the idle speed and mixture settings. Adjust if necessary as described in Chapter 1.

Float level adjustment

16 With the carburettor upper body removed as described in paragraphs 1 to 5 inclusive, proceed as follows.

17 Support the carburettor upper body vertically, ensuring that the needle valve is



14.17 Checking the float level adjustment (TLD carburettor shown) - adjustment tag arrowed

shut off. Locate the new upper body gasket onto the carburettor upper body, then measure the distance between the gasket and the bottom of the float (see illustration).

18 If the measurement is not as specified, adjust the setting by carefully bending the tag on the float as required, then recheck.

19 Refit with reference to paragraphs 12 to 15 inclusive.

15 Throttle kicker unit (Weber TLDM carburettor) - removal, refitting and adjustment



Note: A tachometer and exhaust gas analyser (CO meter) will be required to check and make any adjustment necessary.

Removal and refitting

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Refer to Section 2 and remove the air cleaner.
- 3 Detach the vacuum hose from the kicker unit. Undo the two retaining screws, detach the linkage and remove the kicker unit.
- 4 Refitting the kicker unit is a reversal of the removal procedure. If the unit is to be checked for adjustment, loosely locate the air cleaner, reconnect the intake air temperature sensor multi-plug and the battery earth lead, then proceed as follows.

Adjustment

- 5 Start and run the engine up to its normal operating temperature (at which point the cooling fan will start to operate) then switch the engine off.
- 6 Remove the air cleaner again, then detach the wiring connector of the cooling fan thermostatic switch. Bridge the terminals in the connector with a suitable piece of wire to actuate the cooling fan and keep it running. Start the engine and run it at 3000 rpm for 30 seconds to stabilise it, then release the throttle and check (and if necessary adjust) the idle speed and mixture settings as described in Chapter 1. Stop the engine.
- 7 Detach the vacuum hose between the throttle kicker and the inlet manifold at source

(but not the vacuum supply to the ignition module). Connect a new length of vacuum hose directly between the manifold and the kicker unit.

8 Restart the engine and check the engine speed. The throttle kicker should increase the engine speed above its normal idle. Check the speed registered against the specified throttle kicker operating speed.

9 If required, the throttle kicker speed can be adjusted by prising free the tamperproof plug and the adjustment screw turned as necessary (see illustration).

10 When the adjustment is complete, stop the engine, fit a new tamperproof plug, disconnect the temporary vacuum hose (between the manifold and the kicker unit) and reconnect the original hose (between the carburettor and the kicker unit).

11 Remove the bridging wire, and reconnect the cooling fan thermostatic switch multiplug. Refit and secure the air cleaner, and disconnect the tachometer and CO meter to complete.

16 Carburettor (Weber TLDM) - removal and refitting

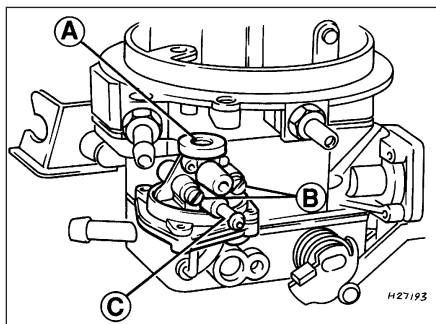


Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas type appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Note: New gaskets will be required on refitting, and a tachometer and an exhaust gas analyser will be required on completion.

Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).



15.9 Throttle kicker unit showing adjustment point (A), vacuum take-off (B) and unit retaining screws (C)

2 Remove the air cleaner as described in Section 2.

3 Disconnect the accelerator cable from the carburettor (Section 3).

4 Disconnect the choke cable from the carburettor (Section 6).

5 Disconnect the fuel hose from the carburettor, and plug its end to prevent fuel spillage and the ingress of dirt. If a crimped type hose clip is fitted, cut it free, but take care not to damage the hose. Crimped clips must be discarded and replaced with screw clamp type clips during refitting.

6 Disconnect the wiring from the anti-dieselling solenoid.

7 Unscrew and remove the four carburettor-to-manifold retaining Torx head screws, then carefully lift the carburettor from the manifold.

Refitting

8 Clean the carburettor and manifold gasket mating faces.

9 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Fit a new gasket, and tighten the retaining screws securely. Ensure that the fuel supply hose connection to the carburettor is securely fitted, using a new screw clamp retaining clip.

10 Reconnect the accelerator cable, and adjust it as described in Section 3.

11 Reconnect the choke cable, and adjust it as described in Section 6.

12 Refer to Section 2 and refit the air cleaner.

13 When the battery is reconnected, start the engine and check the idle speed and mixture settings as described in Chapter 1.

17 Carburettor (Weber TLDM) - dismantling, cleaning, inspection and reassembly



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Note: Check parts availability before dismantling. If possible, obtain an overhaul kit containing all the relevant gaskets, seals, etc, required for reassembly prior to dismantling the carburettor.

Dismantling

1 With the carburettor removed from the vehicle, prepare a clean, flat work surface prior to commencing dismantling. The following procedures may be used for partial or complete dismantling, as required.

2 Clean the exterior of the carburettor, then undo the two retaining screws and lift the upper carburettor body from the lower section (see illustrations).

3 Remove the float and needle valve from the carburettor upper body, as described in Section 14.

4 Unscrew and remove the anti-dieselling solenoid from the upper body, but ensure that the seal washer is removed together with the valve. (see illustration).

5 Undo the three screws securing the choke mechanism, and detach it (see illustrations).

6 Unscrew and remove the two air correction jets from the underside of the upper body. Note the size and location of each, to ensure correct refitting.

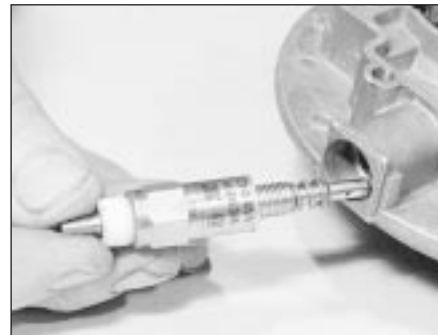
7 Invert the upper body so that the emulsion tubes can fall out of their apertures (above the air correction jets). Remove the emulsion



17.2A Undo the retaining screws ...



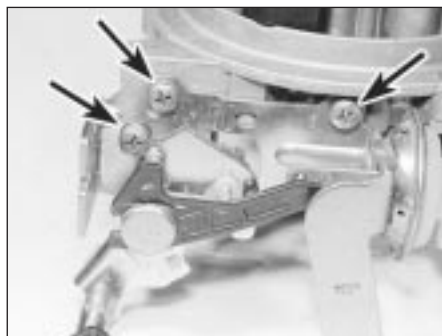
17.2B ... and remove the carburettor upper body



17.4 Extracting the anti-dieselling (fuel cut-off) solenoid



17.5A Detach the choke plate operating link ...



17.5B ... and undo the three retaining screws (arrowed) to detach the mechanism



17.10 Carefully prise out the accelerator pump discharge tube assembly



17.11A Remove the cover from the accelerator pump cover ...



17.11B ... followed by the diaphragm ...



17.11C ... and the return spring and valve unit



17.12A Undo the power valve assembly securing screws ...



17.12B ... then detach the cover, return spring and diaphragm



17.14 Unscrew and remove the fuel mixture screw



17.15 Separating the throttle housing from the carburettor main body

tubes from their locations, again having noted the size and location of each.

8 Unscrew and remove the main jets, again having noted their fitted positions.

9 Dismantle the carburettor lower (main) body as follows.

10 Prise free the accelerator pump discharge tube, but take care not to damage it or the carburettor body (see illustration).

11 Undo the four screws securing the accelerator pump; remove the cover, followed by the diaphragm and return spring. The valve should come out on the end of the return spring (see illustrations). Check that the valve is complete and with its O-ring seal (where applicable).

12 Undo the three retaining screws, and remove the power valve unit. Remove the cover and return spring, followed by the diaphragm (see illustrations).

13 Where fitted, undo the retaining screws and remove the throttle kicker unit from the lower (main) body.

14 Prise free and remove the tamperproof seal, then unscrew and remove the fuel mixture screw (see illustration).

15 Undo the retaining screws, and remove the throttle housing from the carburettor main body (see illustration).

Cleaning and inspection

16 Wash the carburettor components, drillings and passages with clean petrol, then blow them dry using a low-pressure air line. A

high-pressure air line must not be applied to the accelerator pump discharge assembly or the pump supply valve, as they each contain a rubber Vernay valve, and these can easily be damaged under high pressure. *Never use a piece of wire for cleaning purposes.*

17 Examine all of the carburettor components for signs of damage or wear, paying particular attention to the diaphragms, throttle spindle and plates, needle valve and mixture screw; the power valve jet is adjacent to the primary main jet. Renew all diaphragms, sealing washers and gaskets as a matter of course.

Reassembly

18 Refit the throttle housing to the carburettor main body (fitting a new gasket), and secure with its retaining screws.

19 Refit the fuel mixture screw. Make an initial adjustment by screwing it fully in (but do not overtighten or screw it onto its seat), then unscrew it two full turns.

20 Where fitted, reassemble the throttle kicker, ensuring that its diaphragm lies flat, and that the relative position of the operating link to the kicker cover is correct.

21 Fit the power valve, ensuring that its diaphragm lies flat and the vacuum gallery aligns with the diaphragm and housing.

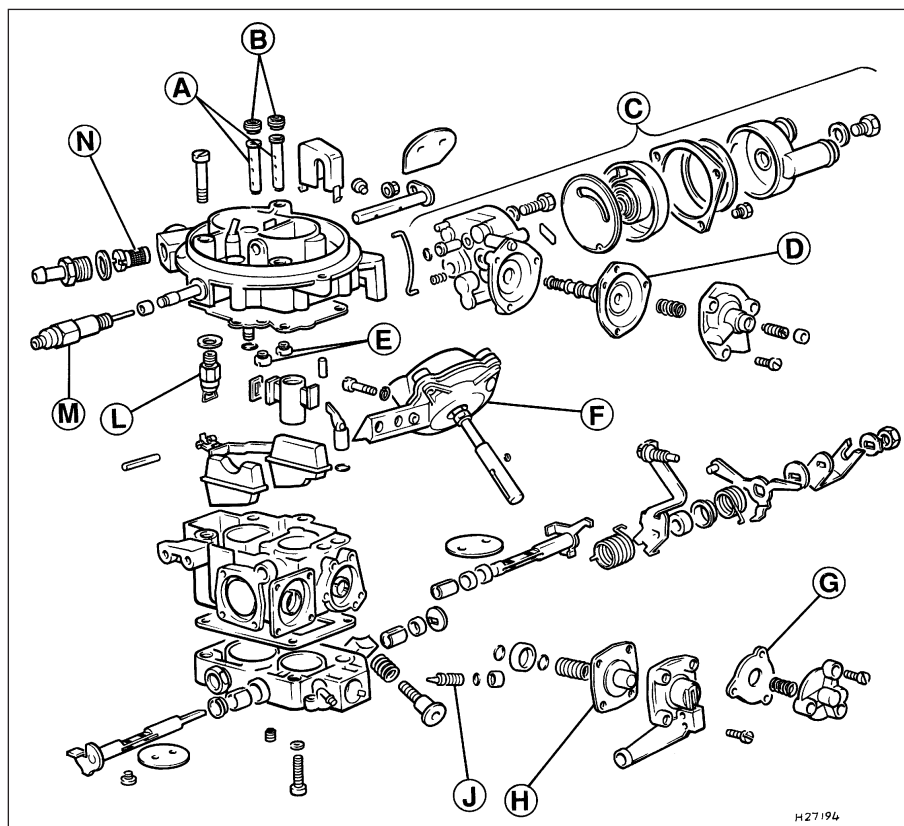
22 Refit the accelerator pump. Take care not damage the valve as it is inserted, and check that the O-ring seal is correctly located on the end of the valve. Check that the valve is not trapped by the spring.

23 Refit the accelerator pump discharge jet. Take care not to damage the valve and/or the O-ring seal, and ensure that they are correctly located.

24 Commence reassembly of the upper body by inserting the emulsion tubes and the air correction jets into their respective ports (as noted during removal).

25 Screw the anti-dieselling solenoid into position. Ensure that the aluminium washer is fitted, and take care not to overtighten the valve.

26 Refit the needle valve and the float, and



18.1A Exploded view of the Weber TLD type carburettor as fitted to the 1.6 litre engine

A Emulsion tubes	F Secondary barrel diaphragm	J Mixture screw
B Air correction jets	G Power valve diaphragm	L Needle valve
C Automatic choke unit	H Accelerator pump diaphragm	M Anti dieselling (fuel cut-off) solenoid
D Choke pull-down diaphragm		N Fuel supply filter
E Main jets		

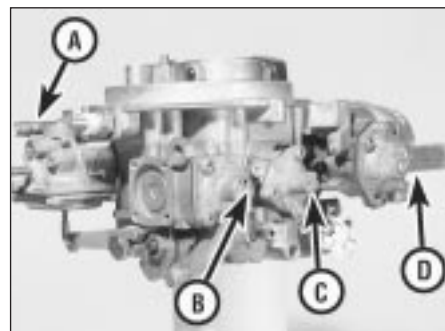
adjust the float setting as described in Section 14.

27 Refit the choke control mechanism, and secure with its three retaining screws.

28 Locate a new gasket onto the mating face, then refit the carburettor upper body to the main body. As they are reassembled, take

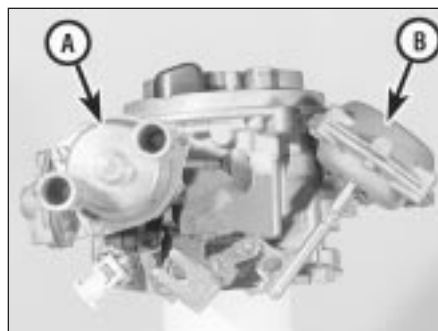
care not to snag the float on the carburettor main body. Fit and tighten the retaining screws to secure.

29 With the carburettor reassembled, refit it to the vehicle and adjust it as described in Chapter 1. Where applicable, check and adjust the throttle kicker setting.



18.1B General view of the Weber TLD type carburettor

- A Throttle kicker unit (not fitted on all models)
- B Accelerator pump
- C Power valve
- D Choke diaphragm (automatic choke)



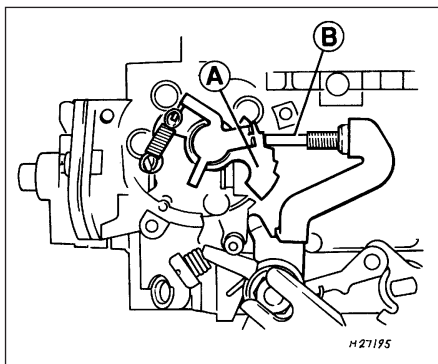
18.1C General view of the Weber TLD type carburettor

- A Automatic choke housing
- B Secondary barrel vacuum diaphragm

18 Carburettor (Weber TLD) - description

This carburettor incorporates many of the features of the TLDM type fitted to 1.3 litre HCS engines. The main differences are that the secondary venturi (barrel) is vacuum-operated, and that a coolant-heated automatic choke control system is fitted (see illustrations).

The choke system is fully automatic. When the engine is cold, the bi-metal spring which controls the position of the choke plate is fully wound up, and holds the plate closed. As the engine warms up, the bi-metal spring is heated by the coolant and begins to unwind,



19.3 Fast idle adjustment on the TLD carburettor showing the adjuster screw (B) on 4th step of the fast idle cam (A). Note that the housing is removed for clarity

thereby progressively opening the choke plate. A vacuum-operated pull-down mechanism controls the choke plate under certain operating conditions, and an internal fast idle system is incorporated.

The carburettors used on cars with CTX automatic transmission have a throttle position sensor and throttle plate (idle speed) control motor for additional control of certain engine functions. A similar system is used on cars equipped with air conditioning.

19 Carburettor (Weber TLD) - fast idle speed adjustment



Note: Before carrying out any carburettor adjustments, ensure that the spark plug gaps are set as specified, and that all electrical and vacuum connections are secure. To carry out checks and adjustments, an accurate tachometer and an exhaust gas analyser (CO meter) will be required.

1 Check that the idle speed and mixture settings are as specified (as described in Chapter 1). These must be correct before checking/adjusting the fast idle speed.

2 Switch the engine off, then remove the air cleaner as described in Section 2.

3 With the engine at its normal operating temperature and a tachometer connected in accordance with its manufacturer's instructions, hold the throttle linkage partly open, then close the choke plate until the fast idle adjustment screw aligns with the 4th step on the fast idle cam (see illustration). Release the throttle linkage so that the fast idle speed adjustment screw rests on the cam. Release the choke plate. The linkage will hold it in the fast idle speed setting position, as long as the accelerator pedal is not depressed.

4 Without touching the accelerator pedal, start the engine and record the fast idle speed achieved. If adjustment is required, turn the fast idle speed adjuster screw until the specified fast idle speed is obtained.

5 When the throttle linkage is opened, the



20.2 Coolant hose connections to the automatic choke unit

choke plate should return to its fully-open position. If this does not happen, either the engine is not at its normal operating temperature, or the automatic choke mechanism is faulty.

6 Switch off the engine and disconnect the tachometer. Refit the air cleaner.

20 Needle valve and float (Weber TLD carburettor) - removal, refitting and adjustment

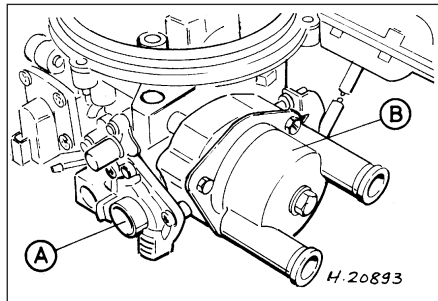


1 Refer to Section 14 and proceed as described, noting the following difference.

2 In paragraph 4, ignore the instruction to detach the choke cable (an automatic choke is fitted to the TLD type carburettor). Instead, clamp the coolant supply and return hoses which lead to the automatic choke unit to minimise coolant loss, then ensure that the cooling system is not pressurised (see Chapter 3). Identify then detach both of the coolant hoses at the automatic choke housing (see illustration). Catch any coolant spillage in a suitable container.



Warning: DO NOT attempt to remove the expansion tank filler cap, or to disturb any part of the cooling system, while it or the engine is hot, as there is a very great risk of scalding. If the expansion tank filler cap must be removed before the engine and radiator have fully cooled down (even though this is not recommended) the



21.4 Automatic choke unit on the Weber TLD carburettor, showing the pull-down diaphragm housing (A) and the choke bi-metal spring housing (B)

pressure in the cooling system must first be released. Cover the cap with a thick layer of cloth, to avoid scalding, and slowly unscrew the filler cap until a hissing sound can be heard. When the hissing has stopped, showing that pressure is released, slowly unscrew the filler cap further until it can be removed; if more hissing sounds are heard, wait until they have stopped before unscrewing the cap completely. At all times, keep well away from the filler opening.

3 On completion, reconnect the hoses to the automatic choke unit, and remove the clamps from the hoses. Check and top-up the coolant level on completion (see Chapter 1).

21 Automatic choke (Weber TLD carburettor) - adjustment



1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Remove the air cleaner as described in Section 2.

3 Disconnect the coolant hoses to the choke unit as described in paragraph 2 of the previous Section.

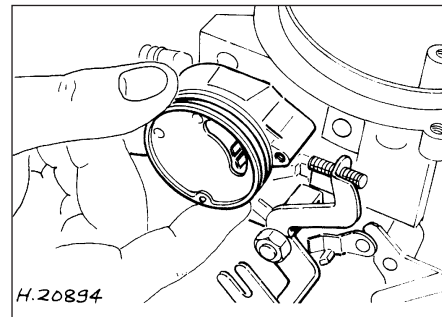
4 Note the position of the choke coil housing alignment marks, then undo the three retaining screws and withdraw the automatic choke bi-metal coil housing (see illustration).

5 Remove the inner heat shield (see illustration). To check and adjust the choke vacuum pull-down, secure the choke plate lever in the closed position by fitting a rubber band, open the throttle to allow the choke plate to fully close, then release the throttle.

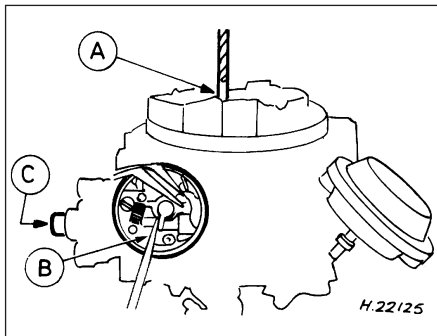
6 Using a screwdriver, push the operating arm to the right against its spring, and measure the clearance between the lower edge of the choke plate and the venturi using a twist drill or other suitable gauge rod (see illustration). Where the clearance is outside that specified, remove the plug from the diaphragm housing, and turn the adjuster screw (now exposed) in the required direction.

7 Fit a new diaphragm housing plug and remove the rubber band.

8 Refit the heat shield so that its slotted hole engages over the choke housing peg.



21.5 Removing the inner heat shield from the automatic choke housing



21.6 Choke plate pull-down adjustment on the Weber TLD carburettor

- A Twist drill
B Screwdriver in contact with operating arm
C Adjuster screw

9 Refit the bi-metal coil housing by first connecting the bi-metal spring to the choke lever (ensuring correct engagement), locate the housing and hand-tighten the three retaining screws. Rotate the housing to align the index line on the housing with the dot mark on the choke main body, then retighten the retaining screws (see illustration).

10 Reconnect the coolant hoses with reference to paragraph 3 in the previous Section.

11 Refit the air cleaner as described in Section 2.

22 Automatic choke (Weber TLD carburettor) - removal, inspection and refitting

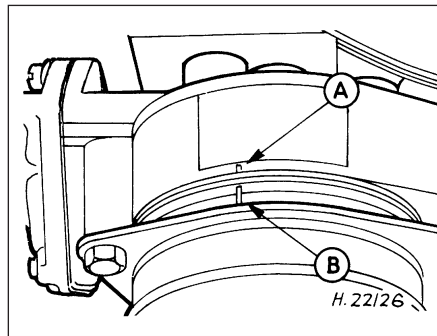


Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Note: A new carburettor upper body gasket will be required when reassembling. On completion, a tachometer will be required to check the fast idle speed adjustment.

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Remove the air cleaner as described in Section 2.
- 3 To prevent excess coolant loss, clamp the coolant supply and return hoses to the automatic choke unit, and ensure that the cooling system is not pressurised (see Chapter 3). Identify then detach both of the



21.9 Index marks on the automatic choke housing (B) and body (A) should be in alignment

coolant hoses at the automatic choke housing. Catch any coolant spillage in a suitable container.



Warning: DO NOT attempt to remove the expansion tank filler cap, or to disturb any part of the cooling system, while it or the engine is hot, as there is a very great risk of scalding. If the expansion tank filler cap must be removed before the engine and radiator have fully cooled down (even though this is not recommended) the pressure in the cooling system must first be released. Cover the cap with a thick layer of cloth, to avoid scalding, and slowly unscrew the filler cap until a hissing sound can be heard. When the hissing has stopped, showing that pressure is released, slowly unscrew the filler cap further until it can be removed; if more hissing sounds are heard, wait until they have stopped before unscrewing the cap completely. At all times, keep well away from the filler opening.

4 Detach the fuel pipe and the anti-dieselling solenoid wiring connector. Any crimped type hose clips must be replaced with a screw clamp type clips during reassembly.

5 Unscrew and remove the retaining screws (two conventional, and four Torx type), then

lift the carburettor upper body clear and remove it.

6 Note the position of the choke housing alignment marks, then undo the three retaining screws and remove the choke bi-metal coil unit. Remove the internal heat shield.

7 To remove the automatic choke unit, undo the three retaining screws and detach the choke link from the operating lever.

8 Undo the three retaining screws to remove the vacuum diaphragm unit.

9 If dismantling the choke mechanism any further, note the component fitment as an aid to reassembly, but do not detach the choke spindle (see illustration).

Inspection

10 Clean and inspect all components for wear, damage and/or distortion. Pay particular attention to the condition of the vacuum (pull-down) diaphragm and the choke housing O-ring. Renew any items that are defective (or suspect).

Refitting

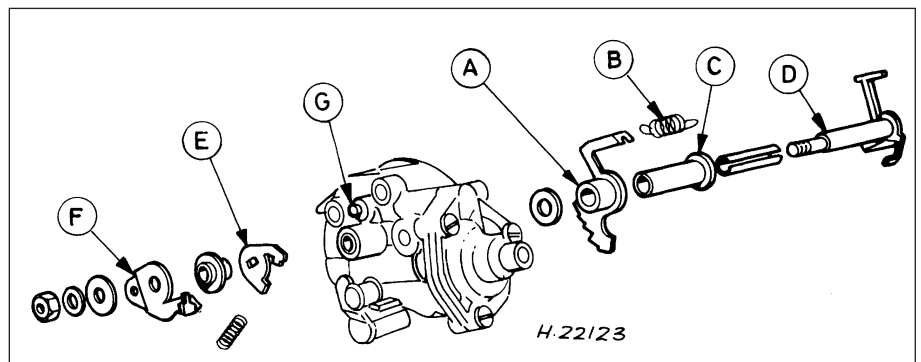
11 Reassemble the automatic choke mechanism, making references to the notes taken during dismantling (see illustration 22.9). Note that no lubricants must be used.

12 Refit the vacuum unit, making reference to the notes taken during dismantling. Ensure that the diaphragm is lying flat before tightening the housing retaining screws.

13 Locate the O-ring (ensuring that it is correctly seated), then reconnect the choke link. Refit the automatic choke unit, and secure with the retaining screws. Check and adjust the choke vacuum pull-down as described in the previous Section (paragraphs 5 and 6).

14 Refit the inner heat shield, ensuring that the location peg is securely engaged in its notch.

15 Refit the automatic choke housing and the bi-metal spring unit as described in the previous Section (paragraph 9).



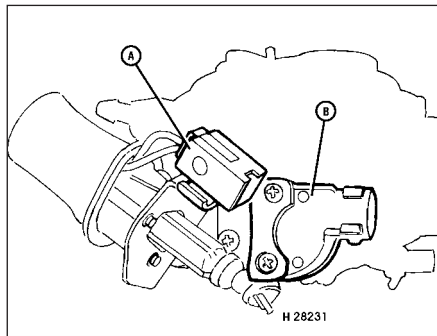
22.9 Automatic choke unit and associated components on the Weber TLD carburettor

- A Operating link/fast idle cam
B Fast idle cam return spring
C Spindle
D Connecting rod and lever assembly

- E Pull-down link
F Actuating lever
G Automatic choke housing



23.5A Disconnecting the lead from the anti-dieselling (fuel-cut off) solenoid



23.5B Disconnect the idle speed control motor multi-plug (A) and the throttle position sensor wiring multi-plug (B) where fitted



23.6 Disconnecting the fuel line at the carburettor

16 Refit the carburettor upper body, ensuring that a new gasket is used and that the mating surfaces are clean. Fit the retaining screws to secure.

17 Reconnect the fuel hose to the carburettor, using new screw type hose clips to secure it.

18 Reconnect the anti-dieselling solenoid wiring connector.

19 Reconnect the coolant hoses to the automatic choke unit, then check and if necessary top-up the cooling system as described in Chapter 1.

20 Reconnect the battery earth lead, then check and adjust the fast idle speed as described in Section 19.

21 Refit the air cleaner (Section 2).

23 Carburettor (Weber TLD) - removal and refitting



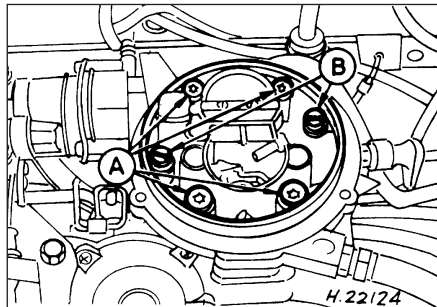
Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately



Warning: DO NOT attempt to remove the expansion tank filler cap, or to disturb any part of the cooling system, while it or the engine is hot, as there is a very great risk of scalding. If the expansion tank filler cap must be removed before the engine and radiator have fully cooled down (even though this is not recommended) the pressure in the cooling system must first be released. Cover the cap with a thick layer of cloth, to avoid scalding, and slowly unscrew



23.7 Disconnecting the vacuum hose from the secondary venturi diaphragm unit



23.8A Weber TLD carburettor showing the four Torx-type retaining screws (A). The two conventional screws (B) secure the upper and lower carburettor body sections together



23.8B Undo the retaining screws . . .

the filler cap until a hissing sound can be heard. When the hissing has stopped, showing that pressure is released, slowly unscrew the filler cap further until it can be removed; if more hissing sounds are heard, wait until they have stopped before unscrewing the cap completely. At all times, keep well away from the filler opening.

4 Disconnect the accelerator cable from the linkage at the carburettor, as described in Section 3.

5 Detach the anti-dieselling solenoid wiring connector (see illustration). Where applicable, also detach the idle speed control motor multi-plug and the throttle position sensor wiring multi-plug (see illustration).

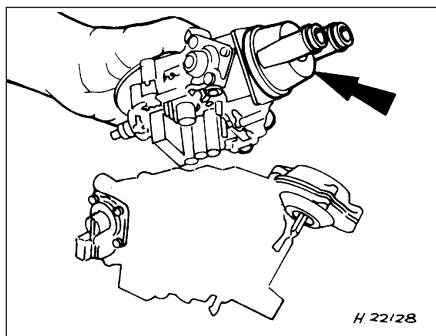
6 Detach the fuel feed hose at the carburettor (see illustration). As it is detached, plug the end of the hose to prevent excessive fuel spillage and the ingress of dirt. Where a crimped type hose clip is fitted, cut it free, taking care not to damage the hose; a new screw clamp type clip will need to be obtained to replace the crimped clip during reassembly.

7 Disconnect the relevant vacuum pipes from the carburettor (see illustration). As they are detached, label them to ensure correct reassembly.

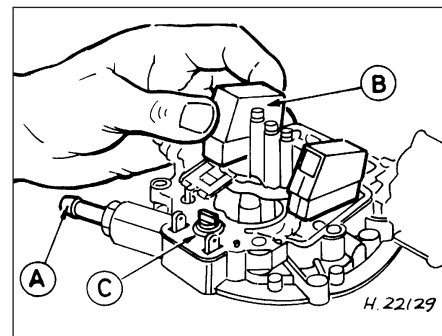
8 Unscrew and remove the four Torx-type retaining screws, and carefully lift clear the carburettor from the inlet manifold (see illustrations). Remove the gasket.



23.8C ... and lift the carburettor from the manifold



24.1A Removing the Weber TLD carburettor upper body



24.1B Float and needle valve removal on the Weber TLD carburettor

A Fuel feed connection C Needle valve
B Float

Refitting

9 Clean the carburettor and the inlet manifold mating faces.

10 Refit the carburettor in the reverse order of removal, ensuring that a new gasket is fitted.

11 If they are perished or were damaged during removal, renew the fuel and/or vacuum hoses.

12 Reconnect the automatic choke unit hoses, and then check/top-up the cooling system if required, as described in Chapter 1.

13 Finally, check the idle speed and fuel mixture settings, and adjust if necessary as described in Chapter 1.

24 Carburettor (Weber TLD) - dismantling, cleaning/inspection and reassembly



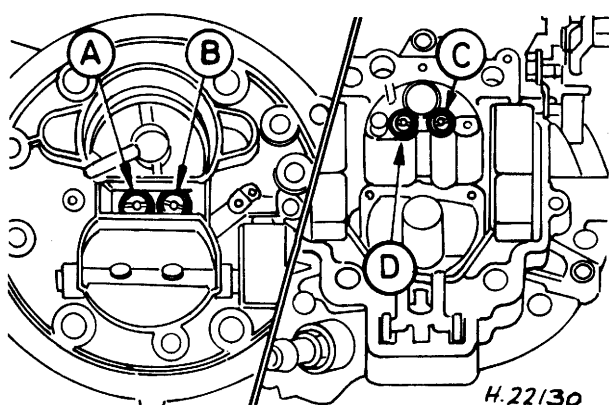
1 Proceed as described in Section 17 for the TLD carburettor, but refer to the appropriate illustrations for the TLD type carburettor (see illustrations). The following differences should also be observed:

- When refitting the adjuster screw, make the initial adjustment by screwing it fully into position (without overtightening it), then unscrewing it by three full turns.
- Refer to Section 20 to adjust the needle valve and float.
- When the carburettor is reassembled and refitted, check and adjust it as described in Chapter 1.

25 Exhaust system - general information and component renewal



Warning: Inspection and repair of exhaust system components should be done only after enough time has elapsed after driving the vehicle to allow the system components to cool completely. This applies particularly to the catalytic converter, which runs at very high temperatures. Also, when working under the vehicle, make sure it is securely supported on axle stands.



24.1C Jet arrangement in the upper body of the Weber TLD carburettor

A Primary air correction jet
B Secondary air correction jet

C Secondary main jet
D Primary main jet

1 The exhaust system is composed of an exhaust manifold, the front downpipe and catalytic converter (where fitted), and a main section incorporating two silencers. The service replacement exhaust system consists of three sections: the front downpipe/catalytic converter, the intermediate pipe and front silencer, and the tailpipe and rear silencer. The system is suspended throughout its entire length by rubber mountings (see illustration).

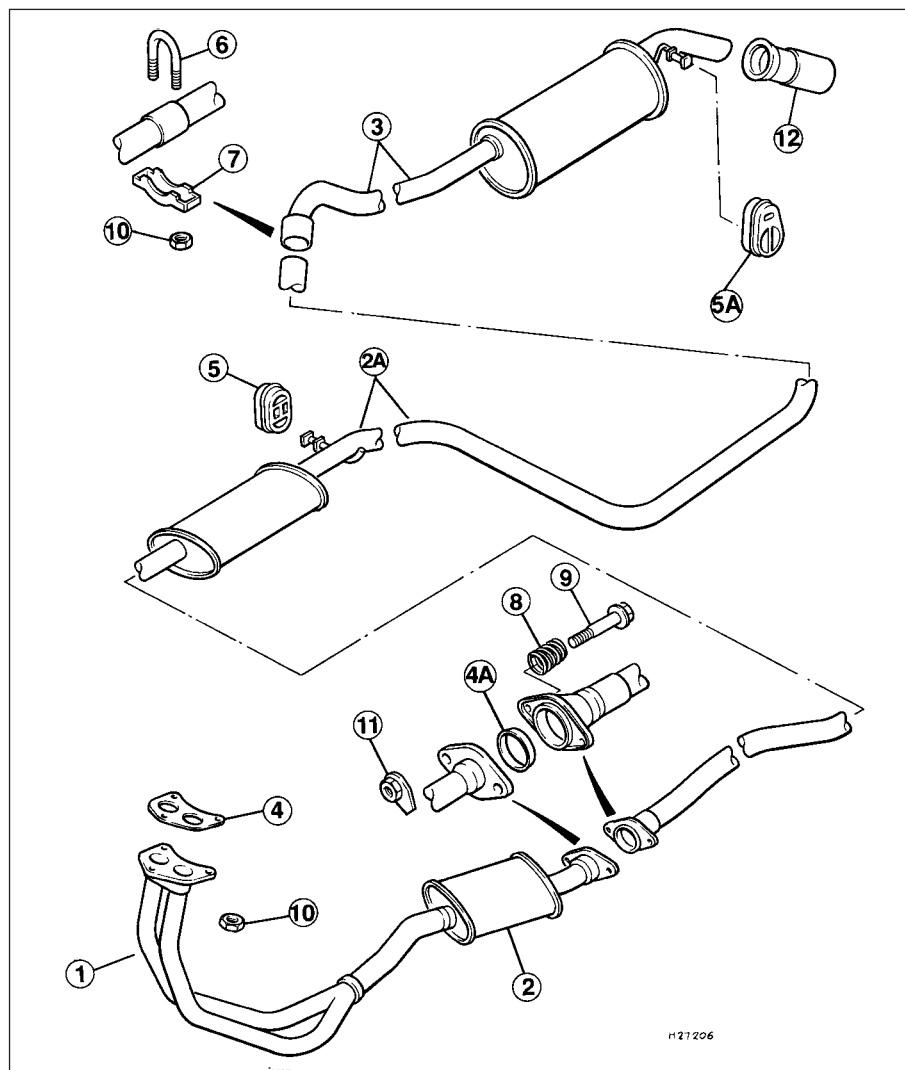
2 If any of these parts are damaged or deteriorated, excessive noise and vibration will occur.

3 Conduct regular inspections of the exhaust system, to keep it safe and quiet. Look for any damaged or bent parts, open seams, holes, loose connections, excessive corrosion, or other defects which could allow exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. Deteriorated exhaust system components should not be repaired - they should be replaced with new parts.

4 If the exhaust system components are extremely corroded or rusted together, they will probably have to be cut from the exhaust system. The most convenient way of accomplishing this is to have a quick-fit exhaust repair specialist remove the corroded sections. If, however, you want to save money by doing it yourself (and you don't have an oxy/acetylene welding outfit with a cutting torch), simply cut off the old components with a hacksaw. If you have compressed air, special pneumatic cutting chisels can also be used. If you do decide to tackle the job at home, be sure to wear eye protection, to protect your eyes from metal chips, and work gloves, to protect your hands. If the production-fit system is still fitted, it must be cut at the points shown (see illustration) for the service-replacement system sections to fit.

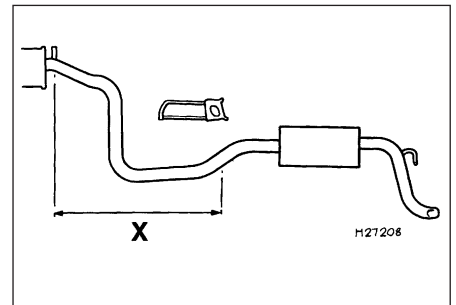
5 Here are some simple guidelines to apply when repairing the exhaust system:

- Work from the back to the front when removing exhaust system components.
- Apply penetrating fluid to the exhaust system component fasteners, to make them easier to remove.



25.1 Exhaust system components

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Front downpipe | 4A Sealing ring | 9 Bolt |
| 2 Front silencer section | 5 Rubber mounting | 10 Self-locking nut |
| 2A Centre section | 6 U-bolt | 11 Nut |
| 3 Rear silencer section | 7 Clamp | 12 Rear silencer outlet trim |
| 4 Gasket | 8 Spring | (1.4 and 1.6 engines only) |



25.4 Cut at points indicated (according to model) when renewing the rear silencer

X = 720 mm (all models except Van)

X = 914 mm (Van models)

- Use new gaskets, rubber mountings and clamps when installing exhaust system components.
- Apply anti-seize compound to the threads of all exhaust system fasteners during reassembly.
- Note that on some models, the downpipe is secured to the manifold by two bolts, with a coil spring, spring seat and self-locking nut on each. On refitting, tighten the nuts until they stop on the bolt shoulders; the pressure of the springs will then suffice to make a gastight joint. Do not overtighten the nuts to cure a leak - the bolts will shear. Renew the gasket and the springs if a leak is found.
- Be sure to allow sufficient clearance between newly-installed parts and all points on the underbody, to avoid overheating the floorpan, and possibly damaging the interior carpet and insulation. Pay particularly close attention to the catalytic converter and its heat shield.



Warning: The catalytic converter operates at very high temperatures, and takes a long time to cool. Wait until it's completely cool before attempting to remove the converter. Failure to do so could result in serious burns.

Chapter 4 Part B: Fuel and exhaust systems - fuel-injected engines

Contents

Air cleaner assembly and air inlet components - removal and refitting	4	Fuel injection system/engine management system - checking	14
Accelerator cable - removal, refitting and adjustment	5	Fuel injection system/engine management system (1.3 and 1.4 litre CFI) - general information	12
Air cleaner element renewal	See Chapter 1	Fuel injection system/engine management system (1.6 and 1.8 litre EFI and SEFI) - general information	13
Accelerator pedal - removal and refitting	6	Fuel lines and fittings - general information	3
Catalytic converter	See Chapter 6	Fuel pump/fuel gauge sender unit - removal and refitting	9
Exhaust manifold - removal and refitting	See Chapter 2	Fuel pump/fuel pressure - checking	7
Exhaust system check	See Chapter 1	Fuel system - depressurisation	2
Exhaust system - general information and component renewal	18	Fuel tank - removal, inspection and refitting	8
Fuel cut-off switch - removal and refitting	11	General information and precautions	1
Fuel filter renewal	See Chapter 1	General fuel system checks	See Chapter 1
Fuel injection system components (1.3 and 1.4 litre CFI) - check and renewal	15	Inlet manifold - removal and refitting	See Chapter 2
Fuel injection system components (1.6 litre EFI) - checking and renewal	16	Oxygen sensor	See Chapter 6
Fuel injection system components (1.6 and 1.8 litre SEFI) - check and renewal	17	Roll-over valve - removal and refitting	10
		Underbody fuel/brake line check	See Chapter 1
		Underbonnet hose check	See Chapter 1

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	--	---	--	---	--	--	--	---	--

Specifications

Note: For Idle speed and mixture settings, refer to Chapter 1 Specifications.

General

System type/application:	
1.3 litre HCS and 1.4 litre CVH engines	Central Fuel Injection (CFI)
1.6 litre CVH engines	Electronic Fuel Injection (EFI)
1.6 and 1.8 litre Zetec engines	Sequential Electronic Fuel Injection (SEFI)

Fuel grade

Fuel octane requirement	95 RON unleaded
-------------------------	-----------------

Fuel pressure

CFI system:

Regulated fuel pressure - engine running at idle speed	1.0 ± 0.1 bars
Hold pressure - engine stopped after 1 minute	0.5 bars minimum

EFI system:

Pump pressure - engine not running	3.0 bars minimum
Regulated fuel pressure - engine running at idle speed	3.0 ± 0.1 bars
Hold pressure - engine stopped after two minutes	Not less than 0.8 bars below regulated pressure

SEFI system:

Regulated fuel pressure - engine running at idle speed:	
Pressure regulator vacuum hose connected	2.1 ± 0.2 bars
Pressure regulator vacuum hose disconnected	2.7 ± 0.2 bars
Hold pressure - engine stopped after five minutes	1.8 bars minimum*

*Note that if the engine is hot and the ambient temperature is high, the hold pressure may rise to 2.7 bars during this check.

Idle speed control valve

Resistance	6 to 14 ohms
------------	--------------

Torque wrench settings	Nm	lbf ft
CFi system		
CFi unit-to-inlet manifold	12 to 15	9 to 11
Fuel filter unions	14 to 20	10 to 15
Exhaust pipe-to-manifold	35 to 40	26 to 30
Exhaust heat shield	14 to 19	10 to 14
Exhaust system U-bolt clamps	35 to 40	26 to 30
Catalytic converter flange nuts	35 to 40	26 to 30
EFI system		
Idle speed control valve bolts	3.5 to 5.0	2.6 to 3.6
Fuel pressure regulator bolts	8 to 12	6 to 8
Fuel rail bolts	21 to 25	16 to 18
Fuel filter unions	14 to 20	10 to 15
Exhaust pipe-to-manifold	35 to 40	26 to 30
Exhaust heat shield	14 to 19	10 to 14
Exhaust system U-bolt clamps	35 to 40	26 to 30
Catalytic converter flange nuts	35 to 40	26 to 30
SEFi system		
Throttle housing-to-inlet manifold screws	8.5 to 12	6.3 to 8.8
Idle speed control valve bolts	5 to 7	3.7 to 5.2
Fuel filter unions	14 to 20	10 to 15
Fuel pressure regulator bolts	5 to 7	3.7 to 5.2
Fuel injector bolts	6	4
Fuel rail-to-inlet manifold bolts	8.5 to 12	6.3 to 8.8
Fuel feed and return line threaded couplings at fuel rail	24 to 30	17 to 22
Exhaust pipe to manifold	35 to 40	26 to 30
Exhaust heat shield	14 to 19	10 to 14
Exhaust system U-bolt clamps	35 to 40	26 to 30
Catalytic converter flange nuts	35 to 40	26 to 30

1 General information and precautions


This Chapter is concerned with those features of the engine management system that supply clean fuel and air to the engine, meter it in the required proportions, and dispose of the results. Since the emission control sub-systems modify the functions of both the fuel and exhaust sub-systems, all of which are integral parts of the whole engine management package, there are many cross-references to Chapters 5 and 6. Information on the electronic and emissions control systems is given in Chapter 6.

The fuel system consists of a fuel tank (mounted under the body, beneath the rear seats), fuel hoses, an electric fuel pump mounted in the fuel tank, and an electronic fuel injection system. Further specific information on the fuel injection systems is contained in Sections 12 and 13.

The exhaust system consists of an exhaust manifold, the front downpipe and catalytic converter and, on production-fit systems, a main section incorporating two silencers. The service replacement exhaust system consists of three sections: the front downpipe/catalytic converter, the intermediate pipe and front silencer, and the tailpipe and rear silencer. The system is suspended throughout its entire length by rubber mountings.


Extreme caution should be exercised when

dealing with either the fuel or exhaust systems. Fuel is a primary element for combustion. Be very careful! The exhaust system is an area for exercising caution, as it operates at very high temperatures. Serious burns can result from even momentary contact with any part of the exhaust system, and the fire risk is ever-present. The catalytic converter in particular runs at very high temperatures - refer to the information in Chapter 6.

 **Warning: Many of the procedures in this Chapter require the removal of fuel lines and connections, which may result in some fuel spillage. Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand. Before carrying out any operation on the fuel system, refer also to the precautions given in "Safety first!" at the beginning of this manual, and follow them implicitly. Petrol is a highly-dangerous and volatile liquid, and the precautions necessary when handling it cannot be overstressed.**

2 Fuel system - depressurisation



 **Warning: The fuel system will remain pressurised for long periods of time after the engine is switched off - this pressure must be released before any part of the system is disturbed. Petrol is extremely flammable - refer to the precautions at the end of the previous Section.**

1 The fuel system referred to in this Chapter is defined as the fuel tank and tank-mounted fuel pump/fuel gauge sender unit, the fuel filter, the fuel injectors and the pressure regulator in the injector rail, and the metal pipes and flexible hoses of the fuel lines between these components. All these contain fuel, which will be under pressure while the engine is running and/or while the ignition is switched on.

2 The pressure will remain for some time after the ignition has been switched off, and must be relieved before any of these components is disturbed for servicing work.

3 The simplest method is simply to disconnect the fuel pump's electrical supply while the engine is running - either by removing the fuel pump fuse (No 5), or by lifting the red button on the fuel cut-off switch (see Section 11) - and to allow the engine to idle until it dies through lack of fuel pressure. Turn the engine over once or twice on the

starter to ensure that all pressure is released, then switch off the ignition; do not forget to refit the fuse (or depress the red button, as appropriate) when work is complete.



Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run. Remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

4 Note that, once the fuel system has been depressurised and drained (even partially), it will take significantly longer to restart the engine - perhaps several seconds of cranking - before the system is refilled and pressure restored.

3 Fuel lines and fittings - general information



Warning: The fuel system pressure must be released before any part of the system is disturbed - see Section 2. Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Disconnecting and connecting quick-release couplings

1 Quick-release couplings are employed at many of the unions in the fuel feed and return lines.

2 Before disconnecting any fuel system component, relieve the residual pressure in the system (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap.



Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

3 Release the protruding locking lugs on each union, by squeezing them together and carefully pulling the coupling apart. Use rag to soak up any spilt fuel. Where the unions are colour-coded, the pipes cannot be confused. Where both unions are the same colour, note carefully which pipe is connected to which, and ensure that they are correctly reconnected on refitting.

4 To reconnect one of these couplings, press them together until the locking lugs snap into their groove. Switch the ignition on and off five times to pressurise the system, and check for any sign of fuel leakage around the disturbed coupling before attempting to start the engine.

Checking

5 Checking procedures for the fuel lines are included in Chapter 1.

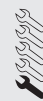
Component renewal

6 If you must renew any damaged sections, use original-equipment replacement hoses or pipes, constructed from exactly the same material as the section you are replacing. Do not install substitutes constructed from inferior or inappropriate material, or you could cause a fuel leak or a fire.

7 Before detaching or disconnecting any part of the fuel system, note the routing of all hoses and pipes, and the orientation of all clamps and clips. Replacement sections must be installed in exactly the same manner.

8 Before disconnecting any part of the fuel system, be sure to relieve the fuel system pressure (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap. Also disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1. Cover the fitting being disconnected with a rag, to absorb any fuel that may spray out.

4 Air cleaner assembly and air inlet components - removal and refitting



Note: Air cleaner element renewal and air cleaner temperature control system checks (where applicable) are described in Chapter 1.

Air cleaner assembly

CFi system

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Undo the retaining bolts and partially lift the air cleaner from the CFI unit, so that the hose and wiring connections to the underside of the air cleaner body are accessible.

3 Note their connections and routings, then



4.13 Detach the crankcase breather hose from the air cleaner housing



4.8 General view of the air filter (A) and air duct (B) fitted to the 1.6 litre EFI engine

detach the wiring and hoses from the underside of the air cleaner.

4 Lift the air cleaner clear from the CFI unit.

5 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

6 Renew any hoses that are perished or cracked, and ensure that all fittings are securely and correctly reconnected.

EFI system

7 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

8 Undo the retaining nut at the front, then loosen off the air duct-to-filter housing clip screw, and detach the air duct from the housing (see illustration).

9 Unscrew and remove the two retaining nuts on the underside of the housing (that secure it to the location studs).

10 Disconnect the hose at the base of the unit (to the inlet manifold) and lift the air cleaner clear.

11 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Ensure that the air hose and duct are securely located.

SEFi system

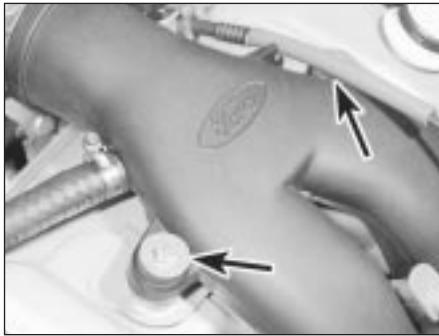
12 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

13 Detach the crankcase breather hose from the air cleaner housing (see illustration).

14 Disconnect the air mass meter wiring multi-plug, then release the two clips and withdraw the air mass meter, complete with inlet hose, from the air cleaner cover (see illustration). Carefully position the air mass meter and hose assembly to one side.



4.14 Disconnect the air mass meter wiring multi-plug, then release the two clips and withdraw the air mass meter, complete with inlet hose



4.21 Undo the two retaining bolts (arrowed) and remove the air inlet duct from the rocker cover



4.24 Detach the air inlet hose from the inlet duct. Note the small projection on the end of the hose which engages with a cut-out in the inlet duct



4.25 Undo the two nuts (arrowed) and lift off the air inlet duct retaining strap

15 Detach the air inlet duct from the air cleaner housing.

16 Unscrew the air cleaner housing front retaining nut, then pull the housing sharply upwards to release the two lower locating pegs from their rubber grommets. Remove the assembly from the car.

17 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure. Ensure that the housing pegs seat fully in their grommets, and that the air inlet duct is correctly located.

Air inlet components

CFi system

18 The air cleaner inlet spout and related components are removed with the air cleaner assembly as described above.

Efi system

19 Disconnect the HT leads from the spark plugs, labelling them if necessary to avoid confusion on refitting.

20 Slacken the retaining clips, and detach the air inlet hose and breather hose from the air inlet duct.

21 Undo the two retaining bolts, and remove the air inlet duct from the rocker cover (see illustration).

22 Slacken the retaining clip, and remove the air inlet hose from the air cleaner assembly.

23 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure.

SEfi system

24 Slacken the hose clips at each end, and detach the air inlet hose from the inlet duct and air mass meter. Note the small projection on the end of the hose, which engages with a cut-out in the inlet duct to ensure correct orientation when refitting (see illustration).

25 Undo the two nuts, and lift off the air inlet duct retaining strap (see illustration).

26 Withdraw the inlet duct from the throttle housing.

27 Refer to Chapter 6, Section 4 for further information on the air mass meter.

28 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, but ensure correct orientation of the inlet hose by aligning the projections and cut-outs.

5 Accelerator cable - removal, refitting and adjustment



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Fold back the carpet and insulation in the driver's footwell to gain access to the accelerator pedal.

3 Detach the accelerator cable from the pedal.

4 On CFi systems, remove the air cleaner assembly as described in Section 4.

5 Working at the throttle housing end of the cable, pivot the throttle quadrant by hand to release the tension from the cable, then detach the inner cable nipple from the throttle lever (see illustration).

6 Detach the outer cable from the adjuster/support bracket, then remove the cable (see illustration).

Refitting and adjustment

7 Refit in the reverse order of removal. When the cable is reconnected at each end, have an assistant depress the accelerator, and check that the throttle fully opens and shuts without binding. Ensure that there is a small amount of slack in the inner cable when the throttle is fully released. If adjustment is required,



5.5 Disconnecting the accelerator inner cable from the throttle quadrant

release the outer cable retaining clip from the cable at the adjustment/support bracket, slide the cable through the adjuster grommet to the point required, then refit the retaining clip to secure it in the set position.

6 Accelerator pedal - removal and refitting



Refer to Section 5 in Part A of this Chapter.

7 Fuel pump/fuel pressure - checking



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.



5.6 Accelerator outer cable location at the adjuster/support bracket

Fuel pump operation check

1 Switch on the ignition, and listen for the fuel pump (the sound of an electric motor running, audible from beneath the rear seats). Assuming there is sufficient fuel in the tank, the pump should start and run for approximately one or two seconds, then stop, each time the ignition is switched on. **Note:** *If the pump runs continuously all the time the ignition is switched on, the electronic control system is running in the backup (or "limp-home") mode referred to by Ford as "Limited Operation Strategy" (LOS). This almost certainly indicates a fault in the ECU itself, and the vehicle should therefore be taken to a Ford dealer for a full test of the complete system, using the correct diagnostic equipment; do not waste time or risk damaging the components by trying to test the system without such facilities.*

2 Listen for fuel return noises from the fuel pressure regulator. It should be possible to feel the fuel pulsing in the regulator and in the feed hose from the fuel filter.

3 If the pump does not run at all, check the fuse, relay and wiring (see Chapter 6). Check also that the fuel cut-off switch has not been activated and if so, reset it.

Fuel pressure check

4 A fuel pressure gauge will be required for this check. On CFI and EFI systems, the gauge should be connected in the fuel line between the fuel filter and the CFI unit or fuel rail, in accordance with the gauge maker's instructions. On SEFI systems, a pressure gauge equipped with an adapter to suit the Schrader-type valve on the fuel rail pressure test/release fitting (identifiable by its blue plastic cap, and located on the union of the fuel feed line and the fuel rail) will be required. If the Ford special tool 29-033 is available, the tool can be attached to the valve, and a conventional-type pressure gauge attached to the tool.

5 If using the service tool, ensure that its tap is turned fully anti-clockwise, then attach it to the valve. Connect the pressure gauge to the service tool. If using a fuel pressure gauge with its own adapter, connect it in accordance with its maker's instructions (see illustration).



7.5 Fuel pressure gauge connected to the fuel line

6 With the gauge connected proceed as follows according to engine type.

CFI system

7 Start the engine and allow it to idle. Note the gauge reading as soon as the pressure stabilises, and compare it with the figures given for regulated fuel pressure in this Chapter's Specifications. If the pressure is high, check for a restricted fuel return line. If the pressure is low, renew the fuel pressure regulator.

8 Switch off the engine, and check that after one minute, the hold pressure has not fallen below that specified. If it has, check the seals on the fuel injector (see Section 15) and renew them if they appear in any way suspect. If the seals are okay, then the fuel pressure regulator or CFI unit are suspect.

9 Carefully disconnect the fuel pressure gauge, depressurising the system first as described in Section 2.

10 Run the engine, and check that there are no fuel leaks.

EFI system

11 Disconnect the wiring from the E-DIS ignition coil and the fuel injectors.

12 Switch the ignition on and off twice, and check that the pump pressure is as listed in this Chapter's Specifications.

13 If the pressure is not as specified, check the fuel system for leaks or damage. If the system appears okay, renew the fuel pump.

14 Reconnect the wiring to the ignition coil and fuel injectors.

15 If the pump pressure was satisfactory, start the engine and allow it to idle. Disconnect the vacuum hose at the fuel pressure regulator, and plug the hose. Note the gauge reading as soon as the pressure stabilises, and compare it with the figures given for regulated fuel pressure in this Chapter's Specifications.

16 If the regulated fuel pressure is not as specified, remove the plug from the top of the fuel pressure regulator, and using a suitable Allen key, adjust the pressure regulator as necessary.

17 Switch off the engine, and check that the fuel pressure stays at the specified hold pressure for two minutes after the engine is turned off.

18 Carefully disconnect the fuel pressure gauge, depressurising the system first as described in Section 2. Reconnect the ignition coil and fuel injector wiring.

19 Run the engine, and check that there are no fuel leaks.

SEFI system

20 Start the engine and allow it to idle. Note the gauge reading as soon as the pressure stabilises, and compare it with the regulated fuel pressure figures listed in this Chapter's Specifications.

a) *If the pressure is high, check for a restricted fuel return line. If the line is clear, renew the fuel pressure regulator.*

b) *If the pressure is low, pinch the fuel return line. If the pressure now goes up, renew the fuel pressure regulator. If the pressure does not increase, check the fuel feed line, the fuel pump and the fuel filter.*

21 Detach the vacuum hose from the fuel pressure regulator; the pressure shown on the gauge should increase. Note the increase in pressure, and compare it with that listed in this Chapter's Specifications. If the pressure increase is not as specified, check the vacuum hose and pressure regulator.

22 Reconnect the regulator vacuum hose, and switch off the engine. Verify that the hold pressure stays at the specified level for five minutes after the engine is turned off.

23 Carefully disconnect the fuel pressure gauge, depressurising the system first as described in Section 2. Be sure to cover the fitting with a rag before slackening it. Mop up any spilt petrol.

24 Run the engine, and check that there are no fuel leaks.

8 Fuel tank - removal and refitting



Warning: *Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.*

Removal

1 Run the fuel level as low as possible prior to removing the tank.

2 Relieve the residual pressure in the fuel system (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap.

Warning: *This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.*

3 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

4 Remove the fuel filler cap, then syphon or pump out the remaining fuel from the fuel tank (there is no drain plug). The fuel must be emptied into a suitable container for storage.

5 Chock the front wheels, then raise and support the vehicle on axle stands at the rear.

6 Disconnect the fuel filler pipe from the fuel tank. Drain any remaining fuel into the

4B•6 Fuel and exhaust systems – fuel-injected engines

container for safe storage, and plug the hose and tank connections. Disconnect the handbrake cable locating strap from the fuel filler pipe on the tank.

7 Disconnect the filler neck pipe sensing hose from the rear of the tank.

8 Support the underside of the fuel tank to hold it in position, then remove the four tank retaining bolts.

9 Partially lower the fuel tank, and detach the ventilation tube from the tank top surface. Also disconnect the fuel pump/fuel gauge sender unit wiring multi-plug and the fuel hoses. Where quick-release couplings are used on the fuel hoses, release the protruding locking lugs on each union, by squeezing them together and carefully pulling the coupling apart.

10 Slowly lower the tank; as it is withdrawn, detach the filler pipe.

Inspection

11 When removed, the fuel tank can be inspected for damage or deterioration. Removal of the pump/sender unit (see Section 9) will allow a partial inspection of the interior. If the tank is contaminated with sediment or water, swirl it out with clean petrol. Do not under any circumstances undertake any repairs on a leaking or damaged fuel tank; this work must be carried out by a professional who has experience in this critical and potentially-dangerous work.

12 Whilst the fuel tank is removed from the vehicle, it should not be placed in an area where sparks or open flames could ignite the

fumes coming out of the tank. Be especially careful inside garages where a natural-gas appliance is located, because the pilot light could cause an explosion.

13 Check the condition of the filler pipe seal in the fuel tank, and renew it if necessary.

Refitting

14 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Apply a light smear of grease to the filler pipe seal, to ease fitting. Ensure that all connections are securely fitted. Where quick-release fuel couplings are fitted, press them together until the locking lugs snap into their groove. If evidence of contamination was found, do not return any previously-drained fuel to the tank unless it is carefully filtered first.

9 Fuel pump/fuel gauge sender unit - removal and refitting

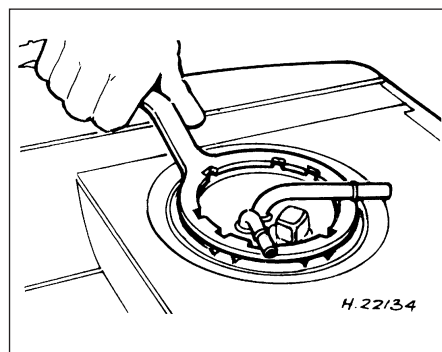


Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

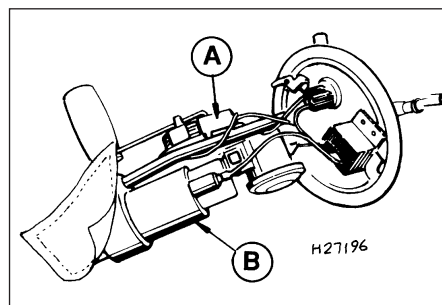
Note: Ford specify the use of their service tool 23-014 or 23-026 (a large box spanner with projecting teeth to engage the fuel pump/sender unit retaining ring's slots) for this task. While alternatives are possible, in view of the difficulty experienced in removing and refitting the pump/sender unit, owners are strongly advised to obtain the correct tool before starting work.

Removal

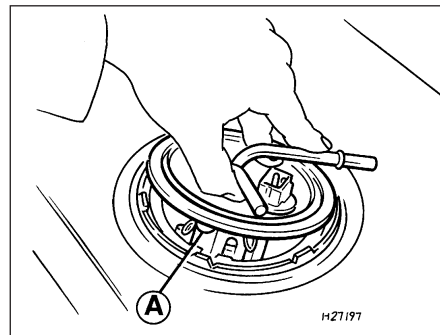
1 A combined fuel pump and fuel gauge sender unit are located in the top face of the



9.2 Fuel pump/sender unit removal from the fuel tank using Ford special tool 23-026



9.3 In-tank fuel pump (B) and sender unit (A)



9.4 Fuel pump/sender unit refitting to the tank, showing position of the locating lug (A)

fuel tank. The combined unit can only be detached and withdrawn from the tank after the tank is released and lowered from under the vehicle. Refer to Section 8 and remove the fuel tank, then proceed as follows.

2 With the fuel tank removed, the pump/sender unit can be unscrewed using the special tool (see illustration).

3 Withdraw the unit upwards from the tank (see illustration), and detach the seal ring. The seal ring must be renewed whenever the pump/sender unit is withdrawn from the tank.

Refitting

4 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Lightly coat the new unit seal ring with grease to ease fitting, and ensure that the seal is not distorted as the unit is fitted into position. Insert the unit so that the lug of the unit is in engagement with the slot in the tank aperture, then turn the unit to lock and secure (see illustration).

10 Roll-over valve - removal and refitting

Refer to Section 10 in Part A of this Chapter.

11 Fuel cut-off switch - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Remove the front footwell side cowl trim panel on the driver's side as described in Chapter 11.

3 Undo the retaining screws and withdraw the cut-off (inertia) switch unit from the body (see illustration). As it is withdrawn, disconnect the wiring connector to the switch.



11.3 Fuel cut-off switch location in the driver's footwell

Refitting

4 Reconnect the wiring connector to the switch, ensuring that it is felt to snap securely into position.

5 Relocate the switch, and refit the screws to secure it.

6 Reset the switch by pushing the top button down, then refit the side cowl trim panel.

7 Reconnect the battery and restart the engine to ensure that the switch has reset.

12 Fuel injection system/engine management system (1.3 and 1.4 litre CFi) - general information

Fuel is supplied from the fuel tank by an integral electric fuel pump (and combined fuel gauge sender unit). The fuel is passed through an in-line filter within the engine compartment, then to the fuel injection unit. The fuel is maintained at the required operating pressure by a pressure regulator unit.

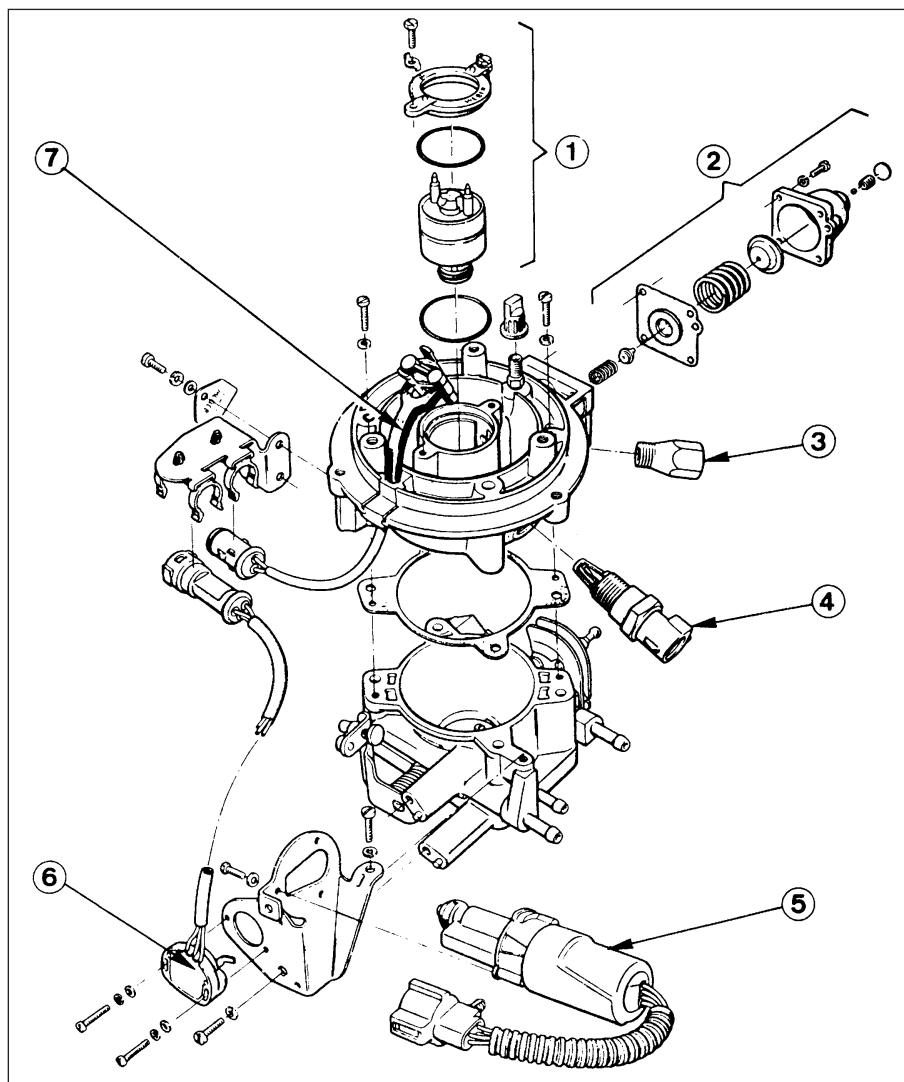
The CFi unit itself is a relatively simple device when compared with a conventional carburettor. Fuel is injected by a single solenoid valve (fuel injector) which is mounted centrally on top of the unit. It is this feature which gives the system CFi (or Central Fuel Injection) its name (see illustration).

The injector is energised by an electrical signal sent from the engine management ECU. When energised, the injector pintle is lifted from its seat, and atomised fuel is delivered into the inlet manifold under pressure. The electrical signals take two forms of current - a high current to open the injector, and a low current to hold it open for the duration required. At idle speed, the injector is pulsed at every other inlet stroke, rather than with every stroke as during normal operation.

The air-to-fuel mixture ratio is regulated by the engine management ECU, based on inputs from the various engine sensors, the operation of which is described in greater detail in Chapter 6. No adjustments to the fuel mixture are possible.

The throttle plate control motor (mounted on the side of the CFi unit) regulates the idle speed by reacting to the signals sent by the ECU. The signals are calculated by the values and information provided from the engine sensors. When the throttle position sensor indicates that the throttle is closed, the ECU enters the idle speed mode or dashpot mode (according to engine speed). The ECU maintains the idle speed at a constant value, making minor adjustments as necessary for different loads and conditions. The base idle speed can only be adjusted by a dealer or fuel injection specialist with the necessary equipment to link up to the engine management ECU.

To prevent the engine from running on (or dieselling) when it is switched off, the ECU sends a signal to the throttle plate control motor, to fully close the throttle plate and return it to its preset position ready for



12.2 Exploded view of the CFi unit fitted to 1.3 and 1.4 litre engines

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Fuel injection unit | 3 Fuel feed connector | 6 Throttle position sensor |
| 2 Fuel pressure regulator unit | 4 Inlet air temperature sensor | 7 Fuel injector wiring |
| | 5 Throttle plate control motor | |

restarting. When the ignition is switched on to restart the engine, the motor repositions the throttle plate to the position required according to the prevailing conditions.

13 Fuel injection/engine management systems (1.6 and 1.8 litre EFI and SEFi) - general information

EFI system

Fuel is supplied under pressure from the fuel pump to the fuel distributor rail mounted on top of the inlet manifold (see illustration). The fuel rail acts as a pressurised fuel reservoir for the fuel injectors. The electro-mechanical injectors have only "on" or "off" positions, the volume of fuel being injected to

meet the engine operating conditions being determined by the length of time that the injectors are opened. The volume of fuel required for one power stroke is determined by the engine management ECU, and is divided by two equal amounts. The first half of the required volume is injected into the static air ahead of the inlet valve one complete engine revolution before the inlet valve is due to open. After one further revolution, the inlet valve opens and the required fuel volume is injected into the air flow being drawn into the cylinder. The fuel will therefore be consistently injected to two inlet valves simultaneously at a particular crankshaft position.

The volume of air drawn into the engine is governed by the air filter unit and other variable operating factors. These variables are assessed by the engine management ECU

and the corresponding signals are produced to actuate the injectors accordingly.

The engine base idle speed can be adjusted (if required), by turning the adjuster screw (covered by a tamperproof cap) in the throttle housing. Provision for adjusting the fuel mixture is made by the mixture screw in the potentiometer unit mounted on the bulkhead.

Further information on the engine management system and its various sensors and sub-systems will be found in Chapter 6.

SEFi system

The electric fuel pump located inside the fuel tank supplies fuel under pressure to the fuel rail, which distributes fuel evenly to all injectors. A pressure regulator controls the system pressure in relation to inlet tract depression. From the fuel rail, fuel is injected into the inlet ports, just above the inlet valves, by four fuel injectors. The system also includes features such as the flushing of fresh (ie, cold) fuel around each injector on start-up, thus improving hot starts.

The amount of fuel supplied by the injectors is precisely controlled by the engine management ECU. The ECU uses the signals derived from the engine speed/crankshaft position sensor and the camshaft position sensor, to trigger each injector separately in cylinder firing order (sequential injection), with benefits in terms of better fuel economy and lower exhaust emissions.

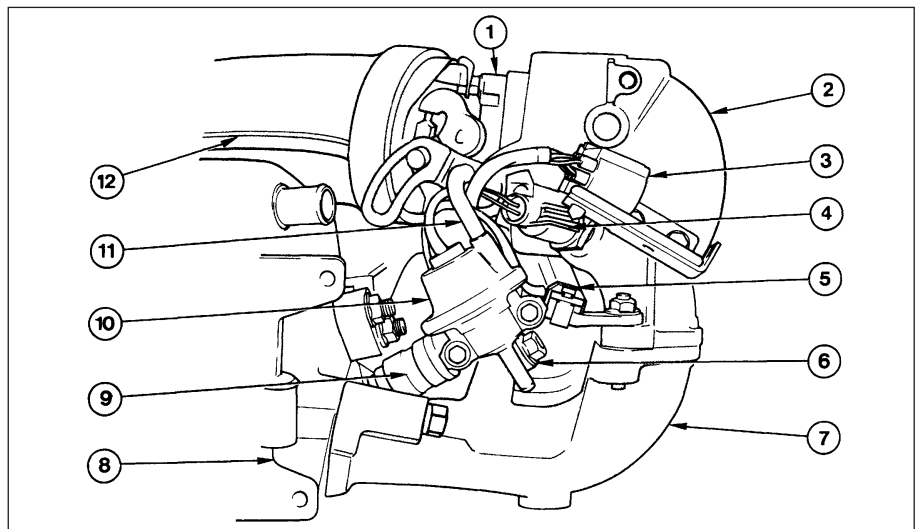
The air inlet side of the system consists of an air cleaner housing, an air mass meter, an inlet hose and duct, and a throttle housing. The air mass meter is an information-gathering device for the ECU; it uses a "hot-wire" system to send the ECU a constantly-varying (analogue) voltage signal corresponding to the volume of air passing into the engine. Another sensor in the air mass meter measures inlet air temperature. The ECU uses these signals to calculate the mass of air entering the engine.

The throttle valve inside the throttle housing is controlled by the driver, through the accelerator pedal. As the valve opens, the amount of air that can pass through the system increases. The throttle potentiometer opens further, the air mass meter's signal alters, and the ECU opens each injector for a longer duration, to increase the amount of fuel delivered to the inlet ports.

Both the idle speed and mixture are under the control of the ECU, and cannot be adjusted. Not only can they not be adjusted, they cannot even be checked, except with the use of special diagnostic equipment, which makes it a task for a Ford dealer service department. *Do not* attempt to "adjust" these settings in any way without such equipment.

If the idle speed and mixture are thought to be incorrect, take the vehicle to a Ford dealer for the complete system to be tested.

Further information on the engine management system and its various sensors and sub-systems will be found in Chapter 6.



13.1 General view of the fuel injection system arrangement on the 1.6 litre EFI model

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Throttle housing | 6 Fuel distributor rail | 9 Fuel injector |
| 2 Upper inlet manifold section | 7 Lower section of inlet manifold | 10 Fuel pressure regulator |
| 3 Wiring loom connector | | 11 Vacuum hose |
| 4 Inlet air temperature sensor | 8 Cylinder head | 12 Air inlet duct |
| 5 Wiring harness ducting | | |

14 Fuel injection system/engine management system - checking



Warning: Petrol is extremely flammable, so extra precautions must be taken when working on any part of the fuel system. Do not smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage if a natural-gas appliance with a pilot light is present. While performing any work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a dry chemical (Class B) fire extinguisher on hand. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water.

Note: This is a basic check of the fuel delivery and air induction sub-systems of the engine management system, to be carried out in conjunction with the operational check of the fuel pump (see Section 7), and as part of the initial system checks of the complete engine management system (see Section 3 of Chapter 6).

1 Check the earth wire connections for tightness. Check all wiring and electrical connectors that are related to the system. Loose electrical connectors and poor earths can cause many problems that resemble more serious malfunctions.

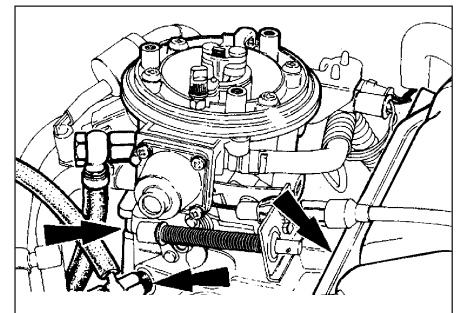
2 Check to see that the battery is fully-charged. The ECU and sensors depend on an accurate supply voltage to properly meter the fuel.

3 Check the air cleaner filter element - a dirty or partially-blocked filter will severely impede performance and economy (see Chapter 1).

4 If a blown fuse is found, renew it and see if it blows again. If it does, search for a short-circuited wire in the harness related to the system (see Chapter 6).

5 Check the CFI unit/throttle housing and inlet manifold joints for leaks, which will result in an excessively-lean mixture (see illustration). Also check the condition of the vacuum hoses connected to the inlet manifold.

6 On EFI and SEFi systems, remove the air inlet duct from the throttle housing. Check the throttle valve for dirt, carbon or other residue build-up. If it's dirty, seek the advice of a Ford dealer - since the electronic control system is designed to compensate for factors such as the build-up of dirt in the throttle housing, it may well be best to leave it dirty, unless the deposits are extensive. **Note:** A warning label on the housing states specifically that the housing bore and the throttle valve have a special coating, and must **not** be cleaned using carburettor cleaner, as this may damage it.



14.5 Check the points indicated on the CFI unit for induction leaks



15.8 Disconnect the multi-plug from the injector



15.9A Remove the injector retaining collar bolt and locktab . . .



15.9B . . . and remove the injector retaining collar

7 On EFi and SEFi systems, with the engine running, place a screwdriver or a stethoscope against each injector, one at a time. Listen through the screwdriver handle or stethoscope for a clicking sound, indicating operation.

8 If an injector doesn't appear to be operating, turn off the engine and carefully check the wiring plug connection on the injector, and the wiring itself. If all appears okay, have the injector tested by a specialist.

9 A rough idle, diminished performance and/or increased fuel consumption could also be caused by a clogged or fouled fuel injector(s). Fuel additives that can sometimes clean fouled injectors are available at car accessory shops.

10 The remainder of the system checks should be left to a dealer service department or other qualified repair specialist, as there is a chance that the ECU may be damaged if tests are not performed properly.

15 Fuel injection system components (1.3 and 1.4 litre CFI) - checking and renewal



Warning: The fuel system pressure must be released before any part of the system is disturbed - see Section 2. Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of

the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Fuel injector

Check

1 Refer to Section 4 and remove the air cleaner.
2 Disconnect the multi-plug connector from the E-DIS ignition coil (to prevent the engine from starting).
3 Get an assistant to turn the engine over on the starter motor, while you look down through the top of the CFI unit and check that fuel is seen to be delivered into the central venturi.

4 If the fuel supply is seen to be acceptable but the engine will not start, refer to the ignition and engine management system test procedures contained in Chapters 5 and 6.

Renewal

5 Relieve the residual pressure in the fuel system (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap.

Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

6 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

7 Refer to Section 4 and remove the air cleaner.

8 Release the injector feed wiring multi-plug, and detach it from the injector (pulling on the plug - not the wire) (see illustration).

9 Bend over the locking tabs retaining the injector screws, then undo and remove the screws. Withdraw the injector retaining collar, then carefully withdraw the injector from the CFI unit (noting its orientation) followed by its seal (see illustrations).

10 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Always use new seals in the CFI unit and the retaining collar, and lightly lubricate them with clean engine oil prior to assembly. Take care not to damage the seals as they are fitted and as the injector is fitted, check that the location peg engages correctly (see illustration).

Fuel pressure regulator

Check

11 Refer to the fuel pump/fuel pressure check procedure (Section 7).



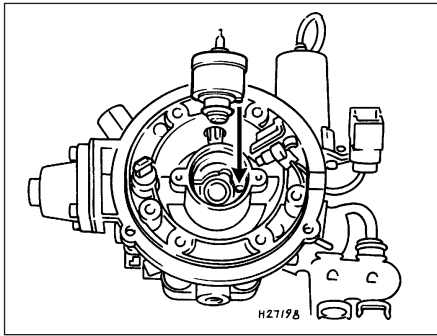
15.9C Withdraw the injector from the CFI unit



15.9D Injector seal location (arrowed) in the CFI unit



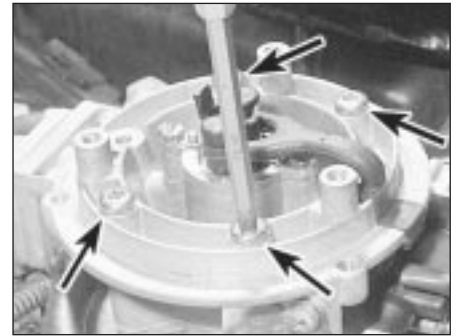
15.9E Withdrawing the seal from the injector retaining collar



15.10 Showing position of the injector location peg (arrowed)



15.13 Fuel pressure regulator and retaining screws (arrowed) - shown in situ



15.28 CFI unit retaining screws (arrowed)

Renewal

12 Refer to paragraphs 20 to 28 in this Section and remove the CFI unit from the vehicle.

13 Unscrew and remove the four regulator retaining screws, and remove the regulator (see illustration). As they are removed, note the fitting positions and the orientation of the components. **Do not** (unless absolutely necessary) attempt to prise out the plug or adjust the screw in the centre of the housing (if no plug fitted), as this will alter the system pressure.

14 Examine the components, and renew any that are defective or suspect.

15 To refit, position the regulator on its side, then insert the small spring, the valve, diaphragm (ensuring that it seats correctly), large spring, cup and then the regulator cover. Insert and tighten the retaining screws, but take care not to overtighten them, or the cover will be distorted.

16 Carefully place the ball into position on the spring cup, and ensure that it seats correctly.

17 If removed, fit the central Allen type adjuster screw, hand-tighten it and then unscrew it (from the hand-tight position) three full turns to make a provisional adjustment.

18 Refit the CFI unit in accordance with paragraphs 29 to 31 in this Section, but note that further checks for fuel leaks must be made with the engine running. The fuel system pressure must be checked by a Ford

dealer or other suitable specialist at the earliest opportunity.

CFi unit

Check

19 Refer to paragraphs 1 to 4 in this Section.

Renewal

20 Relieve the residual pressure in the fuel system (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap.

Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

21 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

22 Refer to Section 4 and remove the air cleaner.

23 Position a suitable drain tray under the coolant hose connections to the CFI unit, then detach the hoses from the unit. Plug or clamp the hoses to prevent further coolant spillage whilst the hoses are detached.

24 Disconnect the fuel return pipe from the CFI unit.

25 Refer to Section 5 and disconnect the accelerator cable from the CFI unit.

26 Disconnect the inlet air temperature sensor, throttle plate control motor and throttle position sensor wiring multi-plug connectors.

27 Disconnect the vacuum hose from the CFI unit.

28 Unscrew and remove the four retaining screws, and remove the CFI unit from the inlet manifold (see illustration). Remove the gasket.

29 Clean the CFI unit and the inlet manifold mating faces.

30 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting. Check and top-up the cooling system as required (Chapter 1).

31 When the CFI unit is refitted, turn the ignition on and off at least five times to pressurise the system, and check for leaks.

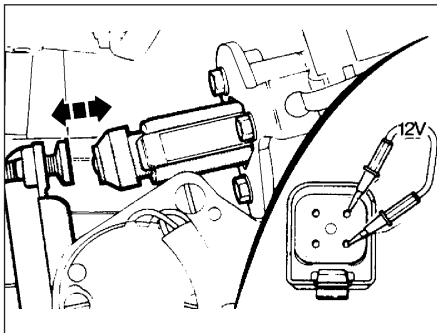
Throttle plate control motor

Check

32 Open the bonnet and watch the throttle plate control motor, while an assistant starts the engine, then turns the ignition key off. The motor should be seen to retract and then extend so that it is ready for the next engine restart. The throttle plate control motor can be individually checked for operation by connecting a 12-volt supply direct to the motor multi-plug (see illustration). Depending on the polarity, the motor should extend or retract. Changing the polarity should reverse the action.

Renewal

33 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).



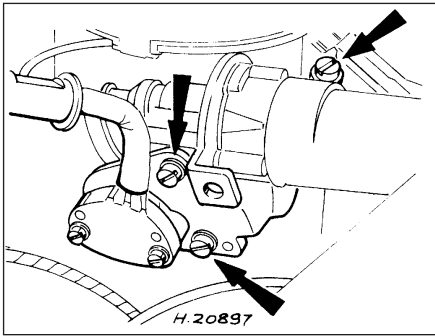
15.32 Throttle plate control motor check. Inset shows test connections to multi-plug



15.35A Disconnecting the throttle plate control motor multi-plug



15.35B Releasing the throttle position sensor multi-plug from the retaining clip



15.36 Throttle plate control motor retaining screws (arrowed)

34 Refer to Section 4 and remove the air cleaner.

35 Detach the wiring multi-plugs from the throttle position sensor and the throttle plate control motor, and release the retaining clips on the bracket (see illustrations).

36 Undo and remove the motor support bracket screws, and remove the bracket complete with the motor from the CFI unit (see illustration).

37 Undo the motor retaining screws and remove it from the support bracket.

38 Refit in the reverse order of removal, but note the following points:

- When refitting the motor and its support bracket to the injector unit, the throttle position sensor must locate on the accelerator linkage, and the bracket must align with the pegs.
- On completion, the idle speed should be checked by a Ford garage or fuel injection specialist who has the required equipment to link up with the engine management ECU.

Fuel trap

Check

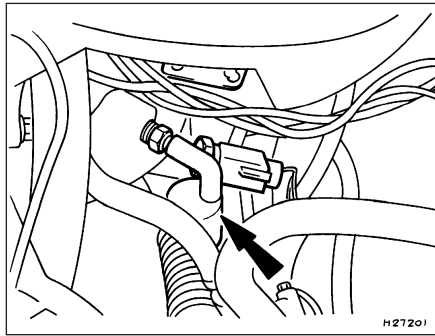
39 A fuel trap is fitted to the Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor hose (see illustration).

40 Disconnect the vacuum hose between the MAP sensor and the inlet manifold, and check carefully for any sign that fuel may be present in the hose. Remove both hoses from the fuel trap, and blow out both with compressed air. Ensure that when in its fitted position there are no dips in the hose, and that it does not chafe against any components or wiring. Note that if fuel was found to be present in the vacuum hose, it is possible that the MAP sensor may have been contaminated; this component should be tested by a Ford dealer using specialist equipment.

Renewal

41 To renew the fuel trap, first disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1), then disconnect the vacuum hoses from the fuel trap and withdraw it.

42 Refit in the reverse order of removal. It is important to ensure that the trap is correctly orientated, with the "CARB" mark on one end



15.39 Fuel trap location (arrowed) in MAP sensor vacuum hose

face towards the inlet manifold, and the "DIST" mark towards the MAP sensor (see illustration).

16 Fuel injection system components (1.6 litre EFi) - checking and renewal

Warning: The fuel system pressure must be released before any part of the system is disturbed - see Section 2. Petrol is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

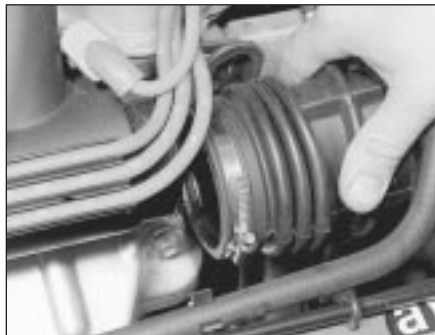
Fuel rail and injectors

Check

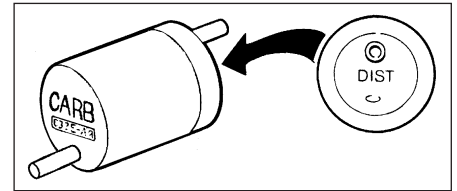
1 Refer to the procedure in the fuel injection system check (see Section 14).

Renewal

Note: For simplicity, and to ensure the necessary absolute cleanliness on reassembly, the following procedure describes the removal of the fuel rail assembly, complete with the



16.4 Disconnecting the hot-air duct from the exhaust manifold



15.42 Fuel trap orientation markings

injectors and pressure regulator, so that the injectors can be serviced individually on a clean work surface. It is also possible to remove and refit an individual injector, once the fuel system has been depressurised and the battery has been disconnected. If this approach is followed, read through the complete procedure, and work as described in the relevant paragraphs, depending on the amount of preliminary dismantling required. Be careful not to allow any dirt to enter the system.

2 Relieve the residual pressure in the fuel system (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap.

Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

3 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

4 Loosen off the retaining clip, and detach the hot-air hose duct from the exhaust manifold (see illustration).

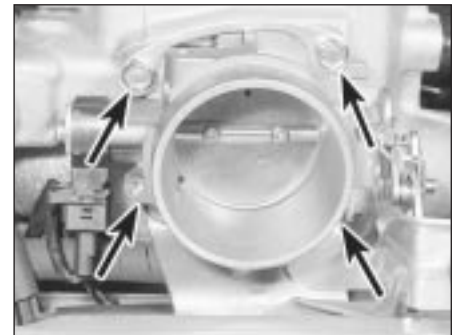
5 Disconnect the ignition HT lead connectors from the spark plugs, and release the leads from their locating grooves in the air inlet duct. Position them out of the way.

6 Unscrew the retaining nuts and the bolt, and detach the accelerator cable support bracket at the throttle housing.

7 Disconnect the wiring connector from the throttle position sensor.

8 Unscrew the four retaining bolts, and remove the throttle housing and its mating face gasket (see illustration).

9 Disconnect the wiring multi-plug from the



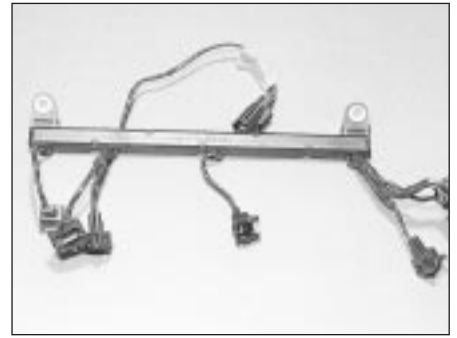
16.8 Throttle housing retaining bolt locations (arrowed)



16.10A Disconnect the wiring connector from each injector . . .



16.10B . . . unbolt the wiring harness . . .



16.10C . . . and remove the injector wiring harness

engine coolant temperature sensor and the air inlet temperature sensor.

10 Disconnect the wiring connectors from the fuel injectors, then undo the two retaining bolts and detach the wiring harness from the fuel rail (see illustrations).

11 Unscrew the fuel supply pipe at the fuel rail. Plug the rail and pipe, to prevent further fuel spillage and the possible ingress of dirt.

12 Disconnect the fuel return and vacuum pipes from the pressure regulator, and catch any fuel spillage in a clean cloth.

13 Unscrew the fuel rail securing bolts, and carefully withdraw the rail (complete with injectors) from the engine (see illustrations).

14 Detach the fuel injectors from the fuel rail, then remove the upper and lower seal from

each injector. All seals must be renewed (even if only one injector is to be renewed).

15 Prior to refitting the injectors, ensure that all mating surfaces are perfectly clean. Lubricate the new injector seals with clean engine oil to ease their assembly to the injectors (see illustration).

16 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Refer to the Specifications at the start of this Chapter for the tightening torques. When refitting the fuel rail, ensure that the injectors are correctly located. Ensure that the mating surfaces of the throttle housing are perfectly clean before assembling.

17 On completion, restart the engine and check the various fuel connections for any signs of leaks.

Fuel pressure regulator

Check

18 Refer to the fuel pump/fuel pressure check procedure (see Section 7).

Renewal

19 Relieve the residual pressure in the fuel system (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap.

Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

20 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

21 Release the fuel return pipe securing clip, and detach the pipe from the regulator.

22 Pull free the vacuum pipe from the regulator connector (see illustration).

23 Unscrew the two retaining bolts and remove the regulator. Remove the old sealing ring for renewal.

24 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Lubricate the new seal ring with clean engine oil to ease assembly. When the regulator is refitted and the fuel and vacuum lines are reconnected, turn the ignition on and off five times (without cranking the engine) and check for any sign of fuel leaks before restarting the engine.



16.13A Remove the injector rail retaining bolts . . .



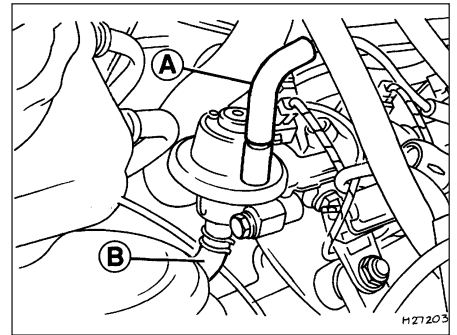
16.13B . . . release each injector . . .



16.13C . . . and withdraw the fuel rail and injectors



16.15 Fuel injector with new seals fitted



16.22 Fuel pressure regulator showing vacuum pipe (A) and return pipe connections (B)



16.26 Idle speed control valve and wiring connector

Idle speed control valve

Check

- 25 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1.
- 26 Unplug the valve's electrical connector (see illustration).
- 27 Connect a 12-volt battery across the valve's terminals - positive (+) to terminal 37, and negative (-) to terminal 21.



Caution: It is essential that the correct polarity is observed, or the diode incorporated in the valve may be damaged.

- 28 A distinct click should be heard each time contact is made and broken. If not, measure the resistance between the terminals. If the resistance is as specified, the valve is okay (but there may be a problem with the wiring or the ECU). If the resistance is not as specified, renew the valve (see below).
- 29 Plug in the valve's electrical connector.

Renewal

- 30 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 31 Unplug the valve's electrical connector.
- 32 Undo the four retaining screws, and remove the idle speed control valve.
- 33 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Ensure that the mating faces of the valve and inlet manifold are clean before reassembling.
- 34 When the valve is refitted, restart the engine and check that there are no induction leaks. Run the engine until its normal operating temperature is reached, and check that the idle speed is stable. Stop the engine, connect up a tachometer in accordance with its maker's instructions, then restart the engine and check that the idle speed is as specified with all electrical items (lights, heater blower motor, etc) switched off, then on. The idle speed should remain the same. Switch off the electrical items, turn the engine off and detach the tachometer to complete the test.

Throttle housing

Check

- 35 Remove the air inlet duct (see Section 4), and verify that the throttle linkage operates smoothly.

- 36 If the housing bore and valve are dirty enough for you to think that this might be the cause of a fault, seek the advice of a Ford dealer. *Do not* clean the housing (see the notes in the checking procedure given in Section 14).

Renewal

- 37 Relieve the residual pressure in the fuel system (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap.



Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that

fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

- 38 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 39 Loosen off the retaining clip, and detach the hot-air duct from the exhaust manifold (see illustration 16.4).
- 40 Disconnect the ignition HT lead connectors from the spark plugs, and release the leads from their locating grooves in the air inlet duct. Position them out of the way.
- 41 Unscrew the retaining nuts and the bolt, and detach the accelerator cable support bracket at the throttle housing.
- 42 Disconnect the vacuum hoses from the inlet manifold and the fuel pressure regulator.
- 43 Detach the wiring connections from the idle speed control valve, the temperature sensor and the harness connector.
- 44 Disconnect the fuel return hose from the pressure regulator unit.
- 45 Unscrew the throttle housing-to-manifold retaining bolts, and unbolt the throttle housing support bracket bolts (see illustration 16.8). Remove the throttle housing and gasket.
- 46 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Check that the mating faces are clean, and fit a new gasket.

17 Fuel injection system components (1.6 and 1.8 litre SEFi) - checking and renewal



Warning: The fuel system pressure must be released before any part of the system is disturbed - see Section 2. Petrol

is extremely flammable, so take extra precautions when you work on any part of the fuel system. Don't smoke, or allow open flames or bare light bulbs, in or near the work area. Don't work in a garage where a natural-gas appliance (such as a water heater or clothes dryer) with a pilot light is present. If you spill any fuel on your skin, rinse it off immediately with soap and water. When you perform any kind of work on the fuel system, wear safety glasses, and have a Class B type fire extinguisher on hand.

Throttle housing

Check

- 1 Refer to Section 16, paragraphs 35 and 36.

Renewal

- 2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1.
- 3 Remove the air inlet duct as described in Section 4.
- 4 Disconnect the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage (see Section 5).
- 5 Disconnect the throttle position sensor multi-plug.
- 6 Remove the throttle housing mounting screws, then detach the throttle housing and gasket from the inlet manifold (see illustration). Discard the gasket - this must be renewed whenever it is disturbed.
- 7 Using a soft brush and carburettor cleaner, thoroughly clean the exterior of the throttle housing, then blow out all passages with compressed air.



Caution: Do not clean the throttle housing's bore, the throttle valve, or the throttle position sensor, either by scraping or with a solvent. Just wipe them over carefully with a clean soft cloth.

- 8 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure. Fit a new gasket, and tighten the housing screws to the specified torque.

Fuel rail and injectors

Check

- 9 Refer to the procedure in the fuel system check (see Section 14).

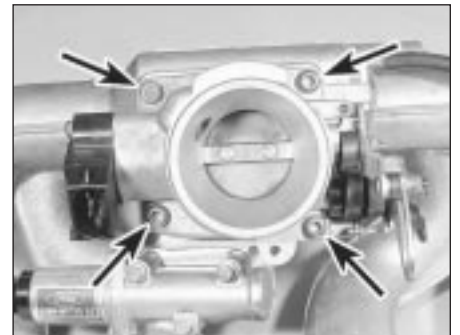
Renewal

- 10 Relieve the residual pressure in the fuel system (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap.

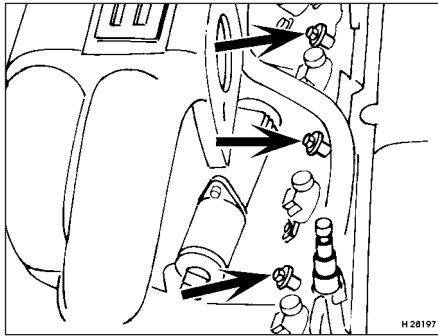


Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

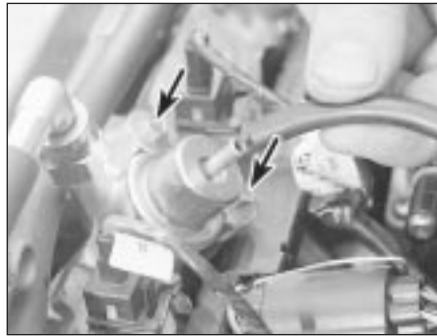
- 11 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1.



17.6 Throttle housing mounting screw locations (arrowed)



17.19 Undo the three bolts (arrowed) to release the fuel rail from the manifold



17.28 Disconnect the vacuum hose and undo the bolts (arrowed) to withdraw the fuel pressure regulator



17.33 Unscrew the three retaining bolts (arrowed) and withdraw the idle speed control valve from the inlet manifold

12 Remove the air inlet duct as described in Section 4.

13 Disconnect the accelerator cable from the throttle linkage (see Section 5).

14 Disconnect the throttle position sensor multi-plug.

15 Remove the throttle housing mounting screws, then detach the throttle housing and gasket from the inlet manifold. Discard the gasket - this must be renewed whenever it is disturbed.

16 Detach the crankcase breather hose from the cylinder head cover, and the fuel pressure regulator vacuum hose from the inlet manifold.

17 Releasing the wire clips, unplug the four fuel injector multi-plugs and the inlet air temperature sensor multi-plug.

18 Refer to Section 3 and disconnect the fuel feed and return lines at the quick-release couplings next to the braking system vacuum servo unit, then unclip the fuel hoses from the inlet manifold; use rag to soak up any spilt fuel. **Note:** Do not disturb the threaded couplings at the fuel rail unions unless absolutely necessary; these are sealed at the factory. The quick-release couplings will suffice for all normal service operations.

19 Unscrew the three bolts securing the fuel rail (see illustration). Withdraw the rail, carefully prising it out of the inlet manifold, and draining any remaining fuel into a suitable clean container. Note the seals between the rail noses and the manifold; these must be renewed whenever the rail is removed.

20 Clamping the rail carefully in a vice fitted with soft jaws, unscrew the two bolts securing each injector, and withdraw the injectors. Place each in a clean, clearly-labelled storage container.

21 If you are renewing the injector(s), discard the old injector, the nose seal and the O-rings. If you are simply renewing leaking injector O-rings, and intend to re-use the same injectors, remove the old nose seal and O-rings, and discard them.

22 Further testing of the injector(s) is beyond the scope of the home mechanic. If you are in doubt as to the status of any injector(s), these can be tested at a dealer service department.

23 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- Lubricate each nose seal and O-ring with clean engine oil on installation.
- Locate each injector carefully in the fuel rail recess, ensuring that the locating tab on the injector head fits into the slot provided in the rail. Tighten the bolts to the specified torque.
- Fit a new seal to each fuel rail nose, and ensure the seals are not displaced as the rail is refitted. Ensure that the fuel rail is settled fully in the manifold before tightening the three bolts evenly and to the torque wrench setting specified.
- Fasten the fuel feed and return quick-release couplings as described in Section 3.
- Ensure that the breather hose, vacuum hose and wiring are routed correctly, and secured on reconnection by any clips or ties provided.
- On completion, switch the ignition on and off five times, to activate the fuel pump and pressurise the system, without cranking the engine. Check for signs of fuel leaks around all disturbed unions and joints before attempting to start the engine.

Fuel pressure regulator

Check

24 Refer to the fuel pump/fuel pressure check procedure (see Section 7).

Renewal

25 Relieve the residual pressure in the fuel system (see Section 2), and equalise tank pressure by removing the fuel filler cap.

Warning: This procedure will merely relieve the increased pressure necessary for the engine to run - remember that fuel will still be present in the system components, and take precautions accordingly before disconnecting any of them.

26 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Chapter 5, Section 1.

27 Disconnect the vacuum hose from the regulator.

28 Unscrew the two regulator retaining bolts

(see illustration) then use a wad of clean rag to soak up any spilt fuel, and withdraw the regulator.

29 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- Renew the regulator sealing O-ring whenever the regulator is disturbed. Lubricate the new O-ring with clean engine oil on installation.
- Locate the regulator carefully in the fuel rail recess, and tighten the bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.
- On completion, switch the ignition on and off five times, to activate the fuel pump and pressurise the system, without cranking the engine. Check for signs of fuel leaks around all disturbed unions and joints before attempting to start the engine.

Idle speed control valve

Check

30 Refer to the procedures given in Section 16, paragraphs 25 to 29, noting that on the SEFi system, the valve is located on the right-hand side of the inlet manifold, just below the throttle position sensor.

Renewal

31 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

32 Disconnect the valve's wiring multi-plug.

33 Unscrew the three retaining bolts, and withdraw the valve from the inlet manifold (see illustration).

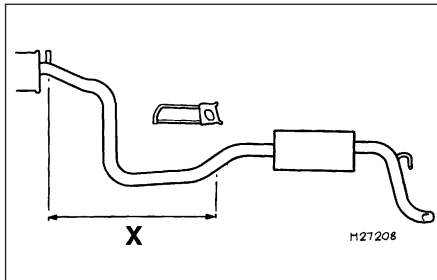
34 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- Clean the mating surfaces carefully, and always fit a new gasket whenever the valve is disturbed.
- Tighten the bolts evenly and to the specified torque wrench setting.
- Once the wiring and battery are reconnected, start the engine and allow it to idle. When it has reached normal operating temperature, check that the idle speed is stable, and that no induction (air) leaks are evident. Switch on all electrical loads headlights, heated rear window, etc), and check that the idle speed is still correct.

18 Exhaust system - general information and component renewal

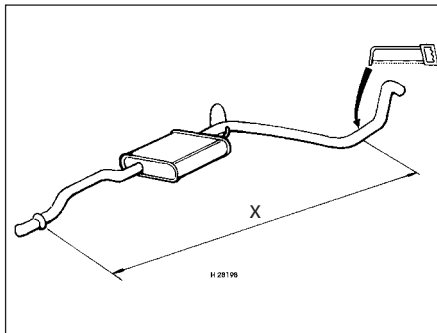


Refer to Section 25 in Part A of this Chapter, but note the system layout and cutting points for system renewal as shown here (see illustrations).



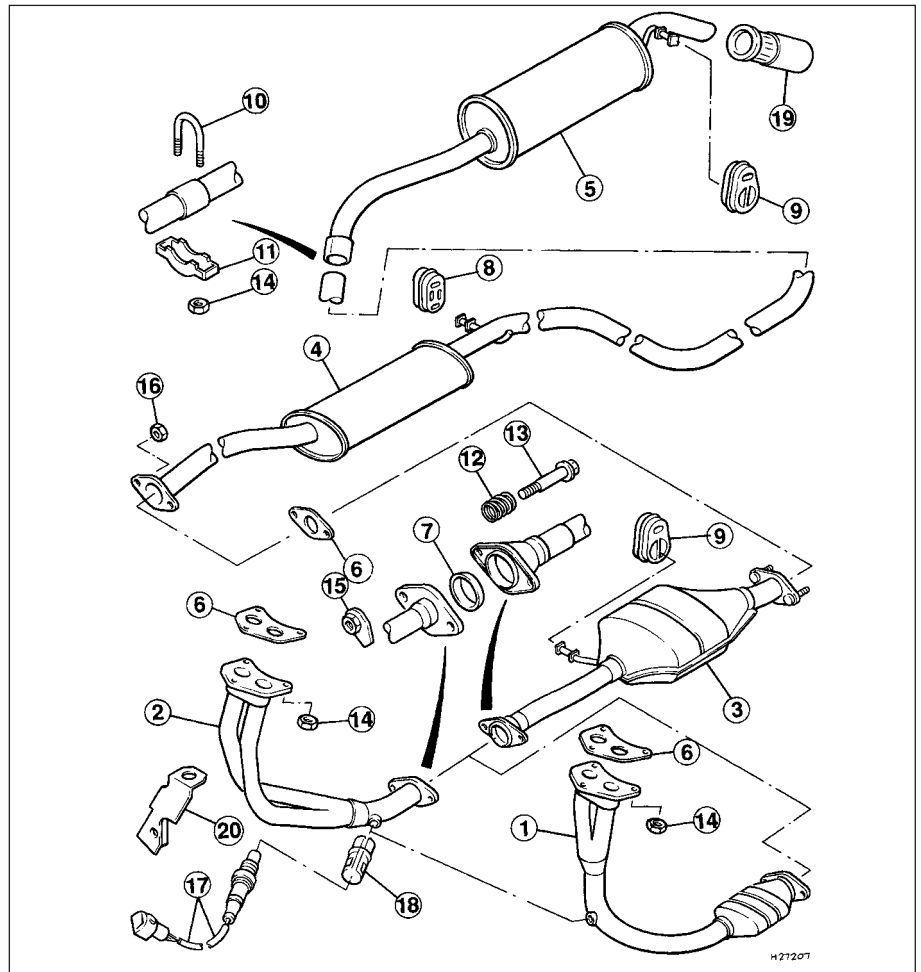
18.1A Cut at points indicated when renewing the rear silencer on HCS and CVH engines with CFI and EFI systems

$X = 720 \text{ mm}$



18.1B Cut at points indicated when renewing the rear silencer on Zetec engine with SEFi system

$X = 1717 \text{ mm}$



18.1C Exhaust system fitted to the CFI engine models (1.6 litre EFI and SEFi systems similar)






- | | | |
|---|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Front downpipe (manual transmission) | 6 Gasket | 14 Self-locking nut |
| 2 Front downpipe (CTX transmission) | 7 Sealing ring | 15 Nut |
| 3 Catalytic converter | 8 Rubber mounting | 16 Nut |
| 4 Front silencer | 9 Rubber mounting | 17 Oxygen sensor |
| 5 Rear silencer (1.6 litre EFI and SEFi tailpipes differ) | 10 U-bolt | 18 Heat shield |
| | 11 Clamp | 19 Rear silencer outlet trim |
| | 12 Spring | 20 Bracket |
| | 13 Bolt | |

Chapter 5 Engine electrical systems

Contents

Alternator - removal and refitting	13	Engine compartment wiring check	See Chapter 1
Alternator brushes and voltage regulator - renewal	14	General information, precautions and battery disconnection	1
Auxiliary drivebelt check and renewal	See Chapter 1	Ignition coil - checking, removal and refitting	6
Battery - removal and refitting	2	Ignition module (carburettor engines) - removal and refitting	7
Battery check, maintenance and charging	See Chapter 1	Ignition module (fuel-injected engines) - removal and refitting	8
Battery leads - checking and renewal	3	Ignition system - general information and precautions	4
Charging system - general information and precautions	11	Ignition system - testing	5
Charging system - testing	12	Ignition timing - checking	9
Crankshaft speed/position sensor - checking, removal and refitting	10	Spark plug renewal and HT lead check	See Chapter 1
Electronic control system - information and fault diagnosis	See Chapter 6	Starter motor - brush renewal	18
Electronic Control Unit (ECU) and system information sensors - general information	See Chapter 6	Starter motor - removal and refitting	17
		Starting system - general information and precautions	15
		Starting system - testing	16

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience 	Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience 	Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic 	Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic 	Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional 
---	--	--	---	--

Specifications

Battery

Type	Lead-acid, maintenance-free
Rating - Cold cranking/Reserve capacity	270 A/50 RC, 360 A/60 RC, 500 A/70 RC, 590 A/90 RC or 650 A/130 RC

Ignition coil

Output	37.0 kilovolts (minimum)
Primary resistances - measured at coil connector terminal pins	0.50 ± 0.05 ohms

Starter motor

Make/type:	
Bosch	DM, DW or EV
Magneti-Marelli	M79 or M80R
Nippondenso	No type numbers given
Output:	
Bosch DM	0.8, 0.9 or 1.0 kW
Bosch DW	1.4 or 1.8 kW
Bosch EV	2.2 kW
Marelli M79	0.8 or 0.9 kW
Marelli M80R	1.8 kW
Nippondenso	0.6 or 0.8 kW
Minimum brush length:	
Bosch and Magneti-Marelli	8.0 mm
Nippondenso	10.0 mm
Commutator minimum diameter:	
Bosch DM and DW and Nippondenso	32.8 mm
Bosch EV and Magneti-Marelli	Not available
Armature endfloat:	
Bosch DM and DW	0.3 mm
Bosch EV and Magneti-Marelli M80R	Not available
Magneti-Marelli M79	0.25 mm
Nippondenso	0.6 mm

Alternator

Make/type:	
Bosch	K1-55A, K1-70A or NC 14V 60-90A
Magneti-Marelli	A127/55 or 127/70
Mitsubishi	A5T or A002T
Output (nominal at 13.5 volts with engine speed of 6000 rpm)	55, 70 or 90 amps
Regulating voltage at 4000 rpm engine speed and 3 to 7 amp load	14 to 14.6 volts
Minimum brush length:	
Bosch and Magneti-Marelli	5 mm
Mitsubishi	3 mm

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Ignition coil retaining screws	5 to 7	3.5 to 5.1
Alternator mounting bolts	20 to 27	15 to 20
Alternator adjustment bolts	18 to 25	13 to 18
Alternator pulley nut:		
With key	45 to 55	33 to 41
Without key	50 to 70	37 to 52
Starter motor mounting bolts	35	26

1 General information, precautions and battery disconnection

General information

The engine electrical systems include all ignition, charging and starting components. Because of their engine-related functions, these components are discussed separately from body electrical devices such as the lights, the instruments, etc (which are included in Chapter 12).

Precautions

Always observe the following precautions when working on the electrical system:

- a) Be extremely careful when servicing engine electrical components. They are easily damaged if checked, connected or handled improperly.
- b) Never leave the ignition switched on for long periods of time when the engine is not running.
- c) Don't disconnect the battery leads while the engine is running.
- d) Maintain correct polarity when connecting a battery lead from another vehicle during jump starting - see the "jump starting" section at the front of this manual.
- e) Always disconnect the negative lead first, and reconnect it last, or the battery may be shorted by the tool being used to loosen the lead clamps.

It's also a good idea to review the safety-related information regarding the engine electrical systems located in the "Safety first!" section at the front of this manual, before beginning any operation included in this Chapter.

Battery disconnection

Several systems fitted to the vehicle require battery power to be available at all times, either to ensure their continued operation (such as the clock) or to maintain control unit


memories (such as that in the engine management system's ECU) which would be wiped if the battery were to be disconnected. Whenever the battery is to be disconnected therefore, first note the following, to ensure that there are no unforeseen consequences of this action:

- a) First, on any vehicle with central locking, it is a wise precaution to remove the key from the ignition, and to keep it with you, so that it does not get locked in, if the central locking should engage accidentally when the battery is reconnected.
- b) On cars equipped with an engine management system, the system's ECU will lose the information stored in its memory - referred to by Ford as the "KAM" (Keep-Alive Memory) - when the battery is disconnected. This includes idling and operating values, and any fault codes detected - in the case of the fault codes, if it is thought likely that the system has developed a fault for which the corresponding code has been logged, the vehicle must be taken to a Ford dealer for the codes to be read, using the special diagnostic equipment necessary for this (see Chapter 6). Whenever the battery is disconnected, the information relating to idle speed control and other operating values will have to be re-programmed into the unit's memory. The ECU does this by itself, but until then, there may be surging, hesitation, erratic idle and a generally inferior level of performance. To allow the ECU to relearn these values, start the engine and run it as close to idle speed as possible until it reaches its normal operating temperature, then run it for approximately two minutes at 1200 rpm. Next, drive the vehicle as far as necessary - approximately 5 miles of varied driving conditions is usually sufficient - to complete the relearning process.
- c) If the battery is disconnected while the alarm system is armed or activated, the

alarm will remain in the same state when the battery is reconnected. The same applies to the engine immobiliser system (where fitted).

- d) If a Ford "Keycode" audio unit is fitted, and the unit and/or the battery is disconnected, the unit will not function again on reconnection until the correct security code is entered. Details of this procedure, which varies according to the unit and model year, are given in the "Ford Audio Systems Operating Guide" supplied with the vehicle when new, with the code itself being given in a "Radio Passport" and/or a "Keycode Label" at the same time. Ensure you have the correct code before you disconnect the battery. For obvious security reasons, the procedure is not given in this manual. If you do not have the code or details of the correct procedure, but can supply proof of ownership and a legitimate reason for wanting this information, the vehicle's selling dealer may be able to help.

Devices known as "memory-savers" (or "code-savers") can be used to avoid some of the above problems. Precise details vary according to the device used. Typically, it is plugged into the cigarette lighter, and is connected by its own wires to a spare battery; the vehicle's own battery is then disconnected from the electrical system, leaving the "memory-saver" to pass sufficient current to maintain audio unit security codes and ECU memory values, and also to run permanently-live circuits such as the clock, all the while isolating the battery in the event of a short-circuit occurring while work is carried out.

 **Warning:** Some of these devices allow a considerable amount of current to pass, which can mean that many of the vehicle's systems are still operational when the main battery is disconnected. If a "memory-saver" is used, ensure that the circuit concerned is actually "dead" before carrying out any work on it!

2 Battery - removal and refitting



Note: Refer to the previous Section before proceeding and also the relevant Sections of Chapter 1.

Removal

1 Undo the retaining nut, then detach the earth leads from the stud of the battery negative (earth) terminal post (see illustration). This is the terminal to disconnect before working on, or disconnecting, any electrical component on the vehicle.

2 Pivot up the plastic cover from the positive terminal, then unscrew the positive lead retaining nut on the terminal. Detach the positive lead from the terminal.

3 Unscrew the two battery clamp bolts, and remove the clamp from the front of the battery.

4 Lift the battery from the tray, keeping it upright and taking care not to let it touch any clothing. Be careful - it's heavy.

6 Clean the battery terminal posts, clamps and the battery casing. If the bulkhead is rusted as a result of battery acid spilling onto it, clean it thoroughly and re-paint with reference to Chapter 1.

7 If you are renewing the battery, make sure that you get one that's identical, with the same dimensions, amperage rating, cold cranking rating, etc. Dispose of the old battery in a responsible fashion. Most local authorities have facilities for the collection and disposal of such items - batteries contain sulphuric acid and lead, and should not be simply thrown out with the household rubbish!

Refitting

8 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Smear the battery terminals with a petroleum-based jelly prior to reconnecting. Always connect the positive terminal clamp first and the negative terminal clamp last.

3 Battery leads - checking and renewal



Note: See also the relevant Sections of Chapter 1.

1 Periodically inspect the entire length of each battery lead for damage, cracked or burned insulation, and corrosion. Poor battery lead connections can cause starting problems and decreased engine performance.

2 Check the lead-to-terminal connections at the ends of the leads for cracks, loose wire strands and corrosion. The presence of white, fluffy deposits under the insulation at the lead terminal connection is a sign that the lead is corroded and should be renewed. Check the terminals for distortion, missing clamp bolts, and corrosion.



2.1 Detaching the earth leads from the stud of the battery negative (earth) terminal post

3 When removing the leads, always disconnect the negative lead first, and reconnect it last (see Section 1). Even if only the positive lead is being renewed, be sure to disconnect the negative lead from the battery first (see Chapter 1 for further information regarding battery lead removal).

4 Disconnect the old leads from the battery, then trace each of them to their opposite ends, and detach them from the starter solenoid and earth terminals. Note the routing of each lead, to ensure correct installation.

5 If you are renewing either or both of the old leads, take them with you when buying new leads. It is vitally important that you replace the leads with identical parts. Leads have characteristics that make them easy to identify: positive leads are usually red, larger in cross-section, and have a larger-diameter battery post clamp; earth leads are usually black, smaller in cross-section, and have a slightly smaller-diameter clamp for the negative post.

6 Clean the threads of the solenoid or earth connection with a wire brush to remove rust and corrosion. Apply a light coat of battery terminal corrosion inhibitor, or petroleum jelly, to the threads, to prevent future corrosion.

7 Attach the lead to the solenoid or earth connection, and tighten the mounting nut/bolt securely.

8 Before connecting a new lead to the battery, make sure that it reaches the battery post without having to be stretched.

9 Connect the positive lead first, followed by the negative lead.

4 Ignition system - general information and precautions

General

The main ignition system components include the ignition switch, the battery, the crankshaft speed/position sensor, the ignition module, the coil, the primary (low tension/LT) and secondary (high tension/HT) wiring circuits, and the spark plugs.

A Distributorless Ignition System (DIS) is used on all carburettor engines, and an Electronic Distributorless Ignition System (E-DIS) on all fuel-injected engines. With these systems, the main functions of the conventional distributor are replaced by the computerised ignition module and a coil unit. The coil unit combines a double-ended pair of coils - each time a coil receives an ignition signal, two sparks are produced, at each end of the secondary windings. One spark goes to a cylinder on compression stroke and the other goes to the corresponding cylinder on its exhaust stroke. The first will give the correct power stroke, but the second spark will have no effect (a "wasted spark"), occurring as it does during exhaust conditions.

On carburettor engines, the ignition module receives signals provided by information sensors which monitor various engine functions (such as crankshaft speed/position, coolant temperature, inlet air temperature, etc). This information allows the ignition module to generate the optimum ignition timing setting under all operating conditions.

On fuel-injected engines, the ignition module operates in conjunction with the fuel system Electronic Control Unit (ECU), and together with the various information sensors and emission control components, forms the complete engine management package.

The information contained in this Chapter concentrates on the ignition-related components of the engine management system. Information covering the fuel, exhaust and emission control components can be found in Chapters 4 and 6.

Precautions

When working on the ignition system, take the following precautions:

- a) Do not keep the ignition switch on for more than 10 seconds if the engine will not start.
- b) If a separate tachometer is ever required for servicing work, consult a dealer service department before buying a tachometer for use with this vehicle - some tachometers may be incompatible with this type of ignition system - and always connect it in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's instructions.
- c) Never connect the ignition coil terminals to earth. This could result in damage to the coil and/or the ignition module.
- d) Do not disconnect the battery when the engine is running.
- e) Make sure that the ignition module is properly earthed.
- f) Refer to the warning at the beginning of the next Section concerning HT voltage.

5 Ignition system - testing



Warning: Because of the high voltage generated by the ignition system, extreme care should be taken whenever an operation is performed involving ignition components. This not only includes the ignition module, coil and spark plug (HT) leads, but related components such as electrical connectors, tachometer and other test equipment also.

Note: This is an initial check of the "ignition part" of the main engine management system, to be carried out as part of the preliminary checks of the complete engine management system (see Chapter 6).

1 If the engine turns over but won't start, disconnect the (HT) lead from any spark plug, and attach it to a calibrated tester (available at most automotive accessory shops). Connect the clip on the tester to a good earth - a bolt or metal bracket on the engine. If you're unable to obtain a calibrated ignition tester, have the check carried out by a Ford dealer service department or similar. Any other form of testing (such as jumping a spark from the end of an HT lead to earth) is not recommended, because of the risk of personal injury, or of damage to the ignition module (see notes above and in Section 4).

2 Crank the engine, and watch the end of the tester to see if bright blue, well-defined sparks occur.

3 If sparks occur, sufficient voltage is reaching the plug to fire it. Repeat the check at the remaining plugs, to ensure that all leads are sound and that the coil is serviceable. However, the plugs themselves may be fouled or faulty, so remove and check them as described in Chapter 1.

4 If no sparks or intermittent sparks occur, the spark plug lead(s) may be defective - check them as described in Chapter 1.

5 If there's still no spark, check the coil's electrical connector, to make sure it's clean and tight. Check for full battery voltage to the coil at the connector's centre terminal. Check the coil itself (see Section 6). Make any necessary repairs, then repeat the check again.

6 The remainder of the system checks should be left to a dealer service department or other qualified repair facility, as there is a chance that the ignition module may be damaged if tests are not performed properly.

6 Ignition coil - checking, removal and refitting



Warning: Because of the high voltage generated by the ignition system, extreme care should be taken whenever an operation is performed involving ignition components. This not only includes the ignition module/ECU, coil and spark plug (HT) leads, but related components such as electrical connectors, tachometer and other test equipment also.

Check

1 Having checked that full battery voltage is available at the centre terminal of the coil's electrical connector (see Section 5), disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead - see Section 1.

2 Unplug the coil's electrical connector, if not already disconnected.

3 Using an ohmmeter, measure the resistance of the coil's primary windings, connecting the meter between the coil's terminal pins as follows. Measure first from one outer pin to the centre pin, then from the other outer pin to the centre. Compare your readings with the coil primary resistance listed in the Specifications Section at the beginning of this Chapter.

4 Disconnect the spark plug (HT) leads - note their connections or label them carefully, as described in Chapter 1. Use the meter to check that there is continuity (ie, a resistance corresponding to that of the coil secondary winding) between each pair of (HT) lead terminals; Nos 1 and 4 terminals are connected by their secondary winding, as are Nos 2 and 3. Now switch to the highest resistance scale, and check that there is no continuity between either pair of terminals and the other - ie, there should be infinite



6.7 Disconnecting the multi-plug from the ignition coil

resistance between terminals 1 and 2, or 4 and 3 - and between any terminal and earth.

5 If either of the above tests yield resistance values outside the specified amount, or results other than those described, renew the coil. Any further testing should be left to a dealer service department or other qualified repair facility.

Removal

6 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Section 1).

7 Disconnect the coil main electrical connector and (where fitted) the electrical connector to the suppressor (see illustration).

8 The coil can be removed with the HT leads left attached, in which case disconnect the leads from their respective spark plugs and from the location clips in the rocker cover or air inlet duct (as applicable). If preferred, the HT leads can be disconnected from the coil. First check that both the ignition HT leads and their fitted positions are clearly marked numerically to ensure correct refitting. Spot mark them accordingly if necessary, using quick-drying paint.

9 If disconnecting the leads from the spark plugs, pull them free by gripping on the connector, not the lead. To detach the leads from the ignition coil, compress the retaining arms of each lead connector at the coil, and detach each lead in turn (see illustration).

10 Unscrew the Torx-type retaining screws, and remove the coil from its mounting on the engine (see illustrations).



6.9 Disconnecting an HT lead from the ignition coil (CVH engine shown)



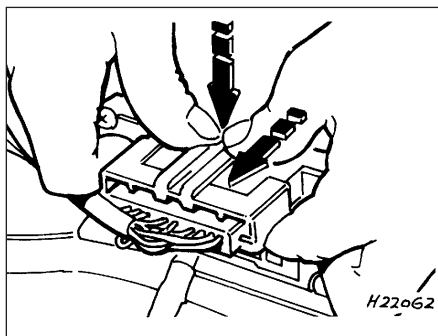
6.10A Unbolting the ignition coil from the HCS engine



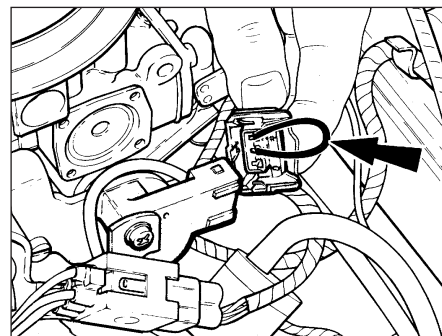
6.10B Removing the ignition coil from the CVH engine (leaving the HT leads attached)



7.3 Ignition module showing vacuum hose and multi-plug arrangement (CVH carburettor engine shown)



7.4 Multi-plug removal from the ignition module



7.9 Bridge the earth signal terminal and ground terminal in the throttle position sensor multi-plug with a length of wire (arrowed)

Refitting

11 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure. Ensure that the spark plug (HT) leads are correctly reconnected, and tighten the coil screws securely.

7 Ignition module (carburettor engines) - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 The ignition module is located on the engine compartment left-hand inner wing panel.
- 2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Section 1).
- 3 Detach the vacuum hose from the module (see illustration).
- 4 According to type, either compress the locktab securing the wiring multi-plug in position, or where applicable, undo the retaining bolt, then withdraw the plug from the module (see illustration).
- 5 Undo the retaining screws, and remove the module from the inner wing panel.

Refitting

- 6 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure. If working on a 1.6 litre CVH engine model with power steering, air conditioning and/or automatic transmission, the following procedure must be followed before starting the engine.
- 7 When a new module is fitted, or when certain carburettor or engine components have been changed, it is necessary to clear the module memory and allow it to "learn" new engine parameters for its correct operation. This is done as follows.
- 8 With the ignition switched off, disconnect the throttle position sensor multi-plug on the side of the carburettor.
- 9 Using a short length of wire, bridge the earth signal terminal and ground terminal in the wiring multi-plug (see illustration).
- 10 Locate the ignition module service connector, which is a small multi-plug (like the

throttle position sensor multi-plug) joined to the main wiring loom by three wires. The service connector will be located either adjacent to the ignition module or on the engine compartment bulkhead near the carburettor (see illustration).

- 11 If the service connector multi-plug has a wire connected to its centre terminal (pin 5), disconnect the wire.
- 12 Switch on the ignition, but do not crank the engine on the starter.
- 13 Connect one end of a suitable length of wire to the multi-plug centre terminal (pin 5), and hold the other end of the wire on a good earth point for 5 seconds only.
- 14 Switch off the ignition, and remove the earthing wire from pin 5 of the multi-plug.
- 15 Remove the bridge wire from the throttle position sensor multi-plug, and reconnect the multi-plug.
- 16 Start the engine and allow it to idle. The idle speed will be initially high, but will then settle back to a stable idle condition.
- 17 Switch off the ignition and, if pin 5 of the service connector had a wire connected to it originally, reconnect the wire.

8 Ignition module (fuel-injected engines) - removal and refitting

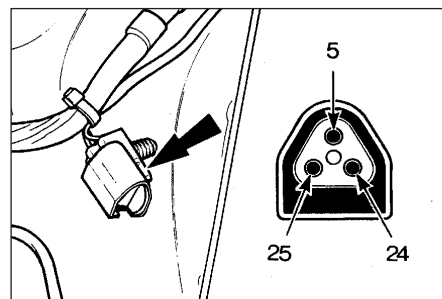


Removal

- 1 The ignition module is located on the engine compartment left-hand inner wing panel.
- 2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Section 1).
- 3 Disconnect the wiring multi-plug from the module, pulling on the plug, not the wire (see illustration).
- 4 Undo the two retaining screws, and remove the module from the inner wing panel.

Refitting

- 5 Refit in the reverse order of removal. On completion, reconnect the battery and restart the engine.



7.10 Ignition module service connector (arrowed) and terminal identification

9 Ignition timing - checking

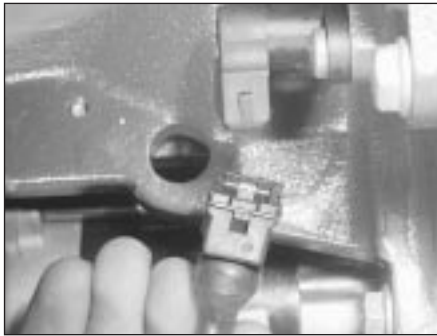


The ignition timing is controlled entirely by the ignition module (acting in conjunction with the ECU on fuel-injected models), and cannot be adjusted. The value may vary significantly if "checked" by simply connecting a timing light to the system and running the engine at idle speed.

Not only can the ignition timing not be adjusted, it cannot be checked either, except with the use of special diagnostic equipment (see Chapter 6) - this makes it a task for a Ford dealer service department.



8.3 Ignition module and wiring connection on the 1.6 litre EFi fuel-injected engine



10.4 Disconnecting the wiring connector from the crankshaft speed/position sensor

10 Crankshaft speed/position sensor - checking, removal and refitting



Checking

See Section 4 of Chapter 6.

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Section 1).
- 2 For improved access, apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands.
- 3 If working on the Zetec engine, remove the starter motor as described in Section 17.
- 4 Compress the retaining clip and pull free the wiring multi-plug connector from the sensor unit, but take care to pull on the connector, not the lead (**see illustration**).
- 5 Undo the Torx-type retaining screw, and withdraw the sensor from its location in the cylinder block bellhousing flange (**see illustration**).

Refitting

- 6 Refitting is the reversal of removal.

11 Charging system - general information and precautions

General information

The charging system includes the alternator, an internal voltage regulator, a no-charge (or "ignition") warning light, the battery, and the wiring between all the components. The charging system supplies electrical power for the ignition system, the lights, the radio, etc. The alternator is driven by the auxiliary drivebelt at the front (right-hand end) of the engine.

The purpose of the voltage regulator is to limit the alternator's voltage to a preset value. This prevents power surges, circuit overloads, etc., during peak voltage output.

The charging system doesn't ordinarily require periodic maintenance. However, the drivebelt, battery and wires and connections



10.5 Crankshaft speed/position sensor shown removed from engine

should be inspected at the intervals outlined in Chapter 1.

The instrument panel warning light should come on when the ignition key is turned to positions "II" or "III", then should go off immediately the engine starts. If it remains on, or if it comes on while the engine is running, there is a malfunction in the charging system (see Section 12). If the light does not come on when the ignition key is turned, and the bulb is sound (see Chapter 12), there is a fault in the alternator.

Precautions

Be very careful when making electrical circuit connections to a vehicle equipped with an alternator, and note the following:

- a) *When reconnecting wires to the alternator from the battery, be sure to note the polarity.*
- b) *Before using arc-welding equipment to repair any part of the vehicle, disconnect the wires from the alternator and the battery terminals.*
- c) *Never start the engine with a battery charger connected.*
- d) *Always disconnect both battery leads before using a battery charger.*
- e) *The alternator is driven by an engine drivebelt which could cause serious injury if your hand, hair or clothes become entangled in it with the engine running.*
- f) *Because the alternator is connected directly to the battery, it could arc or cause a fire if overloaded or shorted-out.*
- g) *Wrap a plastic bag over the alternator, and secure it with rubber bands, before steam-cleaning or pressure-washing the engine.*
- h) *Never disconnect the alternator or battery terminals while the engine is running.*

12 Charging system - testing



1 If a malfunction occurs in the charging circuit, don't automatically assume that the alternator is causing the problem. First check the following items:

- a) *Check the tension and condition of the*

auxiliary drivebelt - renew it if worn or deteriorated (see Chapter 1).

- b) *Ensure that the alternator mounting bolts and nuts are tight.*
- c) *Inspect the alternator wiring harness and the electrical connections at the alternator; they must be in good condition, and tight.*
- d) *Check the large main fuses in the engine compartment (see Chapter 12). If any is blown, determine the cause, repair the circuit and renew the fuse (the vehicle won't start and/or the accessories won't work if the fuse is blown).*
- e) *Start the engine and check the alternator for abnormal noises - for example, a shrieking or squealing sound may indicate a badly-worn bearing or brush.*
- f) *Make sure that the battery is fully-charged - one bad cell in a battery can cause overcharging by the alternator.*

2 Using a voltmeter, check the battery voltage with the engine off. It should be approximately 12 volts.

3 Start the engine and check the battery voltage again. Increase engine speed until the voltmeter reading remains steady; it should now be approximately 13.5 to 14.6 volts.

4 Switch on as many electrical accessories (eg the headlights, heated rear window and heater blower) as possible, and check that the alternator maintains the regulated voltage at around 13 to 14 volts. The voltage may drop and then come back up; it may also be necessary to increase engine speed slightly, even if the charging system is working properly.

5 If the voltage reading is greater than the specified charging voltage, renew the voltage regulator (see Section 14).

6 If the voltmeter reading is less than that specified, the fault may be due to worn brushes, weak brush springs, a faulty voltage regulator, a faulty diode, a severed phase winding, or worn or damaged slip rings. The brushes and slip rings may be checked (see Section 13), but if the fault persists, the alternator should be renewed or taken to an auto-electrician for testing and repair.

13 Alternator - removal and refitting

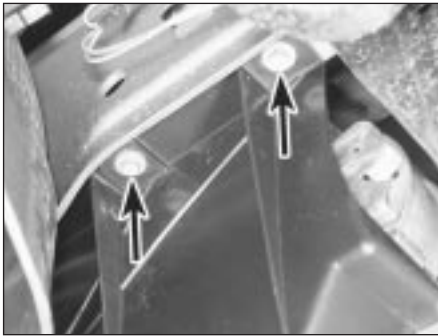


Removal

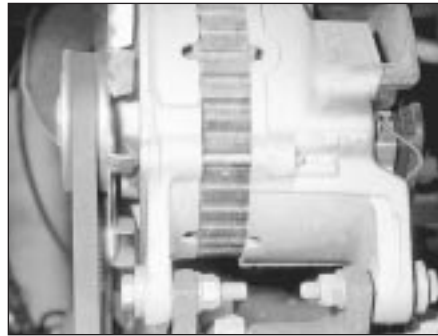
- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands.
- 3 Where applicable, undo the two retaining bolts and remove the drivebelt guard (**see illustration**).

Alternator with V-belt drive and manual adjustment

- 4 On models fitted with a sliding arm type



13.3 Two of the drivebelt guard retaining bolts (arrowed)



13.6 Alternator and lower mounting/pivot bolts (HCS engine shown)



13.9 Alternator removal (CVH engine shown)

adjuster strap, unscrew and remove the top (adjuster) bolt from the strap.

5 On models fitted with a "rack-and-pinion" type adjuster, unscrew and remove the central (locking) bolt whilst, at the same time, loosening the (adjuster) nut.

6 Loosen off, but do not yet remove, the lower mounting bolts (see illustration), pivot the alternator inwards towards the engine to slacken the tension of the drivebelt, then disengage the drivebelt from the pulleys and remove it.

7 Where applicable, detach and remove the alternator heat shield.

8 Where applicable, detach and remove the phase terminal and the splash cover.

9 Supporting the weight of the alternator from underneath, unscrew and remove the mounting bolts. Lower the alternator; noting the connections, detach the wiring and remove the alternator from the vehicle (see illustration).

Alternator with flat "polyvee" belt drive and automatic adjustment

10 Undo the retaining nuts, and remove the drivebelt guard.

11 Fit a ring spanner onto the drivebelt tensioner, and rotate it clockwise to loosen off the tension from the drivebelt. Note the routing of the drivebelt, then disengage the belt from the pulleys and remove it.

12 Remove the bottom guard from the radiator. This is secured in position by clips or pop-rivets. In the latter instance, it will be necessary to carefully drill the rivets out in order to remove the guard.

13 Position a jack under the radiator support bracket. The bracket must be partially lowered on the right-hand side, and although the coolant hoses should be able to take the weight and strain of the radiator assembly and bracket, the jack will prevent the possibility of an older hose splitting.

14 Unscrew and remove the radiator support bracket retaining bolts on the right-hand side, then loosen off (but do not remove) the securing bolts on the left-hand side.

15 Unscrew and remove the alternator retaining bolts. Withdraw the alternator from its mounting bracket, then lower the radiator/support bracket just enough to allow the alternator to be removed.

Refitting

16 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Refit the drivebelt, and ensure that it is correctly re-routed around the pulleys. Adjust the tension of the drivebelt (according to type) as described in Chapter 1.

14 Alternator brushes and voltage regulator - renewal



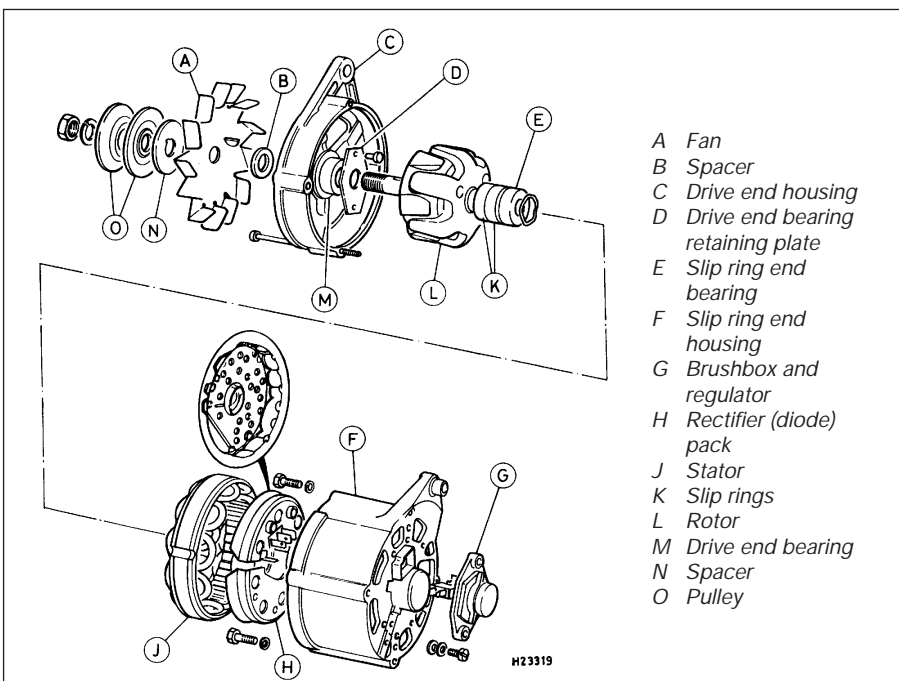
1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Remove the alternator from the vehicle as described in the previous Section.

Bosch K1-55A and K1-70A

3 Remove the two screws securing the combined brush box/regulator unit, and withdraw the assembly from the rear of the alternator (see illustrations).

4 Check the brush lengths (see illustration). If either is less than, or close to, the minimum specified length, renew them by unsoldering



14.3A Exploded view of the Bosch K1-55A and K1-70A alternators

- A Fan
- B Spacer
- C Drive end housing
- D Drive end bearing retaining plate
- E Slip ring end bearing
- F Slip ring end housing
- G Brushbox and regulator
- H Rectifier (diode) pack
- J Stator
- K Slip rings
- L Rotor
- M Drive end bearing
- N Spacer
- O Pulley



14.3B Undo the retaining screw and ...



14.3C ... withdraw the brush box/regulator unit (Bosch K1 alternator)



14.4 Measuring the brush lengths (Bosch K1 alternator)



14.7 Remove the three screws, and withdraw the plastic end cover (Bosch NC alternator)



14.9 Remove the regulator/brush holder from the end frame (Bosch NC alternator)

the brush wiring connectors and withdrawing the brushes and their springs.

5 Clean the slip rings with a solvent-

moistened cloth, then check for signs of scoring, burning or severe pitting. If evident, the slip rings should be attended to by an automobile electrician.

6 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

Bosch NC 14V 60-90A

7 Remove the three screws, and withdraw the plastic end cover (see illustration).

8 Remove the two voltage regulator/brush holder mounting screws.

9 Remove the regulator/brush holder from the end frame (see illustration).

10 Measure the exposed length of each brush, and compare it to the minimum length listed in this Chapter's Specifications. If the length of either brush is less than the specified minimum, renew the assembly.

11 Make sure that each brush moves smoothly in the brush holder.

12 Check that the slip rings - the ring of copper on which each brush bears - are clean. Wipe them with a solvent-moistened cloth; if either appears scored or blackened, take the alternator to a repair specialist for advice.

13 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

Magneti-Marelli

14 Remove the three screws securing the regulator/brush box unit on the rear face of the alternator, partially withdraw the assembly, detach the field connector, and remove the unit from the alternator (see illustrations).

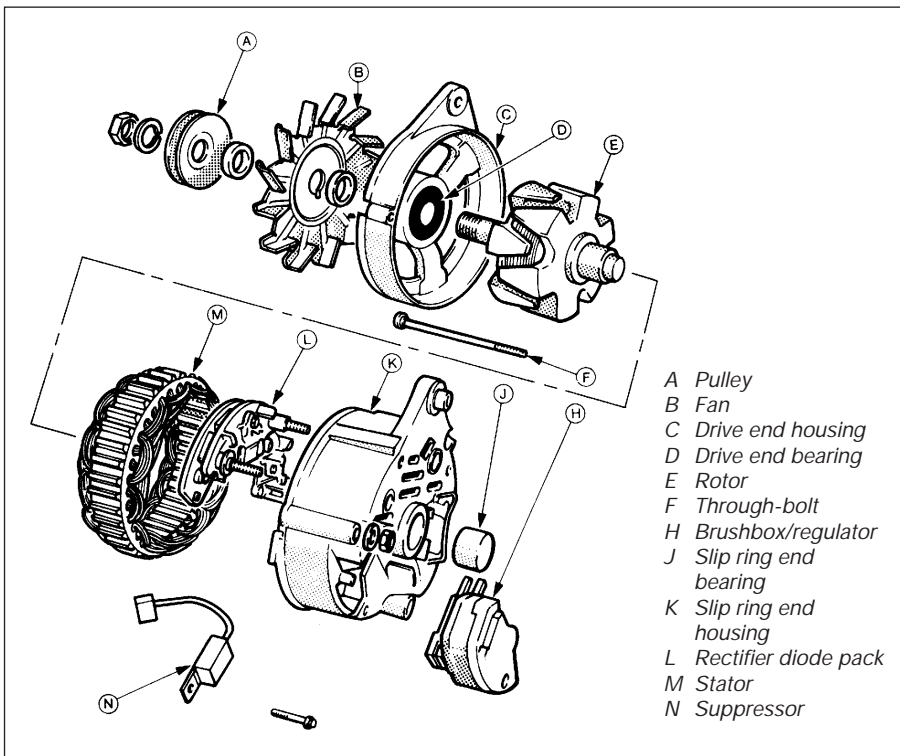
15 If the brushes are worn beyond the minimum allowable length specified, a new regulator and brush box unit must be fitted; the brushes are not available separately.

16 Clean the slip rings with a solvent-moistened cloth, then check for signs of scoring, burning or severe pitting. If evident, the slip rings should be attended to by an automobile electrician.

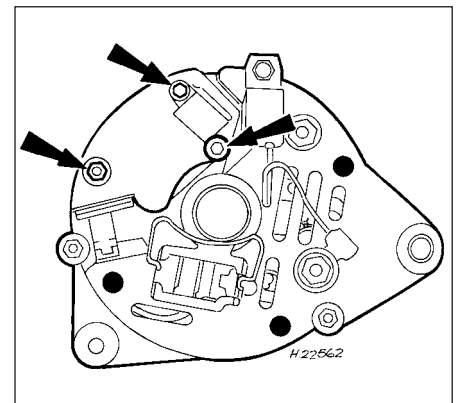
17 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

Mitsubishi

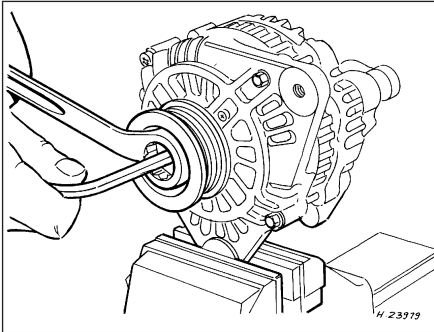
18 Hold the pulley nut stationary using an 8 mm Allen key, unscrew the pulley nut and remove the washer (see illustration).



14.14A Exploded view of the Magneti-Marelli alternator



14.14B Regulator/brush box retaining screws on the Magneti-Marelli alternator



14.18 Pulley nut removal on the Mitsubishi alternator

19 Withdraw the pulley, cooling fan, spacer and dust shield from the rotor shaft.

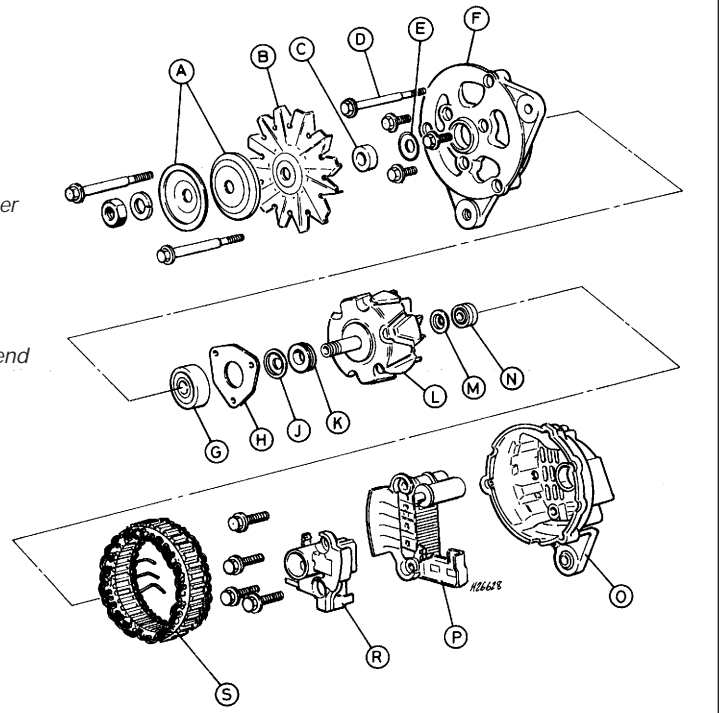
20 Mark the relative fitted positions of the front housing, stator and rear housing (to ensure correct re-alignment when reassembling). Unscrew the through-bolts and remove the front housing from the rotor shaft, followed by the dust seal and the thin spacer (see illustrations).

21 Remove the rotor from the rear housing and the stator. If difficulty is experienced, heat the rear housing with a 200-watt soldering iron for three or four minutes (see illustration).

22 Unbolt the rectifier/brush box and stator assembly from the rear housing (see illustration).

23 Unsolder the stator and brush box from the rectifier, using the very minimum of heat. Use a pair of pliers as a heat sink to reduce

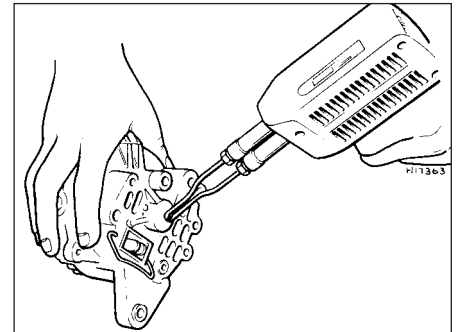
- A Pulley
- B Fan
- C Thick spacer
- D Through-bolt
- E Dust shield
- F Drive end unit
- G Bearing
- H Bearing retainer
- J Dust cap
- K Thin spacer
- L Rotor
- M Seal
- N Bearing
- O Commutator end
- P Diode pack
- R Brush box
- S Stator



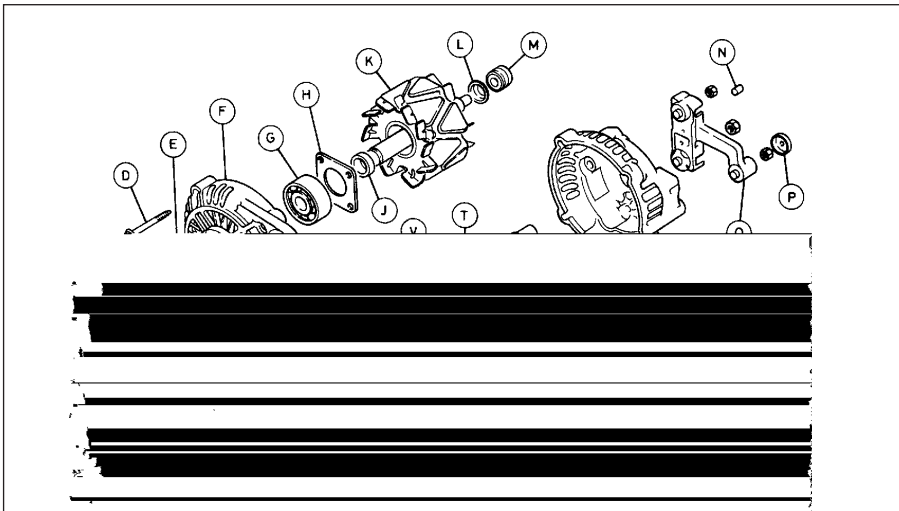
14.20A Exploded view of the Mitsubishi A5T alternator

the heat transference to the diodes (overheating may cause diode failure).

24 Renew the brushes if they are worn down to, or beyond, the minimum specified length. Unsolder the brush wires at the points

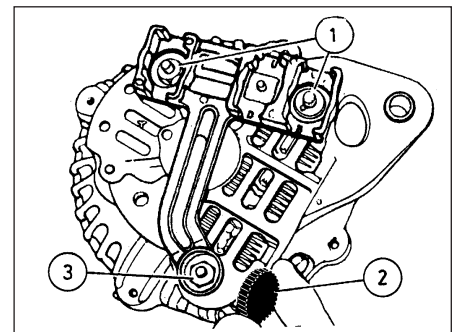


14.21 Using a soldering iron to heat the slip ring end housing for removal of the rotor from the rear housing on the Mitsubishi alternator

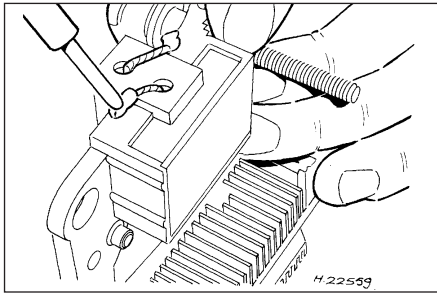


14.20B Exploded view of the AOO2T Mitsubishi alternator

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| A Pulley nut | J Spacer | S Rectifier |
| B Spring washer | K Rotor | T Dust cover |
| C Pulley | L Spacer | V Regulator |
| D Through-bolt | M Slip ring end bearing | W Brush spring |
| E Retainer plate screw | N Plug | X Brush |
| F Drive end housing | P Cap | Y Regulator screw |
| G Bearing | Q Terminal insulator | Z Stator |
| H Bearing retaining plate | R Slip ring end housing | |



14.22 Rectifier/brush box (1) and regulator unit (3) retaining nuts on the Mitsubishi alternator. Note that cap (2) covers the regulator nut



14.24A Unsoldering a brush wire on a Mitsubishi alternator

indicated (see illustration), then solder the new brush leads so that the wear limit line projects 2 to 3 mm from the end of the holder (see illustration).

25 Clean the slip rings with a solvent-moistened cloth, then check for signs of scoring, burning or severe pitting. If evident, the slip rings should be attended to by an automobile electrician.

26 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Insert a piece of wire through the access hole in the rear housing to hold the brushes in the retracted position as the rotor is refitted (see illustration). Do not forget to release the brushes when assembled.

15 Starting system - general information and precautions

General information

The sole function of the starting system is to turn over the engine quickly enough to allow it to start.

The starting system consists of the battery, the starter motor, the starter solenoid, and the wires connecting them. The solenoid is mounted directly on the starter motor.

When the ignition key is turned to position "III", the starter solenoid is actuated through the starter control circuit. The starter solenoid then connects the battery to the starter. The battery supplies the electrical energy to the starter motor, which does the actual work of cranking the engine, via the ring gear on the flywheel/driveplate.

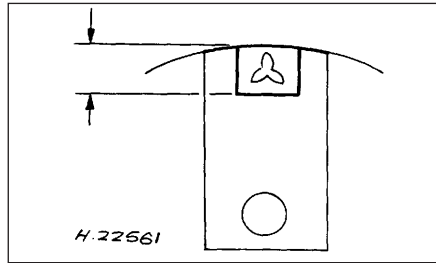
The starter motor on a vehicle equipped with automatic transmission can be operated only when the selector lever is in Park or Neutral ("P" or "N").

If the alarm system is armed or activated, the starter motor cannot be operated. The same applies with the engine immobiliser system (where fitted).

Precautions

Always observe the following precautions when working on the starting system:

- a) *Excessive cranking of the starter motor can overheat it, and cause serious damage. Never operate the starter motor for more than 15 seconds at a time without pausing*



14.24B Fitted position of new brush on a Mitsubishi alternator

to allow it to cool for at least two minutes. Excessive starter operation will also risk unburned fuel collecting in the catalytic converter's element (where applicable), causing it to overheat when the engine does start (see Chapter 6).

- b) *The starter is connected directly to the battery, and could arc or cause a fire if mishandled, overloaded or shorted-out.*
- c) *Always detach the lead from the negative terminal of the battery before working on the starting system (see Section 1).*

16 Starting system - testing

Note: *Before diagnosing starter problems, make sure that the battery is fully-charged, and ensure that the alarm/engine immobiliser system is not activated.*

1 If the starter motor does not turn at all when the switch is operated, make sure that, on automatic transmission models, the selector lever is in Park or Neutral ("P" or "N").

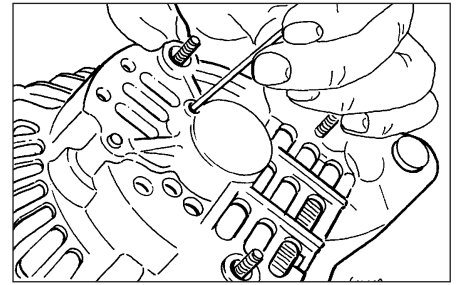
2 Make sure that the battery is fully-charged, and that all leads, both at the battery and starter solenoid terminals, are clean and secure.

3 If the starter motor spins but the engine is not cranking, the overrunning clutch or (when applicable) the reduction gears in the starter motor may be slipping, in which case the starter motor must be overhauled or renewed. (Other possibilities are that the starter motor mounting bolts are very loose, or that teeth are missing from the flywheel/driveplate ring gear.)

4 If, when the switch is actuated, the starter motor does not operate at all but the solenoid clicks, then the problem lies with either the battery, the main solenoid contacts, or the starter motor itself (or the engine is seized).

5 If the solenoid plunger cannot be heard to click when the switch is actuated, the battery is faulty, there is a fault in the circuit, or the solenoid itself is defective.

6 To check the solenoid, connect a fused jumper lead between the battery (+) and the ignition switch terminal (the small terminal) on the solenoid. If the starter motor now operates, the solenoid is OK, and the problem is in the ignition switch, selector lever position



14.26 Use a length of wire rod to hold brushes in the retracted position when reassembling the rotor to the housing on the Mitsubishi alternator

sensor (automatic transmission) or in the wiring.

7 If the starter motor still does not operate, remove it (see Section 17). The brushes and commutator may be checked (see Section 18), but if the fault persists, the motor should be renewed, or taken to an auto-electrician for testing and repair.

8 If the starter motor cranks the engine at an abnormally-slow speed, first make sure that the battery is charged, and that all terminal connections are tight. If the engine is partially seized, or has the wrong viscosity oil in it, it will crank slowly.

9 If the engine is known to be OK, and with the correct viscosity oil, but the cranking speed is still slow, the solenoid contacts are burned, the motor is faulty, or there is a poor internal connection.

17 Starter motor - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Section 1).

2 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. If the engine has been recently run, take care against burning yourself on the exhaust system during the following operations.

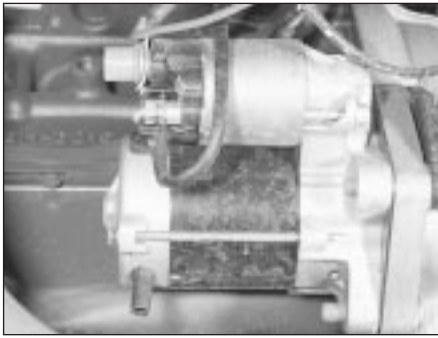
3 Undo the two retaining nuts, and remove the starter motor heat shield (where fitted).

4 Prise free the cap, if fitted, then unscrew the nuts to disconnect the wiring from the starter/solenoid terminals. Where applicable, disconnect the oxygen sensor wiring multi-plug from the locating bracket (see illustrations).

5 Unscrew and remove the starter motor retaining bolts at the transmission/clutch housing and, where applicable, also unbolt and detach the support bracket. Withdraw the starter motor from its mounting, and remove it from the vehicle (see illustrations).

Refitting

6 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque. Ensure that the wiring is securely reconnected to the starter motor (and solenoid) and is routed clear of the exhaust downpipe.



17.4A Starter motor and wiring connections on an HCS engine



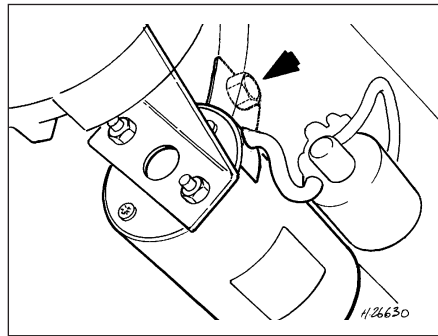
17.4B Starter motor and wiring connections on a CVH engine



17.4C Starter motor and wiring connections on a Zetec engine



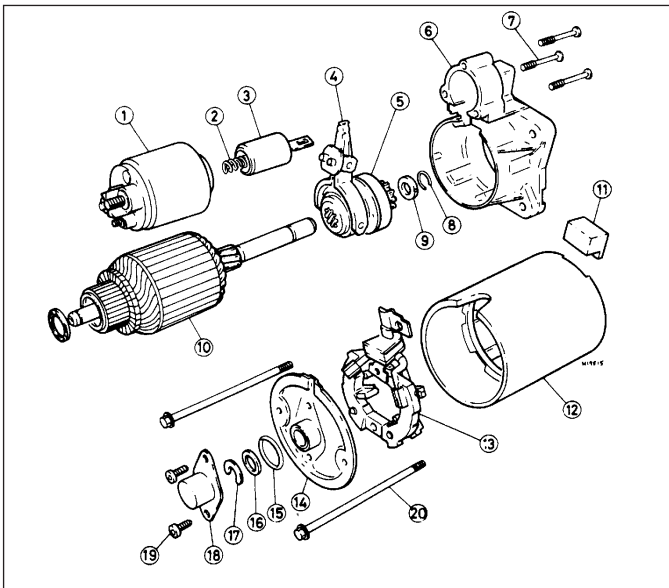
17.4D Oxygen sensor wiring multi-plug connector and location bracket



17.5A Starter motor support bracket bolt

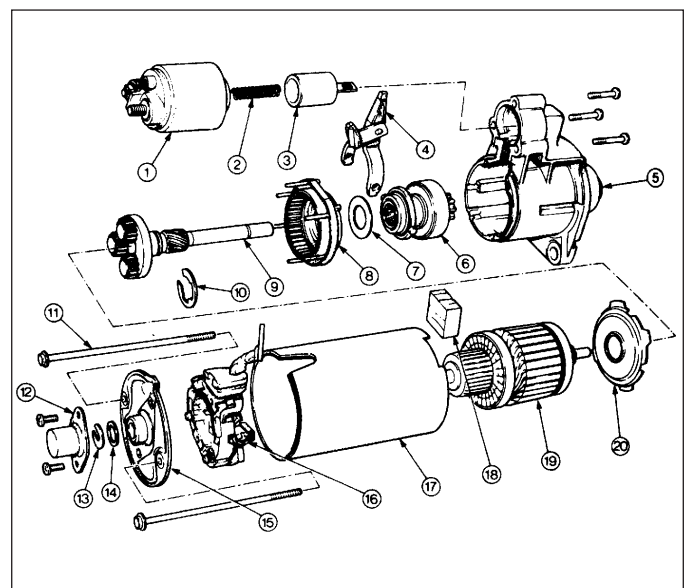


17.5B Starter motor removal (CVH engine shown)



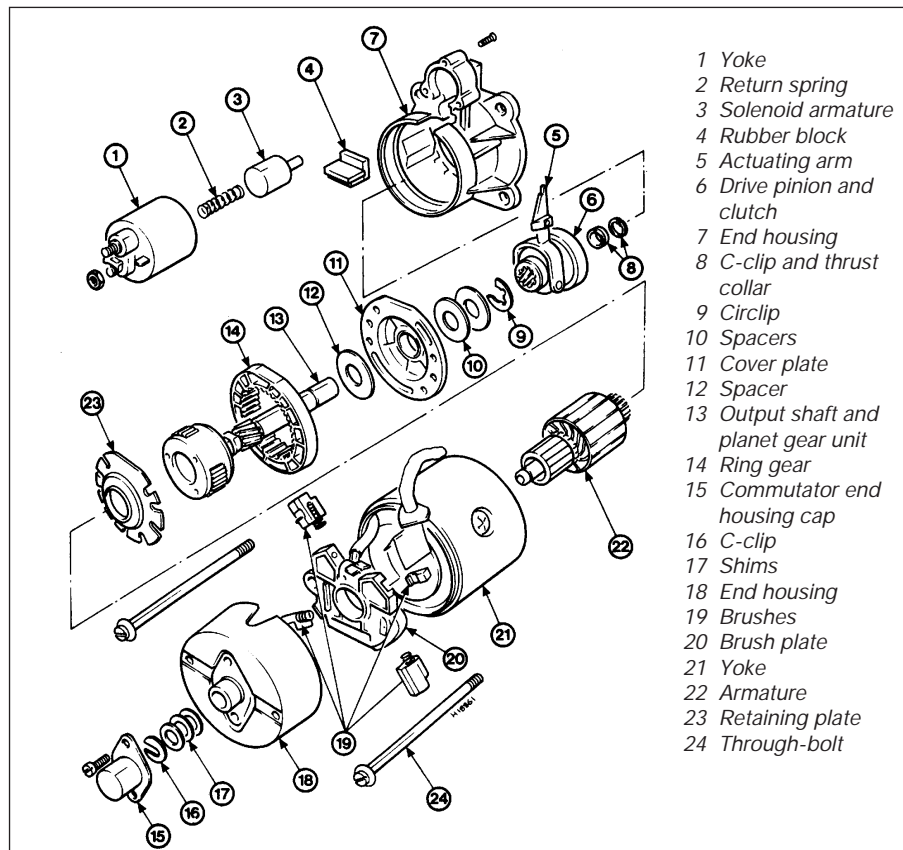
18.2A Exploded view of the Bosch DM starter motor

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 Solenoid yoke | 11 Rubber block |
| 2 Return spring | 12 Yoke |
| 3 Solenoid armature | 13 Brush plate |
| 4 Actuating arm | 14 Commutator end plate |
| 5 Drive pinion and clutch unit | 15 Seal |
| 6 Drive end housing | 16 Shim |
| 7 Solenoid retaining screws | 17 C-clip |
| 8 C-clip | 18 Commutator end plate cap |
| 9 Thrust collar | 19 Securing screw |
| 10 Armature | 20 Through-bolt |



18.2B Exploded view of the Bosch DW starter motor

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Yoke | 11 Through-bolt |
| 2 Return spring | 12 Cap |
| 3 Solenoid armature | 13 C-clip |
| 4 Actuating arm | 14 Shim |
| 5 Drive end housing | 15 Commutator endplate |
| 6 Drive pinion and clutch | 16 Brush plate |
| 7 Spacer | 17 Yoke |
| 8 Ring gear and carrier | 18 Rubber block |
| 9 Output shaft and planet gear unit | 19 Armature |
| 10 Circlip | 20 Retaining plate |



18.2C Exploded view of the Bosch EV starter motor

18 Starter motor - brush renewal



1 Remove the starter motor from the vehicle as described in Section 17.

Bosch

2 Undo the two retaining screws and remove the end cap (see illustrations).

3 Wipe free the grease from the end of the armature shaft, then prise free and remove the C-clip from the shaft groove. Depending on the type fitted, remove the washer/spacer(s) (see illustration).

4 Unscrew and remove the two through-

bolts, then remove the commutator end plate/housing from the starter motor (see illustration).

5 On the Bosch D-type starter motor, disconnect the brush link lead from its terminal stud (see illustration).

6 Withdraw the brush plate assembly (taking care not to damage the terminal brushes), then release the brushes from their holders in the brush plate.

7 Clean and inspect the brush assemblies. If the brushes have worn beyond (or down to) the specified minimum length, they must be renewed as a set. In the case of the D-type motor, the complete brush plate unit will have to be renewed. To renew the brushes on the other types, the brush leads must be



18.2D Remove the starter motor end cap (Bosch starter motor)



18.3 Remove the C-clip and any washers (Bosch starter motor)

unsoldered from the brush plate terminals, and the new brush leads soldered in their place.

8 Prior to refitting the brushes, check the condition of the commutator face on which they run. Wipe the commutator with a solvent-moistened cloth. If the commutator is dirty, it may be cleaned with fine glass paper, then wiped with the cloth.

9 Fit the new brushes using a reversal of the removal procedure. To ease fitting of the brush assembly over the end of the commutator, press the brushes back into their holders, and insert a suitable socket or tube to retain them. Align the socket with the end of the commutator, and slide the brush assembly from the socket onto the commutator and into position as shown (see illustration). Make sure that the brushes move freely in their holders.



18.4 Remove the commutator endplate (Bosch starter motor)



18.5 Detach the brush link lead (Bosch D-type starter motor)



18.9 Brush plate unit assembled over a socket with the same outside diameter as the commutator to ease assembly

Magneti-Marelli

10 Undo the two retaining screws, and remove the end cap and seal (see illustration).

11 Wipe free the grease from the end of the armature shaft, then prise free and remove the C-clip from the shaft groove. Remove the spacer(s).

12 Unscrew the retaining nut, and detach the connecting link from the solenoid.

13 Undo the two retaining screws, and withdraw the solenoid yoke from the drive end housing. Lift it upwards, and disengage the solenoid armature from the actuation lever in the end housing.

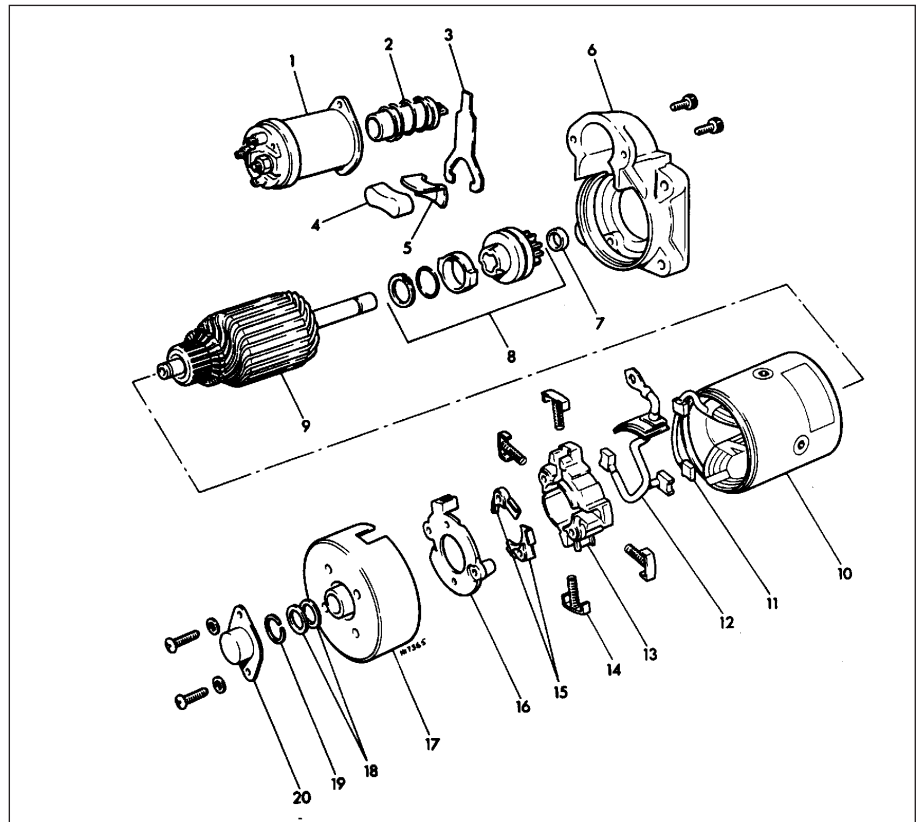
14 Unscrew and remove the two through-bolts, then remove the commutator end housing from the yoke and armature unit.

15 Detach the brush housing insulator, and withdraw the brushes from the housing (see illustration).

16 If the brushes have worn down to, or beyond, the minimum length specified, they must be renewed as a set. To renew them, cut their leads at the mid-point, and make a secure soldered joint when connecting the new brushes.

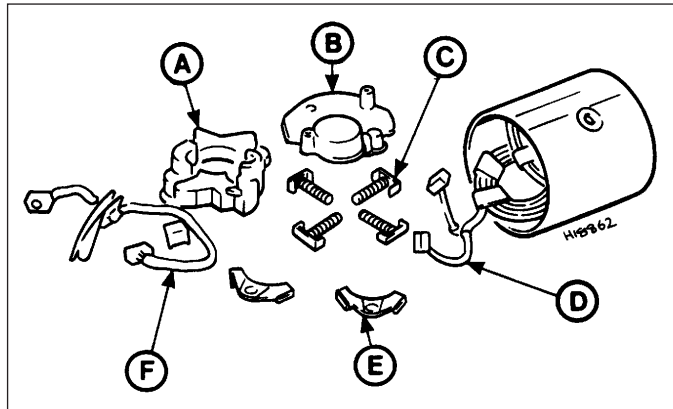
17 Prior to refitting the brushes, check the condition of the commutator face on which they run. Wipe the commutator with a solvent-moistened cloth. If the commutator is dirty, it may be cleaned with fine glass paper, then wiped with the cloth.

18 Fit the new brushes, and reassemble the starter motor using a reversal of the removal procedure. Make sure that the brushes move freely in their holders. When fitting the armature unit to the yoke, engage the actuating arm in the drive end housing together with the plastic bracket (locates in the notch in the yoke face) and rubber block. Ensure that the drive end



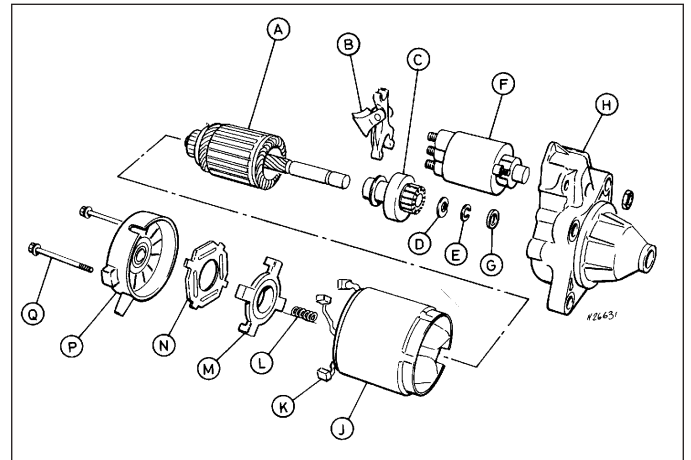
18.10 Exploded view of the Magneti-Marelli starter motor

- | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Yoke | 8 Drive pinion and clutch | 15 Insulators |
| 2 Solenoid armature | 9 Armature | 16 Brush plate insulator |
| 3 Actuating arm | 10 Yoke | 17 Commutator end housing |
| 4 Rubber pad | 11 Brush | 18 Shims |
| 5 Plastic support block | 12 Brush link | 19 C-clip |
| 6 Drive end housing | 13 Brush plate | 20 Cap |
| 7 Thrust collar | 14 Brush holder and spring | |



18.15 Brush plate components - Magneti-Marelli M79 starter motor

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| A Brush plate | D Brushes |
| B Brush plate insulator | E Insulators |
| C Brush holders and springs | F Brush link |



18.19 Exploded view of the Nippondenso starter motor

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| A Armature | F Solenoid | M Brush box |
| B Actuating lever | G Upper thrust collar | N Brush box insulator |
| C Roller | H Drive end housing | P Commutator end plate |
| D Lower thrust collar | J Main casing | Q Through-bolts |
| E C-clip | K Brush | |
| | L Brush spring | |

5•14 Engine electrical systems

housing is correctly aligned before fully tightening the retaining screws.

Nippondenso

19 Unscrew the two through-bolts, and withdraw the commutator end plate from the main casing (**see illustration**).

20 Remove the brush box insulator and the brush box.

21 If the brushes have worn down to or beyond the minimum length specified, they must be renewed as a set. To renew them, cut their leads at the mid-point, and make a secure soldered joint when connecting the new brushes.

22 Prior to refitting the brushes, check the condition of the commutator face on which they run. Wipe the commutator with a solvent-

moistened cloth. If the commutator is dirty, it may be cleaned with fine glass paper, then wiped with the cloth.






23 Make sure that the brushes move freely in their holders, then reassemble the brush box, insulator and the commutator end plate. Ensure that the rubber block engages with the cut-out in the end plate, then refit the through-bolts to secure.

Chapter 6 Emissions control systems

Contents

Catalytic converter - general information and checking	8	Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system	7
Catalytic converter - removal and refitting	See Chapter 4	Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system checking and filter cleaning	See Chapter 1
Electronic control systems - description and precautions	2	Pulse-air system - general information, checking and component renewal	6
Engine compartment wiring check	See Chapter 1	Self-diagnosis system - general information	3
Evaporative emissions control (EVAP) system	5	Underbonnet hose check	See Chapter 1
Exhaust system check	See Chapter 1		
General information	1		
Information sensors - general information, testing, removal and refitting	4		

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

Specifications

Crankshaft speed/position sensor

Resistance	200 to 450 ohms
------------	-----------------

Camshaft position sensor

Resistance	200 to 900 ohms
------------	-----------------

Inlet air temperature sensor

Resistance:	
At 0°C	89 to 102 kilohms
At 20°C	35 to 40 kilohms
At 100°C	1.9 to 2.5 kilohms
At 120°C	1.0 to 1.4 kilohms

Throttle position sensor

Resistance - see text	400 to 6000 ohms
-----------------------	------------------

Power steering pressure switch

Resistance:	
Contacts open	Infinite resistance
Contacts closed	0 to 2.5 ohms

Charcoal canister-purge solenoid valve

Resistance	50 to 120 ohms
------------	----------------

Pulse-air solenoid valve

Resistance	50 to 120 ohms
------------	----------------

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Camshaft position sensor screw	18 to 23	13 to 17
Inlet air temperature sensor	23	17
Oxygen sensor	60	44
Pulse-air system piping-to-exhaust manifold sleeve nuts	32	24

1 General information

To minimise pollution of the atmosphere from incompletely-burned and evaporating gases, and to maintain good driveability and fuel economy, a number of emissions control systems are used on these vehicles. They include the following:

- The engine management system (comprising both fuel and ignition sub-systems) itself.*
- Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system.*
- Evaporative Emissions Control (EVAP) system.*
- Pulse-air system.*
- Catalytic converter.*

The Sections of this Chapter include general descriptions, checking procedures within the scope of the home mechanic, and component renewal procedures (when possible) for each of the systems listed above.

Before assuming an emissions control system is malfunctioning, check the fuel and ignition systems carefully (see Chapters 4 and 5). The diagnosis of some emissions control devices requires specialised tools, equipment and training. If checking and servicing become too difficult, or if a procedure is beyond the scope of your skills, consult your dealer service department or other specialist.

This doesn't mean, however, that emissions control systems are particularly difficult to maintain and repair. You can quickly and easily perform many checks, and do most of

the regular maintenance, at home with common tune-up and hand tools. **Note:** *The most frequent cause of emissions problems is simply a loose or broken electrical connector or vacuum hose, so always check the electrical connectors and vacuum hoses first.*

Pay close attention to any special precautions outlined in this Chapter. It should be noted that the illustrations of the various systems may not exactly match the system installed on your vehicle, due to changes made by the manufacturer during production or from year-to-year.

Vehicles sold in some areas will carry a Vehicle Emissions Control Information (VECI) label, and a vacuum hose diagram located in the engine compartment. These contain important specifications and setting procedures for the various emissions control systems, with the vacuum hose diagram identifying emissions control components. When servicing the engine or emissions systems, the VECI label in your particular vehicle should always be checked for the latest information for your vehicle.

2 Electronic control systems - description and precautions

Description

The sophistication of the emissions control systems fitted, and hence their method of electronic control, is dependant on the emissions level that the engine has been designed to meet. The engines covered in this

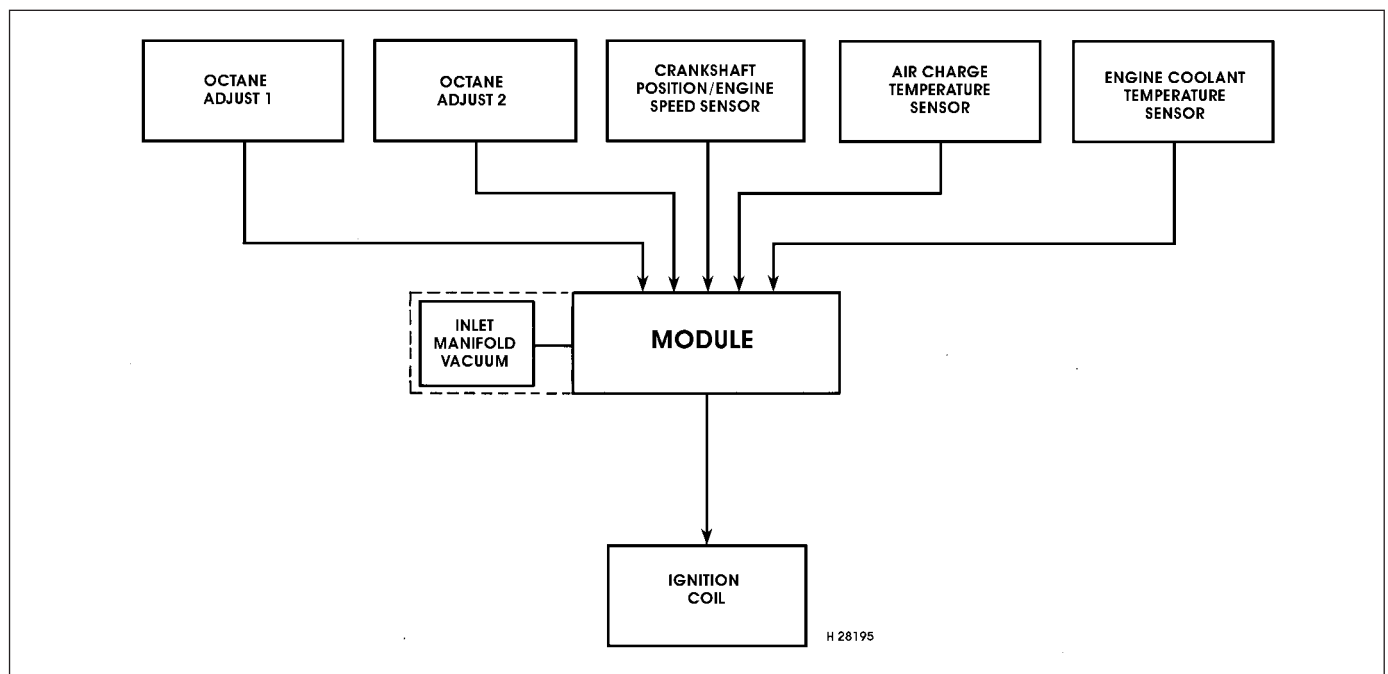
manual are all designed to meet one of the three current emissions levels, namely, 15.04, NEEC 5th, and US '83. The European 15.04 is the least stringent of the three, and its requirements are met by carburettor engines having engine management systems controlling the ignition-related components only. Some of the additional emissions systems described in this Chapter may also be fitted. The US '83 regulations are the most stringent. To meet these, an engine will need a full engine management system, electronic fuel injection (to allow precise control of the air/fuel mixture ratio) a regulated catalytic converter, and one or more of the additional emissions systems described in this Chapter.

On carburettor engines, the exhaust emissions requirements are met mainly by precise control of the ignition timing, by means of an ignition module receiving inputs from sensors monitoring various engine parameters, and additionally by the use of a pulse-air system and unregulated catalytic converter (**see illustrations**). The ignition module fitted varies according to engine type, but all operate in a similar fashion. Further information on ignition module types and their functions will be found in Chapter 5.

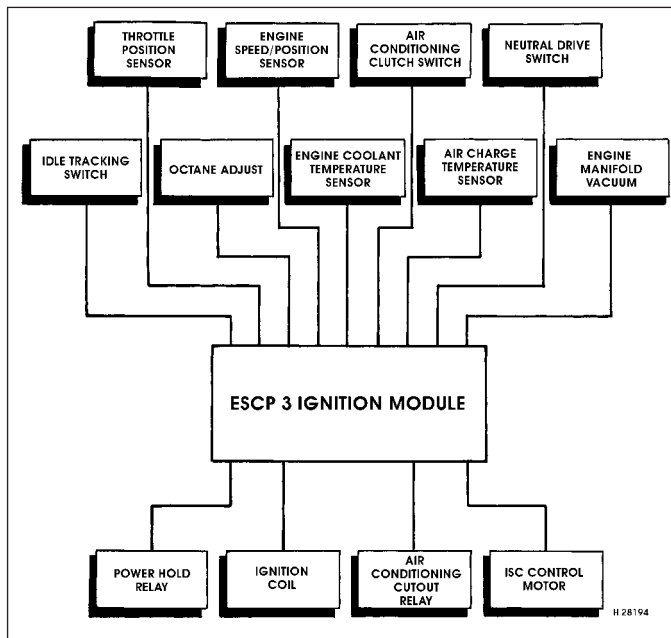
On fuel-injected engines, a highly-sophisticated engine management system is fitted, controlled by the EEC-IV microcomputer in conjunction with an ignition module.

The EEC-IV (Electronic Engine Control, fourth-generation) engine management system controls fuel injection by means of a microcomputer or ECU (Electronic Control Unit) (**see illustrations**).

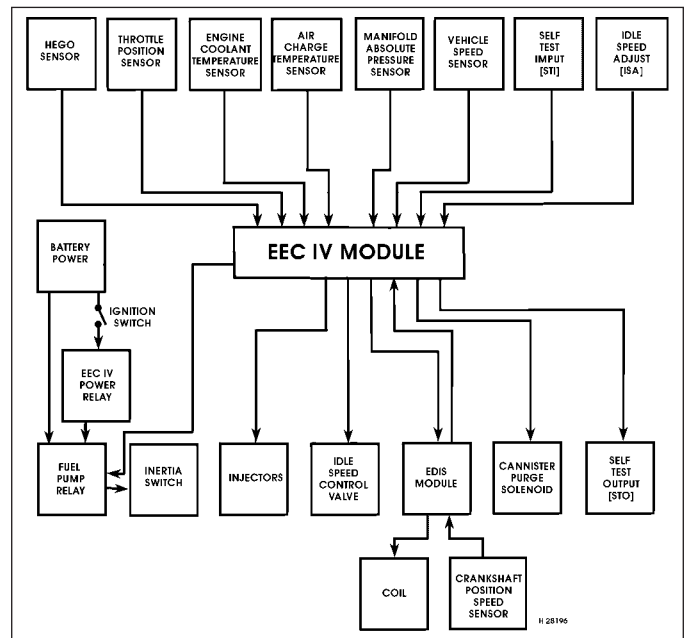
The ECU receives signals from various sensors, which monitor changing engine



2.2A Diagram of engine monitoring sensors and actuators used on 1.3 litre carburettor engine models



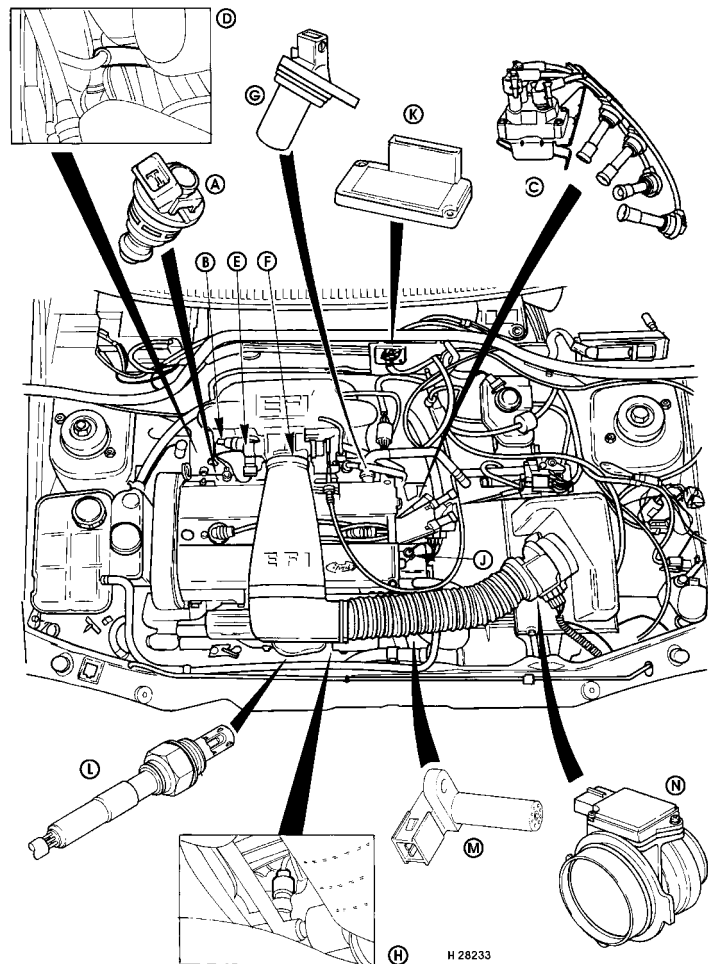
2.2B Diagram of engine monitoring sensors and actuators used on 1.4 and 1.6 litre carburettor engine models



2.4A Diagram of engine monitoring sensors and actuators used on 1.6 litre EFI fuel injected engine models to US '83 emission standard

2.4B Layout of engine management system components and sensors on Zetec engine models

- A Fuel injector (1 of 4)
- B Idle speed control valve
- C Ignition coil and HT leads
- D Charcoal canister-purge solenoid valve
- E Throttle position sensor
- F Inlet air temperature sensor
- G Camshaft position sensor
- H Vehicle speed sensor
- J Coolant temperature sensor
- K E-DIS ignition module/electronic vacuum regulator
- L Oxygen sensor
- M Crankshaft position sensor
- N Air mass meter



operating conditions such as inlet air mass (ie, inlet air volume and temperature), coolant temperature, engine speed, acceleration/deceleration, exhaust oxygen content, etc. These signals are used by the ECU to determine the correct injection duration.

The system is analogous to the central nervous system in the human body - the sensors (nerve endings) constantly relay signals to the ECU (brain), which processes the data and, if necessary, sends out a command to change the operating parameters of the engine (body) by means of the actuators (muscles).

Here's a specific example of how one portion of this system operates. An oxygen sensor, located in the exhaust downpipe, constantly monitors the oxygen content of the exhaust gas. If the percentage of oxygen in the exhaust gas is incorrect, an electrical signal is sent to the ECU. The ECU processes this information, and then sends a command to the fuel injection system, telling it to change the air/fuel mixture; the end result is an air/fuel mixture ratio which is constantly maintained at a predetermined ratio, regardless of driving conditions. This happens in a fraction of a second, and goes on almost all the time while the engine is running - the exceptions are that the ECU cuts out the system and runs the engine on values pre-programmed ("mapped") into its memory both while the oxygen sensor is reaching its normal operating temperature after the engine has been started from cold, and when the throttle is fully open for full acceleration.

In the event of a sensor malfunction, a back-up circuit will take over, to provide driveability until the problem is identified and fixed.

Precautions

- a) *Always disconnect the battery terminals - see Section 1 of Chapter 5 - before removing any of the electronic control system's electrical connectors.*
- b) *When reconnecting the battery, be particularly careful to avoid reversing the positive and negative battery leads.*
- c) *Do not subject any components of the system (especially the ECU) to severe impact during removal or installation.*
- d) *Take care when carrying out fault diagnosis. Even slight terminal contact can invalidate a testing procedure, and may damage one of the numerous transistor circuits.*
- e) *Never attempt to work on the ECU - don't test it (with any kind of test equipment), or open its cover.*
- f) *If you are inspecting electronic control system components during rainy weather, make sure that water does not enter any part. When washing the engine compartment, do not spray these parts or their electrical connectors with water - strong plastic bags should be wrapped around these components to prevent water ingress.*

3 Self-diagnosis system - general information

General

On fuel-injected engines with full engine management systems, the various components of the fuel, ignition and emissions control systems (not forgetting the same ECU's control of sub-systems such as the air conditioning and automatic transmission, where appropriate) are so closely interlinked that diagnosis of a fault in any one component is virtually impossible using traditional methods. Working on simpler systems in the past, the experienced mechanic may well have been able to use personal skill and knowledge immediately to pinpoint the cause of a fault, or quickly to isolate the fault, by elimination; however, with an engine management system integrated to this degree, this is not likely to be possible in most instances, because of the number of symptoms that could arise from even a minor fault.

So that the causes of faults can be quickly and accurately traced and rectified, the ECU is provided with a built-in self-diagnosis facility, which detects malfunctions in the system's components. When a fault occurs, three things happen: the ECU identifies the fault, stores a corresponding code in its memory, and (in most cases) runs the system using back-up values pre-programmed ("mapped") into its memory; some form of driveability is thus maintained, to enable the vehicle to be driven to a garage for attention.

Any faults that may have occurred are indicated in the form of two- or three-digit codes when the system is connected (via the built-in diagnosis or self-test connectors, as appropriate) to special diagnostic equipment - this points the user in the direction of the faulty circuit, so that further tests can pinpoint the exact location of the fault. Obviously, to be able to interpret these fault codes accurately requires special diagnostic test equipment and an understanding of its use, which puts this phase of the diagnostic procedure outside the scope of the DIY enthusiast. There are, however, a number of checks that can be performed without sophisticated equipment, and in many cases these alone will find the cause of the trouble.

Given below is a procedure that should be followed to trace an engine management system fault from scratch. Most of the operations described apply equally to carburettor models with minimal emissions control, right through to fuel-injected models with full engine management. Read through the procedure and decide how much you can attempt, depending on your skill and experience and the equipment available to you, or whether it would be simpler to have the vehicle attended to by your local Ford

dealer. If you are concerned about the apparent complexity of the system, however, remember that the following system checks require nothing but care, patience and a few minor items of equipment, and may well eliminate the majority of faults.

Initial system checks

Note: *When carrying out these checks to trace a fault, remember that if the fault has appeared only a short time after any part of the vehicle has been serviced or overhauled, the first place to check is where that work was carried out, however unrelated it may appear, to ensure that no carelessly-refitted components are causing the problem.*

If you are tracing the cause of a "partial" engine fault, such as lack of performance, in addition to the checks outlined below, check the compression pressures (see Parts A, B or C of Chapter 2, as applicable) and bear in mind the possibility that one of the hydraulic tappets (where applicable) might be faulty, producing an incorrect valve clearance. Check also that the fuel filter has been renewed at the recommended intervals.

If the system appears completely dead, remember the possibility that the alarm/immobiliser system may be responsible.

1 On fuel-injected models, the first check for anyone without special test equipment is to switch on the ignition, and to listen for the fuel pump (the sound of an electric motor running, audible from beneath the rear seats); assuming there is sufficient fuel in the tank, the pump should start and run for approximately one or two seconds, then stop, each time the ignition is switched on. If the pump runs continuously all the time the ignition is switched on, the electronic control system is running in the back-up (or "limp-home") mode, referred to by Ford as "Limited Operation Strategy" (LOS). This almost certainly indicates a fault in the ECU itself, and the vehicle should therefore be taken to a Ford dealer for a full test of the complete system using the correct diagnostic equipment; do not waste time trying to test the system without such facilities.

2 If the fuel pump is working correctly (or not at all), a considerable amount of fault diagnosis is still possible without special test equipment. Start the checking procedure as follows.

3 Open the bonnet and check the condition of the battery connections - remake the connections or renew the leads if a fault is found (see Chapter 5, Section 1 before disconnecting the battery). Use the same techniques to ensure that all earth points in the engine compartment provide good electrical contact through clean, metal-to-metal joints, and that all are securely fastened. Many of these earth points will be on the inner wings, and on most models, there is an earth strap from the engine or transmission to the vehicle body. Note that certain components

have their earth connection made directly through the back of the component onto its mounting surface, in which case, the component should be removed, and the mating surfaces cleaned. A smear of petroleum jelly, or some water-dispersant spray, will help to ensure a continued good connection between the cleaned surfaces.

4 Referring to the information given in Chapter 12 and in the wiring diagrams at the back of this manual, check that all fuses protecting the circuits related to the engine management system are in good condition. Fit new fuses if required; while you are there, check that all relays are securely plugged into their sockets.

5 Next work methodically around the engine compartment, checking all visible wiring, and the connections between sections of the wiring loom. What you are looking for at this stage is wiring that is obviously damaged by chafing against sharp edges, or against moving suspension/transmission components and/or the auxiliary drivebelt, by being trapped or crushed between carelessly-refitted components, or melted by being forced into contact with hot engine castings, coolant pipes, etc. In almost all cases, damage of this sort is caused in the first instance by incorrect routing on reassembly after previous work has been carried out (see the note at the beginning of this sub-Section).

6 Obviously wires can break or short together inside the insulation so that no visible evidence betrays the fault, but this usually only occurs where the wiring loom has been incorrectly routed so that it is stretched taut or kinked sharply; either of these conditions should be obvious on even a casual inspection. If this is thought to have happened and the fault proves elusive, the suspect section of wiring should be checked very carefully during the more detailed checks which follow.

7 Depending on the extent of the problem, damaged wiring may be repaired by rejoining the break or splicing-in a new length of wire, using solder to ensure a good connection, and remaking the insulation with adhesive insulating tape or heat-shrink tubing, as desired. If the damage is extensive, given the implications for the vehicle's future reliability, the best long-term answer may well be to renew that entire section of the loom, however expensive this may appear.

8 When the actual damage has been repaired, ensure that the wiring loom is re-routed correctly, so that it is clear of other components, is not stretched or kinked, and is secured out of harm's way using the plastic clips, guides and ties provided.

9 Check all electrical connectors, ensuring that they are clean, securely fastened, and that each is locked by its plastic tabs or wire clip, as appropriate. If any connector shows external signs of corrosion (accumulations of white or green deposits, or streaks of "rust"), or if any is thought to be dirty, it must be unplugged and cleaned using electrical contact cleaner. If the connector pins are

severely corroded, the connector must be renewed; note that this may mean the renewal of that entire section of the loom - see your local Ford dealer for details.

10 If the cleaner completely removes the corrosion to leave the connector in a satisfactory condition, it would be wise to pack the connector with a suitable material which will exclude dirt and moisture, and prevent the corrosion from occurring again; a Ford dealer may be able to recommend a suitable product. **Note:** *The system's connectors use gold-plated pins, which must not be mixed with the older tin-plated types (readily identifiable from the different colour) if a component is renewed, nor must the lithium grease previously used to protect tin-plated pins be used on gold-plated connectors.*

11 Following the accompanying schematic diagrams, and working methodically around the engine compartment, check carefully that all vacuum hoses and pipes are securely fastened and correctly routed, with no signs of cracks, splits or deterioration to cause air leaks, or of hoses that are trapped, kinked, or bent sharply enough to restrict air flow. Check with particular care at all connections and sharp bends, and renew any damaged or deformed lengths of hose.

12 Working from the fuel tank, via the filter, to the carburettor or fuel rail (and including the feed and return), check the fuel lines, and renew any that are found to be leaking, trapped or kinked.

13 Check that the accelerator cable is correctly secured and adjusted; renew the cable if there is any doubt about its condition, or if it appears to be stiff or jerky in operation. Refer to the relevant Sections of Chapter 4 for further information, if required.

14 Unclip the air cleaner cover, and check that the air filter element and the crankcase ventilation system filter (where applicable) are not clogged or soaked. (A clogged air filter will obstruct the inlet air flow, causing a noticeable effect on engine performance; a clogged crankcase ventilation system filter will inhibit crankcase "breathing"). Renew or clean the filter(s) as appropriate; refer to the relevant Sections of Chapter 1 for further information, if required.

15 Start the engine and allow it to idle. **Note:** Working in the engine compartment while the engine is running requires great care if the risk of personal injury is to be avoided; among the dangers are burns from contact with hot components, or contact with moving components such as the radiator cooling fan or the auxiliary drivebelt. Refer to "Safety first!" at the front of this manual before starting, and ensure that your hands, and long hair or loose clothing, are kept well clear of hot or moving components at all times.

16 Working from the air inlet, via the air cleaner assembly and carburettor, or on fuel-injected models, the air mass meter to the throttle housing and inlet manifold (and including the various vacuum hoses and pipes

connected to these), check for air leaks. Usually, these will be revealed by sucking or hissing noises, but minor leaks may be traced by spraying a solution of soapy water on to the suspect joint; if a leak exists, it will be shown by the change in engine note and the accompanying air bubbles (or sucking-in of the liquid, depending on the pressure difference at that point). If a leak is found at any point, tighten the fastening clamp and/or renew the faulty components, as applicable.

17 Similarly, work from the cylinder head, via the manifold to the tailpipe, to check that the exhaust system is free from leaks. The simplest way of doing this, if the vehicle can be raised and supported safely and with complete security while the check is made, is to temporarily block the tailpipe while listening for the sound of escaping exhaust gases; any leak should be evident. If a leak is found at any point, tighten the fastening clamp bolts and/or nuts, renew the gasket, and/or renew the faulty section of the system, as necessary, to seal the leak.

18 It is possible to make a further check of the electrical connections by wiggling each electrical connector of the system in turn as the engine is idling; a faulty connector will be immediately evident from the engine's response as contact is broken and remade. It may be possible with some connectors to improve the contact being made. However, a faulty connector should really be renewed, to ensure the future reliability of the system (note that this may mean the renewal of that entire section of the loom - see your local Ford dealer for details).

19 Switch off the engine. If the fault is not yet identified, the next step is to check the ignition voltages, using an engine analyser with an oscilloscope - without such equipment, the only tests possible are to remove and check each spark plug in turn, to check the spark plug (HT) lead connections and resistances, and to check the connections and resistances of the ignition coil. Refer to the relevant Sections of Chapters 1 and 5.

20 The final step in these initial checks would be to use an exhaust gas analyser to measure the CO level at the exhaust tailpipe. This check cannot be made without special test equipment - see your local Ford dealer for details.

4 Information sensors - general information, testing, removal and refitting



Note: *This Section is concerned principally with the sensors which give the ECU the information it needs to control the various engine management sub-systems - for further details of those systems and their other components, refer to the relevant Chapter of this manual. Not all of the sensors listed below are fitted to all engines.*

General

ECU (Electronic Control Unit)

1 This component is the heart of the entire engine management system, controlling the fuel injection, ignition and emissions control systems. It also controls sub-systems such as the air conditioning and automatic transmission, where appropriate. Refer to Section 2 of this Chapter for an illustration of how it works.

Air mass meter

2 The air mass meter fitted to models equipped with Sequential Electronic Fuel Injection (SEFI) is based on a "hot-wire" system, sending the ECU a constantly-varying (analogue) voltage signal corresponding to the mass of air passing into the engine. Since air mass varies with temperature (cold air being denser than warm), measuring air mass provides the ECU with a very accurate means of determining the correct amount of fuel required to achieve the ideal air/fuel mixture ratio.

Crankshaft speed/position sensor

3 This is an inductive pulse generator bolted (in a separate bracket) to the cylinder block/crankcase, to scan the ridges between 36 holes machined in the inboard (right-hand) face of the flywheel/driveplate. As each ridge passes the sensor tip, a signal is generated, which is used by the ECU to determine engine speed.

4 The ridge between the 35th and 36th holes (corresponding to 90° BTDC) is missing - this step in the incoming signals is used by the ECU to determine crankshaft (ie, piston) position.

Camshaft position sensor

5 This is bolted to the rear left-hand end of the cylinder head on Zetec engines, to register with a lobe on the inlet camshaft. It functions in the same way as the crankshaft speed/position sensor, producing a series of pulses (corresponding to No 1 cylinder at 46° ATDC); this gives the ECU a reference point, to enable it to determine the firing order, and operate the injectors in the appropriate sequence.

Coolant temperature sensor

6 This component is an NTC (Negative Temperature Coefficient) thermistor - that is, a semi-conductor whose electrical resistance decreases as its temperature increases. It provides the ECU with a constantly-varying (analogue) voltage signal, corresponding to the temperature of the engine coolant. This is used to refine the calculations made by the ECU, when determining the correct amount of fuel required to achieve the ideal air/fuel mixture ratio.

Inlet air temperature sensor

7 This component is also an NTC thermistor - see the previous paragraph - providing the ECU with a signal corresponding to the temperature of air passing into the engine.

This is used to refine the calculations made by the ECU, when determining the correct amount of fuel required to achieve the ideal air/fuel mixture ratio.

Throttle position sensor

8 This is mounted on the end of the throttle valve spindle, to provide the ECU with a constantly-varying (analogue) voltage signal corresponding to the throttle opening. This allows the ECU to register the driver's input when determining the amount of fuel required by the engine.

Vehicle speed sensor

9 This component is a Hall-effect generator, mounted on the transmission's speedometer drive. It supplies the ECU with a series of pulses corresponding to the vehicle's road speed, enabling the ECU to control features such as the fuel shut-off on the overrun, and to provide information for the trip computer, adaptive damping and cruise control systems (where fitted).

Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor

10 The manifold absolute pressure sensor measures inlet manifold vacuum, and supplies this information to the ECU for calculation of engine load at any given throttle position.

Power steering pressure switch

11 This is a pressure-operated switch, screwed into the power steering system's high-pressure pipe. Its contacts are normally closed, opening when the system reaches the specified pressure - on receiving this signal, the ECU increases the idle speed, to compensate for the additional load on the engine.

Oxygen sensor

12 The oxygen sensor in the exhaust system provides the ECU with constant feedback - "closed-loop" control - which enables it to adjust the mixture to provide the best possible conditions for the catalytic converter to operate.

13 The sensor has a built-in heating element which is controlled by the ECU, in order to bring the sensor's tip to an efficient operating temperature as rapidly as possible. The sensor's tip is sensitive to oxygen, and sends the ECU a varying voltage depending on the amount of oxygen in the exhaust gases; if the intake air/fuel mixture is too rich, the sensor sends a high-voltage signal. The voltage falls as the mixture weakens. Peak conversion efficiency of all major pollutants occurs if the intake air/fuel mixture is maintained at the chemically-correct ratio for the complete combustion of petrol - 14.7 parts (by weight) of air to 1 part of fuel (the 'stoichiometric' ratio). The sensor output voltage alters in a large step at this point, the ECU using the signal change as a reference point, and correcting the intake air/fuel mixture accordingly by altering the fuel injector pulse width (injector opening time).

Air conditioning system

14 A pressure-operated switch and compressor clutch solenoid are connected to the ECU, to enable it to determine how the system is operating. The ECU can increase idle speed or switch off the system, as necessary, so that normal vehicle operation and driveability are not impaired. See Chapter 3 for further details, but note that diagnosis and repair should be left to a dealer service department or air conditioning specialist.

Testing

ECU (Electronic Control Unit)

15 Do not attempt to "test" the ECU with any kind of equipment. If it is thought to be faulty, take the vehicle to a Ford dealer for the entire electronic control system to be checked using the proper diagnostic equipment. Only if all other possibilities have been eliminated should the ECU be considered at fault, and replaced.

Air mass meter

16 Testing of this component is beyond the scope of the DIY mechanic, and should be left to a Ford dealer.

Crankshaft speed/position sensor

17 Unplug the electrical connector from the sensor.

18 Using an ohmmeter, measure the resistance between the sensor terminals. Compare this reading to the one listed in the Specifications Section at the beginning of this Chapter. If the indicated resistance is not within the specified range, renew the sensor.

19 Plug in the sensor's electrical connector on completion.

Camshaft position sensor

20 The procedure is as described in paragraphs 17 to 19 above.

Coolant temperature sensor

21 Refer to Chapter 3, Section 6.

Inlet air temperature sensor

22 Unplug the electrical connector from the sensor which is located either in the air cleaner (carburettor engines) or in the CFI unit or inlet manifold (fuel-injected engines).

23 Using an ohmmeter, measure the resistance between the sensor terminals. Depending on the temperature of the sensor tip, the resistance measured will vary, but it should be within the broad limits given in the Specifications Section of this Chapter. If the sensor's temperature is varied - by placing it in a freezer for a while, or by warming it gently - its resistance should alter accordingly.

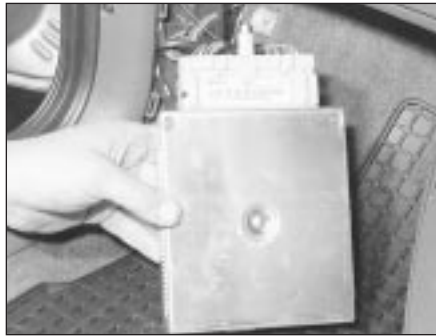
24 If the results obtained show the sensor to be faulty, renew it.

Throttle position sensor

25 Remove the air cleaner assembly or plenum chamber as necessary for access (see Chapter 4) then unplug the sensor's electrical connector.



4.35 ECU location behind the side cowl kick panel in the passenger's footwell



4.36 Release the ECU from its retaining bracket, then unscrew the retaining bolt and remove the wiring multi-plug



4.38 Disconnecting the air mass meter electrical connector

26 Using an ohmmeter, measure the resistance between the unit's terminals - first between the centre terminal and one of the outer two, then from the centre to the remaining outer terminal. The resistance should be within the limits given in the Specifications Section of this Chapter, and should alter *smoothly* as the throttle valve is moved from the fully-closed (idle speed) position to fully open and back again.

27 If the resistance measured is significantly different from the specified value, if there are any breaks in continuity, or if the reading fluctuates erratically as the throttle is operated, the potentiometer is faulty, and must be renewed.

Vehicle speed sensor

28 Testing of this component is beyond the scope of the DIY mechanic, and should be left to a Ford dealer.

Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor

29 Testing of this component is beyond the scope of the DIY mechanic, and should be left to a Ford dealer.

Power steering pressure switch

30 Unplug the electrical connector from the sensor.

31 Using an ohmmeter, measure the resistance between the switch terminals. With the engine switched off, or idling with the roadwheels in the straight-ahead position, little or no resistance should be measured. With the engine running and the steering on full-lock, the pressure increase in the system should open the switch contacts, so that infinite resistance is now measured.

32 If the results obtained show the switch to be faulty, renew it.

Oxygen sensor

33 Testing of this component can be done only by attaching special diagnostic equipment to the sensor wiring, and checking that the voltage varies from low to high values when the engine is running; *do not* attempt to "test" any part of the system with anything other than the correct test equipment. This is

beyond the scope of the DIY mechanic, and should be left to a Ford dealer.

Removal and refitting

General

34 Before disconnecting any of these components, always disconnect the battery terminals, negative (earth) lead first - see Section 1 of Chapter 5.

ECU (Electronic Control Unit)

Note: *The ECU is fragile. Take care not to drop it, or subject it to any other kind of impact. Do not subject it to extremes of temperature, or allow it to get wet.*

35 Working inside the vehicle, remove the side cowl kick panel from the front passenger's footwell to gain access to the ECU (*see illustration*).

36 Release the ECU from its retaining bracket (*see illustration*), then unscrew the retaining bolt and remove the wiring multi-plug.

37 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Air mass meter

38 Releasing its wire clip, unplug the meter's electrical connector (*see illustration*).

39 Release the clips and lift the air cleaner cover, then release the two smaller clips and detach the meter from the cover.

40 Slacken the clamp securing the meter to the inlet hose, and withdraw the meter.

41 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure. Ensure that the meter and air cleaner cover are seated correctly and securely fastened, so that there are no air leaks.

Crankshaft speed/position sensor

42 Refer to Chapter 5.

Camshaft position sensor

43 Release the fuel feed and return hoses from their clip.

44 Releasing its wire clip, unplug the sensor's electrical connector. Remove the retaining screw, and withdraw the sensor from the cylinder head; be prepared for slight oil loss (*see illustration*).

45 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- Apply petroleum jelly or clean engine oil to the sensor's sealing O-ring.
- Locate the sensor fully in the cylinder head, and wipe off any surplus lubricant before securing it.
- Tighten the screw to the specified torque wrench setting.

Coolant temperature sensor

46 Refer to Chapter 3, Section 6.

Inlet air temperature sensor

47 Remove the air cleaner assembly or air inlet ducting as necessary (refer to Chapter 4) to gain access to the sensor.

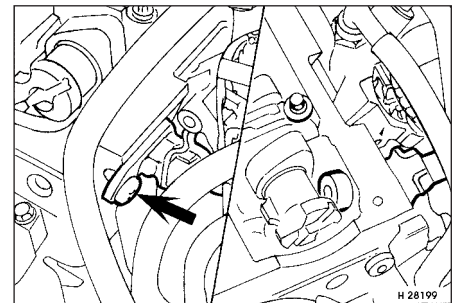
48 Releasing its clip, unplug the sensor's electrical connector, then unscrew the sensor from the CFI unit, inlet manifold, or resonator, as applicable.

49 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure. Tighten the sensor to the specified torque wrench setting; if it is overtightened, its tapered thread may crack the resonator.

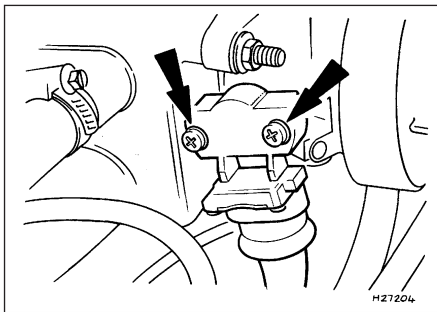
Throttle position sensor

50 Remove the air cleaner assembly, where necessary, for access (*see Chapter 4*).

51 Releasing its wire clip, unplug the potentiometer's electrical connector. Remove the retaining screws, and withdraw the unit



4.44 Camshaft position sensor location in cylinder head with retaining screw (arrowed) - cylinder head cover shown removed for clarity



4.51 Throttle position sensor securing screws (arrowed)

from the throttle housing (see illustration). Do not force the sensor's centre to rotate past its normal operating sweep; the unit will be seriously damaged.

52 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, noting the following points:

- a) Ensure that the potentiometer is correctly orientated (see illustration), by locating its centre on the D-shaped throttle shaft (throttle closed), and aligning the potentiometer body so that the bolts pass easily into the throttle housing.
- b) Tighten the screws evenly and securely (but do not overtighten them, or the potentiometer body will be cracked).

Vehicle speed sensor

53 The sensor is mounted at the base of the speedometer drive cable, and is removed with the speedometer drive pinion. Refer to the relevant Section of Chapter 7, Part A or B, as applicable.

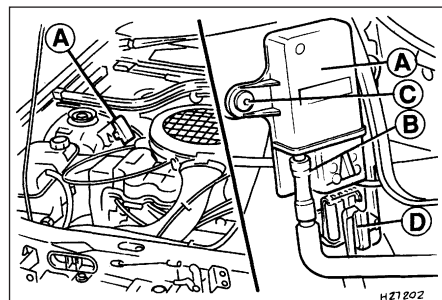
Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor

54 The sensor is located at the rear of the engine compartment, on the right-hand side (see illustration).

55 Disconnect the wiring multi-plug, and detach the vacuum hose from the base of the sensor.

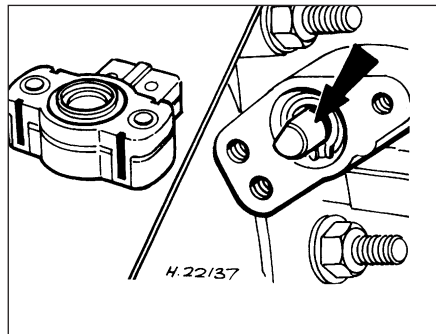
56 Undo the two retaining screws, and withdraw the sensor from its location.

57 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure.



4.54 Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor location and connections

- | | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| A MAP sensor | C Retaining screw(s) |
| B Vacuum hose | D Wiring multi-plug |



4.52 Align the throttle position sensor "D" section on throttle shaft (arrowed) when refitting

Power steering pressure switch

58 Releasing its clip, unplug the switch's electrical connector, then unscrew the switch (see illustration). Place a wad of rag underneath, to catch any spilt fluid. If a sealing washer is fitted, renew it if it is worn or damaged.

59 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure; tighten the switch securely, then top-up the fluid reservoir (see Chapter 1) to replace any fluid lost from the system, and bleed out any trapped air (see Chapter 10).

Oxygen sensor

Note: The sensor is delicate, and will not work if it is dropped or knocked, if its power supply is disrupted, or if any cleaning materials are used on it.

60 Release the sensor's electrical connector from its bracket on the engine/transmission front mounting, and unplug it to disconnect the sensor.

61 Raising and supporting the front of the vehicle if required to remove the sensor from underneath, unscrew the sensor from the exhaust system front downpipe; collect the sealing washer (where fitted).

62 On refitting, clean the sealing washer (where fitted) and renew it if it is damaged or worn. Apply a smear of anti-seize compound to the sensor's threads, to prevent them from welding themselves to the downpipe in service. Refit the sensor, tightening it to its specified torque wrench setting; a slotted socket will be required to do this. Reconnect the wiring, and refit the connector plug.



4.58 Power steering pressure switch location at right-hand rear of engine

5 Evaporative emissions control (EVAP) system



General description

1 This system is fitted to minimise the escape of unburned hydrocarbons into the atmosphere. Fuel evaporative emissions control systems are limited on vehicles meeting 15.04 regulations; carburettor float chambers are vented internally, whilst fuel tanks vent to atmosphere through a combined roll-over/anti-trickle-fill valve. On vehicles meeting the more stringent emissions regulations, the fuel tank filler cap is sealed, and a charcoal canister is used to collect and store petrol vapours generated in the tank when the vehicle is parked. When the engine is running, the vapours are cleared from the canister (under the control of the ECU via the canister-purge solenoid valve) into the inlet tract, to be burned by the engine during normal combustion.

2 To ensure that the engine runs correctly when it is cold and/or idling, and to protect the catalytic converter from the effects of an over-rich mixture, the canister-purge solenoid valve is not opened by the ECU until the engine is fully warmed-up and running under part-load; the solenoid valve is then switched on and off, to allow the stored vapour to pass into the inlet.

Checking

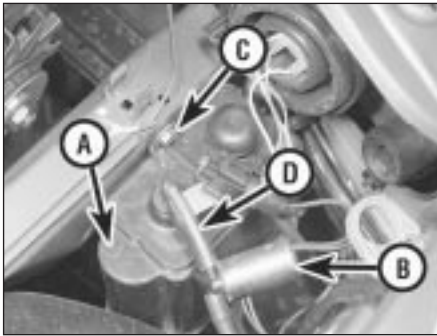
3 Poor idle, stalling and poor driveability can be caused by an inoperative canister-purge solenoid valve, a damaged canister, split or cracked hoses, or hoses connected to the wrong fittings. Check the fuel filler cap for a damaged or deformed gasket.

4 Fuel loss or fuel odour can be caused by liquid fuel leaking from fuel lines, a cracked or damaged canister, an inoperative canister-purge solenoid valve, or disconnected, misrouted, kinked or damaged vapour or control hoses.

5 Inspect each hose attached to the canister for kinks, leaks and cracks along its entire length. Repair or renew as necessary.

6 Inspect the canister. If it is cracked or damaged, renew it. Look for fuel leaking from the bottom of the canister. If fuel is leaking, renew the canister, and check the hoses and hose routing.

7 If the canister-purge solenoid valve is thought to be faulty, unplug its electrical connector and disconnect its vacuum hoses. Connect a battery directly across the valve terminals. Check that air can flow through the valve passages when the solenoid is thus energised, and that nothing can pass when the solenoid is not energised. Alternatively, connect an ohmmeter to measure the resistance across the solenoid terminals, and compare this reading to the one listed in the Specifications Section at the beginning of this



5.9 Charcoal canister-purge solenoid valve and associated components located at the front right-hand side of the engine compartment near the headlight unit on HCS and CVH engines

- A Charcoal canister
B Purge solenoid valve
C Canister retaining bolt
D Canister vapour hose

Chapter. Renew the solenoid valve if it is faulty.

8 Further testing should be left to a dealer service department.

Component renewal

Charcoal canister-purge solenoid valve

9 The solenoid is located at the front right-hand side of the engine compartment, near the headlight unit, on HCS and CVH engines (see illustration). On Zetec engines, the valve is clipped to the bulkhead, behind the engine on the right-hand side. Locate the solenoid, then remove any components as necessary to improve access.

10 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1), then unplug the valve's electrical connector. Unclip the valve from its location, then disconnect its vacuum hoses and withdraw it.

11 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Charcoal canister

12 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

13 The canister is located in the forward section of the right-hand wheel arch (beneath the coolant expansion reservoir). Access to the underside of the unit is gained by raising the vehicle at the front and removing the roadwheel on the right-hand side. Ensure that the vehicle is securely supported on axle stands before working under the wheel arch.

14 Disconnect the hose from the unit, and plug it to prevent the ingress of dirt.

15 Undo the retaining screws, and withdraw the unit from under the wheel arch.

16 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Unplug the hose before reconnecting it, and ensure that it is clean and securely connected.

6 Pulse-air system - general information, checking and component renewal

General information

1 This system consists of the pulse-air solenoid valve (fuel-injected models), the pulse-air valve itself, the delivery tubing, a pulse-air filter, and on some models, a check valve. The system injects filtered air directly into the exhaust ports, using the pressure variations in the exhaust gases to draw air through from the filter housing; air will flow into the exhaust only when its pressure is below atmospheric. The pulse-air valve can allow gases to flow only one way, so there is no risk of hot exhaust gases flowing back into the filter.

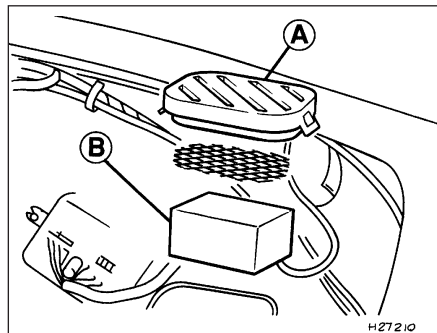
2 The system's primary function is raise exhaust gas temperatures on start-up, thus reducing the amount of time taken for the catalytic converter to reach operating temperature. Until this happens, the system reduces emissions of unburned hydrocarbon particles (HC) and carbon monoxide (CO) by ensuring that a considerable proportion of these substances remaining in the exhaust gases after combustion are burned up, either in the manifold itself or in the catalytic converter.

3 To ensure that the system does not upset the smooth running of the engine under normal driving conditions, it is linked by the pulse-air solenoid valve to the ECU on fuel-injected models, so that it only functions during engine warm-up, when the oxygen sensor is not influencing the fuel/air mixture ratio. On carburettor models, a temperature-sensitive ported vacuum switch shuts the system off when normal engine operating temperature is reached.

Checking

4 Poor idle, stalling, backfiring and poor driveability can be caused by a fault in the pulse-air system.

5 Inspect the vacuum pipe/hose for kinks,



6.9 Pulse-air system filter components on CVH engines

- A Filter housing lid B Filter element

leaks and cracks along its entire length. Repair or renew as necessary.

6 Inspect the filter housing and piping. If either is cracked or damaged, renew it.

7 If the pulse-air solenoid valve is thought to be faulty, unplug its electrical connector and disconnect its vacuum hoses. Connect a battery directly across the valve terminals, and check that air can flow through the valve passages when the solenoid is thus energised, and that nothing can pass when the solenoid is not energised. Alternatively, connect an ohmmeter to measure the resistance across the valve terminals, and compare this reading to the one listed in the Specifications at the beginning of this Chapter. Renew the solenoid valve if it is faulty.

8 Further testing should be left to a dealer service department.

Component renewal

Pulse-air filter and housing (CVH engines)

9 Detach the lid from the filter body, and lift out the filter element from the housing (see illustration). If required, the housing can be removed by detaching the air hoses from the base of the unit and withdrawing the unit from the vehicle.

10 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

Pulse-air valve (CVH engines)

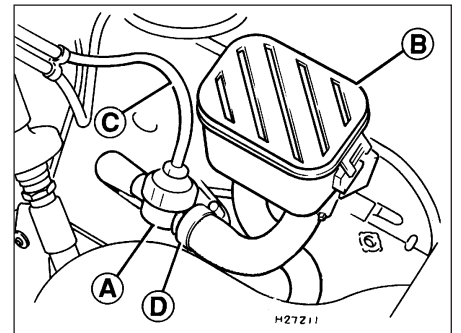
11 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

12 Detach the vacuum hoses from the valve (see illustration).

13 Loosen off the air hose clamp, and detach the air hose from the valve.

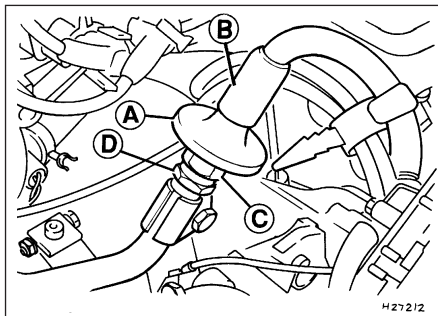
14 Detach the remaining air hose. Note the orientation of the valve, and remove it from the vehicle.

15 When refitting the valve, ensure that it is fitted the correct way round. Refitting is otherwise a reversal of removal the removal procedure.



6.12 Pulse-air valve and connections on CVH engines

- A Pulse-air valve
B Pulse-air filter housing
C Vacuum hose
D Air hose securing clamp



6.17 Pulse-air check valve and connections on CVH engines

A Check valve C Check valve upper nut
B Air hose D Lower tube nut

Pulse-air check valve (CVH engines)

16 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

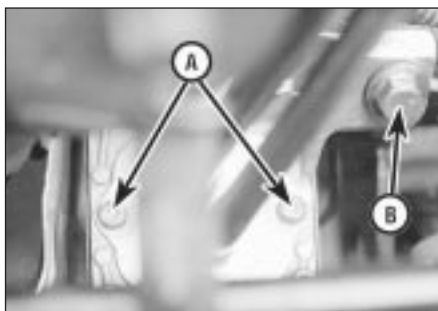
17 Detach the air hoses from the check valve (see illustration).

18 Hold the lower tube nut at the base of the valve firm with a suitable spanner, and unscrew the valve using a spanner fitted on the upper nut.

19 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Ensure that the valve is correctly positioned before fully tightening the tube nut against the valve nut.

Pulse-air valve, filter and housing (HCS engines)

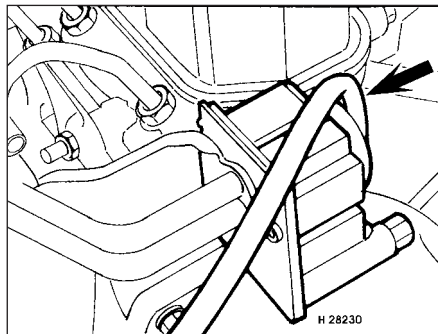
20 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).



6.29 ... then undo screws "A" to disconnect the piping and mounting bolt "B" to release the housing



6.30A Remove the four screws to release the filter housing top from the base ...



6.21 Vacuum hose connection (arrowed) to pulse-air valve on HCS engines

21 Disconnect the vacuum hose from the rear of the pulse-air valve assembly (see illustration).

22 Undo the retaining screws, and withdraw the air-valve, filter and housing assembly from the mounting bracket.

23 To dismantle the filter housing, undo the four screws and separate the top from the base of the housing; extract the foam filter, and clean it in a suitable solvent. If any of the housing's components are worn or damaged, the assembly must be renewed.

24 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Pulse-air valve, filter and housing (Zetec engines)

25 Apply the handbrake, then raise the front of the vehicle, and support it securely on axle stands.

26 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

27 Disconnect the vacuum hose from the base of the filter housing (see illustration).

28 Remove the air cleaner air inlet ducting for access (refer to Chapter 4).

29 Remove the screws securing the filter housing to the piping, unscrew the mounting bolt, then withdraw the housing (see illustration).

30 To dismantle the filter housing, undo the four screws and separate the top from the base of the housing. Extract the foam filter, and clean it in a suitable solvent (see illustrations). If any of the housing's



6.30B ... and withdraw the foam filter for cleaning, if required



6.27 Disconnect the vacuum hose from the base of the filter housing ...

components are worn or damaged, the assembly must be renewed.

31 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure.

Pulse-air solenoid valve

32 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

33 Releasing its wire clip, unplug the electrical connector, then release the valve from its mounting bracket. Withdraw the valve, then label and disconnect the two vacuum hoses.

34 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure; ensure that the hoses are correctly reconnected.

Pulse-air piping (HCS and CVH engines)

35 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

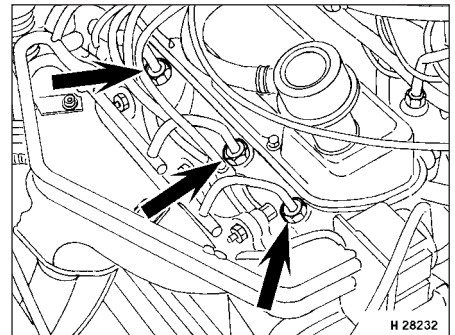
36 Remove the air cleaner if necessary for improved access (refer to Chapter 4).

37 Disconnect the vacuum hose from the pulse-air valve.

38 Unbolt and detach the air tube from its fixing to the exhaust manifold, cylinder head and transmission, according to engine type.

39 Loosen off the four nuts securing the air delivery tubes to the cylinder head exhaust ports, then carefully withdraw the delivery tubes as a unit (see illustration). Do not apply undue force to the tubes as they are detached.

40 Carefully clean the piping, particularly its



6.39 Pulse-air piping retaining nuts (arrowed) on HCS engines



6.46 Removing the pulse-air piping on Zetec engines

threads and those of the manifold. Remove all traces of corrosion, which might prevent the pipes seating properly, causing air leaks when the engine is restarted.

41 On refitting, insert the piping carefully into the cylinder head ports, taking care not to bend or distort it. Apply anti-seize compound to the threads, and tighten the retaining sleeve nuts while holding each pipe firmly in its port.

42 The remainder of the refitting procedure is the reverse of removal.

Pulse-air piping (Zetec engines)

43 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

44 Remove the air cleaner air inlet ducting for access (refer to Chapter 4).

45 Unbolt the exhaust manifold heat shield; unclip the coolant hose to allow the upper part to be withdrawn.

46 Remove the screws securing the filter housing to the piping. Unscrew the four nuts securing the pipes into the exhaust manifold, and remove the piping as an assembly, taking care not to distort it (see illustration).

47 Carefully clean the piping, particularly its threads and those of the manifold. Remove all traces of corrosion, which might prevent the pipes seating properly, causing air leaks when the engine is restarted.

48 On refitting, insert the piping carefully into the cylinder head ports, taking care not to bend or distort it. Apply anti-seize compound to the threads, and tighten the retaining sleeve nuts while holding each pipe firmly in its port; if a suitable spanner is available, tighten the sleeve nuts to the specified torque wrench setting.

49 The remainder of the refitting procedure is the reverse of removal.

crankcase under most operating conditions, particularly at idle, and by positively inducing fresh air into the system, the oil vapours and "blow-by" gases collected in the crankcase are drawn from the crankcase, through the air cleaner or oil separator, into the inlet tract, to be burned by the engine during normal combustion.

2 On HCS engines, the system consists of a vented oil filler cap (with an integral mesh filter) and a hose connecting it to a connector on the underside of the air cleaner housing. A further hose leads from the adapter/filter to the inlet manifold. Under conditions of idle and part-load, the emissions gases are directed into the inlet manifold, and dispensed with in the combustion process. Additional air is supplied through two small orifices next to the mushroom valve in the air cleaner housing, the object of which is to prevent high vacuum build-up. Under full-load conditions, when the inlet manifold vacuum is weak, the mushroom valve opens, and the emissions are directed through the air cleaner housing into the engine induction system and thence into the combustion chambers. This arrangement eliminates any fuel mixture control problems.

3 On CVH engines, a closed-circuit type crankcase ventilation system is used, the function of which is basically the same as that described for the HCS engine type, but the breather hose connects directly to the rocker cover. The oil filler cap incorporates a separate filter in certain applications.

4 On Zetec engines, the crankcase ventilation system main components are the oil separator mounted on the front (radiator) side of the cylinder block/crankcase, and the Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve set in a rubber grommet in the separator's left-hand upper end. The associated pipework consists of a crankcase breather pipe and two

flexible hoses connecting the PCV valve to a union on the left-hand end of the inlet manifold, and a crankcase breather hose connecting the cylinder head cover to the air cleaner assembly (see illustration). A small foam filter in the air cleaner prevents dirt from being drawn directly into the engine.

Checking

5 Checking procedures for the system components are included in Chapter 1.

Component renewal

Air cleaner components

6 See Chapter 1.

Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve

7 The valve is plugged into the oil separator on Zetec engines. Depending on the tools available, access to the valve may be possible once the pulse-air assembly has been removed (see Section 6). If this is not feasible, proceed as outlined in paragraph 8 below.

Oil separator

8 Remove the exhaust manifold (see Chapter 2C). The Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve can now be unplugged and flushed, or renewed, as required, as described in Chapter 1.

9 Unbolt the oil separator from the cylinder block/crankcase, and withdraw it; remove and discard the gasket.

10 Flush out or renew the oil separator, as required (see Chapter 1).

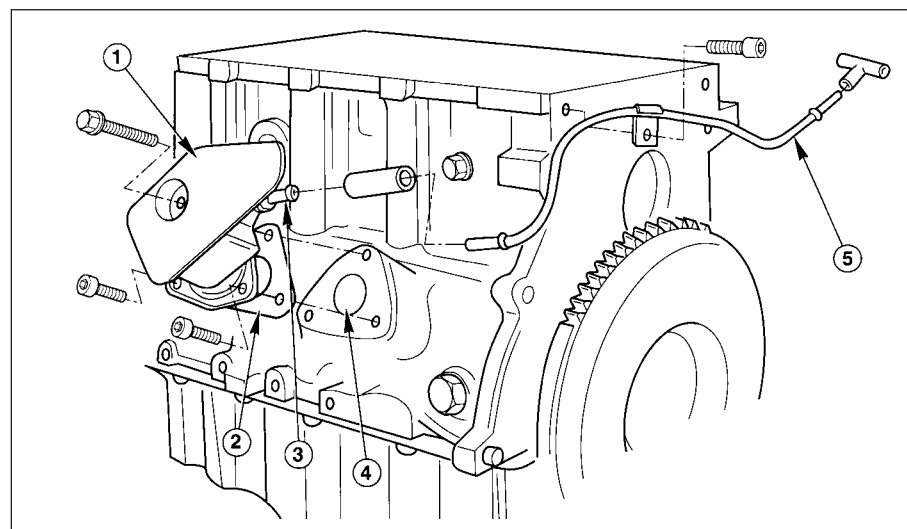
11 Refitting is the reverse of the removal procedure, but use a new gasket between the oil separator and cylinder block. Refill the cooling system (see Chapter 1). Run the engine, check for exhaust leaks, and check the coolant level when it is fully warmed-up.

7 Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system



General information

1 The function of the crankcase ventilation system is to reduce the emissions of unburned hydrocarbons from the crankcase, and to minimise the formation of oil sludge. By ensuring that a depression is created in the



7.4 Crankcase ventilation system oil separator and related components on Zetec engines

1 Oil separator

2 Gasket

3 PCV valve

4 Cylinder block/crankcase opening

5 Breather pipe and hose

8 Catalytic converter - general information, checking and component renewal

General information

1 The exhaust gases of any petrol engine (however efficient or well-tuned) consist largely (approximately 99%) of nitrogen (N₂), carbon dioxide (CO₂), oxygen (O₂), other inert gases and water vapour (H₂O). The remaining 1% is made up of the noxious materials which are currently seen (CO₂ apart) as the major pollutants of the environment: carbon monoxide (CO), unburned hydrocarbons (HC), oxides of nitrogen (NO_x) and some solid matter, including a small lead content.

2 Left to themselves, most of these pollutants are thought eventually to break down naturally (CO and NO_x, for example, break down in the upper atmosphere to release CO₂) having first caused ground-level environmental problems. The massive increase world-wide in the use of motor vehicles, and the current popular concern for the environment has caused the introduction in most countries of legislation, in varying degrees of severity, to combat the problem.

3 The device most commonly used to clean up vehicle exhausts is the catalytic converter. It is fitted into the vehicle's exhaust system, and uses precious metals (platinum and palladium or rhodium) as catalysts to speed up the reaction between the pollutants and the oxygen in the vehicle's exhaust gases, CO and HC being oxidised to form H₂O and CO₂ and (in the three-way type of catalytic converter) NO_x being reduced to N₂. Note: *The catalytic converter is not a filter in the physical sense; its function is to promote a chemical reaction, but it is not itself affected by that reaction.*

4 The converter consists of an element (or "substrate") of ceramic honeycomb, coated with a combination of precious metals in such a way as to produce a vast surface area over which the exhaust gases must flow; the whole being mounted in a stainless-steel box. A simple "oxidation" (or "two-way") catalytic converter can deal with CO and HC only, while a "reduction" (or "three-way") catalytic converter can deal with CO, HC and NO_x. Three-way catalytic converters are further subdivided into "open-loop" (or "unregulated") converters, which can remove 50 to 70% of pollutants and "closed-loop" (also known as "controlled" or "regulated") converters, which can remove over 90% of pollutants.

5 The catalytic converters fitted to models covered in this manual are of the three-way open- or closed-loop type.

6 The catalytic converter is a reliable and simple device, which needs no maintenance in itself, but there are some facts of which an owner should be aware if the converter is to function properly for its full service life:

a) *DO NOT use leaded petrol in a vehicle equipped with a catalytic converter - the lead will coat the precious metals, reducing their*

converting efficiency, and will eventually destroy the converter; it will also affect the operation of the oxygen sensor, requiring its renewal if lead-fouled. Opinions vary as to how much leaded fuel is necessary to affect the converter's performance, and whether it can recover even if only unleaded petrol is used afterwards; the best course of action is, therefore, to assume the worst, and to ensure that NO leaded petrol is used at any time.

- b) *Always keep the ignition and fuel systems well-maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's schedule (Chapter 1) - particularly, ensure that the air filter element, the fuel filter and the spark plugs are renewed at the correct intervals. If the inlet air/fuel mixture is allowed to become too rich due to neglect, the unburned surplus will enter and burn in the catalytic converter, overheating the element and eventually destroying the converter.*
- c) *If the engine develops a misfire, do not drive the vehicle at all or at least as little as possible until the fault is cured - the misfire will allow unburned fuel to enter the converter, which will result in its overheating, as noted above. For the same reason, do not persist if the engine refuses to start - either trace the problem and cure it yourself, or have the vehicle checked immediately by a qualified mechanic.*
- d) *Avoid allowing the vehicle to run out of petrol.*
- e) *DO NOT push- or tow-start the vehicle unless no other alternative exists, especially if the engine and exhaust are at normal operating temperature. Starting the engine in this way may soak the catalytic converter in unburned fuel, causing it to overheat when the engine does start - see (b) above.*
- f) *DO NOT switch off the ignition at high engine speeds; in particular, do not "blip" the throttle immediately before switching off. If the ignition is switched off at anything above idle speed, unburned fuel will enter the (very hot) catalytic converter, with the possible risk of its igniting on the element and damaging the converter.*
- g) *Avoid repeated successive cold starts followed by short journeys. If the converter is never allowed to reach its proper working temperature, it will gather unburned fuel, allowing some to pass into the atmosphere and the rest to soak in the element, causing it to overheat when a long journey is made - see (b) above.*
- h) *DO NOT use fuel or engine oil additives - these may contain substances harmful to the catalytic converter. Similarly, DO NOT use silicone-based sealants on any part of the engine or fuel system, and do not use exhaust sealants on any part of the exhaust system upstream of the catalytic converter. Even if the sealant itself does not contain additives harmful to the converter, pieces of it may break off and foul the element, causing local overheating.*
- i) *DO NOT continue to use the vehicle if the*

engine burns oil to the extent of leaving a visible trail of blue smoke. Unburned carbon deposits will clog the converter passages and reduce its efficiency; in severe cases, the element will overheat.

- j) *Remember that the catalytic converter operates at very high temperatures - hence the heat shields on the vehicle underbody - and the casing will become hot enough to ignite combustible materials which brush against it. DO NOT, therefore, park the vehicle in dry undergrowth, over long grass or piles of dead leaves.*
- k) *Remember that the catalytic converter is FRAGILE. Do not strike it with tools during servicing work, and take great care when working on the exhaust system (see Chapter 4). Ensure that the converter is well clear of any jacks or other lifting gear used to raise the vehicle. Do not drive the vehicle over rough ground, road humps, etc, in such a way as to "ground" the exhaust system.*
- l) *In some cases, particularly when the vehicle is new and/or is used for stop/start driving, a sulphurous smell (like that of rotten eggs) may be noticed from the exhaust. This is common to many catalytic converter-equipped vehicles, and seems to be due to the small amount of sulphur found in some petrols reacting with hydrogen in the exhaust, to produce hydrogen sulphide (H₂S) gas; while this gas is toxic, it is not produced in sufficient amounts to be a problem. Once the vehicle has covered a few thousand miles, the problem should disappear - in the meanwhile, a change of driving style, or of the brand of petrol used, may effect a solution.*
- m) *The catalytic converter on a well-maintained and well-driven vehicle should last for between 50 000 and 100 000 miles. From this point on, careful checks should be made at regular intervals to ensure that the converter is still operating efficiently. If the converter is no longer effective, it must be renewed.*

Checking

7 Checking the operation of a catalytic converter requires expensive and sophisticated diagnostic equipment, starting with a high-quality exhaust gas analyser. If the level of CO in the exhaust gases is too high, a full check of the engine management system must be carried out (see Section 3 of this Chapter) to eliminate all other possibilities before the converter is suspected of being faulty.

8 The vehicle should be taken to a Ford dealer for this work to be carried out using the correct diagnostic equipment; do not waste time trying to test the system without such facilities.

Component renewal






9 The catalytic converter is part of the exhaust system - see Chapter 4 for details of removal and refitting.

Chapter 9 Braking system

Contents

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) - description	27	Hydraulic unit (ABS) - removal and refitting	28
Brake check	See Chapter 1	Light-laden valve (Van models) - adjustment	26
Brake fluid level check	See Chapter 1	Light-laden valve (Van models) - removal and refitting	25
Brake fluid renewal	See Chapter 1	Load-apportioning valve (ABS) - removal and refitting	32
Brake pedal - removal and refitting	14	Master cylinder - inspection and overhaul	13
Brake pedal-to-servo cross-link - removal and refitting	15	Master cylinder - removal and refitting	12
Brake pressure control valves - removal and refitting	24	Module (ABS) - removal and refitting	29
Front brake caliper - removal, overhaul and refitting	3	Rear brake backplate - removal and refitting	8
Front brake disc - inspection, removal and refitting	4	Rear brake caliper - removal and refitting	10
Front brake pads - renewal	2	Rear brake disc - inspection, removal and refitting	11
General information and precautions	1	Rear brake drum - removal, inspection and refitting	5
Handbrake adjustment	See Chapter 1	Rear brake pads - renewal	9
Handbrake cable - removal and refitting	23	Rear brake shoes - renewal	6
Handbrake lever - removal and refitting	21	Rear wheel cylinder - removal, overhaul and refitting	7
Handbrake primary cable - removal and refitting	22	Vacuum servo unit - testing, removal and refitting	18
Handbrake shoes (disc brake models) - renewal	20	Vacuum servo unit vacuum hose and non-return valve - removal, testing and refitting	19
Hydraulic pipes and hoses - inspection, removal and refitting	16	Wheel sensor (ABS) - removal and refitting	30
Hydraulic system - bleeding	17	Wheel sensor ring (ABS) - removal and refitting	31

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

Specifications

Front brakes

Type	Solid or ventilated disc, with single-piston sliding calipers
Disc diameter	240 or 260 mm
Disc thickness:	
Solid disc	10 mm
Ventilated disc	20 or 24 mm
Minimum disc thickness:	
Solid disc	8 mm
Ventilated disc	18 or 22 mm
Maximum disc run-out (disc fitted)	0.1 mm
Minimum brake pad thickness	1.5 mm
Caliper piston diameter	54 mm

Rear drum brakes

Type	Drum with leading and trailing shoes and automatic adjusters
Nominal drum diameter	180, 203 or 228.6 mm according to model
Maximum drum diameter	1.0 mm above nominal diameter
Minimum brake lining thickness	1.0 mm

Rear disc brakes

Type	Solid disc with twin-piston fixed calipers
Disc diameter	270 mm
Disc thickness	10 mm
Minimum disc thickness	8 mm
Maximum disc run-out (disc fitted)	0.1 mm
Minimum brake pad thickness	1.5 mm
Caliper piston diameter	33 mm

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Master cylinder to servo	20 to 25	15 to 18
Servo unit to bracket/bulkhead	35 to 45	26 to 33
Drum/hub to rear axle flange	56 to 76	41 to 56
Caliper anchor bracket to spindle carrier	50 to 66	37 to 49
Caliper piston housing to anchor bracket:		
Bendix caliper	45 to 55	33 to 41
Teves caliper	20 to 25	15 to 18
Rear caliper mounting bolts	50 to 66	37 to 49
ABS hydraulic unit to bracket	21 to 25	15 to 18
Roadwheel nuts	70 to 100	52 to 74

1 General information and precautions

The braking system is of the diagonally split, dual-circuit hydraulic type, with servo assistance to the front disc brakes and rear drum/disc brakes (see illustration). The dual-circuit hydraulic system is a safety feature - in the event of a malfunction somewhere in one of the hydraulic circuits, the other circuit continues to operate, providing at least some braking effort. Under normal circumstances, both brake circuits operate in unison, to provide efficient braking.

The master cylinder (and the vacuum servo unit to which it is bolted) is located on the left-hand side of the bulkhead in the engine compartment. On all right-hand drive variants, they are jointly operated via a transverse cross-link from the brake pedal.

Brake pressure control valves are fitted in-line to each rear brake circuit, their function being to regulate the braking force available at each rear wheel, reducing the possibility of the rear wheels locking up under heavy braking. Van models also have a "light-laden" valve incorporated into the rear braking circuits for the same reason.

The front brake discs are of the ventilated type on all 1.6 litre, 1.8 litre and ABS-equipped models. Solid discs are fitted on all other models. The front brake calipers are of single sliding piston design, which ensures that equal effort is applied through each pair of brake pads to the discs. The calipers are mounted on the front spindle carriers each side.

Each rear brake drum can be simply unbolted from its rear axle flange, together with the integrally-fitted wheel hub, and removed to provide unhindered access to the shoe assemblies. Each rear brake shoe assembly is operated by a twin-piston wheel cylinder. The leading brake shoe in each brake unit has a thicker lining than the trailing shoe, so that they wear proportionally. To take up the brake adjustment as the linings wear, each rear brake assembly incorporates an automatic adjuster mechanism.

On models fitted with rear disc brakes, the brake calipers are of twin-piston fixed type, with handbrake operation by means of

separate handbrake shoes operating within a "drum-in-disc" arrangement.

The cable-operated handbrake acts on both rear brakes, to provide an independent means of brake operation.

An anti-lock braking system (ABS) is available on some models, and has many of the components in common with the conventional braking system. Further details on ABS can be found later in this Chapter.

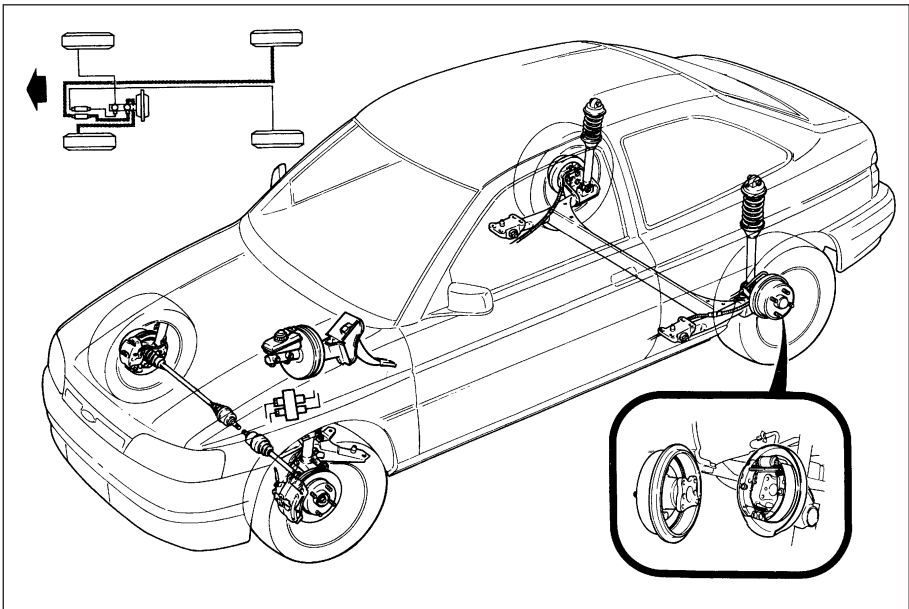
Precautions

When servicing any part of the system, work carefully and methodically; also observe scrupulous cleanliness when overhauling any part of the hydraulic system. Use only genuine Ford replacement parts, or at least those of known good quality.

Warning: Brake components MUST be renewed as axle sets - NEVER renew components on only one wheel, as uneven braking may result. Dust created by wear of brake pads/shoes may contain asbestos, which is a health hazard. Never blow it out with compressed air, and do not inhale any of it. DO NOT use petroleum-based solvents to clean brake

parts - use brake cleaner or methylated spirit only. DO NOT allow any brake fluid, oil or grease to contact the brake friction surfaces.

Warning: Hydraulic fluid is poisonous; wash off immediately and thoroughly in the case of skin contact, and seek immediate medical advice if any fluid is swallowed or gets into the eyes. Certain types of hydraulic fluid are inflammable, and may ignite when allowed into contact with hot components; when servicing the hydraulic system, it is safest to assume that the fluid IS inflammable, and to take precautions against the risk of fire as though it is petrol that is being handled. Hydraulic fluid is also an effective paint stripper, and will attack plastics; if any is spilt, it should be washed off immediately, using copious quantities of fresh water. Finally, it is hygroscopic (it absorbs moisture from the air) - old fluid may be contaminated and unfit for further use. When topping-up or renewing the fluid, always use the recommended type, and ensure that it comes from a freshly-opened sealed container.



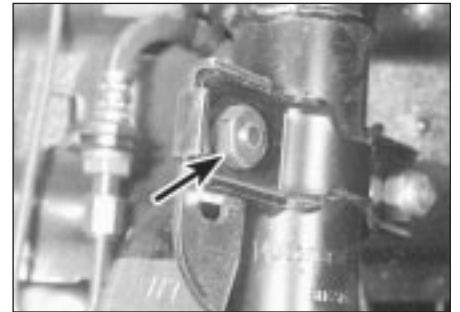
1.1 Standard braking system layout and principal components



2.2A Extract the R-clip from the cross-pin . . .



2.2B . . . and withdraw the pin from the base of the caliper



2.3 Undo the retaining nut (arrowed) and release the brake hose support bracket from the suspension strut

2 Front brake pads - renewal



Warning: Disc brake pads **MUST** be renewed on both front wheels at the same time - **NEVER** renew the pads on only one wheel, as uneven braking may result. The front brake calipers will be of Bendix or Teves manufacture, and if they or their component parts require renewal, ensure that the correct type is fitted. Dust created by wear of the pads may contain asbestos, which is a health hazard. Never blow it out with compressed air, and do not inhale any of it. **DO NOT** use petroleum-based solvents to clean brake parts - use brake cleaner or methylated spirit only. **DO NOT** allow any brake fluid, oil or grease to contact the brake pads or disc. Also refer to the warning in Section 1 concerning brake fluid.

1 Apply the handbrake, loosen off the front roadwheel nuts, then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands. Remove the front roadwheels.

Bendix caliper

2 Extract the R-clip from the cross-pin, and withdraw the pin from the base of the caliper (see illustrations).

3 Undo the retaining nut, and release the brake hose support bracket from the suspension strut (see illustration).



2.5 Withdraw the inner and outer brake pads from the anchor bracket

4 Swing the caliper upwards to allow access to the brake pads, and if necessary, tie the caliper up in the raised position.

5 Withdraw the inner and outer brake pads from the anchor bracket (see illustration). If the old pads are to be refitted, ensure that they are identified so that they can be returned to their original positions.

6 Brush the dust and dirt from the caliper and piston, but **do not inhale it, as it is a health hazard**. Inspect the dust cover around the piston for damage and for evidence of fluid leaks, which if found will necessitate caliper overhaul as described in Section 3. Inspect the anti-rattle plate for corrosion, and if necessary renew it.

7 If new brake pads are to be fitted, the caliper piston will need to be pushed back into its housing, to allow for the extra pad thickness - use a C-clamp to do this. Note that, as the piston is pressed back into the bore, it will displace the fluid in the system, causing the fluid level in the brake master cylinder reservoir to rise and possibly overflow. To avoid this possibility, a small quantity of fluid should be syphoned from the reservoir. If any brake fluid is spilt onto the bodywork, hoses or adjacent components in the engine compartment, wipe it clean without delay.

8 Prior to refitting, check that the pads and the disc are clean. Where new pads are to be installed, peel the protective backing paper from them. If the old pads are to be refitted,

ensure that they are correctly located as noted during their removal.

9 Locate the inner and outer brake pads into position in the caliper anchor bracket.

10 Lower the caliper down, insert the cross-pin and fit the R-clip to secure.

11 Reconnect the brake hose bracket to the suspension strut, making sure that the brake hose is not twisted, stretched or distorted in any way.

12 Repeat the procedure on the opposite front brake.

13 Before lowering the vehicle, check that the fluid level in the brake master cylinder reservoir is up to the Maximum level mark, and top-up with the specified fluid type if required. Depress the brake pedal a few times to position the pads against the disc, then recheck the fluid level in the reservoir and further top-up the fluid level if necessary.

14 Refit the roadwheels, then lower the vehicle to the ground. Tighten the roadwheel retaining nuts to the specified torque setting.

15 To allow the new brake pads to bed-in and reach full efficiency, a running-in period of approximately 100 miles or so should be observed before hard use and heavy braking.

Teves caliper

16 Hold the caliper support spring with a pair of pliers, and prise it out of its location in the caliper housing using a screwdriver (see illustration).

17 Prise free the blanking plugs from the caliper upper and lower mounting bolts.



2.16 Hold the caliper support spring with a pair of pliers, and prise it out of its location in the caliper housing using a screwdriver



2.17A Prise free the blanking plugs from the caliper upper and lower mounting bolts

9•4 Braking system



2.17B Using a suitable Allen key socket bit . . .



2.17C . . . unscrew and remove the bolts . . .

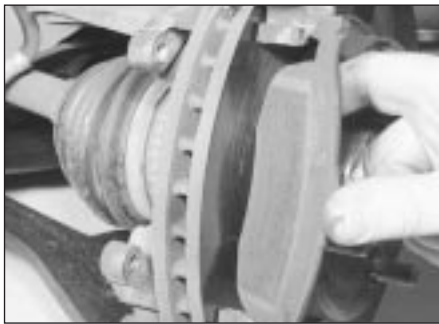


2.17D . . . then withdraw the caliper from the anchor bracket and disc

Unscrew the bolts, then withdraw the caliper from the anchor bracket (**see illustrations**). Suitably support the caliper to avoid straining the brake hose.

18 Withdraw the pads from the caliper piston housing or anchor bracket. The outer pad will normally remain in position in the anchor bracket, but the inner pad will stay attached to the piston in the caliper, and may need to be carefully prised free (**see illustrations**). If the old pads are to be refitted, ensure that they are identified so that they can be returned to their original positions.

19 Brush the dust and dirt from the caliper and piston, but *do not inhale it, as it is a health hazard*. Inspect the dust cover around the piston for damage and for evidence of fluid leaks, which if found will necessitate caliper overhaul as described in Section 3.



2.18A Withdraw the outer pad from the anchor bracket . . .



2.18B . . . and the inner pad from the piston in the caliper

20 If new brake pads are to be fitted, the caliper piston will need to be pushed back into its housing, to allow for the extra pad thickness - use a C-clamp to do this. Note that, as the piston is pressed back into the bore, it will displace the fluid in the system, causing the fluid level in the brake master cylinder reservoir to rise and possibly overflow. To avoid this possibility, a small quantity of fluid should be syphoned from the reservoir. If any brake fluid is spilt onto the bodywork, hoses or adjacent components in the engine compartment, wipe it clean without delay.

21 Prior to refitting, check that the pads and the disc are clean. Where new pads are to be installed, peel the protective backing paper from them. If the old pads are to be refitted, ensure that they are correctly located as noted during their removal.

22 Locate the inner and outer brake pad into position in the caliper. Relocate the caliper into position on the anchor bracket, and insert the mounting bolts.

23 Tighten the mounting bolts to the specified torque setting, and refit the blanking plugs. Relocate the caliper support spring.

24 Repeat the procedure on the opposite front brake.

25 Before lowering the vehicle, check that the fluid level in the brake master cylinder reservoir is up to the Maximum level mark, and top-up with the specified fluid type if required. Depress the brake pedal a few times to position the pads against the disc, then

recheck the fluid level in the reservoir and further top-up the fluid level if necessary.

26 Refit the roadwheels, then lower the vehicle to the ground. Tighten the roadwheel retaining nuts to the specified torque setting.

27 To allow the new brake pads to bed-in and reach full efficiency, a running-in period of approximately 100 miles or so should be observed before hard use and heavy braking.

3 Front brake caliper - removal, overhaul and refitting



Removal

1 Apply the handbrake, loosen off the front roadwheel nuts on the side concerned, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate roadwheel.

2 Fit a brake hose clamp to the flexible brake hose leading to the front brake caliper. This will minimise brake fluid loss during subsequent operations (**see illustration**).

Bendix caliper

3 Unscrew the brake hose-to-caliper banjo union bolt, and recover the copper sealing washers (**see illustration**). Cover or plug the open hydraulic unions to keep them clean.

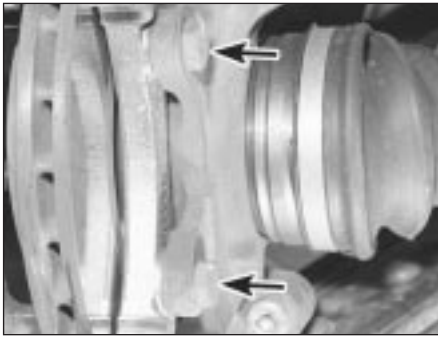
4 Extract the R-clip from the cross-pin at the base of the caliper, and withdraw the cross-pin.



3.2 Brake hose clamp fitted to the front flexible brake hose



3.3 Unscrew the brake hose-to-caliper banjo union bolt (arrowed) and recover the copper sealing washers



3.8 Brake caliper anchor bracket securing bolts (arrowed)

5 Prise free the blanking plug from the caliper-to-anchor bracket pivot bolt at the top, then support the caliper and unscrew the bolt.
6 Withdraw the caliper from anchor bracket and brake pads, and remove it from the car.

7 To remove the caliper anchor bracket, first withdraw the brake pads. If they are likely to be re-used, mark them for identification (inner and outer, right- or left-hand as applicable) to ensure that they are installed in their original locations when refitting.

8 Unscrew the two retaining bolts, and withdraw the anchor bracket from the spindle carrier (see illustration).

Teves caliper

9 Loosen (but do not completely unscrew) the union on the caliper end of the flexible brake hose (see illustration).

10 Remove the front brake pads as described in Section 2.

11 Support the caliper in one hand, and prevent the brake hose from turning with the other hand. Unscrew the caliper from the hose, making sure that the hose is not twisted unduly or strained. Once the caliper is detached, cover or plug the open hydraulic unions to keep them clean.

12 If required, the caliper anchor bracket can be unbolted and removed from the spindle carrier.

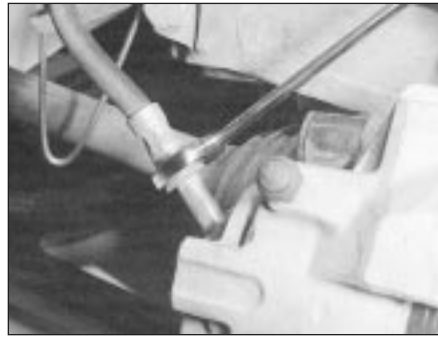
Overhaul

Bendix and Teves calipers

13 With the caliper on the bench, wipe away all traces of dust and dirt, but *avoid inhaling the dust, as it is a health hazard*.

14 Remove the piston from its bore by applying low air pressure (from a foot pump, for example) into the caliper hydraulic fluid hose port. In the event of a high-pressure air hose being used, keep the pressure as low as possible, to enable the piston to be extracted, but to avoid the piston being ejected too quickly and being damaged. Position a suitable piece of wood between the caliper frame and the piston to prevent this possibility. Any fluid remaining in the caliper will probably be ejected with the piston.

15 Using a suitable hooked tool, carefully extract the dust cover from its groove in the



3.9 Loosening the flexible brake hose at the caliper

piston and the seal from its groove in the caliper bore, but take care not to scratch or damage the piston and/or the bore in the caliper.

16 Clean all the parts in methylated spirit or clean brake fluid, and wipe dry using a clean lint-free cloth (see illustration). Inspect the piston and caliper bore for signs of damage, scuffing or corrosion. If these conditions are evident, renew the caliper body assembly.

17 If the components are in satisfactory condition, a repair kit which includes a new seal and dust cover must be obtained.

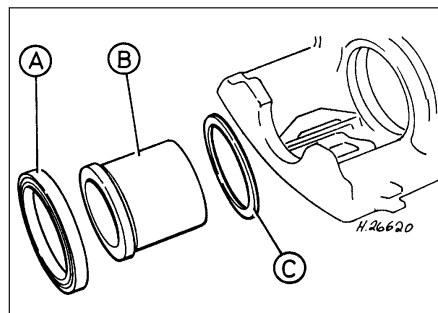
18 Lubricate the piston bore in the caliper and the seal with clean brake fluid. Carefully fit the seal in the caliper bore, using fingers only (no tools) to manipulate it into position in its groove. When in position, check that it is not distorted or twisted.

19 Locate the dust cover over the piston so that its inner diameter is engaged in the piston groove. Smear the area behind the piston groove with the special lubricating grease supplied in the repair kit, then insert the piston into the caliper. Push the piston into position in the bore, and simultaneously press the dust cover into the piston housing so that it is seated correctly (see illustration). Take particular care not to distort or damage the seal or cover as they are fitted.

Refitting

Bendix caliper

20 If the anchor bracket was removed, fit it into position on the spindle carrier, and



3.16 Bendix front brake caliper components showing the dust cover (A), piston (B) and piston seal (C)

tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

21 Locate the brake pads into the anchor bracket. Where new pads are to be installed, peel the protective backing paper from them. If the old pads are to be refitted, ensure that they are correctly located in their original positions as noted during their removal.

22 Refit the caliper to the anchor bracket, and loosely locate the caliper-to-anchor bracket pivot bolt. Swing the unit down, and insert the cross-pin and its R-clip. Tighten the caliper-to-anchor bracket bolt to the specified torque.

23 Unplug the hydraulic hose, and check that the unions are clean. Reconnect the hose to the caliper, using new copper washers if necessary. Tighten the brake hose union banjo bolt, then turn the steering from lock-to-lock to ensure that the hose does not foul on the wheel housing or suspension components.

24 Top-up the hydraulic fluid level in the reservoir, and bleed the brake circuit as described in Section 17.

25 Refit the roadwheel, lower the vehicle to the ground, and then tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque setting.

Teves caliper

26 If the anchor bracket was removed, fit it into position on the spindle carrier, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

27 Unplug the hydraulic hose, and check that the unions are clean. Reconnect the caliper to the hose so that the hose is not twisted or strained. The hose union connection can be fully tightened when the caliper is refitted.

28 Refit the brake pads as described in Section 2.

29 The brake hydraulic hose can now be fully tightened. When secured, turn the steering from lock-to-lock to ensure that the hose does not foul on the wheel housing or suspension components.

30 Top-up the hydraulic fluid level in the reservoir, and bleed the brake circuit as described in Section 17.

31 Refit the roadwheel, lower the vehicle to the ground, then tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque setting.



3.19 Piston and dust seal in position in the caliper



4.3 Checking the brake disc thickness using a micrometer

4 Front brake disc - inspection, removal and refitting



Note: To prevent uneven braking, BOTH front brake discs should be renewed or reground at the same time.

Inspection

1 Apply the handbrake, loosen off the front roadwheel nuts on the side concerned, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate front roadwheel.

2 Temporarily refit two of the wheel nuts to diagonally-opposite studs, with the flat sides of the nuts against the disc. Tighten the nuts progressively, to hold the disc firmly.

3 Scrape any corrosion from the disc. Rotate the disc, and examine it for deep scoring, grooving or cracks. Using a micrometer, measure the thickness of the disc in several places (see illustration). Light wear and scoring is normal, but if excessive, the disc should be removed, and either reground by a specialist, or renewed. If regrounding is undertaken, at least the minimum thickness must be maintained. Obviously, if the disc is cracked, it must be renewed.

4 Using a dial gauge or a flat metal block and feeler gauges, check that the disc run-out 10 mm from the outer edge does not exceed the limit given in the Specifications. To do this, fix the measuring equipment, and rotate the disc, noting the variation in measurement as the disc



4.4 Checking the brake disc run-out using a dial gauge

is rotated (see illustration). The difference between the minimum and maximum measurements recorded is the disc run-out.

5 If the run-out is greater than the specified amount, check for variations of the disc thickness as follows. Mark the disc at eight positions 45° apart, then using a micrometer, measure the disc thickness at the eight positions, 15 mm in from the outer edge. If the variation between the minimum and maximum readings is greater than the specified amount, the disc should be renewed.

Removal

6 Remove the caliper and its anchor bracket with reference to Section 3, but do not disconnect the hydraulic brake hose. Suspend the caliper assembly from the front suspension coil spring, taking care to avoid straining the brake hose.

7 Remove the wheel nuts which were temporarily refitted in paragraph 2.

8 Using a Torx-type socket bit or driver, unscrew the screw securing the disc to the hub, and withdraw the disc. If it is tight, lightly tap its rear face with a hide or plastic mallet.

Refitting

9 Refit the disc in a reversal of the removal sequence. If new discs are being fitted, first remove their protective coating. Ensure complete cleanliness of the hub and disc mating faces and tighten the screw securely.

10 Refit the caliper/anchor bracket with reference to Section 3.

11 Refit the roadwheel, lower the vehicle to the ground, and tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque wrench setting.

5 Rear brake drum - removal, inspection and refitting



Note: To prevent uneven braking, BOTH rear brake drums should be renewed at the same time.

Removal

1 Chock the front wheels, loosen off the rear roadwheel nuts on the side concerned, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate rear roadwheel, and release the handbrake.

2 On all except Van models, undo the four bolts securing the drum/hub to the rear axle flange, then withdraw the drum/hub from the axle (see illustrations). If the brake drum is stuck on the shoes, remove the rubber access plug from the inside face of the brake backplate, and release the automatic brake adjuster by levering the release catch on the adjuster pawl through the backplate.

3 On Van models, prise free the drum retaining clip from the wheel nut stud, then withdraw the drum over the studs and remove it. Note that the retaining clip must be renewed during reassembly.

4 With the brake drum removed, brush or wipe the dust from the drum, brake shoes, wheel cylinder and backplate. *Take great care not to inhale the dust, as it may contain asbestos.*

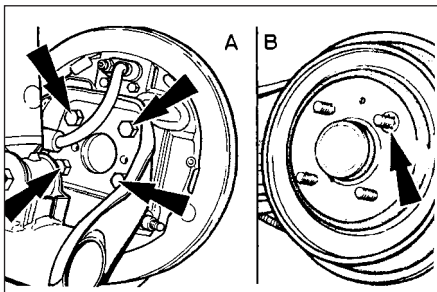
5 If required, remove the hub from the drum (where applicable) as described in Chapter 10.

Inspection

6 Clean the inside surfaces of the brake drum and hub, then examine the internal surface of the brake drum for signs of scoring or cracks (see illustration). If any deterioration of the friction surface is evident, renewal of the drum is necessary. To detach the hub from the drum (where applicable), refer to Chapter 10.

Refitting

7 Check that the automatic brake adjuster is fully retracted, then according to type, refit the drum/hub to the axle. Tighten the retaining



5.2A Rear brake drum/hub securing methods

A Brake drum/hub retaining bolts

B Brake drum retaining clip on Van models



5.2B Removing the rear brake drum/hub



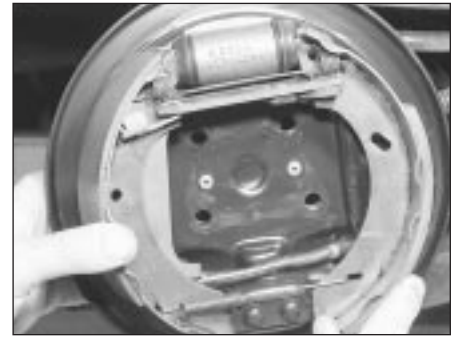
5.6 Examine the inside surfaces of the brake drum for signs of excessive wear and/or cracks



6.2 General view of the rear brake assembly with the drum removed



6.3 Removing a shoe steady spring



6.4 Disengage the leading brake shoe from the bottom anchor . . .

bolts to the specified torque, or fit the drum over the wheel studs, and press a new retaining clip over one of the studs.

8 With the brake drum refitted, refit the roadwheel. Fully depress the brake pedal several times, to actuate the rear brake adjuster and take up the adjustment. Check that the rear wheels spin freely when the brakes are released, then apply the handbrake, lower the vehicle and tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque wrench setting. Remove the wheel chocks from the front wheels.

6 Rear brake shoes - renewal



Warning: Drum brake shoes **MUST** be renewed on both rear wheels at the same time - **NEVER** renew the shoes on only one

wheel, as uneven braking may result. Also, the dust created by wear of the shoes may contain asbestos, which is a health hazard. Never blow it out with compressed air, and don't inhale any of it. An approved filtering mask should be worn when working on the brakes. **DO NOT** use petroleum-based solvents to clean brake parts - use brake cleaner or methylated spirit only.



6.5A . . . then from the wheel cylinder at the top



6.5B Elastic band fitted round the wheel cylinder to prevent piston ejection



6.7A Disconnecting the handbrake cable from the trailing brake shoe



6.7B Disconnecting the support spring from the strut



6.8 Disconnecting the strut from the leading brake shoe

suitable elastic band (or wire) lengthwise over the cylinder/pistons (see illustrations).

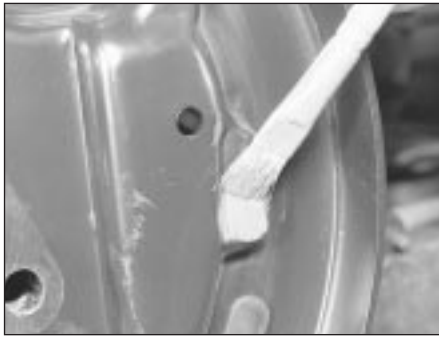
6 Disconnect the upper return (pull-off) spring from the brake shoes.

7 Unhook the handbrake cable from the handbrake operating lever on the trailing shoe. Disconnect the support spring from the strut, twist the trailing shoe through 90°, and detach it from the strut (see illustrations).

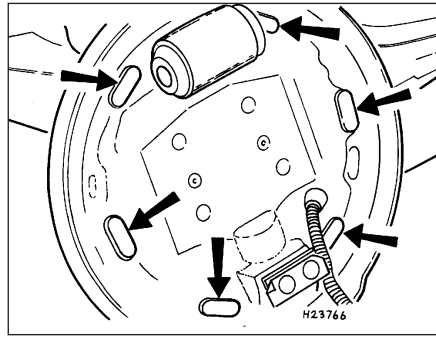
8 Disconnect the strut from the leading shoe. As the strut is pulled from the shoe, the automatic adjuster will operate and release the pawl from the shoe (see illustration).

9 Clean the adjuster strut and its associated components.

10 Clean the backplate, then apply a little high-melting-point grease to the shoe contact



6.10A Applying high-melting-point grease to the brake backplate



6.10B Brake shoe contact points (arrowed) to be lubricated on the backplate



6.11 Reconnect the upper return spring to the leading . . .

points on the backplate and the lower anchor plate (see illustrations).

11 Transfer the strut and the upper return spring onto the new leading shoe (see illustration).

12 Locate the other end of the upper return spring into the new trailing shoe, then twisting the shoe, engage the strut support spring and strut. When reconnected, check that the cam and pawl of the automatic adjuster have engaged (see illustrations).

13 Remove the elastic band (or wire retainer) from the wheel cylinder. Reconnect the handbrake cable to the operating lever on the trailing shoe, and refit the trailing shoe assembly into position on the backplate. As the shoe is engaged over the wheel cylinder, be careful not to damage the rubber dust cover.

14 Reconnect the lower return spring to the trailing shoe and, checking that the handbrake operating lever is resting on the lever stop head (not wedged against the side), locate the shoe in the bottom anchor plate. Refit the steady pin, spring and cup to secure the shoe in position.

15 Offer the leading shoe onto the backplate and insert its steady pin, spring and cup to hold it in place.

16 Reconnect the lower return spring to the leading shoe, using a screwdriver to stretch the spring end into the location hole.

17 Refit the upper return spring, using a

screwdriver to stretch the spring end into the location hole.

18 Check that the brake shoes and their associated components are correctly refitted, then refit the brake drum with reference to Section 5.

19 Repeat the procedure on the remaining rear brake.

7 Rear wheel cylinder - removal, overhaul and refitting



Removal

1 Remove the brake drum as described in Section 5.

2 Pull the brake shoes apart at the top end, so that they are just clear of the wheel cylinder. The automatic adjuster will hold the shoes in this position so that the cylinder can be withdrawn.

3 Using a brake hose clamp or self-locking wrench with protected jaws, clamp the flexible brake hose forward of the shock absorber (midway between the hose protective sleeve and the hose rigid connection bracket on the underside of the body). This will minimise brake fluid loss during subsequent operations.

4 Wipe away all traces of dirt around the brake hose union at the rear of the wheel

cylinder, then loosen off the hose-to-wheel cylinder union nut (see illustration).

5 Unscrew the two bolts securing the wheel cylinder to the backplate.

6 Withdraw the wheel cylinder from the backplate so that it is clear of the brake shoes, then holding the brake hose steady to prevent it twisting, unscrew and detach the wheel cylinder from the hose. Plug the hose, to prevent the possible ingress of dirt and to minimise further fluid loss whilst the cylinder is detached from it.

Overhaul

7 Clean the external surfaces of the cylinder, then pull free the dust cover from each end of the cylinder.

8 The pistons and seals will probably shake out; if not, use a foot pump to apply air pressure through the hydraulic union and eject them.

9 Clean the pistons and the cylinder by washing in fresh hydraulic fluid or methylated spirits (not petrol, paraffin or any other mineral-based fluid). Examine the surfaces of the pistons and the cylinder bores. Look for any signs of rust, scoring or metal-to-metal rubbing, which if evident, will necessitate renewal of the wheel cylinder (see illustration).

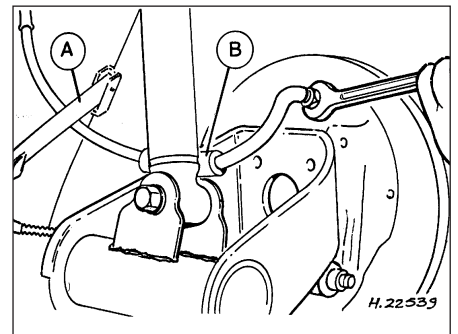
10 Begin reassembly by lubricating the first piston in clean hydraulic fluid. Manipulate its



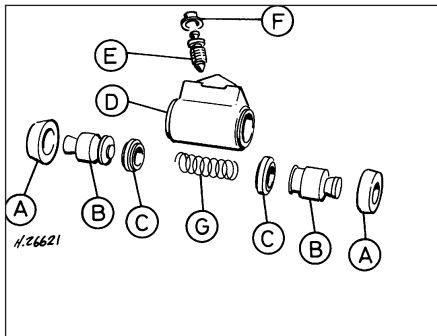
6.12A . . . and trailing shoe



6.12B Brake shoes, strut and upper springs reconnected



7.4 Disconnecting the hydraulic hose from the rear wheel cylinder. Note the hose clamp (A) and the protective sleeve on the hose (B)



7.9 Rear wheel cylinder components

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| A Dust cover | E Bleed nipple |
| B Piston | F Dust cap |
| C Piston seal | G Spring |
| D Wheel cylinder body | |

new seal into position so that its raised lip faces away from the brake shoe bearing face of the piston.

11 Insert the piston into the cylinder from the opposite end of the cylinder body, and push it through to its normal location in the bore.

12 Insert the spring into the cylinder, then fit the second new seal into position on the second piston (as described for the first) and fit the second piston into the wheel cylinder. Take care not to damage the lip of the seal as the piston is inserted into the cylinder - additional lubrication and a slight twisting action may help. Only use fingers (no tools) to manipulate the piston and seal into position.

13 Fit the new dust covers to each end of the piston.

Refitting

14 Wipe clean the backplate, and remove the plug from the end of the hydraulic hose. Carefully screw the cylinder onto the hose connector, and then fit the cylinder onto the backplate. Tighten the retaining bolts to securely, then fully tighten the hydraulic hose union.

15 Retract the automatic brake adjuster mechanism so that the brake shoes engage with the pistons of the wheel cylinder.

16 Remove the clamp from the flexible brake hose. Ensure that the protective sleeve on the

hose is adjacent to the shock absorber (see illustration 7.4).

17 Refit the brake drum with reference to Section 5.

18 Bleed the brake hydraulic system as described in Section 17. Providing suitable precautions were taken to minimise loss of fluid, it should only be necessary to bleed the relevant rear brake.

8 Rear brake backplate - removal and refitting

Drum brake models

Removal

1 On Hatchback/Saloon/Estate models, remove the brake drum/hub assembly as described in Section 5. On Van models, remove the brake drum as described in Section 5, then remove the rear hub assembly as described in Chapter 10.

2 Remove the rear brake shoes as described in Section 6.

3 Remove the wheel cylinder from the backplate as described in Section 7.

4 Compress the three retaining lugs, and release the handbrake cable from the backplate by pushing it back through the plate.

5 Drill out the pop-rivets securing the backplate to the rear axle, and remove the backplate (see illustration).

Refitting

6 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Check that the plate is correctly located (with the wheel cylinder aperture at the top) before riveting it into position.

7 Refit the handbrake cable, and ensure that the retaining lugs are secure.

8 Refit the wheel cylinder as described in Section 7.

9 Refit the rear brake shoes as described in Section 6.

10 Refit the brake drum/hub as described in Section 5, or the rear hub assembly as described in Chapter 10, according to model.

11 On completion, bleed the brake hydraulic system as described in Section 17.

Disc brake models

Removal

12 Remove the rear brake disc as described in Section 11, then remove the rear hub assembly as described in Chapter 10.

13 Remove the handbrake shoes as described in Section 20.

14 Drill out the pop-rivets securing the backplate to the rear axle, and remove the backplate.

Refitting

15 Refit in the reverse order of removal, securing the backplate with new pop-rivets.

16 Refit the handbrake shoes as described in Section 20.

17 Refit the rear brake disc as described in Section 11, and the rear hub assembly as described in Chapter 10.

9 Rear brake pads - renewal

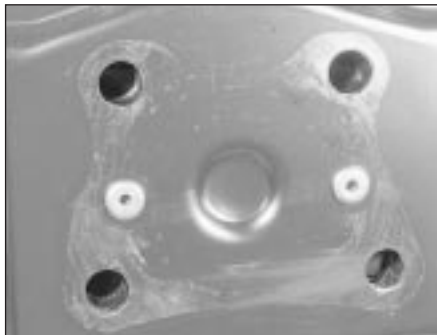


Warning: Disc brake pads must be renewed on **BOTH** rear wheels at the same time - **NEVER** renew the pads on only one wheel, as uneven braking may result. Dust created by wear of the pads may contain asbestos, which is a health hazard. Never blow it out with compressed air, and do not inhale any of it. **DO NOT** use petroleum-based solvents to clean brake parts - use brake cleaner or methylated spirit only. **DO NOT** allow any brake fluid, oil or grease to contact the brake pads or disc. Also refer to the warnings at the start of Sections 1 and 17 concerning brake fluid.

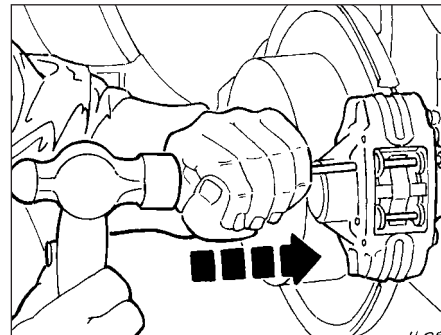
1 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the car and support it on axle stands. Remove the rear roadwheels.

2 Using a hammer and suitable punch, drift out the two brake pad retaining pins, and lift away the anti-rattle plate (see illustration).

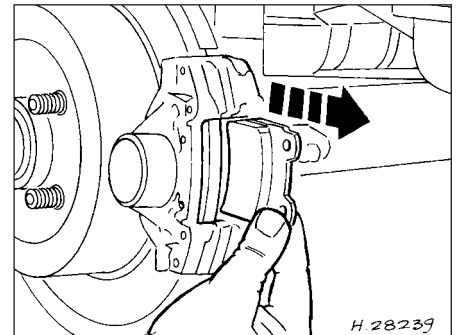
3 Withdraw the inner and outer brake pads from the caliper (see illustration). If the old pads are to be refitted, ensure that they are identified so that they can be returned to their original positions.



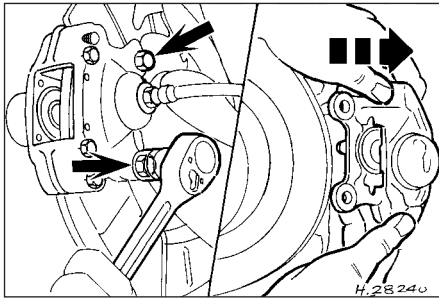
8.5 Backplate-to-stub axle rivets



9.2 Drift out the two rear brake pad retaining pins using a punch



9.3 Withdraw the inner and outer rear brake pads from the caliper



10.5 Undo the two caliper retaining bolts and withdraw the caliper from the disc

4 Brush the dust and dirt from the caliper and pistons, but *do not inhale it, as it is a health hazard*. Inspect the dust cover around the pistons for damage and for evidence of fluid leaks, which if found will necessitate caliper overhaul as described in Section 10. Inspect the anti-rattle plate for corrosion, and if necessary renew it.

5 If new brake pads are to fitted, the caliper pistons will need to be pushed back into their bores, to allow for the extra pad thickness. Use a C-clamp or suitably-protected screwdriver as a lever to do this. Note that, as the pistons are pressed back, they will displace the fluid in the system, causing the fluid level in the brake master cylinder reservoir to rise and possibly overflow. To avoid this possibility, a small quantity of fluid should be syphoned from the reservoir. If any brake fluid is spilt onto the bodywork, hoses or adjacent components in the engine compartment, wipe it clean without delay.

6 Prior to refitting, check that the pads and the disc are clean. Where new pads are to be installed, peel the protective backing paper from them. If the old pads are to be refitted, ensure that they are correctly located as noted during their removal.

7 Locate the inner and outer brake pads into position in the caliper, and refit the upper retaining pin.

8 Locate the anti-rattle plate in position, and refit the lower retaining pin.

9 Repeat the procedure on the opposite rear brake assembly.

10 Before lowering the vehicle, check that the fluid level in the brake master cylinder reservoir is up to the "Maximum" level mark, and top-up with the specified fluid type if required. Depress the brake pedal a few times to position the pads against the disc, then recheck the fluid level in the reservoir and further top-up the fluid level if necessary.

11 Refit the roadwheels, then lower the vehicle to the ground. Tighten the roadwheel retaining nuts to the specified torque setting.

12 To allow the new brake pads to bed-in and reach full efficiency, a running-in period of approximately 100 miles or so should be observed before hard use and heavy braking.

10 Rear brake caliper - removal, overhaul and refitting



Removal

1 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the car and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate rear roadwheel.

2 Remove the rear brake pads as described in Section 9.

3 Fit a brake hose clamp to the flexible brake hose leading to the rear brake caliper. This will minimise brake fluid loss during subsequent operations.

4 Loosen (but do not completely unscrew) the union on the caliper end of the flexible brake hose.

5 Undo the two caliper retaining bolts, and withdraw the caliper from the disc (**see illustration**).

6 Support the caliper in one hand, and prevent the brake hose from turning with the other hand. Unscrew the caliper from the hose, making sure that the hose is not twisted unduly or strained. Once the caliper is detached, cover or plug the open hydraulic unions to keep them clean.

Overhaul

7 With the caliper on the bench, wipe away all traces of dust and dirt, but *avoid inhaling the dust, as it is a health hazard*.

8 Remove the pistons from their bores by applying air pressure from a foot pump into the caliper hydraulic fluid hose port. In the event of a high-pressure air hose being used, keep the pressure as low as possible, to avoid the pistons being ejected too quickly and being damaged. Any fluid remaining in the caliper will probably be ejected with the pistons.

9 Using a suitable hooked tool, carefully extract the dust covers from their grooves in the pistons, and the seals from their grooves in the caliper bore, but take care not to scratch or damage the pistons and/or the bores in the caliper.

10 Clean all parts in methylated spirit or clean brake fluid, and wipe dry using a clean lint-free cloth. Inspect the pistons and caliper bores for signs of damage, scuffing or corrosion; if these conditions are evident, renew the caliper assembly.

11 If the components are in satisfactory condition, a repair kit which includes new seals and dust covers must be obtained.

12 Lubricate the caliper bores and the seals with clean brake fluid, and carefully fit the seals in the caliper bore. Use the fingers only (no tools) to manipulate them into position in their grooves. When in position, check that the seals are not distorted or twisted.

13 Locate the dust covers over the pistons so that their inner diameters are engaged in the piston grooves. Insert the pistons into the caliper. Push the pistons into position in the

bore, and simultaneously press the dust covers into the caliper so that they are seated correctly. Take particular care not to distort or damage the seals or dust cover as they are fitted.

Refitting

14 Unplug the hydraulic hose, check that the unions are clean, then reconnect the caliper to the hose, reversing the disconnection procedure so that the hose is not twisted or strained. The hose union connection can be fully tightened when the caliper is refitted.

15 Slide the caliper over the brake disc, and secure with the two retaining bolts tightened to the specified torque.

16 The brake hydraulic hose can now be fully tightened. When secured, ensure that the hose does not foul on the wheel arch or suspension components.

17 Refit the brake pads as described in Section 9.

18 Top-up the hydraulic fluid level in the reservoir, and bleed the brake circuit as described in Section 17.

19 Refit the roadwheel, lower the vehicle to the ground, and then tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque setting.

11 Rear brake disc - inspection, removal and refitting



Note: To prevent uneven braking, **BOTH** rear brake discs should be renewed or reground at the same time.

Inspection

1 Chock the front roadwheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate rear roadwheel.

2 Remove the brake pads as described in Section 9, then undo the two brake caliper retaining bolts. Withdraw the caliper from the disc, and tie it up using string or wire from a convenient location. Avoid straining the brake hose.

3 Temporarily refit two of the wheel nuts to diagonally-opposite studs, with the flat sides of the nuts against the disc. Tighten the nuts progressively, to hold the disc firmly.

4 Scrape any corrosion from the disc. Rotate the disc, and examine it for deep scoring, grooving or cracks. Using a micrometer, measure the thickness of the disc in several places. Light wear and scoring is normal, but if excessive, the disc should be removed, and either reground by a specialist, or renewed. If regrinding is undertaken, the minimum thickness must be maintained. Obviously, if the disc is cracked, it must be renewed.

5 Using a dial gauge or a flat metal block and feeler gauges, check that the disc run-out 10 mm from the outer edge does not exceed the limit given in the Specifications. To do this, fix the measuring equipment, and rotate

the disc, noting the variation in measurement as the disc is rotated (see illustration 4.4). The difference between the minimum and maximum measurements recorded is the disc run-out.

6 If the run-out is greater than the specified amount, check for variations of the disc thickness as follows. Mark the disc at eight positions 45° apart, then using a micrometer, measure the disc thickness at the eight positions, 15 mm in from the outer edge. If the variation between the minimum and maximum readings is greater than the specified amount, the disc should be renewed.

Removal

7 With the caliper removed as previously described, remove the wheel nuts which were temporarily refitted in paragraph 3.

8 Ensure that the handbrake is fully released, then using a Torx-type socket bit or driver, unscrew the screw securing the disc to the hub and withdraw the disc. If it is tight, lightly tap its rear face with a hide or plastic mallet.

Refitting

9 Refit the disc in a reversal of the removal sequence. If new discs are being fitted, first remove their protective coating. Ensure complete cleanliness of the hub and disc mating faces, and tighten the screw securely.

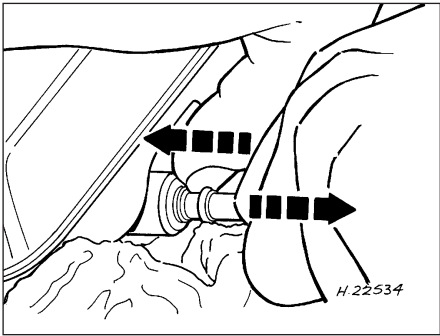
10 Refit the caliper and secure with the retaining bolts tightened to the specified torque.

11 Refit the rear brake pads as described in Section 9.

12 Refit the roadwheel, lower the vehicle to the ground, and tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque wrench setting.



12.2A Brake master cylinder and hydraulic line connections



12.2B Disconnecting the brake fluid return pipes from the reservoir on ABS-equipped models

3 Unscrew the mounting nuts and withdraw the master cylinder from the servo unit.

4 If required, the master cylinder can be dismantled for inspection and the seals renewed as described in the following Section.

Refitting

5 Before refitting the master cylinder, clean the mounting faces.

6 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Ensure that the vacuum servo unit seal is in position, and tighten the master cylinder retaining nuts to the specified torque wrench setting. Finally bleed the hydraulic system as described in Section 17.

13 Master cylinder - inspection and overhaul



1 With the master cylinder removed, empty any remaining fluid from it, and clean it externally.

2 Secure the master cylinder in a vice fitted with soft-faced jaws to avoid damaging the cylinder.

3 Withdraw the hydraulic fluid reservoir from the top of the master cylinder by pulling and rocking it free from its retaining seals.

4 Extract the reservoir seals from the top face of the master cylinder.

5 Extract the circlip from its groove in the inner port at the rear of the master cylinder.

6 Pull free the primary piston from the rear end of the master cylinder bore, together with the spacer, seal and steel washer.

7 Extract the secondary piston assembly by shaking or lightly tapping it free from the cylinder (see illustration).

8 To dismantle the primary piston and to remove its seal, undo the retaining screw and detach the spring from the piston. Lever the seal retainer tabs free using a suitable screwdriver and remove the seal. As it is removed, note the fitted direction of the seal on the piston (see illustrations).

9 To dismantle the secondary piston, pull free the spring (note its orientation), remove the

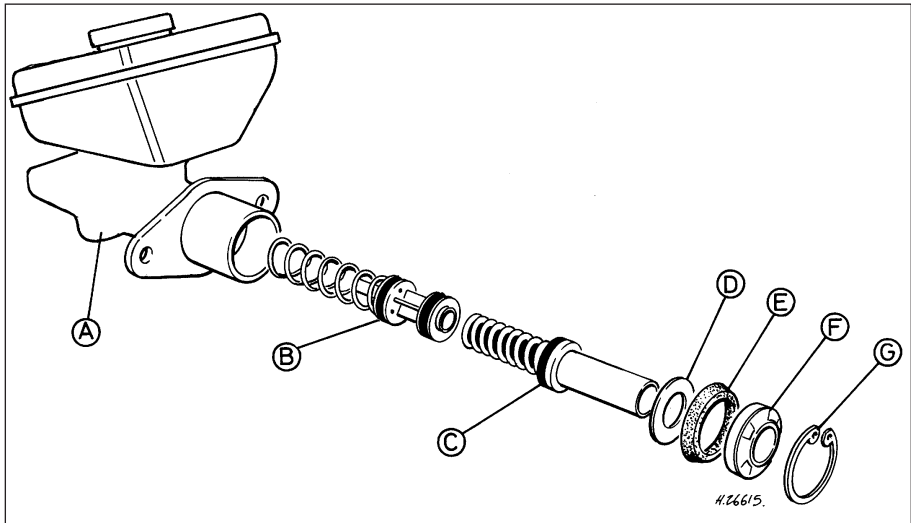
12 Master cylinder - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the wiring multi-plug from the fluid level warning indicator in the reservoir filler cap, then remove the filler cap from the reservoir. Note that the filler cap must not be inverted. The reservoir should now be emptied by syphoning or drawing out the fluid with a pipette.

2 Identify each brake pipe and its connection to the master cylinder (see illustration). Unscrew the fluid line to master cylinder union nuts and disconnect the fluid lines. On models equipped with ABS, when disconnecting the fluid return pipes from the reservoir, press the retaining boss into the reservoir and pull free the fluid line (see illustration). Plug the connections and tape over the pipe ends, to prevent the entry of dust and dirt.

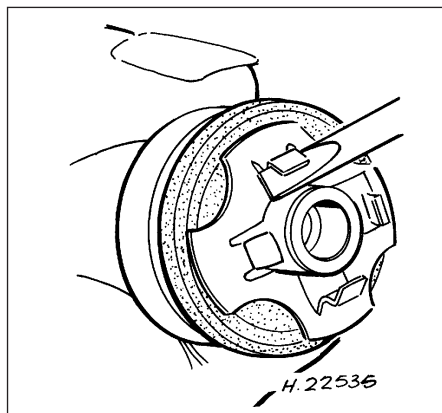


13.7 Exploded view of the master cylinder

- A Master cylinder body
- B Secondary piston

- C Primary piston
- D Seal
- E Steel washer

- F Plastic spacer
- G Circlip



13.8A Release the seal retainer tabs on the primary piston

seal retainer using the same method as that for the primary piston seal, and remove the seal (noting its direction of fitting). Prise free the seal from the other end of the secondary piston, again noting its direction of fitting (see illustration).

10 Wash all components of the cylinder in methylated spirit or clean hydraulic brake fluid of the specified type. Do not use any other type of cleaning fluid.

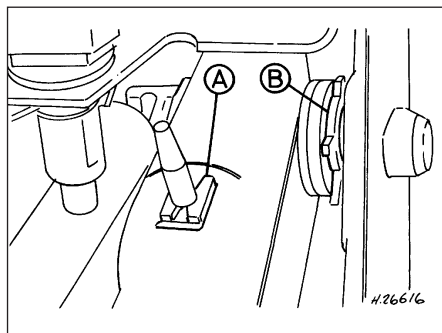
11 Inspect the master cylinder and piston assemblies for any signs of excessive wear or damage. Deep scoring in the cylinder bore and/or on the piston surfaces will necessitate a new master cylinder being fitted.

12 If the cylinder is in a serviceable condition, obtain a cylinder seals/repair kit. Once removed, the seals must always be renewed.

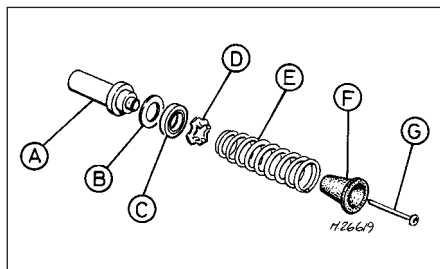
13 Check that all components are perfectly clean before they refitted. Smear them in new brake fluid of the specified type as they are assembled. *Do not allow grease, old fluid or any other lubricant to contact the components during reassembly.*

14 Reassemble each piston in the reverse order of dismantling. Ensure that the seals are correctly orientated, and that the retainers are securely fitted.

15 Lubricate the pistons before refitting them

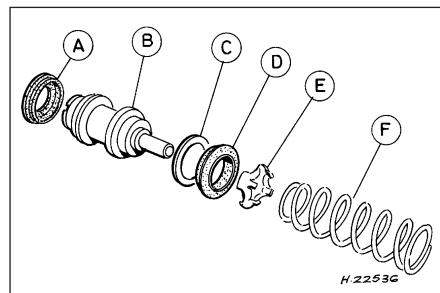


14.4 Brake pedal-to-cross-link circlip (A) and the brake pedal cross-link retaining clip (B)



13.8B Primary piston components

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| A Piston | E Spring |
| B Shim | F Boot |
| C Seal | G Retaining screw |
| D Seal retainer | |



13.9 Secondary piston components

- | | |
|----------|-----------------|
| A Seal | D Seal |
| B Piston | E Seal retainer |
| C Shim | F Spring |

to the cylinder and as they are inserted, use a twisting action to assist in pushing them into position.

16 With the secondary and primary pistons in position, fit the steel washer, a new seal, and the spacer; secure them with the circlip. Ensure that the circlip is fully engaged into its retaining groove in the rear end of the cylinder.

17 Refit the master cylinder, top-up the reservoir with the specified fluid, and bleed the brake hydraulic system (see Sections 12 and 17 for details).

14 Brake pedal - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Working inside the car, move the driver's seat fully to the rear, to allow maximum working area.
- 3 Disconnect the wiring connector from the stop-light switch, then twist the switch and release it from the mounting bracket.
- 4 Using a suitable hooked tool, extract the

circlip from the pedal cross-link (see illustration).

5 Prise free and remove the retaining clip securing the pedal-to-cross-link rod.

6 Press the brake pedal pivot shaft through the mounting box just far enough the release and remove the pedal and spacers.

7 Prise the bushes out from each side of the brake pedal, and renew them if necessary (see illustration).

Refitting

8 Prior to refitting, apply a small amount of molybdenum disulphide grease to the brake pedal pivot shaft.

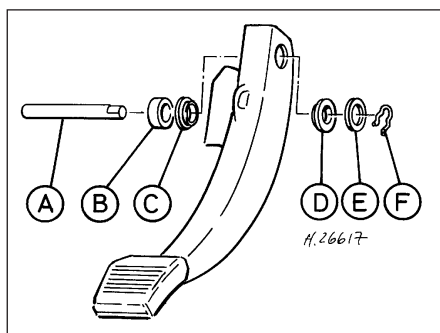
9 Refit in the reverse order to removal. Ensure that the pedal bushes are correctly located, and that the pedal shaft "D" section locates in the pedal box right-hand support.

10 On completion, refit the stop-light switch, and adjust it as described in Chapter 12.

15 Brake pedal-to-servo cross-link - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Remove the vacuum servo unit as described in Section 18.
- 3 Where necessary, remove the air cleaner as described in Chapter 4 to allow increased access to the cross-link assembly.
- 4 Working inside the vehicle, prise free and remove the retaining clip from the brake pedal-to-cross-link pushrod.
- 5 Arrange for an assistant to support the weight of the cross-link assembly on the engine compartment side of the bulkhead. Fold down the bulkhead trim covering in the footwell on each side, to allow access to the cross-link support bracket securing nuts on the bulkhead. Unscrew the nuts on each side of the bulkhead, and remove the cross-link



14.7 Brake pedal components

- | | |
|---------------|----------|
| A Pivot shaft | D Bush |
| B Spacer | E Washer |
| C Bush | F Clip |



15.5 Brake system cross-link mounting to the bulkhead

assembly from the bulkhead in the engine compartment (see illustration).

6 Clean the linkage components, and examine the bushes for excessive wear. Renew the bushes if necessary (see illustration).

Refitting

7 Refitting of the cross-link assembly is a reversal of the removal procedure. Refer to Section 18 to refit the vacuum servo unit.

8 Top-up the fluid level in the master cylinder reservoir, and bleed the brake hydraulic system as described in Section 17.

16 Hydraulic pipes and hoses - inspection, removal and refitting



Inspection

1 Jack up the front and rear of the vehicle, and support on axle stands.

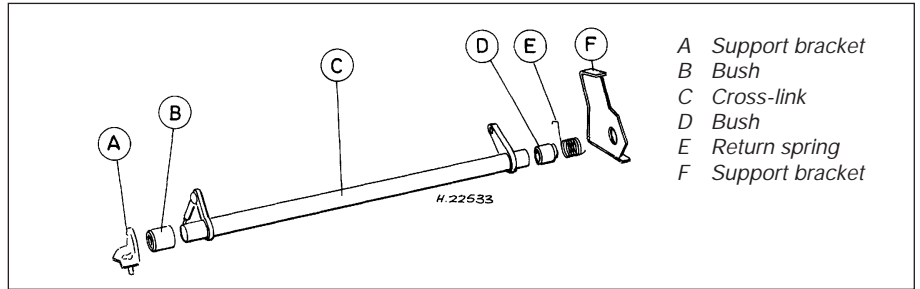
2 Check for signs of leakage at the pipe unions, then examine the flexible hoses for signs of cracking, chafing and fraying.

3 The brake pipes should be examined carefully for signs of dents, corrosion or other damage. Corrosion should be scraped off, and if the depth of pitting is significant, the pipes renewed. This is particularly likely in those areas underneath the vehicle body where the pipes are exposed and unprotected.

4 Renew any defective brake pipes and/or hoses.



16.6 Typical rigid brake pipe connections and securing clips to the body



15.6 Brake pedal cross-link assembly

Removal

5 If any section of pipe or hose is to be removed, the loss of fluid may be reduced by removing the hydraulic fluid reservoir filler cap, placing a piece of polythene over the filler neck, and securing it with an elastic band. If a section of pipe is to be removed from the master cylinder, the reservoir should be emptied by syphoning out the fluid or drawing out the fluid with a pipette. If any brake fluid is spilt onto the bodywork, it must be wiped clean without delay.

6 To remove a section of pipe, hold the adjoining hose union nut with a suitable spanner to prevent it from turning, then unscrew the union nut at the end of the pipe and release it (see illustration). Repeat the procedure at the other end of the pipe, then release the pipe from the clips attaching it to the body. Where the union nuts are exposed to the full force of the weather, they can sometimes be quite tight. If an open-ended spanner is used, burring of the flats on the nuts is not uncommon, and for this reason it is preferable to use a split ring spanner which will engage all the flats. If such a spanner is not available, self-locking grips may be used, although this is not recommended.

7 To further minimise the loss of fluid when disconnecting a flexible brake line, clamp the hose as near to the joint to be detached as is possible using a brake hose clamp, or failing this, a self-locking wrench fitted with protective jaws. To remove a flexible hose, first clean the ends of the hose and the surrounding area, then unscrew the union nut(s) from the hose end(s). Recover the spring clip and withdraw the hose from the

serrated mounting in the support bracket. Where applicable, unscrew the hose from the caliper (see illustrations).

8 Brake pipes with flared ends and union nuts in place can be obtained (individually or in sets) from Ford dealers or accessory shops. The pipe is then bent to shape, using the old pipe as a guide, and is ready for fitting to the car.

Refitting

9 Refitting the pipes and hoses is a reversal of removal. Make sure that all brake pipes are securely supported in their clips, and ensure that the hoses are not kinked. Check also that the hoses are clear of all suspension components and underbody fittings, and will remain clear during movement of the suspension and steering. After refitting, remove the polythene from the reservoir, and bleed the brake hydraulic system as described in Section 17.

17 Hydraulic system - bleeding



Warning: Hydraulic fluid is poisonous; wash off immediately and thoroughly in the case of skin contact, and seek immediate medical advice if any fluid is swallowed or gets into the eyes. Certain types of hydraulic fluid are inflammable, and may ignite when allowed into contact with hot components; when servicing the hydraulic system, it is safest to assume that the fluid IS inflammable, and to take precautions against the risk of fire as though it is petrol



16.7A Brake hose clamp fitted to minimise fluid loss



16.7B Flexible-to-rigid hydraulic brake line connection. Securing clip to location bracket is arrowed

that is being handled. Finally, it is hygroscopic (it absorbs moisture from the air) - old fluid may be contaminated and unfit for further use. When topping-up or renewing the fluid, always use the recommended type, and ensure that it comes from a freshly-opened sealed container.



Hydraulic fluid is an effective paint stripper, and will attack plastics; if any is spilt, it should be washed off

immediately, using copious quantities of fresh water.

1 The correct operation of any hydraulic system is only possible after removing all air from the components and circuit; and this is achieved by bleeding the system.

2 During the bleeding procedure, add only clean, unused hydraulic fluid of the recommended type; never re-use fluid that has already been bled from the system. Ensure that sufficient fluid is available before starting work.

3 If there is any possibility of incorrect fluid being already in the system, the brake components and circuit must be flushed completely with uncontaminated, correct fluid, and new seals should be fitted throughout the system.

4 If hydraulic fluid has been lost from the system, or air has entered because of a leak, ensure that the fault is cured before proceeding further.

5 Park the vehicle on level ground, and apply the handbrake. Switch off the engine, then (where applicable) depress the brake pedal several times to dissipate the vacuum from the servo unit.

6 Check that all pipes and hoses are secure, unions tight and bleed screws closed. Remove the dust caps (where applicable), and clean any dirt from around the bleed screws.

7 Unscrew the master cylinder reservoir cap, and top-up the master cylinder reservoir to the "Maximum" level. *Remember to maintain the fluid level at least above the "Minimum" level line throughout the procedure, otherwise there is a risk of further air entering the system.*

8 There are a number of one-man, do-it-yourself brake bleeding kits currently available from motor accessory shops. It is recommended that one of these kits is used whenever possible, as they greatly simplify the bleeding operation, and also reduce the risk of expelled air and fluid being drawn back into the system. If such a kit is not available, the basic (two-man) method must be used, which is described in detail below.

9 If a kit is to be used, prepare the vehicle as described previously, and follow the kit manufacturer's instructions, as the procedure may vary slightly according to the type being used; generally, they are as outlined below in the relevant sub-section.

10 Whichever method is used, the same sequence must be followed (paragraphs 11 and 12) to ensure the removal of all air from the system.

Bleeding sequence

11 If the system has been only partially disconnected, and suitable precautions were taken to minimise fluid loss, it should be necessary to bleed only that part of the system (ie the primary or secondary circuit).

12 If the complete system is to be bled, then it is suggested that you work in the following sequence:

- a) Right-hand rear wheel.
- b) Left-hand rear wheel.
- c) Right-hand front wheel.
- d) Left-hand front wheel.

Bleeding - basic (two-man) method

13 Collect a clean glass jar, a suitable length of plastic or rubber tubing which is a tight fit over the bleed screw, and a ring spanner to fit the screw. The help of an assistant will also be required.

14 Remove the dust cap from the first screw in the sequence (if not already done) (see illustration). Fit a suitable spanner and tube to the screw, place the other end of the tube in the jar, and pour in sufficient fluid to cover the end of the tube.

15 Ensure that the master cylinder reservoir fluid level is maintained at least above the "Minimum" level throughout the procedure.

16 Have the assistant fully depress the brake pedal several times to build up pressure, then maintain it down on the final downstroke.

17 While pedal pressure is maintained, unscrew the bleed screw (approximately one turn) and allow the compressed fluid and air to flow into the jar. The assistant should maintain pedal pressure, following the pedal down to the floor if necessary, and should not release the pedal until instructed to do so. When the flow stops, tighten the bleed screw again. Have the assistant release the pedal slowly, and recheck the reservoir fluid level.

18 Repeat the steps given in paragraphs 16 and 17 until the fluid emerging from the bleed screw is free from air bubbles. If the master cylinder has been drained and refilled, and air

is being bled from the first screw in the sequence, allow at least five seconds between cycles for the master cylinder passages to refill.

19 When no more air bubbles appear, tighten the bleed screw securely, remove the tube and spanner, and refit the dust cap (where applicable). Do not overtighten the bleed screw.

20 Repeat the procedure on the remaining screws in the sequence, until all air is removed from the system and the brake pedal feels firm again.

Bleeding - using a one-way valve kit

21 As their name implies, these kits consist of a length of tubing with a one-way valve fitted, to prevent expelled air and fluid being drawn back into the system; some kits include a translucent container, which can be positioned so that the air bubbles can be more easily seen flowing from the end of the tube.

22 The kit is connected to the bleed screw, which is then opened (see illustration). The user returns to the driver's seat, depresses the brake pedal with a smooth, steady stroke, and slowly releases it; this is repeated until the expelled fluid is clear of air bubbles.

23 Note that these kits simplify work so much that it is easy to forget the master cylinder reservoir fluid level; ensure that this is maintained at least above the "Minimum" level at all times.

Bleeding - using a pressure-bleeding kit

24 These kits are usually operated by the reservoir of pressurised air contained in the spare tyre. However, note that it will probably be necessary to reduce the pressure to a lower level than normal; refer to the instructions supplied with the kit.

25 By connecting a pressurised, fluid-filled container to the master cylinder reservoir, bleeding can be carried out simply by opening each screw in turn (in the specified sequence), and allowing the fluid to flow out until no more air bubbles can be seen in the expelled fluid.

26 This method has the advantage that the large reservoir of fluid provides an additional



17.14 Rear brake bleed nipple and dust cap (arrowed)



17.22 Bleeding a front brake using a one-way valve kit

safeguard against air being drawn into the system during bleeding.

27 Pressure-bleeding is particularly effective when bleeding "difficult" systems, or when bleeding the complete system at the time of routine fluid renewal.

All methods

28 When bleeding is complete, and firm pedal feel is restored, wash off any spilt fluid, tighten the bleed screws securely, and refit their dust caps.

29 Check the hydraulic fluid level in the master cylinder reservoir, and top-up if necessary (Chapter 1).

30 Discard any hydraulic fluid that has been bled from the system; it will not be fit for re-use.

31 Check the feel of the brake pedal. If it feels at all spongy, air must still be present in the system, and further bleeding is required. Failure to bleed satisfactorily after a reasonable repetition of the bleeding procedure may be due to worn master cylinder seals.

18 Vacuum servo unit - testing, removal and refitting



Testing

1 To test the operation of the servo, depress the footbrake four or five times to exhaust the vacuum, then start the engine while keeping the footbrake depressed. As the engine starts, there should be a noticeable "give" in the brake pedal as vacuum builds up. Allow the engine to run for at least two minutes, and then switch it off. If the brake pedal is depressed again, it should be possible to detect a hiss from the servo when the pedal is depressed. After about four or five applications, no further hissing will be heard, and the pedal will feel considerably firmer.

2 Before assuming that a problem exists in the servo itself, check the non-return valve as described in the next Section.



19.2 Detaching the vacuum hose from the servo unit

Removal

3 Refer to Section 12 and remove the master cylinder.

4 Disconnect the vacuum hose at the servo non-return valve by pulling it free. If it is reluctant to move, assist it by prising it free using a screwdriver with its blade inserted under the elbow flange.

5 Working inside the vehicle, move the front passenger seat fully rearwards, then peel back the footwell trim from the inner bulkhead on that side, to gain access to the two servo bracket retaining nuts. Unscrew and remove the nuts.

6 Unscrew and remove the four nuts securing the servo unit to the mounting bracket (see illustration).

7 Withdraw the servo unit so that its studs are clear of the bracket and pivot the inner bracket to one side. Extract the clevis pin to release the actuating rod from its shaft, then remove the servo unit.

8 Note that the servo unit cannot be dismantled for repair or overhaul and, if faulty, must be renewed.

Refitting

9 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Refer to Section 12 for details of refitting the master cylinder.

19 Vacuum servo unit vacuum hose and non-return valve - removal, testing and refitting

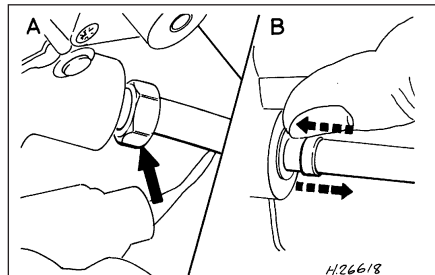


Removal

1 Depress the brake pedal three or four times to exhaust any remaining vacuum from the servo unit.

2 Carefully pull free and detach the servo vacuum hose from the servo unit (see illustration). If the hose is reluctant to move, prise it free with the aid of a screwdriver, inserting its blade under the flange of the elbow.

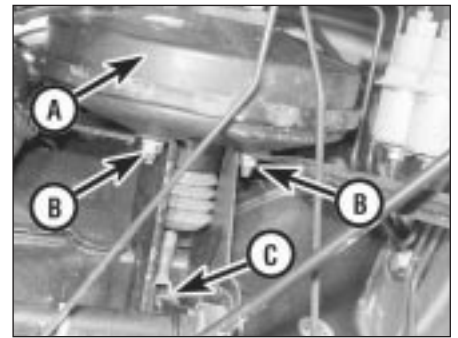
3 Detach the vacuum hose from its inlet manifold connection. Depending on the fixing (see illustration), undo the union nut and withdraw the hose, or press the hose and its



19.3 Servo vacuum hose detachment from the manifold

A Hose secured by union nut

B Hose secured by retaining collar



18.6 Underside view of the servo unit (A) mounting bracket nuts (B) and the actuating rod connection (C)

retaining collar inwards, then holding the collar in, withdraw the hose.

4 If the hose or the fixings are damaged or in poor condition, they must be renewed.

Non-return valve testing

5 Examine the non-return valve for damage and signs of deterioration, and renew it if necessary (see illustration). The valve may be tested by blowing through its connecting hoses in both directions. It should only be possible to blow from the servo end to the manifold end.

Refitting

6 Refitting is a reversal of removal. If fitting a new non-return valve, ensure that it is fitted the correct way round.

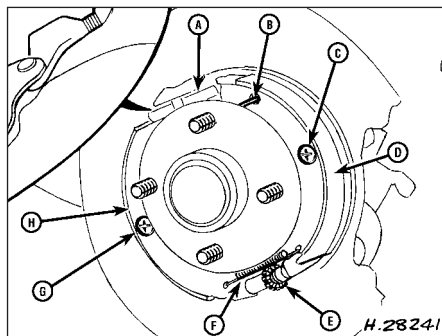
20 Handbrake shoes (disc brake models) - renewal



Warning: The dust created by wear of the shoes may contain asbestos, which is a health hazard. Never blow it out with compressed air, and don't inhale any of it. An approved filtering mask should be worn when working on the brakes. DO NOT use petroleum-based solvents to clean brake parts - use brake cleaner or methylated spirit only.



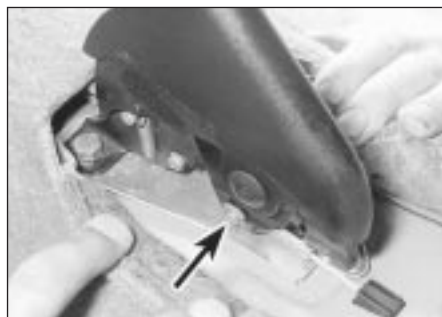
19.5 Non-return valve in the servo vacuum hose



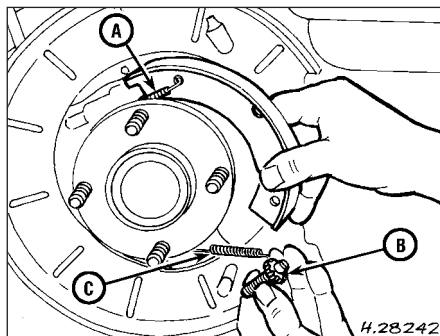
20.2 Handbrake shoe components (rear disc brake models)

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| A Relay lever | E Adjuster |
| B Upper pull-off spring | F Lower pull-off spring |
| C Steady spring | G Steady spring |
| D Brake shoe | H Brake shoe |

- 1 Remove the rear brake disc as described in Section 11.
- 2 Note the fitted positions of the springs, adjuster and handbrake shoes (see illustration).
- 3 Release the handbrake cable from the relay lever, referring to Section 23 if necessary.
- 4 Remove the shoe steady springs by depressing and turning them through 90°. Remove the springs and pins.
- 5 Pull the lower ends of the shoes apart to release the adjuster, then disconnect the lower pull-off spring from both shoes (see illustration).
- 6 Detach the upper ends of the shoes from the handbrake cable relay lever, then disconnect the upper pull-off spring and remove the two handbrake shoes.
- 7 Renew the handbrake shoes if they are significantly worn or in any way contaminated.
- 8 Clean the adjuster and its associated components.
- 9 Clean the backplate, then apply a little high-melting-point grease to the shoe contact points.
- 10 Refitting the handbrake shoes is a reversal of removal.
- 11 Repeat the procedure on the remaining rear brake.
- 12 On completion, adjust the handbrake as described in Chapter 1.



21.6 Handbrake primary cable-to-lever pin and retaining clip (arrowed)



20.5 Handbrake shoe upper pull-off spring (A), adjuster (B) and lower pull-off spring (C)

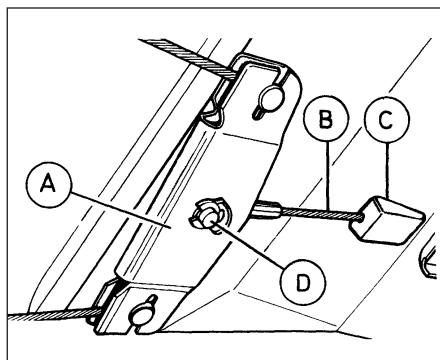
21 Handbrake lever - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 Chock the roadwheels to secure the vehicle.
- 2 Remove the front seats as described in Chapter 11.
- 3 Where applicable, remove the centre console as described in Chapter 11.
- 4 Peel back the carpet from the area around the handbrake lever to provide suitable access the lever and fittings (see illustration). Release the handbrake.
- 5 Detach the handbrake warning light lead from the switch.
- 6 Prise free the retaining clip and remove the primary cable pin (see illustration).
- 7 Undo the two retaining bolts, and remove the handbrake lever and spreader plate.

Refitting

- 8 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Ensure that the retaining bolts are securely tightened. Check the handbrake adjustment as described in Chapter 1 to complete.



22.4 Handbrake cable equaliser components

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| A Equaliser | D Equaliser pin and spring clip |
| B Primary cable | |
| C Cable guide | |



21.4 Prise back the carpet for access to the handbrake warning light switch lead connection and lever mounting bolts

22 Handbrake primary cable - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 Release the primary cable from the handbrake lever, as described in the previous Section.
- 2 Chock the front roadwheels, then jack up the vehicle at the rear and support it on axle stands.
- 3 Where applicable, detach the exhaust system and remove the heat shields from the underside floorpan to allow access to the primary cable connections underneath the vehicle (see Chapter 4).
- 4 Release the spring clip securing the pin, and extract the equaliser/cable pin. Detach the equaliser from the primary cable (see illustration).
- 5 Detach the cable guide from the floorpan, then withdraw the cable rearwards from the vehicle.

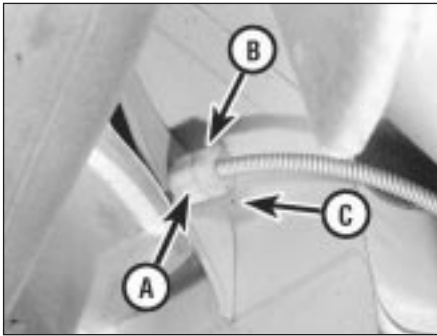
Refitting

- 6 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Ensure that the cable guide is secured in the floorpan, and lubricate the pivot pin with a liberal amount of high-melting-point grease.
- 7 Refit the exhaust system and heat shields with reference to Chapter 4 (where applicable).
- 8 Refer to Chapter 1 for details, and adjust the handbrake as required before lowering the vehicle to the ground.

23 Handbrake cable - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the car and support it on axle stands. Fully release the handbrake lever, and remove the rear wheel(s).
- 2 Refer to the previous Section for details,



23.4 Handbrake cable adjuster nut (A) locknut (B) and lockpin (C)



23.6A Compress the handbrake cable retaining lugs to release the cable from the brake backplate



23.6B Release the handbrake cable from its locating clips

and release the handbrake primary cable from the equaliser.

3 Disengage the right/left-hand cable(s) from the equaliser (as required).

4 Remove the lockpin from the adjuster, and the spring clip from the cable guides on the side concerned, then detach them from the underbody (see illustration).

Drum brake models

5 Remove the rear brake drum(s) and shoes as described in Sections 5 and 6 respectively.

6 Compress the handbrake cable retainer lugs and release the cable from the backplate, then pull the cable through. Release the cable from the underbody fixings, and remove it from the vehicle (see illustrations).

Disc brake models

7 Detach the handbrake return spring, then disconnect the cable end from the handbrake shoe relay lever.

8 Extract the circlip securing the handbrake outer cable to the support bracket, and withdraw the cable.

9 Release the cable from the underbody fixings, and remove it from the vehicle.

Refitting

All models

10 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Where applicable, refer to the appropriate Sections for details on the refitting of the brake shoes and drums.



24.1 Brake pressure control valves

24 Brake pressure control valves - removal and refitting



Warning: Hydraulic fluid is poisonous; wash off immediately and thoroughly in the case of skin contact, and seek immediate medical advice if any fluid is swallowed or gets into the eyes. Certain types of hydraulic fluid are inflammable, and may ignite when allowed into contact with hot components; when servicing the hydraulic system, it is safest to assume that the fluid IS inflammable, and to take precautions against the risk of fire as though it is petrol that is being handled. Hydraulic fluid is also an effective paint stripper, and will attack plastics; if any is spilt, it should be washed off immediately, using copious quantities of fresh water. Finally, it is hygroscopic (it absorbs moisture from the air) - old fluid may be contaminated and unfit for further use. When topping-up or renewing the fluid, always use the recommended type, and ensure that it comes from a freshly-opened sealed container.

Removal

1 The pressure control valves are located in the engine compartment, fixed to the left-hand inner wing panel (see illustration).

2 To remove the valve assembly, first detach the rigid brake pipes from the valves. As the pipes are disconnected, tape over the exposed ends, or fit plugs, to prevent the ingress of dirt and excessive fluid loss.

3 Unscrew and remove the valve support bracket retaining nut (under the wheel arch), and remove the valve assembly from the vehicle.

4 To remove the valves from the bracket,

slide free the retaining clips and detach the valve(s).

5 Check the general condition of the insulators; if necessary, renew them before refitting.

Refitting

6 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure.

7 On completion, bleed the complete hydraulic system as described in Section 17.

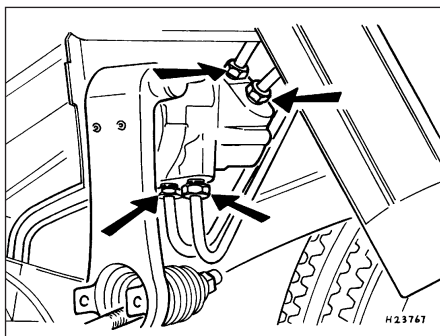
25 Light-laden valve (Van models) - removal and refitting



Warning: Hydraulic fluid is poisonous; wash off immediately and thoroughly in the case of skin contact, and seek immediate medical advice if any fluid is swallowed or gets into the eyes. Certain types of hydraulic fluid are inflammable, and may ignite when allowed into contact with hot components; when servicing the hydraulic system, it is safest to assume that the fluid IS inflammable, and to take precautions against the risk of fire as though it is petrol that is being handled. Hydraulic fluid is also an effective paint stripper, and will attack plastics; if any is spilt, it should be washed off immediately, using copious quantities of fresh water. Finally, it is hygroscopic (it absorbs moisture from the air) - old fluid may be contaminated and unfit for further use. When topping-up or renewing the fluid, always use the recommended type, and ensure that it comes from a freshly-opened sealed container.

Removal

1 For this operation, the vehicle must be raised for access underneath at the rear, but must still be resting on its wheels. Suitable ramps (or an inspection pit) will therefore be required. If positioning the vehicle on a pair of ramps, chock the front roadwheels.



25.2 Brake pipe connections to the light-laden valve

- 2 Detach the brake pipes from the valve (see illustration), and drain the fluid into a suitable container for disposal. Due to its location, care will be needed not to spill the fluid onto the hands - wear suitable protective gloves.
- 3 Detach the spring clip from the link rod at the axle end. Withdraw the washer and the valve link rod from the bracket on the axle, but take care not to dismantle the spacer tube from the link rod.
- 4 The axle bracket bush must be removed for renewal if it is worn or damaged.
- 5 Unscrew and remove the two retaining bolts, then withdraw the valve and the link rod from the mounting bracket.

Refitting

- 6 Where applicable, fit the new bush into the axle bracket.
- 7 Relocate the valve on the mounting bracket, and fit the retaining bolts.
- 8 Check that the brake pipe connections are clean, then reconnect the pipes.
- 9 Smear the axle bush end of the link rod with a small amount of general-purpose grease. Fit the link rod into the bush, refit the washer, and secure with the spring clip.
- 10 Top-up the fluid level in the master cylinder reservoir, then bleed the brake hydraulic system as described in Section 17. If the original valve has been refitted, ensure that the valve is held fully open whilst bleeding. If a new valve has been fitted, the bleed clip must be left in position whilst the

system is completely bled, then removed. The valve will need to be adjusted as described in the following Section.

26 Light-laden valve (Van models) - adjustment

- 1 For this operation, the vehicle must be raised for access underneath at the rear, but must be standing on its wheels. Suitable ramps (or an inspection pit) will therefore be required. If positioning the vehicle on a pair of ramps, chock the front roadwheels. The vehicle must be empty, and the fuel tank no more than half-full.
- 2 To adjust an original light-laden valve linkage, grip the flats on the end of the rod to prevent it from rotating, and turn the adjuster nut to position the end face of the rubber seal within the setting groove width (see illustrations).
- 3 To adjust a new light-laden valve, rotate the spacer tube to position the end face of the rubber seal within the setting groove width, then crimp over the end of the spacer tube against the threaded rod flats (next to the knurled section) (see illustration).

27 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) - description

An anti-lock braking system is available on certain models in the range. The system only becomes operational over speeds in excess of 7 mph (4 kph). It comprises an actuation unit (servo unit and special tandem master cylinder), a hydraulic unit, an ABS module, and a sensor on each front wheel hub.

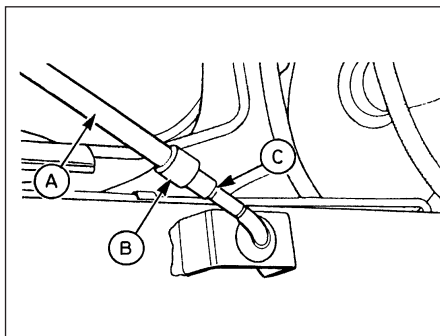
The hydraulic unit consists of a twin-circuit electric pump which is controlled by a speed sensor and modulator twin valve block (one valve for each channel).

The module is located in the engine compartment, and has four main functions: to control the ABS system; to measure the

vehicle speed; to monitor the electric components in the system; and to provide "On-board" system diagnosis. The electrical functions of the ABS module are continuously monitored by two microprocessors, and these also periodically check the solenoid-operated valves by means of a test pulse during the operation of the system. The module checks the signals sent by the system sensors to provide a means of fault diagnosis. In the event of a fault occurring in the ABS system, a warning light on the instrument panel will come on and remain on until the ignition is switched off. A particular fault is represented by a two-digit code system stored within the module memory. A "STAR" type tester is required to read the fault diagnosis system, so in the event of a fault being indicated, the vehicle must be taken to a Ford garage for analysis.

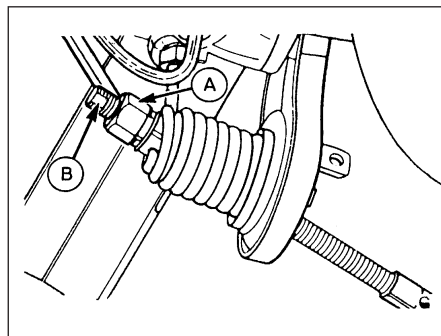
The ABS system functions as follows. During normal braking, pressure from the brake pedal (and the servo unit) closes the master cylinder valves, and hydraulic pressure is applied through the brake circuits in the conventional manner. The rotational speed of each front wheel is continuously monitored by the system via the wheel sensors, and this is compared to the vehicle speed information being supplied from the speed sensor. When a wheel is about to lock up, its rotational speed drops more rapidly than the vehicle speed, and when this condition is met, the anti-lock side of the system cuts in. The circuit inlet valve in the hydraulic unit is closed off, to prevent further pressure being applied through that circuit. In the event of this failing to prevent excessive deceleration, the outlet valve opens to reduce the pressure in that circuit, thus preventing the wheel from locking up. Both valves are then modulated on and off (open and shut) to maintain the required pressure in that circuit, to provide the maximum possible hydraulic pressure (from the master cylinder) without locking up the wheel.

Slight pulsations will be felt through the brake pedal when the anti-lock system cuts in, and this is quite normal. To reduce excessive brake pedal pulsations, a pedal travel sensor monitors any slight increase in

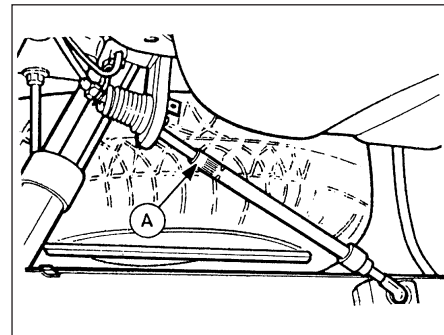


26.2A Light-laden valve linkage adjustment

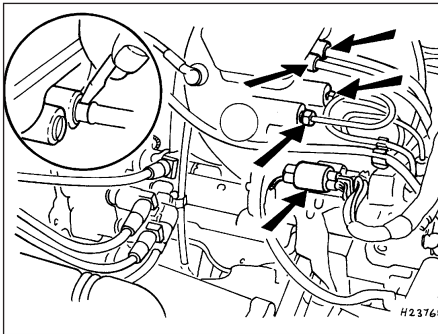
- A Spacer tube
B Rubber seal
C Setting groove



26.2B Light-laden valve linkage adjustment on a used valve, showing adjuster nut (A) and flats on the end of the rod (B)



26.3 Light-laden valve adjustment on a new valve showing the crimping point (A)



28.1 Detach the hydraulic lines and the wiring multi-plug from the points indicated

pedal pressure, and causes the pump to be switched on and off to maintain the pedal position. When emergency braking is applied, the pedal is pressed back to a predetermined "safety position". When the brake pedal is released, the anti-lock mode is automatically cancelled.

The rear wheels are not fitted with sensors, but are prevented from locking up (under all braking conditions) by means of a load-apportioning valve incorporated in each rear circuit. These valves are housed in a common casting, and are actuated by an arm connected to the rear axle. The load-apportioning valve is checked for adjustment and set during the vehicle pre-delivery inspection using a special tool. Any further checks or adjustments required must therefore be entrusted to a Ford dealer.

28 Hydraulic unit (ABS) - removal and refitting

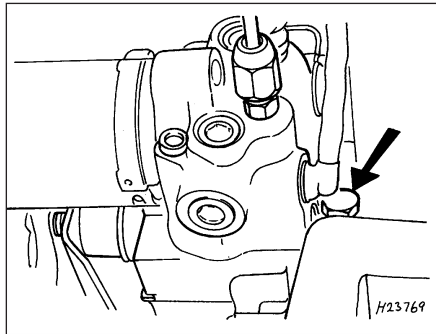


Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1). Also disconnect the wiring multi-plugs from the fluid warning indicator in the reservoir filler cap, and the hydraulic lines from the hydraulic unit connection (see illustration). Remove the filler cap from the reservoir (noting that the filler cap must not be inverted). The reservoir should now be emptied by syphoning or drawing out the fluid with a pipette before disconnecting the hydraulic lines from the master cylinder. Identify each brake pipe and its connection to the master cylinder, then unscrew the union nuts and disconnect them. When disconnecting the fluid return pipes from the reservoir, press the retaining boss into the reservoir, and pull free the fluid line. Plug the connections, and tape over the pipe ends, to prevent the entry of dust and dirt.

2 Unscrew the union nuts, and disconnect the fluid pipes from the hydraulic unit at the rear. Plug the connections.

3 Unscrew the nut securing the multi-plug connector bracket, and the nut and bolt



28.3 ABS hydraulic unit-to-bracket retaining bolt location

securing the hydraulic unit to the bracket (see illustration). Withdraw the hydraulic unit from the bracket, and remove it from the vehicle.

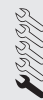
4 Prise free and detach the fluid return lines from the hydraulic unit (see illustration). Plug the connections, and tape over the pipe ends, to prevent the entry of dust and dirt.

Refitting

5 Remove the plugs from the connections as the pipes and fluid return lines are refitted. Refit in the reverse order of removal, noting the torque settings for the unit-to-bracket nut and bolt. Ensure that all connections are clean and secure.

6 On completion, top-up the hydraulic fluid level in the reservoir, and bleed the system as described in Section 17. Inspect the hydraulic line connections at the master cylinder/hydraulic unit for any sign of leaks.

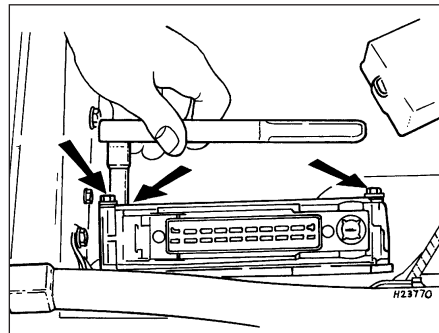
29 Module (ABS) - removal and refitting



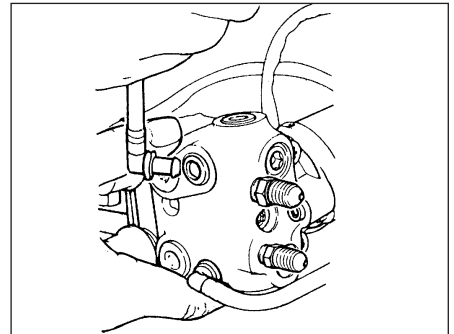
Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 The module is situated opposite the battery, at the rear of the engine compartment. Swing the retaining clip out of the way, and disconnect the wiring multi-plug from the module.



29.3 Location of the ABS module retaining bolts



28.4 Disconnect the fluid return lines from the ABS hydraulic unit

3 Unscrew and remove the three retaining bolts, and withdraw the module from the vehicle (see illustration).

Refitting

4 Refit in the reverse order of removal, but take particular care when reconnecting the multi-plug.

30 Wheel sensor (ABS) - removal and refitting



Removal

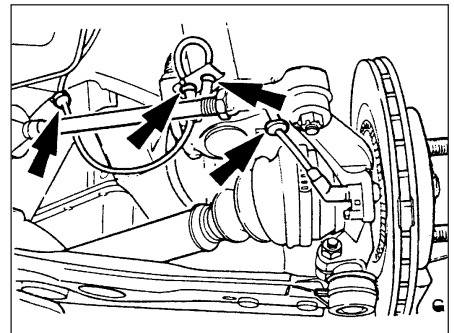
1 An ABS wheel sensor is fitted in the front spindle carrier on each side. To remove a sensor, apply the handbrake, then raise and support the vehicle at the front end on axle stands so that the front wheels are clear of the ground.

2 Unclip and detach the sensor cable from the wiring loom (see illustration). Unscrew the retaining bolt, and withdraw the sensor from its location in the spindle carrier. Remove the sensor and lead from the vehicle.

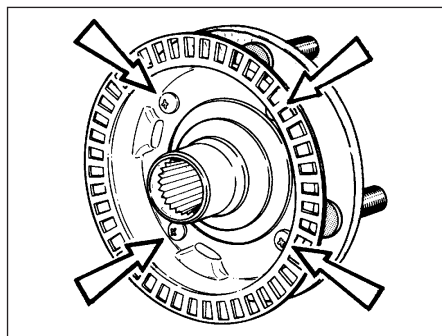
3 If renewing the sensor, the replacement must have the correct lead length (on models fitted with an anti-roll bar, the lead is longer).

Refitting

4 Refit in the reverse order of removal. When inserting the sensor into position, ensure that



30.2 ABS wheel sensor cable and securing clips



31.2 ABS sensor ring-to-wheel hub retaining bolts

the mating surfaces are clean, free from oil and grease. Feed the cable through the wheel arch, and ensure that it is clipped in position. Secure the cable with any ties provided. When the sensor is refitted, turn the steering from

lock to lock, to ensure that the sensor lead does not foul on any steering or suspension components before lowering the vehicle to the ground.

31 Wheel sensor ring (ABS) - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Referring to Chapter 10 for details, remove the spindle carrier, then remove the wheel hub from the spindle carrier.

2 Where applicable, unscrew and remove the sensor ring-to-hub retaining bolts, then detach the sensor ring from the hub (**see illustration**). In some instances, the sensor ring will be press-fitted on the hub, and will require a suitable withdrawal tool to remove it.

Refitting

3 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Ensure that the sensor and hub mating faces are clean. Refer to the appropriate Sections in Chapter 10 for details on refitting the hub and spindle carrier.

32 Load-apportioning valve (ABS) - removal and refitting








The removal of the load-apportioning valve on ABS-equipped models is not recommended, since a special resetting tool is required to adjust the valve when it is refitted. The removal and refitting of the load-apportioning valve is therefore a task to be entrusted to a suitably-equipped Ford dealer.

Chapter 10 Suspension and steering systems

Contents

Front hub bearings - checking	3	Rear hub bearings - checking and renewal	11
Front hub bearings (23-spline type) - renewal	4	Rear leaf spring, shackle and bushes (Van models) - removal, inspection and refitting	18
Front hub bearings (25-spline type) - renewal	5	Rear shock absorber (Estate and Van models) - removal, testing and refitting	16
Front spindle carrier - removal and refitting	2	Rear strut (Hatchback and Saloon models) - dismantling, examination and reassembly	13
Front suspension and steering check	See Chapter 1	Rear strut (Hatchback and Saloon models) - removal and refitting	12
Front suspension anti-roll bar - removal and refitting	8	Steering column - dismantling and reassembly	22
Front suspension lower arm - removal and refitting	9	Steering column - removal and refitting	21
Front suspension strut - dismantling, examination and reassembly	7	Steering gear (manual steering) - removal and refitting	24
Front suspension strut - removal and refitting	6	Steering gear (power-assisted steering) - removal and refitting	25
General information	1	Steering gear rubber gaiters - renewal	23
Power-assisted steering drivebelt check, adjustment and renewal	See Chapter 1	Steering wheel - removal and refitting	20
Power-assisted steering fluid level check	See Chapter 1	Subframe - removal and refitting	10
Power-assisted steering pump - removal and refitting	26	Track rod end balljoint - removal and refitting	28
Power-assisted steering system - bleeding	27	Wheel and tyre maintenance and tyre pressure checks	See Chapter 1
Rear axle (Hatchback, Saloon and Estate models) - removal and refitting	14	Wheel alignment and steering angles - general information	29
Rear axle (Van models) - removal and refitting	19		
Rear axle pivot bushes (Hatchback, Saloon and Estate models) - renewal	15		
Rear coil springs (Estate models) - removal and refitting	17		

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

Specifications

Front wheel alignment

Toe setting (all models):	
Tolerance allowed before resetting required	0.5 mm toe-in to 4.5 mm toe-out (0°05' toe-in to 0°45' toe-out)
Adjustment setting (if required)	2.0 mm toe-out ± 1.0 mm (0°20' toe-out ± 0°10')

Rear wheel alignment

Toe setting (all models):	
Tolerance allowed before resetting required	4.0 mm toe-in to 0.0 mm toe-in (0.69° toe-in to 0.00° toe-in)
Adjustment setting (if required)	2.0 mm toe-in (0.34° toe-in)

Roadwheels and tyres

Wheel types and sizes:	
Steel	13 x 5, 13 x 5 (Heavy Duty Van), 14 x 6
Alloy	13 x 5 or 14 x 6
Tyre sizes (dependent on model)	155 R 13 78T, 175/70R 13 82T, 175/70R 13 82H, 185/60R 14 82H, 185/60R 14 V, 195/50R 15 V, 165 R 13-T, 165R13-REINF
Tyre pressures	See Chapter 1 Specifications

10•2 Suspension and steering systems

Torque wrench settings	Nm	lbf ft
Front suspension		
Hub/driveshaft retaining nut:		
M20 x 1.5 (23 splines)	205 to 235	151 to 173
M22 x 1.5 (25 splines)	220 to 250	162 to 186
Lower arm balljoint-to-spindle carrier clamp bolt	48 to 60	35 to 44
Lower arm to subframe bolts (using torque-to-yield method with vehicle standing on its wheels):		
Stage 1	50	37
Stage 2	Slacken completely	
Stage 3	50	37
Stage 4	Tighten through a further 90°	
Anti-roll bar link to suspension strut	41 to 58	30 to 43
Anti-roll bar link to anti-roll bar	41 to 58	30 to 43
Anti-roll bar-to-subframe clamp bolts	20 to 28	15 to 21
Subframe retaining bolts	80 to 90	59 to 66
Suspension top mounting nut	40 to 62	30 to 38
Suspension strut piston rod top spring seat nut	52 to 65	38 to 48
Suspension strut-to-spindle carrier clamp bolt	80 to 90	59 to 66
Rear suspension (Hatchback, Saloon and Estate)		
Rear hub bearing nut	250 to 270	184 to 199
Axle front mounting bracket bolts	41 to 58	30 to 43
Axle front bush/bracket pivot nuts/bolts*	102 to 138	75 to 102
Strut upper mounting nuts (Hatchback and Saloon)	28 to 40	20 to 30
Strut lower mounting (Hatchback and Saloon)	102 to 138	75 to 102
Strut upper through-bolt (Hatchback and Saloon)	41 to 58	30 to 43
Shock absorber upper mounting (Estate)	41 to 58	30 to 43
Shock absorber lower mounting (Estate)	58 to 79	43 to 58
<i>*Torque to be measured from the bolt head (not the nut)</i>		
Rear suspension (Van)		
Rear hub bearing nut	250 to 270	184 to 199
Shock absorber upper mounting	41 to 58	30 to 43
Shock absorber lower mounting	58 to 79	43 to 58
Shock absorber mounting bracket to body	30 to 40	22 to 30
Axle/spring U-bolt nuts	34 to 47	25 to 35
Front spring mounting bolt	70 to 97	52 to 71
Rear shackle upper stud/nut	41 to 58	30 to 43
Rear shackle lower mounting bolt	70 to 97	52 to 71
Steering (manual)		
Steering wheel-to-column shaft bolt	45 to 55	33 to 40
Steering gear-to-subframe bolts	70 to 97	53 to 65
Steering column mounting nuts	10 to 14	7 to 10
Steering column-to-pinion shaft clamp bolt	26 to 35	19 to 26
Track rod end to spindle carrier arm	25 to 30	18 to 22
Track rod end-to-track rod locknut	57 to 68	42 to 50
Track rod to steering rack	68 to 90	50 to 66
Adjustable steering through-bolt	6 to 8	4 to 6
Steering (power-assisted)		
Steering wheel-to-column shaft bolt	45 to 55	33 to 40
Steering gear-to-subframe bolts:		
Stage 1	15	11
Stage 2	Tighten through a further 90°	
Steering column mounting nuts	17 to 24	12 to 18
Steering column-to-pinion shaft clamp bolt	20 to 28	15 to 21
Track rod end to spindle carrier arm	25 to 30	18 to 22
Track rod end-to-track rod locknut	57 to 68	42 to 50
Track rod to steering rack	68 to 90	50 to 66
Adjustable steering through-bolt	6 to 8	4 to 6
Steering pump bolts	21 to 28	15 to 21
Steering pump pulley bolts	21 to 28	15 to 21
Pressure hose to pump	26 to 31	19 to 22
Roadwheel nuts		
All models*	70 to 100	52 to 74
<i>*Special nuts incorporating washers are fitted for alloy wheels.</i>		

1 General information

The independent front suspension is of the MacPherson strut type, incorporating coil springs and integral telescopic shock absorbers (**see illustration**). The struts are attached to spindle carriers at their lower ends, and the carriers are in turn attached to the lower suspension arm by balljoints. High-series models are fitted with an anti-roll bar, and this is attached to the subframe and lower suspension arms by link rods with rubber bushes.

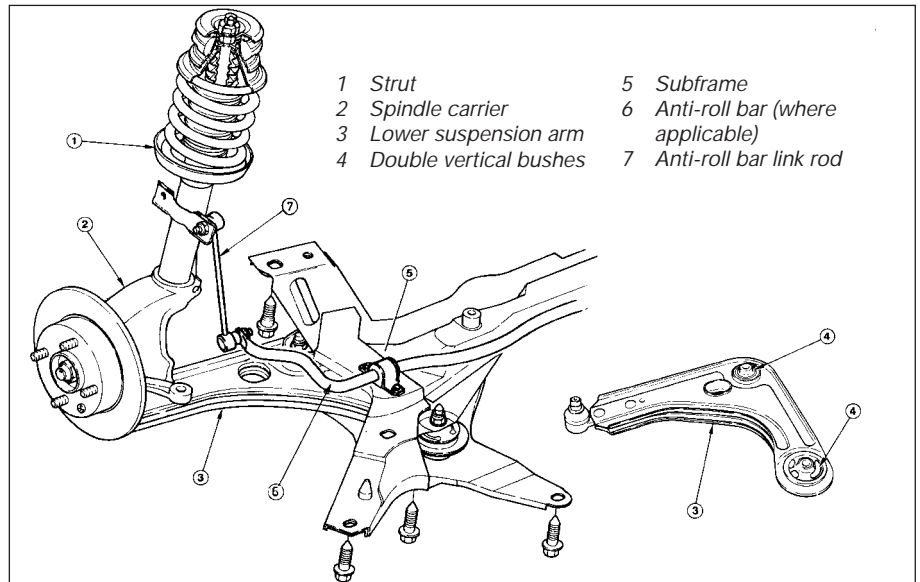
On all except Van models, the semi-independent rear suspension is of trailing arm type, incorporating a twist type axle beam (**see illustration**). This inverted V-section beam allows a limited torsional flexibility, giving each rear wheel a certain amount of independent movement whilst at the same time maintaining the track and wheel camber control for the rear axle. The axle is attached to the body by rubber void bushes, via brackets mounted on the underside of the body. Each bracket has a conical seating peg to ensure accurate alignment of the axle. It is important to note that the vehicle must never be jacked up at the rear under the axle beam. The axle beam itself is maintenance-free but where required, the pivot bushes of the trailing arm can be renewed.

The rear suspension struts on Hatchback and Saloon models are similar to those used for the front suspension, the combined coil spring and shock absorber being mounted between the suspension turret in the luggage area at the top and the trailing arm, inboard of the stub axle at the bottom. The Estate model differs in that the coil spring is separate from the shock absorber, and is enclosed between the underbody and the trailing suspension arm.

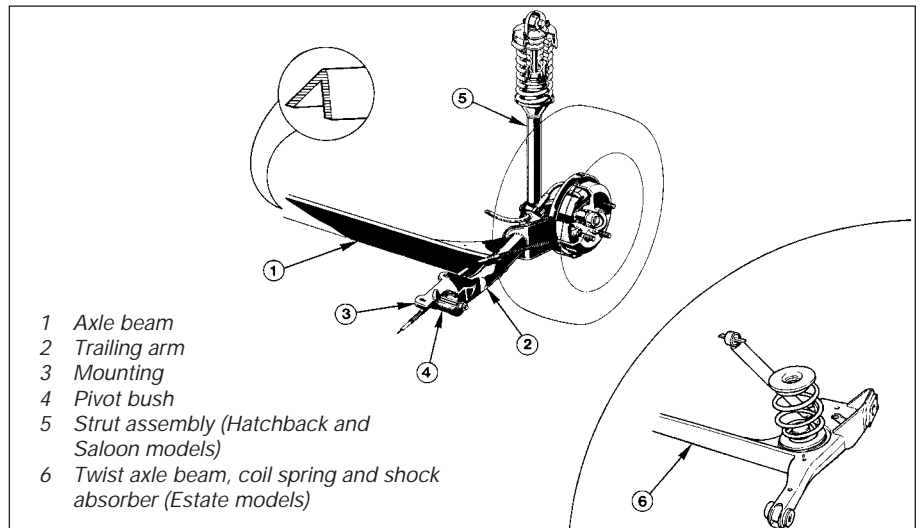
On Van models, the rear suspension comprises a transverse beam axle which is supported by a single leaf spring each side. Telescopic shock absorbers are used to control vertical movement.

A variable-ratio type rack-and-pinion steering gear is fitted, together with a conventional column and two-section shaft (**see illustration**). The steering gear is bolted to the front subframe. A height adjustment mechanism is fitted to some models, and power-assisted steering is also available.

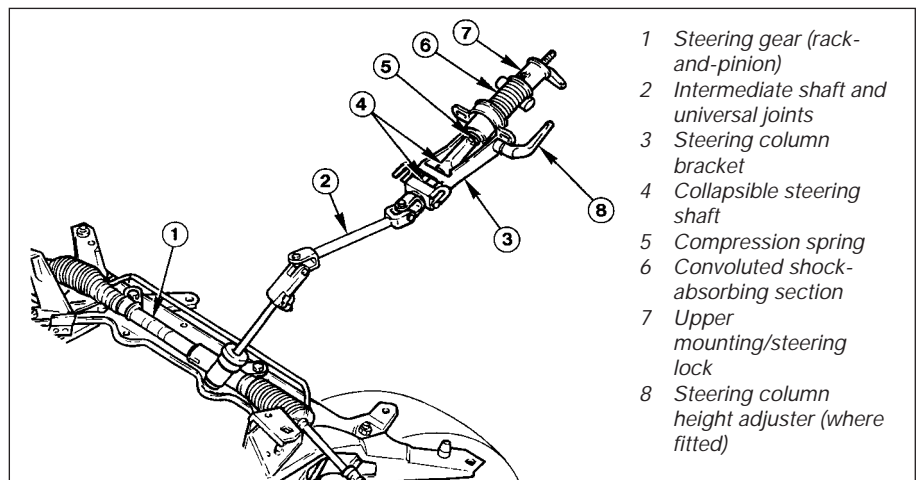
When working on the suspension or steering, you may come across nuts or bolts which seem impossible to loosen. These nuts and bolts on the underside of the vehicle are continually subjected to water, road grime, mud, etc, and can become rusted or seized, making them extremely difficult to remove. In order to unscrew these stubborn nuts and bolts without damaging them (or other



1.1 General view of the front suspension assembly



1.2 General view of the rear suspension assembly on Hatchback, Saloon and Estate models



1.5 Steering gear and column layout (left-hand drive version shown)



2.3 Disconnect the brake hose from the front suspension strut



2.6A Removing the lower arm-to-spindle clamp bolt and nut



2.6B Prise open the joint . . .

components), use lots of penetrating oil, and allow it to soak in for a while. Using a wire brush to clean exposed threads will also ease removal of the nut or bolt, and will help to prevent damage to the threads. Sometimes, a sharp blow with a hammer and punch will break the bond between a nut and bolt, but care must be taken to prevent the punch from slipping off and ruining the threads. Heating the nut or bolt and surrounding area with a blow lamp sometimes helps too, but this is not recommended, because of the obvious dangers associated with fire. Extension bars or pipes will increase leverage, but never use one on a ratchet, as the internal mechanism could be damaged. Actually *tightening* the nut or bolt first may help to break it loose. Nuts or bolts which have required drastic measures to remove them should always be renewed.

Since most of the procedures dealt with in this Chapter involve jacking up the vehicle and working underneath it, a good pair of axle stands will be needed. A hydraulic trolley jack is the preferred type of jack to lift the vehicle, and it can also be used to support certain components during removal and refitting operations.



Warning: *Never, under any circumstances, rely on a jack to support the vehicle while working beneath it. When jacking up the vehicle, do not lift or support it beneath the front or rear subframes.*

2 Front spindle carrier - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Apply the handbrake, loosen the front roadwheel nuts on the side concerned, then jack up the front of the car and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate front roadwheel.

2 Using a suitable pin punch, bend back the locking tab securing the driveshaft/hub nut, then loosen off the nut.

3 Unscrew the retaining bolt, and detach the brake hose and its locating bracket from the suspension strut (see illustration).

4 Unscrew the brake caliper-to-carrier retaining bolts, then withdraw the caliper and suspend it from a suitable fixing in the inner wing to avoid straining the brake hose. Where applicable, detach the ABS sensor and its lead clip from the spindle carrier.

5 Extract the split pin from the track rod end balljoint, then unscrew the nut and detach the rod from the spindle carrier using a conventional balljoint removal tool, but take care not to damage the balljoint seal.

6 Note the direction of fitting, then unscrew and remove the lower arm balljoint-to-spindle carrier clamp bolt. Prise the joint open carefully using a large flat-bladed tool, and detach the balljoint from the spindle carrier

(see illustrations). Take care not to damage the balljoint seal during the separation procedures.

7 Unscrew the brake disc retaining screw, and remove the brake disc from the hub.

8 Unscrew and remove the driveshaft retaining nut and washer.

9 Note the direction of fitting, then unscrew and remove the suspension strut-to-spindle retaining bolt. Prise open the clamping slot using a suitable wedged tool, and release the spindle from the strut. If necessary, tap the spindle carrier downwards to separate the two components (see illustrations).

10 Connect up a universal puller to the spindle carrier, and withdraw it from the driveshaft. When the driveshaft is free of the spindle, suspend it from a suitable fixing point under the wheel arch. This will prevent it from hanging down and its joint being pivoted beyond the maximum angle specified (see Section 9 of Chapter 8).

Refitting

11 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but observe the following points:

- Ensure that all mating faces, particularly those of the disc and hub flange, are clean before refitting.
- Lubricate the hub splines with molybdenum disulphide grease, and take care not to dislodge the hub bearings as the driveshaft is refitted through the hub.
- Tighten all nuts and bolts to the specified



2.6C . . . and detach the lower arm balljoint from the spindle



2.9A Remove the suspension strut-to-spindle carrier clamp bolt . . .



2.9B . . . and separate the spindle carrier from the strut

torque. Fit a new split pin to the track rod end balljoint nut to secure it. When reconnecting the suspension lower arm balljoint to the spindle carrier, ensure that the clamp bolt is fully engaged in the locating groove, and prevent the bolt from turning as the nut is tightened.

- d) When the hub nut is tightened to its specified torque wrench setting, spin the hub to ensure that it turns freely, then stake the nut flange into the groove in the end of the driveshaft.

3 Front hub bearings - checking



1 All models are fitted with non-adjustable front wheel bearings which are supplied pre-greased by the manufacturer.

2 To check the bearings for excessive wear, apply the handbrake, then raise and support the front end of the vehicle securely on axle stands.

3 Grip the roadwheel at the top and bottom, and attempt to rock it. If excessive movement is noted, or if there is any roughness or vibration felt when the wheel is spun, this indicates that the hub bearings are in need of renewal. Refer to Chapter 8 Specifications to determine whether a 23-spline or 25-spline driveshaft is fitted, then refer to Section 4 or 5 (as applicable) and proceed as described to renew the bearings.

4 Front hub bearings (23-spline type) - renewal



Note: The front hub bearings should only be removed from the spindle carrier if they are to be renewed. The removal procedure renders the bearings unserviceable, and they must not be re-used. Prior to dismantling, it should be noted that a hub/bearing puller and an assortment of metal tubes of various diameters (and preferably, a press) will be required. Unless these tools are available, the renewal of the spindle carrier/hub bearings will have to be entrusted to a Ford garage. Under no circumstances attempt to tap the hub bearings into position, as this will render them unserviceable. On ABS-equipped models, care must be taken during the bearing removal and refitting procedures not to damage the ABS wheel sensor ring.

Removal

1 Remove the spindle carrier from the vehicle as described in Section 2.

2 The hub must now be removed from the bearing inner races. It is preferable to use a press to do this, but it is possible to drive out the hub using a length of metal tube of suitable diameter.

3 Part of the inner race will remain on the hub, and this should be removed using a puller.

4 Using a suitable punch, tap the outer bearing race at diametrically-opposed points and remove it from the spindle carrier (**see illustration**). Do not allow the bearing to tilt during its withdrawal from the housing, or it will jam and possibly damage the surface of the bore. Any burrs left in a bearing bore will prevent the new bearing from seating correctly.

5 Thoroughly clean the bearing bore and hub before reassembly begins.

Refitting

6 Press the new outer bearing assembly into the spindle carrier using a length of metal tube of diameter slightly less than the outer race. Do not apply any pressure to the inner race. Alternatively, a long threaded rod or bolt, a nut and large flat washers may be used to draw the bearing into position (**see illustration**). Fit the new inner bearing assembly in the same way.

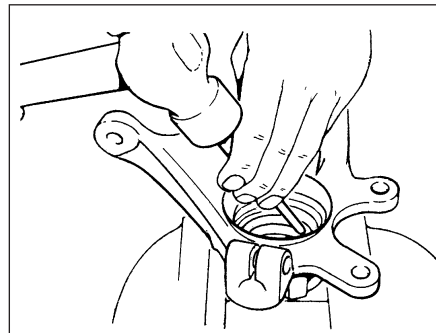
7 Support the inner race on a length of metal tube, then press the hub fully into the bearing.

8 Check that the hub spins freely in the bearings, then refit the spindle carrier as described in Section 2.

5 Front hub bearings (25-spline type) - renewal



Note: The front hub bearings should only be removed from the spindle carrier if they are to be renewed. The removal procedure renders the bearings unserviceable, and they must not be re-used. Prior to dismantling, it should be noted that a hub/bearing puller and an assortment of metal tubes of various diameters (and preferably, a press) will be required. Unless these tools are available, the renewal of the spindle carrier/hub bearings will have to be entrusted to a Ford garage. Under no circumstances attempt to tap the hub bearings into position, as this will render them unserviceable. On ABS-equipped models, care must be taken during the bearing removal and refitting procedures not to damage the ABS wheel sensor ring.



4.4 Using a punch to remove the hub bearing outer race from the spindle carrier

Removal

1 Remove the spindle carrier from the vehicle as described in Section 2.

2 The hub must now be removed from the bearing inner races. It is preferable to use a press to do this, but it is possible to drive out the hub using a length of metal tube of suitable diameter.

3 Part of the inner race will remain on the hub, and this should be removed using a puller.

4 Extract the bearing retaining circlip using circlip pliers, then drive the bearing outer race from the spindle carrier. Do not allow the bearing to tilt during its withdrawal from the housing, or it will jam and possibly damage the surface of the bore. Any burrs left in a bearing bore will prevent the new bearing from seating correctly. If necessary, insert the old inner race to facilitate removal of the bearing.

5 Thoroughly clean the bearing bore and hub before reassembly begins.

Refitting

6 Press the new outer bearing assembly into the spindle carrier, using a length of metal tube of diameter slightly less than the outer race. Do not apply any pressure to the inner race. Alternatively, a long threaded rod or bolt, a nut and large flat washers may be used to draw the bearing into position (**see illustration 4.6**).

7 Secure the bearing in the spindle carrier using the circlip.

8 Support the inner race on a length of metal tube, then press the hub fully into the bearing.

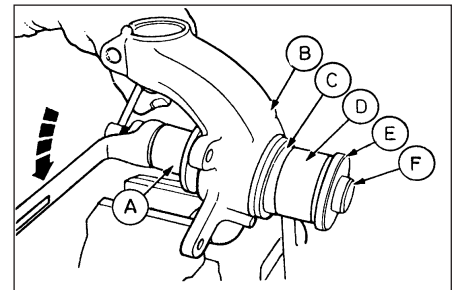
9 Check that the hub spins freely in the bearings, then refit the spindle carrier as described in Section 2.

6 Front suspension strut - removal and refitting



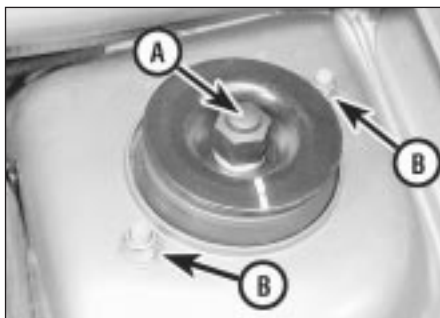
Removal

1 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate front roadwheel.



4.6 Using home-made tools to fit the outer bearing assembly to the spindle carrier

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| A Steel tube | D Steel tube |
| B Spindle carrier | E Flat washer |
| C Bearing | F Threaded bolt |



6.2A Front suspension strut upper mounting showing the protective cap over retaining nut (A) and the strut-to-body mounting nuts (B)

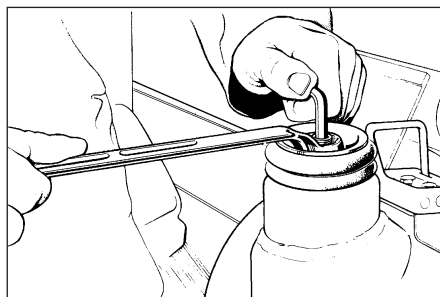
- 2 Open and support the bonnet. Prise free the protective cap from the strut upper retaining nut, then loosen off, *but do not remove*, the central retaining nut. As the nut is loosened off, hold the strut piston rod with an Allen key to prevent the rod from turning as the nut is loosened (see illustrations).
- 3 Detach the front brake hose from the support bracket on the strut.
- 4 Where applicable, unbolt and detach the anti-roll bar link rod from the suspension strut.
- 5 Unscrew and remove the strut-to-spindle carrier clamp bolt.
- 6 Note the direction of fitting, then unscrew and remove the lower arm balljoint-to-spindle carrier clamp bolt. Prise the joint open using a large flat-bladed tool, and detach the balljoint from the spindle carrier. Take care not to damage the balljoint seal during the separation procedures.
- 7 Prise open the spindle carrier-to-strut joint, and separate the carrier from the strut. Tap the carrier downwards using a soft-faced hammer to release it from the strut if necessary.
- 8 Support the weight of the strut underneath, and unscrew the two nuts securing it to the turret at the top. Lower the strut and remove it from the vehicle.

Refitting

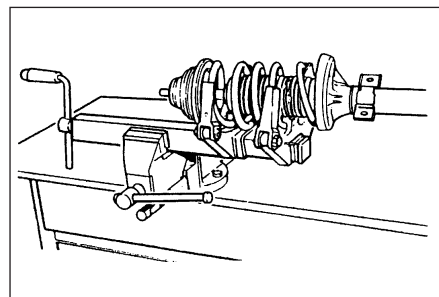
- 9 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Tighten all the retaining bolts to the specified torque. When reconnecting the suspension lower arm balljoint to the spindle carrier, ensure that the clamp bolt is fully engaged in the locating groove, and prevent the bolt from turning as the nut is tightened.

7 Front suspension strut - dismantling, examination and reassembly

Note: Before attempting to dismantle the front suspension strut, a tool to hold the coil spring in compression must be obtained. The Ford tool is shown in the accompanying illustrations, however careful use of conventional coil spring compressors will prove satisfactory.



6.2B Method to use when loosening off the strut upper mounting



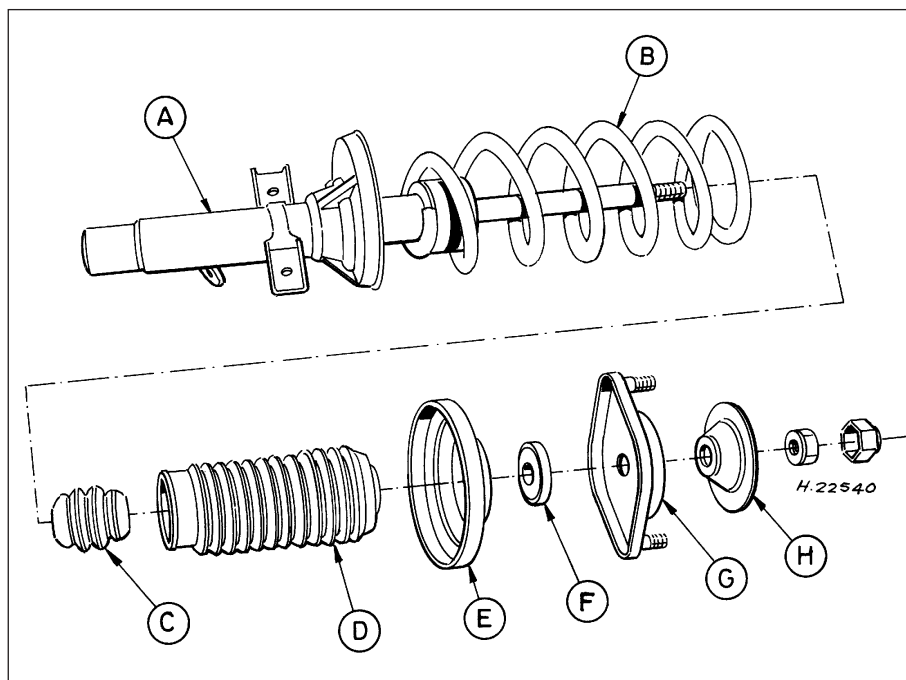
7.2 Ford special tool in use to compress the front suspension strut coil spring

Dismantling

- 1 With the strut removed from the vehicle, clean away all external dirt, then mount it upright in a vice.
- 2 Fit the spring compressor tool (ensuring that it is fully engaged) and compress the coil spring until all tension is relieved from the upper mounting (see illustration).
- 3 Hold the strut piston with an Allen key, and unscrew the nut with a ring spanner.
- 4 Withdraw the cup, retainer (top mounting), the bearing and upper spring seat, followed by the gaiter and the bump stop (see illustration).
- 5 The suspension strut and coil spring can now be separated. If a new coil spring or strut is to be fitted, the original coil spring must be released from the compressor. If it is to be re-used, the coil spring can be left in compression.

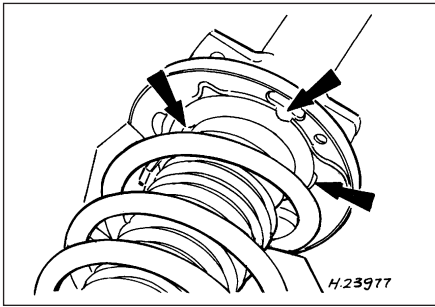
Examination

- 6 With the strut assembly now completely dismantled, examine all the components for wear, damage or deformation, and check the bearing for smoothness of operation. Renew any of the components as necessary.
- 7 Examine the strut for signs of fluid leakage. Check the strut piston for signs of pitting along its entire length, and check the strut body for signs of damage or elongation of the mounting bolt holes. Test the operation of the strut, holding it in an upright position, by moving the piston through a full stroke, and then through short strokes of 50 to 100 mm. In both cases, the resistance felt should be smooth and continuous. If the resistance is jerky, or uneven, or if there is any visible sign of wear or damage to the strut, renewal is necessary.

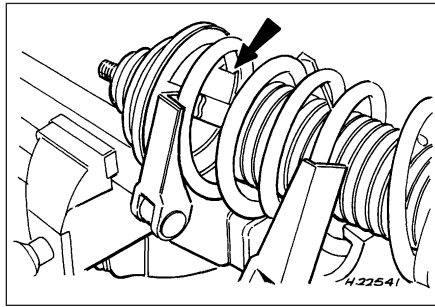


7.4 Front suspension strut components

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| A Strut | D Gaiter | G Top mounting retainer |
| B Spring | E Upper spring seat | H Top mounting cup |
| C Bump stop | F Bearing | |



7.8A Spring location in the lower seat



7.8B Spring end location in the upper seat



8.2 Link rod-to-strut connection

Reassembly

8 Reassembly is a reversal of dismantling, but make sure that the spring ends are correctly located in the upper and lower seats (**see illustrations**). Check that the bearing is correctly fitted to the piston rod seat. Tighten the upper nut to the specified torque.

8 Front suspension anti-roll bar - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the front roadwheels.
- 2 Unscrew the retaining nut, and detach the link rod from the suspension strut each side (**see illustration**).
- 3 Similarly, detach the link rod from the anti-roll bar each side (**see illustration**).
- 4 Unscrew the retaining nuts, and remove the anti-roll bar mounting brackets from the subframe each side, then withdraw the anti-roll bar from the side (**see illustration**).
- 5 Check the bar for damage, and the rubber bushes for wear and deterioration. If the bushes are in need of renewal, slide them off the bar, and fit new ones after lubricating them with rubber grease. If the link rod bushes are in poor or suspect condition, they will have to be renewed complete with the link rods.



8.3 Link rod-to-bar connection

Refitting

6 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Tighten the retaining nuts to the specified torque setting.

9 Front suspension lower arm - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate roadwheel.
- 2 Note the direction of fitting, then unscrew and remove the lower arm balljoint-to-spindle carrier clamp bolt. Prise the joint open using a large flat-bladed tool, and detach the balljoint from the spindle carrier. Take care not to damage the balljoint seal during the separation procedures.
- 3 Unscrew and remove the inboard retaining bolts on the subframe, and withdraw the suspension arm from it (**see illustration**).
- 4 If the balljoint and/or the inboard mounting bushes are found to be in poor condition, the complete suspension arm must be renewed. The suspension arm must also be renewed if it has suffered structural damage.

Refitting

5 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, but note the following special points:

- a) When reconnecting the arm to the subframe, the bolts must be fitted from underneath, and hand-tightened until the vehicle is resting on its wheels.
- b) When reconnecting the suspension lower arm balljoint to the spindle carrier, ensure that the clamp bolt is fully engaged in the locating groove, and prevent the bolt from turning as the nut is tightened.
- c) Fully tighten the suspension arm-to-subframe bolts when the vehicle is lowered and is standing on its wheels. These bolts must then be tightened in the sequence specified.

10 Subframe - removal and refitting



Removal

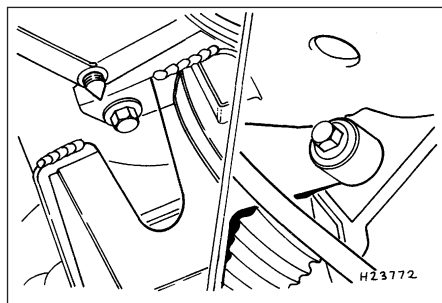
- 1 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the front roadwheels.
- 2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 3 Fit an engine support bar (or a sling and hoist) to support the combined weights of the engine and transmission when the subframe is detached (as during engine/transmission removal and refitting).
- 4 Centralise the steering so that it is in the straightahead position, then working within the vehicle, unscrew and remove the steering column-to-pinion shaft clamp bolt.



8.4 Anti-roll bar-to-subframe mounting



9.3 Suspension arm-to-subframe retaining bolts (arrowed)



10.5 Engine/transmission mounting bracket securing bolt locations on the subframe

5 Undo the engine/transmission mounting bracket bolts at the subframe connection (see illustration).

6 Where applicable, disconnect the oxygen sensor wiring multi-plug, then undo the retaining nuts and detach the exhaust downpipe (Chapter 4).

7 Disconnect the gear linkage at the transmission (Chapter 7).

8 Extract the split pin and unscrew the track rod end balljoint nut on each side, then using a conventional separator tool, detach each joint from its spindle carrier connection.

9 Note the direction of fitting, then unscrew and remove the lower arm balljoint-to-spindle carrier clamp bolt. Prise the joint open using a large flat-bladed tool, and detach the balljoint from the spindle carrier. Take care not to damage the balljoint seal during the separation procedure.

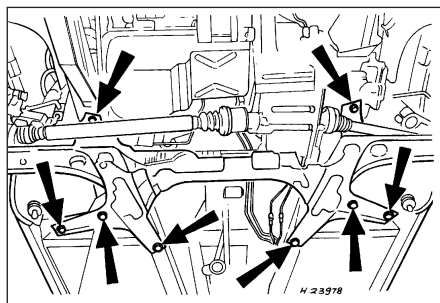
10 Unscrew the retaining bolt, and detach the right-hand engine support bar from the subframe.

11 Referring to illustration 10.5, unscrew and remove the second engine/transmission mounting bolt.

12 Where applicable, unscrew the retaining nuts and detach the anti-roll bar link rods from the suspension strut each side.

13 Where applicable, detach the power-assisted steering hydraulic lines from the steering gear (refer to Section 25 for details).

14 Locate suitable support jacks or blocks under the subframe to support it, then unscrew and remove the eight subframe fixing



10.14 Subframe securing bolt locations

bolts from the positions shown (see illustration). Lower the support jacks or blocks and withdraw the subframe. As it is lowered, disengage the steering pinion shaft from the column.

15 When the subframe is lowered from the vehicle, the steering gear, the suspension arms and the anti-roll bar (where applicable) can be unbolted and removed from it as necessary.

16 If the subframe and/or its associated components have suffered damage or are in poor condition, they must be renewed.

Refitting

17 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but observe the following points:

- Ensure that all mating faces are clean before refitting.*
- When raising the subframe into position, ensure that the location dowels engage in the guide bores in the floorpan, and carefully engage the steering pinion shaft with the column shaft. Check that the various fixing bolt holes are in alignment, then loosely insert all of the retaining bolts before tightening them to the specified torque setting.*
- When reconnecting the suspension lower arm balljoint to the spindle carrier, ensure that the clamp bolt is fully engaged in the locating groove, and prevent the bolt from turning as the nut is tightened.*
- Tighten all nuts and bolts to the specified torque. Fit a new split pin to the track rod end balljoint nut to secure it.*

e) On completion, check the wheel alignment and steering angles as described in Section 29.

11 Rear hub bearings - checking and renewal



Checking

1 All models are fitted with non-adjustable rear wheel bearings which are supplied pre-greased by the manufacturer.

2 To check the bearings for excessive wear, chock the front wheels, then raise and support the rear end of the vehicle securely on axle stands. Fully release the handbrake.

3 Grip the rear roadwheel at the top and bottom, and attempt to rock it. If excessive movement is noted, or if there is any roughness or vibration felt when the wheel is spun, it is indicative that the hub bearings are in need of renewal.

Renewal

Drum brake models

4 Unbolt and remove the roadwheel on the side concerned.

5 Check that the handbrake is still released, then remove the rubber blanking plug from the inside face of the brake backplate, reach through with a suitable screwdriver, and release the automatic brake adjuster by levering the catch from the pawl.

6 On certain models, the brake drum may be removed independently of the hub if desired. Remove the drum retaining screw (if fitted), and withdraw the drum off the wheel hub.

7 Prise free the outer grease cap from the centre of the hub (see illustration). The cap will be deformed during its removal, and will need to be renewed when the hub is refitted.

8 Unscrew and remove the hub nut, but note that the hub nut threads are "handed" according to side - right-hand to right, left-hand to left (see illustration). A left-hand thread unscrews in a **clockwise** direction.

9 Withdraw the brake drum/hub from the spindle of the rear stub axle (see illustration).



11.7 Remove the outer grease cap from the centre of the rear hub . . .



11.8 . . . unscrew the hub nut . . .



11.9 . . . and remove the brake drum

Disc brake models

10 Unbolt and remove the roadwheel on the side concerned.

11 Refer to Chapter 9, and remove the rear brake pads.

12 Referring to Chapter 9, undo the two rear brake caliper retaining bolts, and slide the caliper off the brake disc. Tie up the caliper using string or wire, but take care not to stretch the flexible brake hose.

13 Undo the brake disc retaining screw, and withdraw the disc off the handbrake shoes and wheel hub.

14 Prise free the outer grease cap from the centre of the hub. The cap will be deformed during its removal, and will need to be renewed when the hub is refitted.

15 Unscrew and remove the hub nut, but note that the hub nut threads are "handed" according to side - right-hand to right, left-hand to left. *A left-hand thread unscrews in a clockwise direction.*

16 Withdraw the wheel hub from the spindle of the rear stub axle.

All models

17 Use a screwdriver or suitable lever to prise free the grease retainer (seal) from the hub bore, but take care not to damage the bore surface.

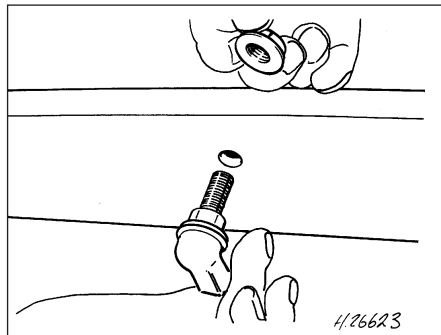
18 Remove the inner and outer bearing cones from the bore of the hub.

19 To remove the bearing cups from the hub, drive them out using a suitable punch (preferably one made of brass). Drive each cup from its respective end by tapping it alternately at diametrically-opposed points (see illustration). Do not allow the cups to tilt in the bore, or the surfaces may become burred and prevent the new bearings from seating correctly as they are fitted.

20 Clean the bore and spindle thoroughly before reassembly.

21 To reassemble, tap the new bearing cups into position in the hub, using a piece of tubing slightly smaller in its outside diameter than that of the bearing cup. Ensure that the cups are squarely inserted and abut their respective shoulders in the hub.

22 Pack the inner bearing cone with grease, and insert it into its cup in the hub.



12.2 Detaching the ABS load-apportioning valve connecting link from the axle beam on models so equipped

23 To fit the grease retainer (seal), first lubricate its inner lip to ease installation, then lightly tap the seal into position using a block of wood. Ensure that the seal is correctly orientated.

24 Pack the outer bearing cone with grease, and fit it into position in its cup.

25 The brake drum/hub or separate wheel hub (according to model) can now be refitted to the axle spindle. Before fitting into position, first check that the brake surface area in the drum is free of grease and oil. Locate the drum/hub into position, then fit the retaining nut. Tighten it to the specified torque wrench setting whilst simultaneously rotating the assembly to ensure that the bearings are correctly seated.

26 Carefully tap the new hub grease cap into position in a progressive manner around its outer edge until it is fully fitted.

27 On models with disc brakes or separate brake drums, refit the disc or drum, and secure with the retaining screw (where fitted).

28 On models with disc brakes, refit the brake caliper and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque. Refer to Chapter 9 and refit the rear brake pads.

29 Refit the rubber blanking plug to the brake backplate, and firmly apply the footbrake a few times to take up the brake adjustment. Check that the rear brakes do not bind when the brakes are released. Refit the roadwheel, lower the vehicle and then tighten the retaining nuts to the specified torque wrench setting.

12 Rear strut (Hatchback and Saloon models) - removal and refitting



Removal

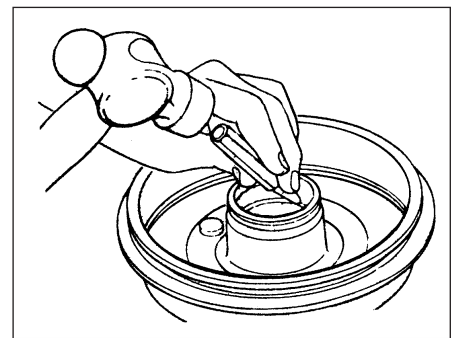
1 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the inner wheel arch trim.

2 On ABS-equipped models, unscrew the retaining nut and detach the load-apportioning valve connecting link from the axle beam (see illustration).

3 Unscrew and remove the securing bolt from the strut-to-axle mounting (see illustration).



12.3 Rear strut lower mounting on Hatchback and Saloon models



11.19 Use a suitable punch to drive out the bearing cups from the rear hub

4 Prise free the protective cap from the top of the shock absorber mounting, located in the luggage compartment (see illustration).

5 Unscrew and remove the two retaining nuts to detach the strut from its upper mounting. Do not unscrew the central upper mounting bolt.

6 Withdraw the suspension strut from the vehicle.

Refitting

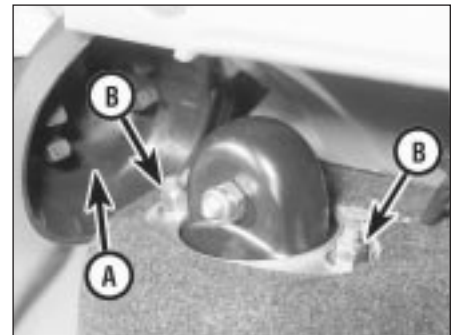
7 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, but note the following special points:

- With the suspension strut located to its upper mounting, tighten the retaining nuts to the specified torque wrench setting.
- When reconnecting the suspension strut to the lower mounting, hand-tighten the retaining bolt, then lower the vehicle so that it is standing on its wheels before fully tightening the bolt to its specified torque setting.

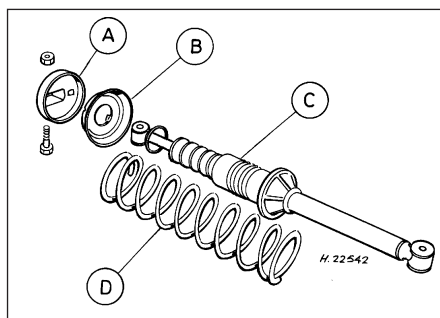
13 Rear strut (Hatchback and Saloon models) - dismantling, examination and reassembly



Note: Before attempting to dismantle the suspension strut, a tool to hold the coil spring in compression must be obtained. A Ford tool is available (tool No MS-1516), however careful use of conventional coil spring compressors will prove satisfactory.



12.4 Rear strut upper mounting on Hatchback and Saloon models showing the protective cap (A) and the mounting nuts (B)



13.3 Rear suspension strut components as fitted to Hatchback and Saloon models

- A Upper mounting cup
B Spring seat
C Suspension strut cup
D Spring

Dismantling

- 1 With the strut removed from the vehicle, clean away all external dirt, then secure it in a vice.
- 2 Fit the spring compressor tool (ensuring that it is fully engaged) and compress the coil spring until all tension is relieved from the upper mounting.
- 3 Unscrew and remove the upper mounting through-bolt and nut (see illustration).
- 4 Withdraw the upper mounting cup and the spring seat.
- 5 The suspension strut and coil spring can now be separated. If the coil spring or strut is to be renewed, the original coil spring must be released from the compressor. If it is to be re-used, the coil spring can be left in compression.

Examination

- 6 With the strut assembly now completely dismantled, examine all components for wear, damage or deformation, and check the bearing for smoothness of operation. Renew any of the components as necessary.
- 7 Examine the strut for signs of fluid leakage. Check the strut piston for signs of pitting along its entire length, and check the strut body for signs of damage or elongation of the mounting bolt holes. Test the operation of the strut, holding it in an upright position, by moving the piston through a full stroke, and then through short strokes of 50 to 100 mm. In both cases, the resistance felt should be smooth and continuous. If the resistance is jerky, or uneven, or if there is any visible sign of wear or damage to the strut, renewal is necessary.

Reassembly

- 8 Reassembly is a reversal of the dismantling procedure but note the following points:
 - a) When the spring is located over the suspension strut, the spring seat, cup and through-bolt fitted, tighten the retaining bolt to the specified torque setting.
 - b) When reassembled, check that the upper and lower spring tails are correctly engaged with their spring seats before removing the spring compressor.

14 Rear axle (Hatchback, Saloon and Estate models) - removal and refitting

Removal

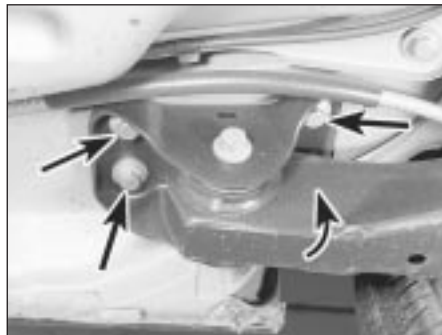
- 1 Chock the front wheels, then raise and support the vehicle at the rear on axle stands. Unbolt and remove the roadwheels.
- 2 Refer to Chapter 9 for details, and disconnect the handbrake cable equaliser from the primary cable. Detach the non-adjustable cable circlip and the cable from the underbody fastenings.
- 3 Disconnect the rear brake flexible hydraulic brake hoses from their rigid line connections. Clamp the hoses before disconnecting them, to minimise the fluid loss and air entry into the hydraulic system (see Chapter 9 for details).
- 4 On ABS-equipped models, undo the retaining nut and detach the ABS load-apportioning valve from the axle beam. Do not remove the load-apportioning valve (see Chapter 9).

Hatchback and Saloon models

- 5 Locate suitable jacks or axle stands under the axle beam to support its weight (not to lift it), then unscrew the mounting bracket bolts each side (see illustration).
- 6 Unscrew and remove the strut-to-axle mounting bolt each side.
- 7 Check that all associated fittings are clear, then lower the axle and remove it from under the vehicle.
- 8 If the twist beam axle has been damaged, it must be renewed. Refer to Chapter 9 for details on removing the rear brakes from the axle. To remove the front mounting/pivot brackets from the axle, unscrew the pivot bolt.

Estate models

- 9 Position a jack under the coil spring area of the suspension arm (not under the axle beam) each side, and raise them so that they just take the weight of the trailing arms.
- 10 Unscrew and remove the shock absorber retaining bolt from the lower attachment point to the rear axle each side.
- 11 Slowly lower the jack under the suspension arm each side, and allow the



14.5 Rear axle forward mounting bolts (arrowed)

trailing arms to drop and the compression in the coil springs to be released.

12 With the coil springs fully relaxed, withdraw them from their mounting locations between the body and the suspension arms. As they are removed, mark each for its direction of fitting and side so that they are refitted to their original locations.

13 Reposition the jacks, or place axle stands under the axle beam to support its weight (not to lift it), then unscrew the mounting bracket bolts each side.

14 Check that all associated fittings are clear, then lower the axle and remove it from under the vehicle.

15 If the twist beam axle has been damaged, it must be renewed. Refer to Chapter 9 for details on removing the rear brakes from the axle. To remove the front mounting/pivot brackets from the axle, unscrew the pivot bolt.

Refitting

All models

16 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, but note the following:

- a) Reconnect the axle at the front floor mountings first, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque setting.
- b) On Hatchback and Saloon models, reconnect the axle to the suspension struts, but do not fully retighten the securing bolts until after the vehicle is lowered to the ground and is standing on its wheels.
- c) On Estate models, when relocating the coil springs between the body and the suspension arm each side, ensure that they are correctly orientated, and that their tails abut against the stops. When the coil springs are correctly located, raise the jacks under the suspension arms, and reconnect the shock absorber each side.
- d) Ensure that all brake fluid line connections are clean before reconnecting them. Refer to the appropriate Sections in Chapter 9 for specific details on reconnecting the brake lines, bleeding the brake hydraulic system, and for reconnecting the handbrake cable and its adjustment.
- e) When the vehicle is lowered and is standing on its wheels, tighten the suspension fastenings to the specified torque wrench settings.

15 Rear axle pivot bushes (Saloon and Estate models) - renewal

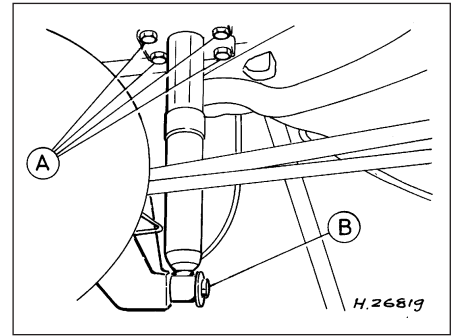
- 1 Chock the front roadwheels, then raise and support the vehicle at the rear on axle stands.
- 2 Position a suitable support (preferably adjustable) under the axle twist beam so that it is capable of carrying the weight of the axle (not the weight of the vehicle).



16.3 Rear shock absorber-to-axle mounting (Estate models)



16.4 Rear shock absorber upper mounting (Estate models)



16.5 Shock absorber upper (A) and lower (B) mountings on Van models

3 Unscrew the nuts and pivot bolts, then lower the rear axle so that the bushes are clear of their mounting brackets. Take care not to allow the brake pipes to become distorted and stretched - if necessary, disconnect the hydraulic lines (see Chapter 9 for details).

4 Using a steel tube of suitable diameter, various flat washers and a long bolt and nut, draw the bush out of its location in the axle arm.

5 Clean the bush eye in the axle arm; lubricate it, and the new bush, with a soapy solution (washing-up liquid, for example) prior to installation.

6 Locate the new bush in position, together with the steel tube, washers, bolt and nut as used for removal. Ensure that the bush flange is positioned on the outside, then draw the bush fully into position so that its lip is engaged.

7 Raise the axle to reposition the bush pin bores in line with the bolt holes in the mounting brackets, then insert the pivot bolts. Screw the retaining nuts into position on the pivot bolts, but do not fully tighten them at this stage.

8 If necessary, reconnect the brake lines, then top-up and bleed the braking system as described in Chapter 9.

9 Lower the vehicle to the ground, then tighten the rear axle pivot bolts/nuts to the specified torque wrench setting to complete.

16 Rear shock absorber (Estate and Van models) - removal, testing and refitting



Removal

1 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate roadwheel.

2 On Estate models, position a jack under the coil spring area of the suspension arm (not under the axle beam), and raise it to just take the weight of the suspension.

3 Unscrew and remove the shock absorber retaining bolt from the lower mounting (see illustration).

4 On Estate models, unscrew the retaining nuts securing the shock absorber top mounting on the underside of the body (from underneath) and withdraw the shock absorber (see illustration).

5 On Van models, unscrew and remove the four shock absorber upper mounting bracket-to-body retaining bolts (see illustration). Remove the shock absorber and its upper mounting bracket from the vehicle. To disconnect the shock absorber from the mounting bracket, unscrew the retaining nut, withdraw the through-bolt and remove the shock absorber from the bracket.

Testing

6 Mount the shock absorber in a vice, gripping it by the lower mounting. Check the mounting rubbers for damage and deterioration. Examine the shock absorber for signs of fluid leakage. Extend the shock absorber, then check the piston for signs of pitting along its entire length. Check the body for signs of damage or elongation of the mounting bolt holes. Test the operation of the shock absorber, by moving the piston through a full stroke, and then through short strokes of 50 to 100 mm. In both cases, the resistance felt should be smooth and continuous. If the resistance is jerky, or uneven, or if there is any visible sign of wear or damage to the strut, renewal of the complete is necessary.

Refitting

7 Refitting is a reversal of removal procedure. Tighten the retaining nuts and bolts to the specified torque wrench settings (where given), then lower the vehicle to the ground.

17 Rear coil springs (Estate models) - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the rear roadwheels.

2 Position a jack under the coil spring area of the suspension arm (not under the axle beam)

each side, and raise them so that they just take the weight of the trailing arms.

3 Unscrew and remove the shock absorber retaining bolt from the lower attachment point to the rear axle each side.

4 Slowly lower the jack under the suspension arm each side, and allow the trailing arms to drop and the compression in the coil springs to be released. Check that no excessive strain is imposed on the handbrake cables and/or the hydraulic hoses to the rear brakes. Disconnect them as described in Chapter 9 if necessary.

5 With the coil springs fully relaxed, withdraw them from their mounting locations between the body and the suspension arms. As they are removed, mark each for its direction of fitting and side, so that they are refitted to their original locations (where applicable).

Refitting

6 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure but note the following special points:

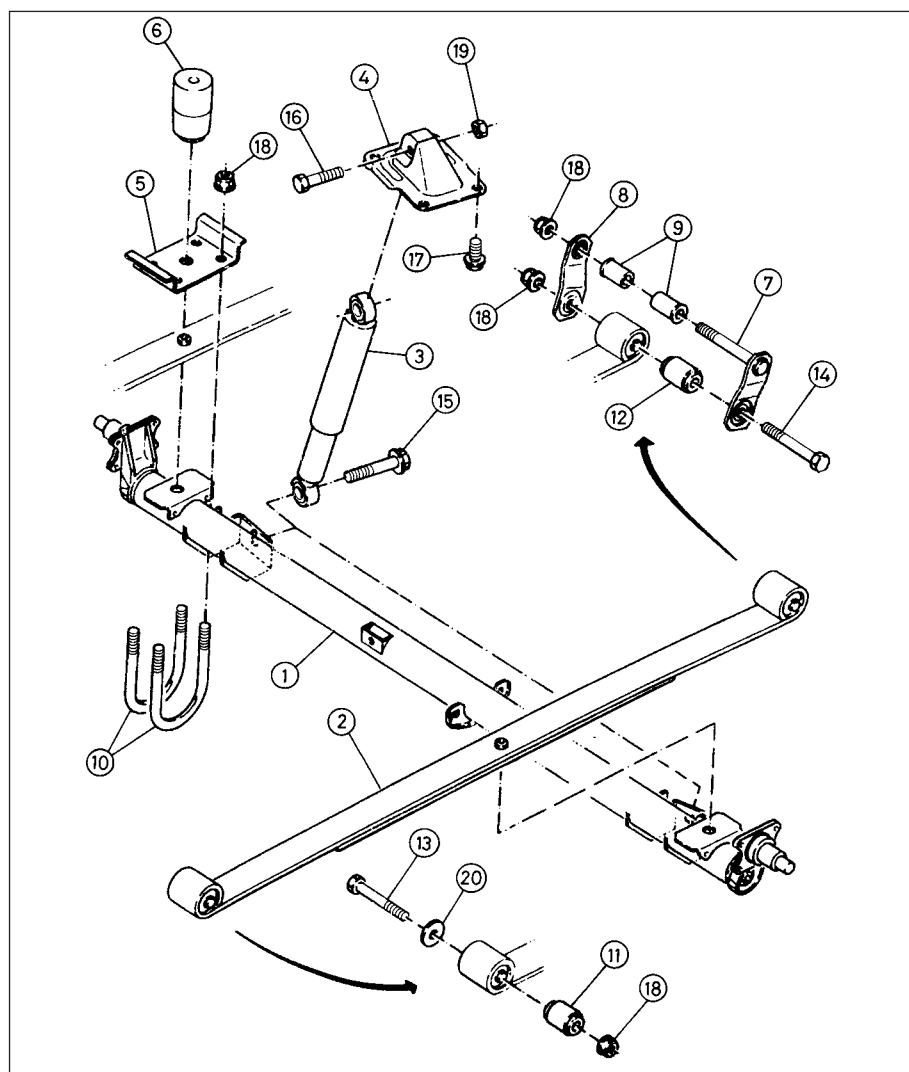
- When relocating the coil springs between the body and the suspension arm each side, ensure that they are correctly orientated, and that their tails abut against the stops.
- When the coil springs are correctly located, raise the jacks under the suspension arms, and reconnect the shock absorber each side.
- Tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque setting.
- If the brake cables and/or the hydraulic hoses were detached, refer to Chapter 9 for the reconnecting details, and to bleed the hydraulic system.

18 Rear leaf spring, shackle and bushes (Van models) - removal, inspection and refitting



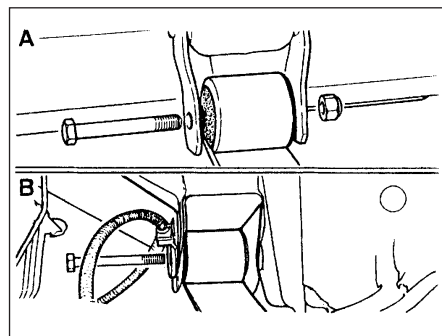
Removal

1 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. To allow improved access, unbolt and remove the rear roadwheel on the side concerned.



18.3 Rear leaf spring, axle and associated components on Van models

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 Axle | 9 Rear shackle bushes | 15 Shock absorber lower mounting bolt |
| 2 Rear leaf spring | 10 U-bolt | 16 Shock absorber upper mounting bolt |
| 3 Shock absorber | 11 Front spring eye bush | 17 Bolt |
| 4 Bracket | 12 Rear spring eye bush | 18 Nut |
| 5 Counterplate | 13 Spring mounting (shackle) bolt | 19 Nut |
| 6 Bump stop | 14 Spring mounting (shackle) bolt | 20 Washer |
| 7 Shackle plate and stud | | |
| 8 Inboard shackle plate | | |



18.5 Leaf spring rear (A) and front (B) locations and securing bolts

2 With the rear of the vehicle supported on stands, move the jack under the rear axle. Raise it to support the weight of the axle, and to take the loading from the front and rear spring mountings.

3 Unscrew and remove the shock absorber lower mounting bolt, and detach the shock absorber from its mounting bracket (see illustration).

4 Unscrew and remove the spring-to-axle U-bolt retaining nuts, and remove the U-bolts. Remove the counterplate and the bump stop from the top of the spring.

5 Unscrew and remove the mounting bolt and nut from the rear spring shackle (see illustration).

6 Unscrew and remove the retaining nut or bolt (as applicable) from the front mounting. Withdraw the mounting bolt (noting the flat washer fitted under the bolt head), then lower the jack under the axle just enough to allow the spring to be removed. Carefully withdraw the spring from the vehicle.

Inspection

7 If the spring mounting (shackle) bolts are noticeably worn, they must be renewed. If the spring eye bushes are worn and in need of replacement, they can be withdrawn using a suitable drawbolt and spacer. New bushes can be pressed into position in the spring eye using a vice (or press).

8 If required, the rear spring shackle can be removed by unscrewing the retaining nut, removing the inboard shackle plate and withdrawing the outboard shackle plate complete with the upper shackle stud. The upper split type bushes must be renewed if they are worn.

Refitting

9 Refit the rear shackle, and initially hand-tighten the shackle bolt and nut.

10 Relocate the spring over the axle, align the front spring eye with the mounting, and insert the bolt. Loosely secure the bolt (and where applicable, the nut) at this stage.

11 Align the rear spring eye with the shackle at the rear, and loosely fit the mounting bolt and nut.

12 Locate the counterplate and bump stop on the top of the spring over the axle, then refit the U-bolts and fit the retaining nuts. The jack under the axle may need to be raised to enable the U-bolt assemblies to be relocated.

13 Reconnect the shock absorber to the rear axle, then tighten the various fixings to their specified torque wrench settings.

14 Refit the roadwheel, and lower the vehicle to the ground to complete.

19 Rear axle (Van models) - removal and refitting



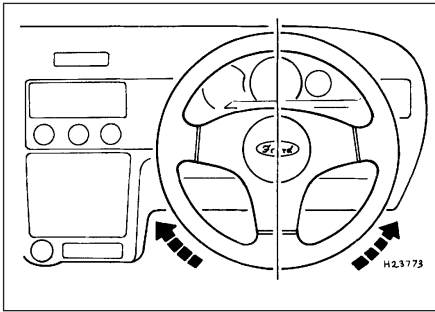
Removal

1 Chock the front wheels, then jack up the rear of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. To allow improved access, unbolt and remove the rear roadwheels.

2 With the rear of the vehicle supported on stands, position a single jack centrally (or preferably, two jacks each side of centre) under the axle beam, and raise to take the weight of the axle - do not lift the vehicle.

3 Clamp the hydraulic hoses of the light-laden valve, to prevent excessive fluid loss and the ingress of air and dirt into the hydraulic system, then disconnect the hydraulic lines to the light-laden valve and remove the clips.

4 Refer to Chapter 9 for details, and remove



20.2 Steering wheel alignment - centralised within a tolerance of 30° each side of vertical

the brake drum/hubs and then the backplate from the rear axle on each side. The backplates may be left attached to the axle, but it will still be necessary to detach the wheel cylinder brake line, and also to disconnect and withdraw the handbrake cable from each rear brake backplate. As each assembly is removed, keep them separated, and mark them to identify the right- and left-hand assemblies. Note that they are "handed", and must not be confused or they could be incorrectly refitted later.

5 Unscrew and remove the shock absorber lower fixing bolts, and detach them from the rear axle.

6 Unscrew and remove the axle-to-leaf spring U-bolt retaining nuts, remove the U-bolts, then carefully lower the axle and remove it from under the vehicle.

Refitting

7 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, but note the following:

- Reconnect the axle to the spring, reconnect the U-bolts and the shock absorbers to the axle on each side, and then tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque wrench settings.
- Refer to the appropriate Sections in Chapter 9 to refit the brake backplate and brake assemblies, and ensure that they are correctly located according to side.
- Ensure that all brake fluid line connections are clean before reconnecting them. Refer



20.3 Remove the outer horn pad from the centre of the steering wheel

to the appropriate Sections in Chapter 9 for specific details on reconnecting the brake lines, bleeding the brake hydraulic system, and reconnecting the handbrake cable. Details of handbrake adjustment will be found in Chapter 1.

20 Steering wheel - removal and refitting

Removal

Models without air bag

- Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- Turn the ignition key to release the steering lock, then set the front roadwheels in the straightahead position. With the steering centralised, the steering wheel should be positioned as shown (see illustration). Move the ignition key to the OFF position.
- Prise free the outer pad from the centre of the steering wheel (see illustration).
- Prise free the inner horn pad (see illustration), then note the connections and detach the horn wiring at the spade connectors (these differ in size to ensure correct refitting). Once the wiring is free, withdraw the inner horn pad. As it is withdrawn, note that it has a directional arrow mark which points up when the steering wheel is in the straightahead position.



20.4 Prise free the inner horn pad and detach the wires . . .

5 Unscrew the retaining bolt from the centre of the steering wheel, then gripping the wheel each side, pull and withdraw it from the column shaft (see illustrations).

6 If the wheel is reluctant to budge, give it a sharp tap on the underside of the spoke (as near to the hub as possible) with the palm of your hand.

Models with air bag



Warning: On models equipped with an air bag system, refer to the safety precautions in Section 27 of Chapter 12 before starting work.

7 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).



Warning: Before proceeding, wait a minimum of 15 minutes, as a precaution against accidental firing of the air bag. This period ensures that any stored energy in the back-up capacitor is dissipated.

8 Undo the two screws, and remove the steering column upper shroud.

9 Turn the steering wheel as necessary so that one of the air bag module retaining bolts becomes accessible from the rear of the steering wheel. Undo the bolt, then turn the steering wheel again until the second bolt is accessible. Undo this bolt also.

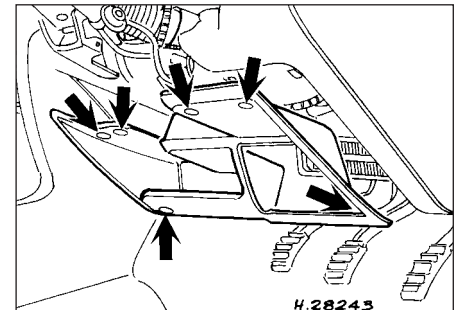
10 Withdraw the air bag module from the steering wheel far enough to access the wiring multi-plug. Some force may be needed to free the module from the additional steering wheel spoke retainers.



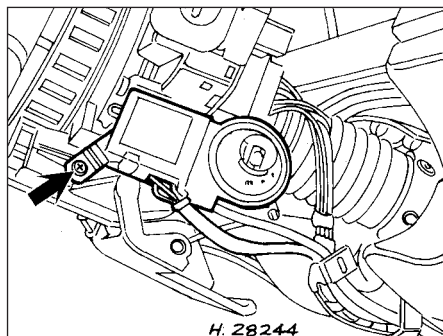
20.5A . . . unscrew the retaining bolt . . .



20.5B . . . and withdraw the steering wheel



20.13 Undo the screws (arrowed) and withdraw the detachable lower fascia panel from beneath the steering column



20.14 Undo the screw (arrowed) and withdraw the Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) transceiver from the ignition switch/steering lock barrel

11 Disconnect the multi-plug from the rear of the module, and remove the module from the vehicle.



Warning: Position the air bag module in a safe place, with the mechanism facing downwards as a precaution against accidental operation.

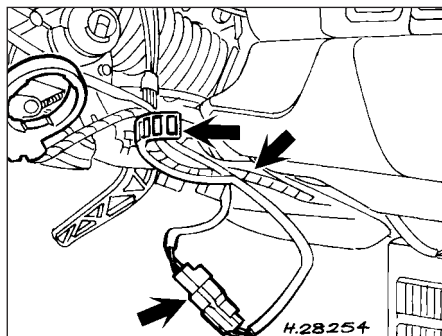
12 Undo the four screws, and remove the steering column lower shroud.

13 Undo the screws and withdraw the detachable lower facia panel from beneath the steering column (see illustration).

14 Where applicable, undo the single screw and withdraw the Passive Anti-Theft



21.3B ... and lower steering column shrouds



20.15 Release the steering column wiring harness and multi-plug as indicated

System (PATS) transceiver from the ignition switch/steering lock barrel (see illustration).

15 Release the steering column wiring harness from the retaining clips, and disconnect the air bag module wiring harness multi-plug (see illustration).

16 Turn the steering wheel so that the roadwheels are in the straightahead position, then remove the ignition key to lock the steering.

17 Unscrew the retaining bolt from the centre of the steering wheel, then insert the ignition key and turn it to position "I". Grip the steering wheel each side, then pull and withdraw it from the column shaft. If the wheel is reluctant to budge, give it a sharp tap on the underside of the spoke (as near to the hub as possible) with the palm of your hand.

Refitting

All models

18 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Ensure that the indicator stalk is set in its central (off) position, to avoid damaging it with the tag of the wheel as it is pushed down the shaft. Make sure that the wheel is centralised, as noted on removal. Turn the ignition key so that it is in position "I" (steering unlocked). Tighten the retaining bolt to the specified torque setting.



21.3A Remove the upper ...

21 Steering column - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Remove the steering wheel as described in the previous Section.
- 3 Remove the screws and withdraw the steering column upper and lower shrouds (see illustrations).
- 4 Remove the multi-function switch assembly from the column, with reference to Chapter 12.
- 5 Disconnect the ignition switch multi-plug, and release the wiring from the wiring loom guide.
- 6 Detach the bonnet release cable from the lever, then remove the lever from the column (see illustration).
- 7 Unscrew and remove the clamp bolt securing the steering column to the pinion shaft (see illustration).
- 8 Loosen off the column lower retaining nuts, then unscrew and remove the upper retaining nuts (see illustration). Remove the steering column from the vehicle.

Refitting

9 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure, but note the following:



21.6 Detach the bonnet release cable from the lever



21.7 Steering column-to-pinion shaft coupling and clamp bolt



21.8 Steering column upper retaining nut (on the left-hand side of the column)



22.3 Releasing the steering lock

- Tighten the respective retaining bolts to their specified torque settings.
- Check that the steering is centralised with the wheels in the straightahead position before refitting the steering wheel as described in Section 20.
- Refit the steering wheel before securing the steering column coupling to the pinion shaft with the clamp bolt.
- Ensure that the wiring connections are securely made. On completion, check for satisfactory operation of the steering, the column switches and the horn.

22 Steering column - dismantling and reassembly



Dismantling

- Remove the steering column as described in the previous Section, then securely locate it in a vice fitted with protective jaws.
- Remove the upper thrust bearing tolerance ring from the column, then withdraw the column shaft from the column tube.
- Insert the ignition key into the lock/switch, and turn it to the "I" position. Now use a small screwdriver or a suitable rod to depress the plunger in the side of the barrel, and simultaneously pull on the key to withdraw the lock/switch from the column (see illustration).
- Withdraw the spring from the column shaft.
- Prise free the lower and upper thrust bearings from the column tube and the lock/switch body.
- To remove the steering column height adjuster (where fitted) unscrew the through-bolt and locknut, remove the handle and lockplates, then remove the adjuster from the column.
- If any part of the steering column (and in particular, the universal joints) is found to be excessively worn, or if any part of the column assembly has been damaged, it must be renewed; no repairs are possible.

Reassembly

- Reassembly is a reversal of the dismantling procedure, but note the following points:



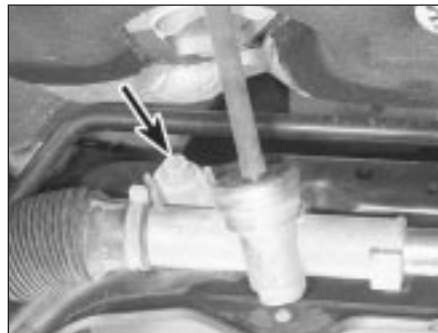
23.2 Steering gear gaiter and retaining clips (arrowed)

- When refitting the height adjuster, coat the threads of the through-bolt with Loctite, and locate the handle in the locked position. Tighten the retaining bolt and nut securely.
- Take care when fitting the lower thrust bearing into the column tube and the upper bearing to the steering lock/ignition switch body.
- When fitting the steering column lock/ignition switch, ensure that the key is in the "I" position. As the switch/lock is fitted into its barrel, it may be necessary to move the key clockwise and anti-clockwise slightly, to enable the housing drive to align with the barrel and fully engage.
- When assembling the column shaft to the tube, ensure that the upper thrust bearing tolerance ring is fitted with its tapered face towards the bearing.

23 Steering gear rubber gaiters - renewal



- Remove the track rod end balljoint and its locknut from the track rod as described in Section 28.
- Release the clip(s), and slide the gaiter off the rack-and-pinion housing and track rod (see illustration).
- Scrape off all grease from the old gaiter, and apply to the track rod inner joint. Wipe



24.3A Steering gear retaining bolt (arrowed) to the subframe on the right-hand side

clean the seating areas on the rack-and-pinion housing and track rod.

- Slide the new gaiter onto the housing and track rod, and tighten the clip(s).

- Refit the track rod end balljoint as described in Section 28.

24 Steering gear (manual steering) - removal and refitting



Removal

- Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- Refer to Section 10 for details, and remove the subframe from the vehicle as described. Note that complete removal of the subframe may not be necessary if it is carefully lowered to allow access to the steering gear for its separation and withdrawal.
- Unscrew and remove the two steering gear-to-subframe retaining bolts, then withdraw the assembly from the vehicle (see illustrations).

Refitting

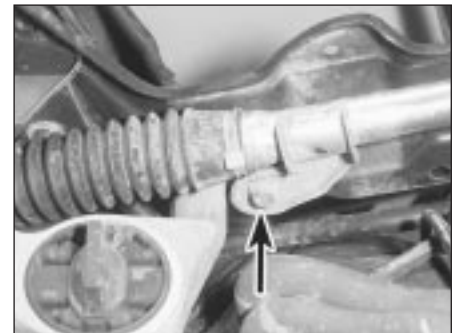
- Refit the steering gear to the subframe in the reverse order of removal, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque setting.
- Refer to Section 10 for the relevant details on refitting the subframe assembly to the vehicle.

25 Steering gear (power-assisted steering) - removal and refitting

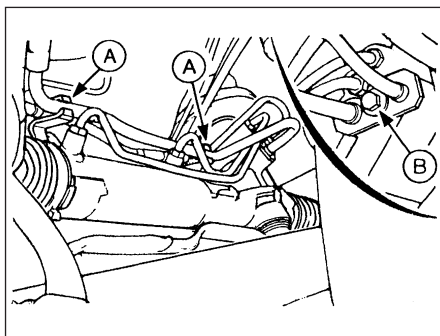


Removal

- Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- Refer to Section 10 and proceed as described in paragraphs 1 to 12 inclusive, then proceed as follows.
- Undo the retaining screws, and detach the clips securing the power steering hydraulic pressure pipes to the steering gear.
- Position a suitable container under the hydraulic pipe connections to the steering



24.3B Steering gear retaining bolt (arrowed) to the subframe on the left-hand side



25.4 Power steering gear and hydraulic pipe connections

- A Hydraulic pipe locating clips
B Valve clamp plate bolt

gear. Unscrew the bolt securing the hydraulic valve clamp plate to the valve body on the steering rack, then detach the pipes from the valve body. Withdraw the pipes from the steering gear, and drain the hydraulic fluid into the container (see illustration).

5 Plug the exposed ends of the hydraulic line connections, to prevent the ingress of dirt and further fluid loss. Note that new O-ring seals will be needed for the pressure and return hose connections when reconnecting.

6 Locate suitable jacks or blocks under the subframe to support it, then unscrew and remove the eight subframe fixing bolts (see illustration 10.14). Lower the support jacks or blocks, and withdraw the subframe. As it is lowered, disengage the steering gear shaft from the column. Note that complete removal of the subframe from the vehicle may not be necessary if it is carefully lowered to allow access to the steering gear for its separation and withdrawal.

7 Unscrew and remove the two steering gear-to-subframe retaining bolts, then withdraw the from the vehicle.

Refitting

8 Refit the steering gear to the subframe in the reverse order of removal, and tighten the retaining bolts to the specified torque setting.

9 Refer to Section 10 for the relevant details, and refit the subframe assembly to the vehicle. When the subframe is loosely in position, remove the temporary plugs from the hydraulic fluid lines, and check that the connections are clean. Fit new O-ring seals to the pressure and return hoses, then reconnect the hydraulic lines to the steering gear. Check that the hydraulic lines and fixings are secure, then continue refitting the steering gear and subframe as described in Section 10.

10 On completion, top up the power steering fluid reservoir and bleed the system as described in Section 27. Check for any signs of fluid leakage from the system hoses and connections. Finally check and adjust the front wheel alignment as described in Section 29.



26.2 Remove the drivebelt upper guard from the top of the power steering pump on Zetec engines

26 Power-assisted steering pump - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 On Zetec engine models, undo the two bolts and remove the drivebelt upper guard from the top of the pump (see illustration).

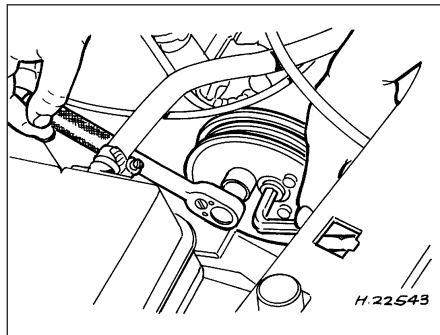
3 Apply the handbrake, then raise and support the front of the vehicle on axle stands.

4 Undo the retaining screws, and remove the drivebelt lower guard from the underbody.

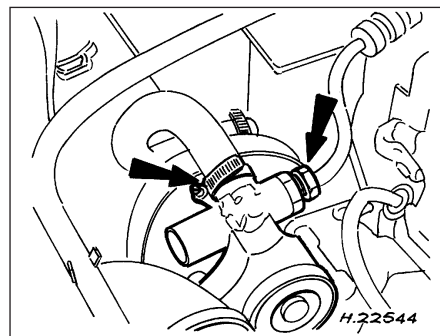
5 Loosen off the drivebelt tension by turning the tension adjustment bolt in a clockwise direction. Noting the routing of the belt around the pulleys, disengage the drivebelt from the power steering pump pulley.

6 Position a suitable container beneath the power steering pump, then unscrew and detach the fluid pressure and return hoses from the pump (see illustration). As they are detached from the pump, allow the fluid to drain from the hoses (and the pump) into the container. Plug the exposed ends of the hydraulic hoses and the pump connections, to prevent the ingress of dirt and excessive fluid loss.

7 Insert a 9 mm Allen key into the centre of the pump drive spindle to prevent it from turning, then unscrew and remove the three



26.7 Power steering pump pulley removal



26.6 Power steering pump and hose connections on the CVH engine

pump pulley retaining bolts (see illustration). Withdraw the pulley from the pump.

8 Unscrew the four retaining bolts shown (see illustration) and withdraw the pump from the vehicle.

Refitting

9 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but tighten all nuts and bolts to the specified torque. Remove the plugs from the pipes, and ensure that the pipes are located correctly so that they do not foul any surrounding components.

10 Refit the drivebelt as described in Chapter 1.

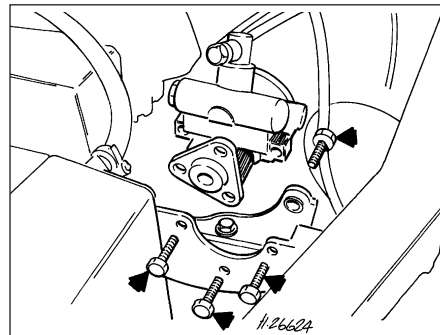
11 On completion, fill the power steering system with the specified fluid up to the maximum level mark, and bleed the system as described in Section 27. Check for any signs of fluid leakage from the system hoses and connections.

27 Power-assisted steering system - bleeding

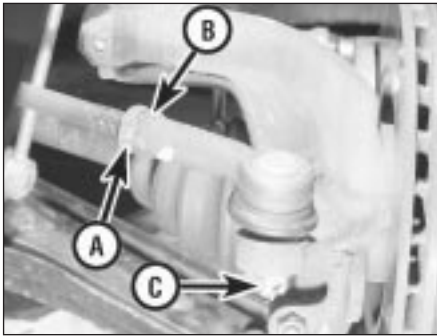
1 This will normally only be required if any part of the hydraulic system has been disconnected.

2 Remove the fluid reservoir filler cap, and top-up the fluid level to the "max-cold" mark using only the specified fluid (refer to "Lubricants, fluids and capacities" at the beginning of this manual).

3 Start the engine and allow it to idle, slowly



26.8 Power steering pump and securing bolts



28.2 Track rod end balljoint showing the locknut (A) retaining flats (B) and the balljoint-to-spindle carrier arm retaining nut and split pin (C)



28.3 Balljoint separator tool in position. Note that the nut should be left loosely in position when the thread of the joint is to be protected for re-use

moving the steering from lock-to-lock several times to purge out the air, then top-up the level in the fluid reservoir. Add the fluid slowly, to prevent the possibility of aeration of the fluid in the circuit.

4 Switch the engine off, then recheck the fluid level in the reservoir, and further top-up if necessary. Finally check the system hoses and connections for any signs of fluid leaks, which if found, must be rectified.

28 Track rod end balljoint - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands. Remove the appropriate front roadwheel.

2 Using a suitable spanner, slacken the track rod end balljoint locknut on the track rod by a quarter of a turn (see illustration). Hold the balljoint stationary with another spanner engaged with the flats at its inner end to prevent it from turning.

3 Extract the split pin, then loosen off the retaining nut. If the balljoint is to be renewed, the nut can be fully removed. If the existing balljoint is to be reconnected, the nut should be slackened off a couple of turns only at first, and left in position to protect the joint threads as the joint is separated from the spindle carrier. To release the tapered shank of the joint from the spindle carrier, use a balljoint separator tool as shown (see illustration). If the joint is to be re-used, take care not to damage the rubber dust cover when using a separator tool.

4 Count the number of exposed threads visible on the inner section of the track rod, and record this figure.

5 Unscrew the balljoint from the track rod, counting the number of turns necessary to remove it.

Refitting

6 Screw the balljoint into the track rod the

number of turns noted during removal until the balljoint just contacts the locknut. Now tighten the locknut while holding the balljoint.

7 Engage the shank of the balljoint with the spindle carrier arm, and refit the locknut. Tighten the locknut to the specified torque. If the balljoint shank turns while the locknut is being tightened, lever down on the top of the balljoint with a stout bar. The tapered fit of the shank will lock it and prevent rotation as the nut is tightened.

8 Refit the roadwheel, and lower the vehicle to the ground.

9 Finally check and if necessary adjust the front wheel alignment with reference to Section 29.

29 Wheel alignment and steering angles - general information



1 Accurate front wheel alignment is essential to provide positive steering and prevent excessive tyre wear. Before considering the steering/suspension geometry, check that the tyres are correctly inflated, that the front wheels are not buckled, and that the steering linkage and suspension joints are in good order, without slackness or wear.

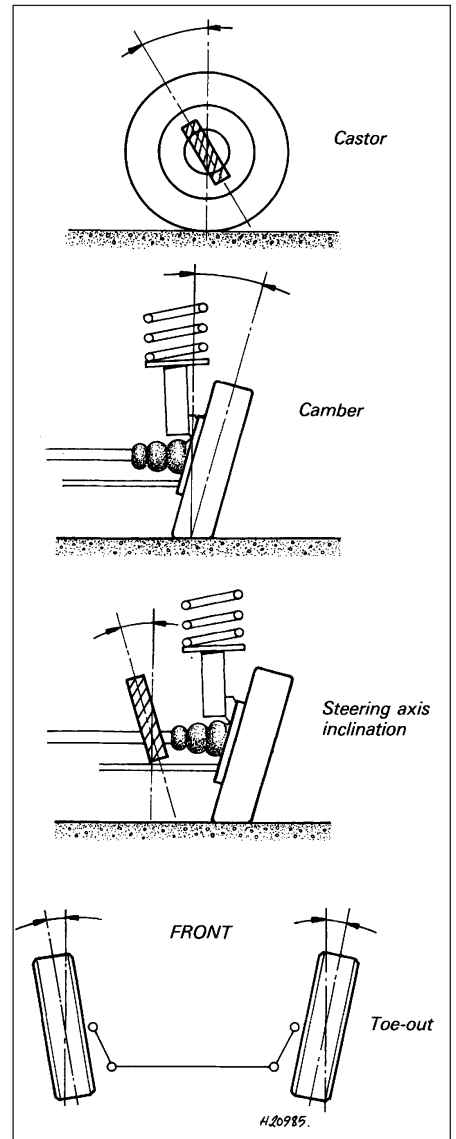
2 Wheel alignment consists of four factors (see illustration):

Camber is the angle at which the front wheels are set from the vertical when viewed from the front of the vehicle. "Positive camber" is the amount (in degrees) that the wheels are tilted outward at the top of the vertical.

Castor is the angle between the steering axis and a vertical line when viewed from each side of the car. "Positive castor" is when the steering axis is inclined rearward at the top.

Steering axis inclination is the angle (when viewed from the front of the vehicle) between the vertical and an imaginary line drawn through the suspension strut upper mounting and the lower suspension arm balljoint.

Toe setting is the amount by which the distance between the front inside edges of the



29.2 Wheel alignment and steering angles

roadwheels (measured at hub height) differs from the diametrically-opposite distance measured between the rear inside edges of the front roadwheels.

3 With the exception of the toe setting, all other steering angles are set during manufacture, and no adjustment is possible. It can be assumed, therefore, that unless the vehicle has suffered accident damage, all the preset steering angles will be correct. Should there be some doubt about their accuracy, it will be necessary to seek the help of a Ford dealer, as special gauges are needed to check the steering angles.

4 Two methods are available to the home mechanic for checking the toe setting. One method is to use a gauge to measure the distance between the front and rear inside edges of the roadwheels. The other method is to use a scuff plate, in which each front wheel is rolled across a movable plate which

10•18 Suspension and steering systems

records any deviation, or scuff, of the tyre from the straight-ahead position as it moves across the plate. Relatively inexpensive equipment of both types is available from accessory outlets to enable these checks, and subsequent adjustments to be carried out at home.

5 If, after checking the toe setting using whichever method is preferable, it is found that adjustment is necessary, proceed as follows.

6 Turn the steering wheel onto full left lock, and record the number of exposed threads on

the right-hand steering track rod. Now turn the steering onto full right lock, and record the number of threads on the left-hand side. If there are the same number of threads visible on both sides, then subsequent adjustment can be made equally on both sides. If there are more threads visible on one side than the other, it will be necessary to compensate for this during adjustment. *After adjustment, there must be the same number of threads visible on each track rod. This is most important.*

7 To alter the toe setting, slacken the

locknut securing the track rod end balljoint to the track rod, and turn the track rod using a self-grip wrench to achieve the desired setting. When viewed from the side of the car, turning the track rod clockwise will increase the toe-in, turning it anti-clockwise will increase the toe-out. Only turn the track rods by a quarter of a turn each time, and then recheck the setting using the gauges, or scuff plate.






8 After adjustment, tighten the locknuts and check that the steering gear rubber gaiter has not been twisted by turning the track rods.

Chapter 11 Bodywork and fittings

Contents

Body side-trim mouldings and adhesive emblems - removal and refitting	27	Minor body damage - repair	4
Bonnet - removal, refitting and adjustment	7	Powered hood (Cabriolet models) - removal and refitting	39
Bonnet lock - removal and refitting	9	Powered hood control damper/hydraulic ram (Cabriolet models) - removal and refitting	41
Bonnet release cable - removal and refitting	8	Powered hood control system (Cabriolet models) - hose removal, refitting and system bleeding	40
Boot lid - removal, refitting and adjustment	19	Powered hood operating motor and pump (Cabriolet models) - removal and refitting	42
Boot lid lock components - removal and refitting	20	Radiator grille - removal and refitting	38
Bumpers - removal and refitting	6	Rear quarter window glass (Cabriolet models) - removal and refitting	12
Central locking system control module - removal and refitting	24	Rear quarter window regulator (Cabriolet models) - removal and refitting	13
Centre console - removal and refitting	36	Roof moulding (Van models) - removal and refitting	28
Door - removal and refitting	16	Seat belts - removal and refitting	33
Door and tailgate weatherstrips - removal and refitting	26	Seats - removal and refitting	32
Door inner trim panel - removal and refitting	10	Sunroof - checking and adjustment	29
Door lock, lock cylinder and handles - removal and refitting	15	Sunroof panel - removal and refitting	30
Door window glass - removal and refitting	11	Sunroof weatherstrip - removal and refitting	31
Door window regulator - removal and refitting	14	Tailgate - removal, refitting and adjustment	21
Exterior mirror and glass - removal and refitting	17	Tailgate lock components - removal and refitting	23
Facia - removal and refitting	35	Tailgate support strut - removal and refitting	22
General information	1	Wheel arch liners - removal and refitting	37
Interior mirror - removal and refitting	18	Windscreen and fixed windows - removal and refitting	25
Interior trim panels - removal and refitting	34		
Maintenance - bodywork and underframe	2		
Maintenance - upholstery and carpets	3		
Major body damage - repair	5		

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience 	Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience 	Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic 	Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic 	Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional 
---	--	--	---	--

Specifications

Powered hood - Cabriolet models

Power hood hydraulic system fluid type Esso UNIVIS J26

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Front seat slide to floor	25 to 32	18 to 24
Seat belt anchor bolts	29 to 45	22 to 33
Seat belt lower anchorage rail securing bolt	29 to 45	22 to 33
Front seat belt height adjuster bolt	25 to 45	18 to 33
Front seat slide to frame nuts	25 to 45	18 to 33
Bonnet hinge bolts	8.5 to 12	6.5 to 9
Bonnet latch bolts	9 to 11	7 to 8
Tailgate hinge bolts	21 to 27	16 to 20
Tailgate striker bolts	9 to 11	7 to 8
Tailgate lock bolts	9 to 11	7 to 8
Boot lid hinge bolts	21 to 27	16 to 20
Boot lid striker bolts	9 to 11	7 to 8
Boot lid latch bolts	9 to 11	7 to 8

1 General information

The bodyshell and underframe on all models is of all-steel welded construction, incorporating progressive crumple zones at the front and rear, and a rigid centre safety cell. The body style range is comprehensive, and includes the 3- and 5-door Hatchback, the 4-door Saloon, the 5-door Estate, the 2-door Cabriolet, and the Van.

A multi-stage anti-corrosion process is applied to all new vehicles. This includes zinc phosphating on some panels, the injection of wax into boxed sections, and a wax and PVC coating applied to the underbody for its protection.

Inertia reel seat belts are fitted to all models, and from the 1994 model year onwards, the front seat belt stalks are mounted on automatic tensioners (also known as "grabbers") (see illustration). In the event of a serious front impact, a spring mass sensor releases a coil spring which pulls the stalk buckle downwards and tensions the seat belt. It is not possible to reset the tensioner once fired, and it must therefore be renewed.

Central locking is a standard or optional fitment on all models. Where double-locking is also fitted, the lock mechanism is disconnected (when the system is in use) from the interior door handles, making it impossible to open any of the doors or the tailgate/bootlid from inside the vehicle. This means that, even if a thief should break a side window, it will not be possible to open the door using the interior handle.

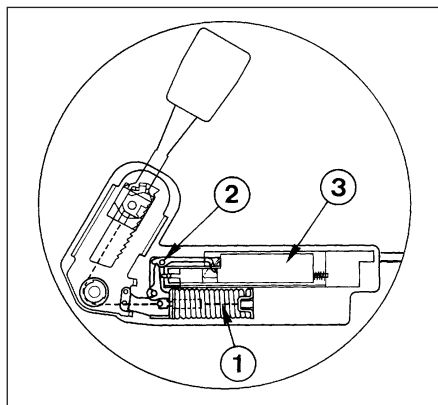
Many of the procedures in this Chapter require the battery to be disconnected. Refer to Chapter 5, Section 1 first.

2 Maintenance - bodywork and underframe



The general condition of a vehicle's bodywork is the one thing that significantly affects its value. Maintenance is easy, but needs to be regular. Neglect, particularly after minor damage, can lead quickly to further deterioration and costly repair bills. It is important also to keep watch on those parts of the vehicle not immediately visible, for instance the underside, inside all the wheel arches, and the lower part of the engine compartment.

The basic maintenance routine for the bodywork is washing - preferably with a lot of water, from a hose. This will remove all the loose solids which may have stuck to the vehicle. It is important to flush these off in such a way as to prevent grit from scratching the finish. The wheel arches and underframe need washing in the same way, to remove any accumulated mud, which will retain moisture



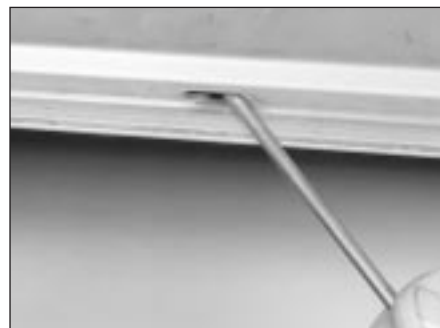
1.3 Automatic seat belt tensioner

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1 Coil spring | 3 Spring mass sensor |
| 2 Lever system | |

and tend to encourage rust. Paradoxically enough, the best time to clean the underframe and wheel arches is in wet weather, when the mud is thoroughly wet and soft. In very wet weather, the underframe is usually cleaned of large accumulations automatically, and this is a good time for inspection.

Periodically, except on vehicles with a wax-based underbody protective coating, it is a good idea to have the whole of the underframe of the vehicle steam-cleaned, engine compartment included, so that a thorough inspection can be carried out to see what minor repairs and renovations are necessary. Steam-cleaning is available at many garages, and is necessary for the removal of the accumulation of oily grime, which sometimes is allowed to become thick in certain areas. If steam-cleaning facilities are not available, there are some excellent grease solvents available which can be brush-applied; the dirt can then be simply hosed off. Note that these methods should not be used on vehicles with wax-based underbody protective coating, or the coating will be removed. Such vehicles should be inspected annually, preferably just prior to Winter, when the underbody should be washed down, and any damage to the wax coating repaired. Ideally, a completely fresh coat should be applied. It would also be worth considering the use of such wax-based protection for injection into door panels, sills, box sections, etc, as an additional safeguard against rust damage, where such protection is not provided by the vehicle manufacturer.

After washing paintwork, wipe off with a chamois leather to give an unspotted clear finish. A coat of clear protective wax polish will give added protection against chemical pollutants in the air. If the paintwork sheen has dulled or oxidised, use a cleaner/polisher combination to restore the brilliance of the shine. This requires a little effort, but such dulling is usually caused because regular washing has been neglected. Care needs to be taken with metallic paintwork, as special non-abrasive cleaner/polisher is required to



2.4 Ensure that the body drain holes are clear

avoid damage to the finish. Always check that the door and ventilator opening drain holes and pipes are completely clear, so that water can be drained out (see illustration). Brightwork should be treated in the same way as paintwork. Windscreens and windows can be kept clear of the smeary film which often appears, by the use of proprietary glass cleaner. Never use any form of wax or other body or chromium polish on glass.

3 Maintenance - upholstery and carpets



Mats and carpets should be brushed or vacuum-cleaned regularly, to keep them free of grit. If they are badly stained, remove them from the vehicle for scrubbing or sponging, and make quite sure they are dry before refitting. Seats and interior trim panels can be kept clean by wiping with a damp cloth. If they do become stained (which can be more apparent on light-coloured upholstery), use a little liquid detergent and a soft nail brush to scour the grime out of the grain of the material. Do not forget to keep the headlining clean in the same way as the upholstery. When using liquid cleaners inside the vehicle, do not over-wet the surfaces being cleaned. Excessive damp could get into the seams and padded interior, causing stains, offensive odours or even rot.



If the inside of the vehicle gets wet accidentally, it is worthwhile taking some trouble to dry it out properly, particularly where carpets are involved. Do not leave oil or electric heaters inside the vehicle for this purpose.

4 Minor body damage - repair



Note: For more detailed information about bodywork repair, Haynes Publishing produce a book by Lindsay Porter called "The Car Bodywork Repair Manual". This incorporates

information on such aspects as rust treatment, painting and glass-fibre repairs, as well as details on more ambitious repairs involving welding and panel beating.

Repairs of minor scratches in bodywork

If the scratch is very superficial, and does not penetrate to the metal of the bodywork, repair is very simple. Lightly rub the area of the scratch with a paintwork renovator, or a very fine cutting paste, to remove loose paint from the scratch, and to clear the surrounding bodywork of wax polish. Rinse the area with clean water.

Apply touch-up paint to the scratch using a fine paint brush; continue to apply fine layers of paint until the surface of the paint in the scratch is level with the surrounding paintwork. Allow the new paint at least two weeks to harden, then blend it into the surrounding paintwork by rubbing the scratch area with a paintwork renovator or a very fine cutting paste. Finally, apply wax polish.

Where the scratch has penetrated right through to the metal of the bodywork, causing the metal to rust, a different repair technique is required. Remove any loose rust from the bottom of the scratch with a penknife, then apply rust-inhibiting paint to prevent the formation of rust in the future. Using a rubber or nylon applicator, fill the scratch with bodystopper paste. If required, this paste can be mixed with cellulose thinners to provide a very thin paste which is ideal for filling narrow scratches. Before the stopper-paste in the scratch hardens, wrap a piece of smooth cotton rag around the top of a finger. Dip the finger in cellulose thinners, and quickly sweep it across the surface of the stopper-paste in the scratch; this will ensure that the surface of the stopper-paste is slightly hollowed. The scratch can now be painted over as described earlier in this Section.

Repairs of dents in bodywork

When deep denting of the vehicle's bodywork has taken place, the first task is to pull the dent out, until the affected bodywork almost attains its original shape. There is little point in trying to restore the original shape completely, as the metal in the damaged area will have stretched on impact, and cannot be reshaped fully to its original contour. It is better to bring the level of the dent up to a point which is about 3 mm below the level of the surrounding bodywork. In cases where the dent is very shallow anyway, it is not worth trying to pull it out at all. If the underside of the dent is accessible, it can be hammered out gently from behind, using a mallet with a wooden or plastic head. Whilst doing this, hold a suitable block of wood firmly against the outside of the panel, to absorb the impact from the hammer blows and thus prevent a large area of the bodywork from being "belled-out".

Should the dent be in a section of the bodywork which has a double skin, or some

other factor making it inaccessible from behind, a different technique is called for. Drill several small holes through the metal inside the area - particularly in the deeper section. Then screw long self-tapping screws into the holes, just sufficiently for them to gain a good purchase in the metal. Now the dent can be pulled out by pulling on the protruding heads of the screws with a pair of pliers.

The next stage of the repair is the removal of the paint from the damaged area, and from an inch or so of the surrounding "sound" bodywork. This is accomplished most easily by using a wire brush or abrasive pad on a power drill, although it can be done just as effectively by hand, using sheets of abrasive paper. To complete the preparation for filling, score the surface of the bare metal with a screwdriver or the tang of a file, or alternatively, drill small holes in the affected area. This will provide a really good "key" for the filler paste.

To complete the repair, see the Section on filling and respraying.

Repairs of rust holes or gashes in bodywork

Remove all paint from the affected area, and from an inch or so of the surrounding "sound" bodywork, using an abrasive pad or a wire brush on a power drill. If these are not available, a few sheets of abrasive paper will do the job most effectively. With the paint removed, you will be able to judge the severity of the corrosion, and therefore decide whether to renew the whole panel (if this is possible) or to repair the affected area. New body panels are not as expensive as most people think, and it is often quicker and more satisfactory to fit a new panel than to attempt to repair large areas of corrosion.

Remove all fittings from the affected area, except those which will act as a guide to the original shape of the damaged bodywork (eg headlight shells etc). Then, using tin snips or a hacksaw blade, remove all loose metal and any other metal badly affected by corrosion. Hammer the edges of the hole inwards, in order to create a slight depression for the filler paste.

Wire-brush the affected area to remove the powdery rust from the surface of the remaining metal. Paint the affected area with rust-inhibiting paint, if the back of the rusted area is accessible, treat this also.

Before filling can take place, it will be necessary to block the hole in some way. This can be achieved by the use of aluminium or plastic mesh, or aluminium tape.

Aluminium or plastic mesh, or glass-fibre matting, is probably the best material to use for a large hole. Cut a piece to the approximate size and shape of the hole to be filled, then position it in the hole so that its edges are below the level of the surrounding bodywork. It can be retained in position by several blobs of filler paste around its periphery.

Aluminium tape should be used for small or very narrow holes. Pull a piece off the roll, trim it to the approximate size and shape required, then pull off the backing paper (if used) and stick the tape over the hole; it can be overlapped if the thickness of one piece is insufficient. Burnish down the edges of the tape with the handle of a screwdriver or similar, to ensure that the tape is securely attached to the metal underneath.

Bodywork repairs - filling and respraying

Before using this Section, see the Sections on dent, deep scratch, rust holes and gash repairs.

Many types of bodyfiller are available, but generally speaking, those proprietary kits which contain a tin of filler paste and a tube of resin hardener are best for this type of repair. A wide, flexible plastic or nylon applicator will be found invaluable for imparting a smooth and well-contoured finish to the surface of the filler.

Mix up a little filler on a clean piece of card or board - measure the hardener carefully (follow the maker's instructions on the pack), otherwise the filler will set too rapidly or too slowly. Using the applicator, apply the filler paste to the prepared area; draw the applicator across the surface of the filler to achieve the correct contour and to level the surface. As soon as a contour that approximates to the correct one is achieved, stop working the paste - if you carry on too long, the paste will become sticky and begin to "pick-up" on the applicator. Continue to add thin layers of filler paste at 20-minute intervals, until the level of the filler is just proud of the surrounding bodywork.

Once the filler has hardened, the excess can be removed using a metal plane or file. From then on, progressively-finer grades of abrasive paper should be used, starting with a 40-grade production paper, and finishing with a 400-grade wet-and-dry paper. Always wrap the abrasive paper around a flat rubber, cork, or wooden block - otherwise the surface of the filler will not be completely flat. During the smoothing of the filler surface, the wet-and-dry paper should be periodically rinsed in water. This will ensure that a very smooth finish is imparted to the filler at the final stage.

At this stage, the "dent" should be surrounded by a ring of bare metal, which in turn should be encircled by the finely "feathered" edge of the good paintwork. Rinse the repair area with clean water, until all of the dust produced by the rubbing-down operation has gone.

Spray the whole area with a light coat of primer - this will show up any imperfections in the surface of the filler. Repair these imperfections with fresh filler paste or bodystopper, and once more smooth the surface with abrasive paper. Repeat this spray-and-repair procedure until you are satisfied that the surface of the filler, and the

feathered edge of the paintwork, are perfect. Clean the repair area with clean water, and allow to dry fully.



If bodystopper is used, it can be mixed with cellulose thinners to form a really thin paste which is ideal for filling small holes.

The repair area is now ready for final spraying. Paint spraying must be carried out in a warm, dry, windless and dust-free atmosphere. This condition can be created artificially if you have access to a large indoor working area, but if you are forced to work in the open, you will have to pick your day very carefully. If you are working indoors, dousing the floor in the work area with water will help to settle the dust which would otherwise be in the atmosphere. If the repair area is confined to one body panel, mask off the surrounding panels; this will help to minimise the effects of a slight mis-match in paint colours. Bodywork fittings (eg chrome strips, door handles etc) will also need to be masked off. Use genuine masking tape, and several thicknesses of newspaper, for the masking operations.

Before commencing to spray, agitate the aerosol can thoroughly, then spray a test area (an old tin, or similar) until the technique is mastered. Cover the repair area with a thick coat of primer; the thickness should be built up using several thin layers of paint, rather than one thick one. Using 400-grade wet-and-dry paper, rub down the surface of the primer until it is really smooth. While doing this, the work area should be thoroughly doused with water, and the wet-and-dry paper periodically rinsed in water. Allow to dry before spraying on more paint.

Spray on the top coat, again building up the thickness by using several thin layers of paint. Start spraying at one edge of the repair area, and then, using a side-to-side motion, work until the whole repair area and about 2 inches of the surrounding original paintwork is covered. Remove all masking material 10 to 15 minutes after spraying on the final coat of paint.

Allow the new paint at least two weeks to harden, then, using a paintwork renovator, or a very fine cutting paste, blend the edges of the paint into the existing paintwork. Finally, apply wax polish.

Plastic components

With the use of more and more plastic body components by the vehicle manufacturers (eg bumpers, spoilers, and in some cases major body panels), rectification of more serious damage to such items has become a matter of either entrusting repair work to a specialist in this field, or renewing complete components. Repair of such damage by the DIY owner is not really feasible, owing to the

cost of the equipment and materials required for effecting such repairs. The basic technique involves making a groove along the line of the crack in the plastic, using a rotary burr in a power drill. The damaged part is then welded back together, using a hot-air gun to heat up and fuse a plastic filler rod into the groove. Any excess plastic is then removed, and the area rubbed down to a smooth finish. It is important that a filler rod of the correct plastic is used, as body components can be made of a variety of different types (eg polycarbonate, ABS, polypropylene).

Damage of a less serious nature (abrasions, minor cracks etc) can be repaired by the DIY owner using a two-part epoxy filler repair material. Once mixed in equal proportions, this is used in similar fashion to the bodywork filler used on metal panels. The filler is usually cured in twenty to thirty minutes, ready for sanding and painting.

If the owner is renewing a complete component himself, or if he has repaired it with epoxy filler, he will be left with the problem of finding a suitable paint for finishing which is compatible with the type of plastic used. At one time, the use of a universal paint was not possible, owing to the complex range of plastics encountered in body component applications. Standard paints, generally speaking, will not bond to plastic or rubber satisfactorily. However, it is now possible to obtain a plastic body parts finishing kit which consists of a pre-primer treatment, a primer and coloured top coat. Full instructions are normally supplied with a kit, but basically, the method of use is to first apply the pre-primer to the component concerned, and allow it to dry for up to 30 minutes. Then the primer is applied, and left to dry for about an hour before finally applying the special-coloured top coat. The result is a correctly-coloured component, where the paint will flex with the plastic or rubber, a property that standard paint does not normally possess.

5 Major body damage - repair



Where serious damage has occurred, or large areas need renewal due to neglect, it means that complete new panels will need welding-in, and this is best left to professionals. If the damage is due to impact, it will also be necessary to check completely the alignment of the bodysheet, and this can only be carried out accurately by a Citroën dealer, using special jigs. If the body is left misaligned, it is primarily dangerous, as the car will not handle properly; secondly, uneven stresses will be imposed on the steering, suspension and possibly transmission, causing abnormal wear, or complete failure, particularly to such items as the tyres.

6 Bumpers - removal and refitting



Removal

Front bumper

- 1 Apply the handbrake, then raise and support the vehicle at the front end on axle stands.
- 2 Release the six fasteners and two clips, and remove the splash shield from the underside of the vehicle at the front. The six fasteners will either be clip types or plastic screws, in which case they can be prised free or unscrewed, or pop-rivets, which will need to be drilled through.
- 3 Undo the two bumper-to-wing retaining screws at the rear edge of the bumper each side (see illustration).
- 4 Unscrew and remove the four bumper retaining nuts (two each side) securing the bumper to the front end of the vehicle (see illustration).
- 5 Disconnect the wiring from the bumper mounted lights or indicators, where fitted.
- 6 Enlist the aid of an assistant, and carefully withdraw the bumper forwards from the vehicle.

Rear (single-piece) bumper

- 7 Prise free the number plate light from the bumper, then detach the wiring connectors and remove the light.



6.3 Front bumper retaining screws



6.4 Front bumper retaining nuts



6.8 Rear bumper retaining screws

6.10A Rear bumper retaining nuts
(Hatchback and Saloon models)6.10B Rear (upper) bumper retaining nut
(Estate models)

8 Unscrew and remove the two retaining screws securing the forward ends of the bumper to the trailing end of the wheel arch each side (*see illustration*).

9 Where applicable, remove the rear trim panel in the rear luggage compartment to gain access to the bumper securing nuts.

10 Unscrew and remove the bumper retaining nuts from the rear panel each side (*see illustrations*). On some models, access to the nuts is from underneath the vehicle; on others, it is from within the luggage compartment after removal of the appropriate rear trim panel. Enlist the aid of an assistant, to help in pulling the bumper outwards to clear the body each side, and withdraw it rearwards from the vehicle.

Rear quarter bumper

11 Reach behind the bumper, compress the rear number plate light retaining clips, and extract the light from the bumper. Disconnect the wiring connectors and remove the light.

12 Working from above, between the bumper and the vehicle rear panel, undo the two Torx-type retaining screws and then remove the quarter bumper (*see illustration*).

Refitting

13 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Check the bumper for alignment before fully tightening the retaining

nuts/screws. On rear bumpers, check the operation of the rear number plate light on completion.

7 Bonnet - removal, refitting and adjustment



Removal

1 Open the bonnet, and support it in the open position using the stay.

2 Release the fasteners and remove the insulation panel from the underside of the bonnet.

3 Disconnect the windscreen washer hose from its connection to the washer jet, and from the locating clips on the bonnet and hinge.

4 Undo the retaining screw, and detach the earth lead from the bonnet near the left-hand hinge (*see illustration*). Also, where applicable, disconnect the heated washer multi-plug and wiring from the bonnet.

5 To assist in correctly realigning the bonnet when refitting it, mark the outline of the hinges with a soft pencil, then loosen the two hinge retaining bolts each side.

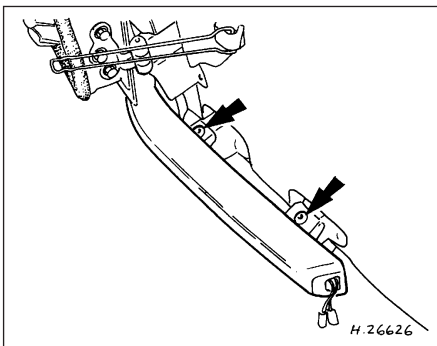
6 With the help of an assistant, remove the stay, unscrew the four bolts and lift the bonnet from the vehicle (*see illustration*).

6.10C Rear (lower) bumper retaining nut
(Estate models)

Refitting and adjustment

7 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Position the bonnet hinges within the outline marks made during removal, but alter its position as necessary to provide a uniform gap all round. Adjust the rear height of the bonnet by repositioning it on the hinges. Adjust the front height by repositioning the lock with reference to Section 9, and turn the rubber buffers on the engine compartment front crosspanel up or down to support the bonnet.

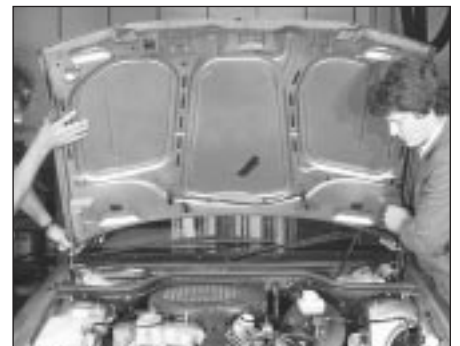
8 Ensure that the washer, wiring and earth lead connections are cleanly and securely made. Check the windscreen washer for satisfactory operation on completion.



6.12 Rear quarter bumper retaining screw locations (arrowed)



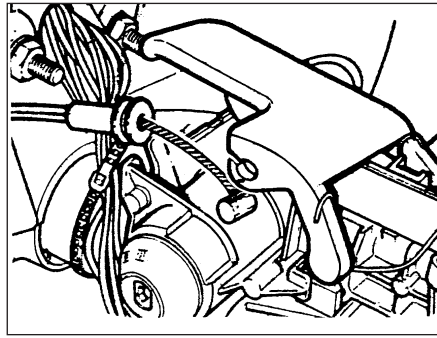
7.4 Bonnet hinge and earth lead connection



7.6 Bonnet removal



8.1 Bonnet release cable and lock



8.3 Detach the cable from the bonnet release lever on the steering column

8 Bonnet release cable - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 With the bonnet open, disconnect the cable from the locating slot in the lock frame, then release the inner cable nipple from the lock (see illustration).
- 2 Working inside the vehicle, undo the four retaining screws, and lower the bottom shroud from the steering column.
- 3 Detach the inner cable nipple from the release lever, then withdraw the cable through the bulkhead (noting its routing) and remove it from the engine compartment side (see illustration).



10.1A Release the regulator retaining clip as shown ...



10.1B ... and withdraw the manual window regulator handle



10.2B ... and undo the handle retaining screws



10.3A Undo the retaining screw ...

Refitting

- 3 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but adjust the lock height so that the bonnet line is flush with the front wings, and so that it shuts securely without force. If necessary, adjust the lock laterally so that the striker enters the lock recess correctly; it may also be necessary to reposition the striker.

10 Door inner trim panel - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 On models fitted with manual window regulators, fully shut the window, note the position of the regulator handle, then release the spring clip and withdraw the handle. The clip can be released by inserting a clean cloth between the handle and the door trim, and pulling the cloth back against the open ends of the clip to release its tension whilst simultaneously pulling the handle from the regulator shaft splines (see illustrations).
- 2 Prise free the trim capping from the door handle, taking care not to break the single retaining clip, then undo the retaining screws and remove the handle (see illustrations).
- 3 Undo the retaining screw from the inner door handle bezel, then slide free and remove the bezel (see illustrations).
- 4 Unscrew and remove the door trim panel



10.2A Remove the door handle trim capping ...



10.3B ... and remove the bezel



10.4 Door trim retaining screws (arrowed)



10.6A Remove the insulation surrounding the inner release handle



10.6B Cut through the adhesive to remove the door insulation sheet

retaining screws (see illustration), lift the panel to disengage it from the top edge clips (along the window edge), then remove the panel.

5 If required (and where fitted), the door pocket can be detached from the trim panel by unscrewing the three retaining screws, one of which is fitted from the inside-out. If an ashtray is fitted to the trim, it can be removed by carefully prising it free. If the door lock inner release or other internal components of the door are to be inspected or removed, first withdraw the bezel from the inner door release, then remove the insulation sheet from the door as follows.

6 Access to the inner door can be made by carefully extracting the insulator from the inner release, then peeling back the insulation sheet. In order not to damage and distort the insulation sheet, use a suitable knife to cut through the peripheral adhesive strip whilst the sheet is progressively peeled back and away from the door. Avoid touching the strip with the hands, as skin oils will adversely affect its adhesive properties (see illustrations).

Refitting

7 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but where necessary, apply suitable mastic to the door panel before fitting the insulation sheet. When the door trim panel is refitted, check the operation of the door catch release and the window regulator (where applicable).

11 Door window glass - removal and refitting



Removal

Front door window glass (Hatchback, Saloon, Estate and Van models)

1 Remove the inner trim panel and the insulation sheet from the door as described in Section 10.

2 Prise free the inner and outer weatherstrips from the bottom of the window aperture in the door (see illustration).

3 Wind the window up to close it, then have an assistant hold the window firmly in this position whilst you unscrew the window-to-regulator retaining screws through the aperture in the inner door (see illustration).

4 Lower the window regulator, then tilting the window as required, withdraw it outwards from the door (see illustration).

Front door window glass (Cabriolet models)

5 Remove the inner trim panel and the insulation sheet from the door as described in Section 10.

6 Wind down the window in the door, then prise free the inner and outer weatherstrips from the bottom of the window aperture in the door.

7 Undo the three retaining screws, partially withdraw the door-mounted speaker so that its wiring connections can be detached, then remove the speaker.

8 Undo the door mirror trim screw, remove the trim panel and then detach the mirror adjuster multi-plug.

9 Lower the window in the door, then unscrew the small slider bolt (see illustration).

10 Raise the door glass, undo the large slider bolts, support the window regulator, and unscrew the three regulator retaining bolts (see illustration).

11 Lower the regulator and detach the regulator wiring multi-plug.

12 Move the glass rearwards to disengage it



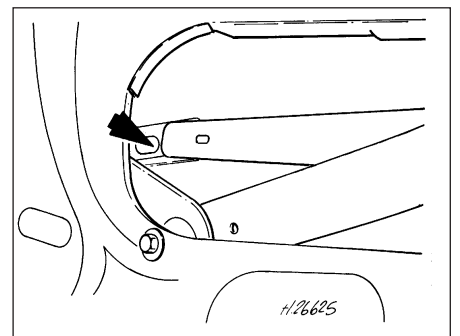
11.2 Remove the weatherstrips from the door



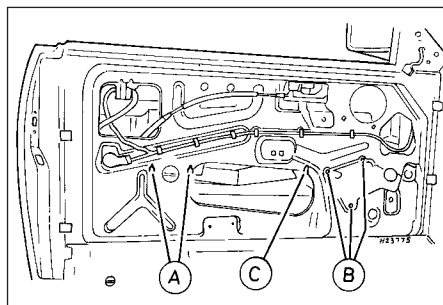
11.3 Undo the glass-to-regulator screws through apertures shown



11.4 Removing a door window glass



11.9 Location of small slider bolt (arrowed) in front door of Cabriolet models



11.10 Door window regulator retaining bolts on the front doors of Cabriolet models

- A Large slider bolts
B Regulator retaining bolts
C Small slider bolt

from the front guide channel, then move it carefully towards the outer panel. Carefully pull the glass upwards to disengage it from the large slider and simultaneously away from the door mirror, and remove the glass from the door.

Refitting

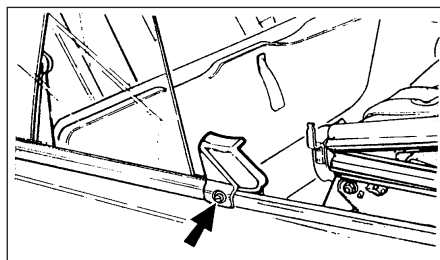
13 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but note then following:

- When the glass is lowered into position in the door on Cabriolet models, loosely fit the retaining bolts, then close the window to ensure that the glass fits correctly before tightening the slider bolts to secure.
- Where applicable, ensure that the wiring looms in the door are clear of the window and its regulating mechanism, and that the connections are secure.
- On refitting the window glass, check that it operates fully and freely before refitting the insulation sheet and the door trim panel.

12 Rear quarter window glass (Cabriolet models) - removal and refitting

Removal

- Open the roof, and lift the rear seat cushion.
- Refer to Section 34 for details, and remove the rear side quarter trim panel.
- Where applicable, undo the speaker retaining screws, partially withdraw the speaker to detach the wiring connections, and then remove the speaker.
- Undo the screw, remove the cup washer, and detach the roof frame main pillar bottom seal (see illustration).
- Remove the outer and inner weather strips.
- Carefully peel back and remove the insulation sheet. In order not to damage and distort the insulation sheet, use a suitable knife to cut through the peripheral adhesive strip as the sheet is peeled progressively back and away from the door. Avoid touching the



12.4 Roof frame main pillar bottom seal screw (arrowed) on Cabriolet models

strip with the hands, as skin oils will adversely affect its adhesive properties.

7 Reconnect the window regulator (handle or switch, as applicable) and with the window fully lowered, prise free and detach the window regulator arm from the channel.

8 Raise the window, then unscrew the shouldered bolt securing the regulator arm to the support channel (see illustration). Tilt and lift the glass from the car.

Refitting

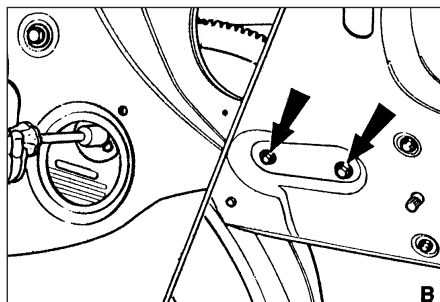
9 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but note then following:

- When the glass is lowered into position, and the regulator arm-to-support bolt is fitted, adjust the position of the glass by loosening the adjuster bolts as required. Tighten them once the necessary adjustment has been made (see illustration).
- Where applicable, ensure that the wiring looms are clear of the window and its regulating mechanism, and that the connections are secure.
- On refitting the window glass, check that it operates fully and freely before refitting the insulation sheet and the quarter trim panel.

13 Rear quarter window regulator (Cabriolet models) - removal and refitting

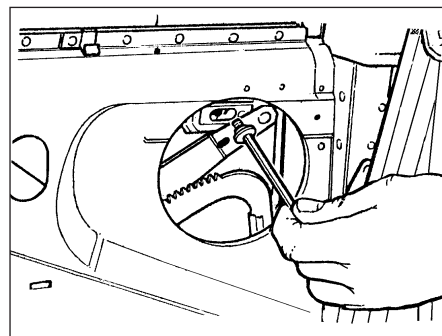
Removal

- Remove the rear quarter window as described in the previous Section.
- On models fitted with electric windows,



12.9 Quarter window adjustment bolts on Cabriolet models

- A Height adjustment B Lateral adjustment



12.8 Unscrewing the shouldered bolt securing the regulator arm to the support channel on Cabriolet models

detach the wiring multi-plug from the regulator motor.

3 Unscrew and remove the regulator arm retaining bolts.

4 Unscrew and remove the three regulator retaining bolts (to the right of the arm bolts), then withdraw the regulator from the side panel lower aperture.

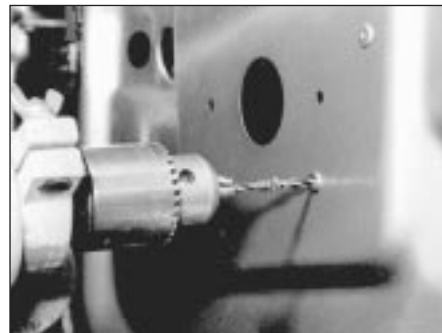
Refitting

5 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Ensure that the wiring connections are securely made, and check the operation of the regulator before refitting the window. Refer to Section 12 for details on refitting the window.

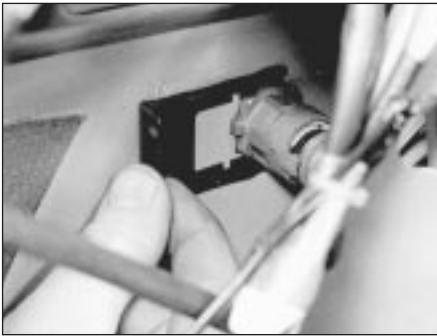
14 Door window regulator - removal and refitting

Removal

- Remove the door trim and the insulation sheet as described in Section 10.
- Locate the glass in the door so that the guide channel can be detached from the regulator. Disconnect the ball and socket(s) (two per front door, one per rear door), then lower the glass to the base of the door.
- The regulator is secured by seven pop-rivets (front door) or four pop-rivets (rear door). Drill through the centre of each rivet, detach the regulator from the door, and withdraw it from the lower aperture (see illustration).



14.3 Drilling out the door window regulator rivets



15.2A Remove the inner retaining clip . . .



15.2B . . . and withdraw the lock barrel from the door



15.5 Inner door release and retaining screw

Refitting

4 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Obtain the correct number of rivets to fit the regulator to the door. Check that the operation of the window regulator is satisfactory before refitting the door trim.

15 Door lock, lock cylinder and handles - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Remove the door inner trim panel and the insulation sheet as described in Section 10. Proceed as described below in the appropriate sub-Section. On 1993-on Cabriolet models, it will be necessary to

remove the door window glass, as described in Section 11, for access to the door lock components.

Door lock barrel

2 Slide free the barrel retaining clip, detach the connecting rod and remove the lock barrel (see illustrations).

Door lock

3 Remove the lock barrel as described above.

4 On models fitted with central locking, detach the wiring multi-plugs from the lock motor (attached to and removed with the lock).

5 Unscrew and remove the inner door release retaining screw (see illustration).

6 Unscrew and remove the three (four on 1993-on Cabriolet models) door lock retaining screws (see illustration).

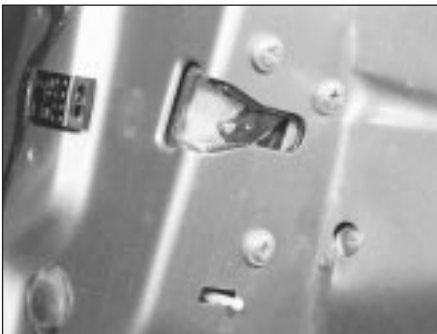
7 Remove the window rear guide (rear doors only).

8 Slide free the inner release from the door, then withdraw the lock together with the remote control inner release and cable. If required, the connecting cable to the inner release handle can be detached from the lock by removing the cover, sliding the outer cable from its locating slot in the lock, and then withdrawing the inner cable from the actuating pivot on the lock (see illustrations).

9 On models with central locking, undo the two retaining screws to detach the lock from the actuating motor.

Inner release handle

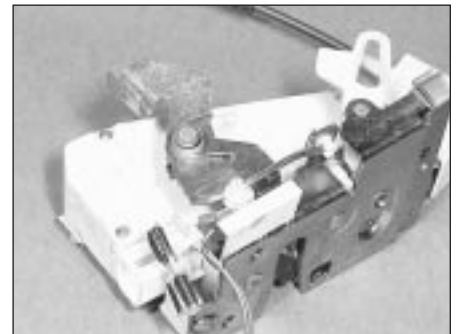
10 Slide free the inner release and detach it from the door, then disconnect the release operating cable from the release handle case (see illustrations).



15.6 Door lock retaining screws



15.8A Remove the door release . . .



15.8B . . . and the door lock with cable



15.8C Remove cover to detach cable from the lock



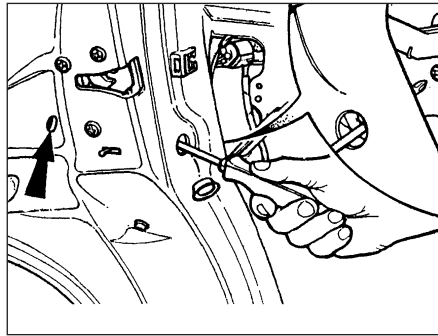
15.10A Detach the inner release handle . . .



15.10B . . . and disconnect the cable from the casing



15.11A Exterior handle retaining screws



15.11B Exterior handle retaining screw access point in rear door



16.1 Disconnect the wiring multi-plug connector

Exterior release handle

11 Undo the two retaining screws, detach the link rod from the release arm of the exterior handle, and remove the handle from the door (see illustration). Note that on the rear doors it will be necessary to remove the blanking plug in the edge of the door to gain access to one of the handle securing screws (see illustration).

Refitting

12 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Check for satisfactory operation of the lock and its associated components before refitting the door trim. Check that the striker enters the lock centrally when the door is closed. If necessary, loosen it with a Torx key, re-position and re-tighten it.

16 Door - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 Fully open the door, then untwist and detach the wiring multi-plug connector (see illustration).
- 2 Disconnect the door check strap by unscrewing the Torx screw on the door pillar (see illustration).
- 3 Support the door on blocks of wood.
- 4 Unscrew the door hinge pin retaining bolt from each hinge (see illustration), then lift the door clear of the hinges.

Refitting

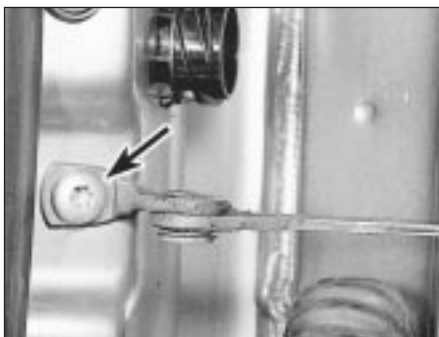
- 5 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Check that the striker enters the lock centrally when the door

is closed. If necessary, loosen it with a Torx key, re-position and re-tighten it (see illustration).

17 Exterior mirror and glass - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 If the mirror glass is to be removed, insert a thin flat-bladed tool between the glass and the housing, and carefully prise it free. Where applicable, disconnect the wiring from the connectors on the rear face of the mirror (see illustrations).
- 2 To remove the mirror, first remove the door trim as described in Section 10.
- 3 Undo the door mirror trim retaining screw, and remove the trim (see illustration).



16.2 Door check strap screw (arrowed)



16.4 Door hinge pin bolt (arrowed)



16.5 Door striker - note Torx-head securing bolt



17.1A Prise free the door mirror glass...



17.1B ... and detach the wiring connectors, where applicable



17.3 Undo the screw and remove the mirror trim



17.4 Detach the wiring multi-plug from the mirror control unit



17.5 Undo the three mirror retaining screws



17.6 Mirror motor and retaining screws (arrowed)

4 Carefully prise free the control unit from the trim, and where applicable, detach the wiring connector from the adjuster (see illustration).
5 Support the mirror, undo the three retaining screws, and remove the mirror from the door (see illustration).

6 The motor can be removed if required by undoing the three retaining screws (see illustration).

Refitting

7 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Check that the operation of the mirror adjuster is satisfactory.

18 Interior mirror - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Using a length of strong thin cord or fishing line, break the adhesive bond between the base of the mirror and the glass. Have an assistant support and remove the mirror as it is released.

2 If the original mirror is to be refitted, thoroughly clean its base with methylated spirit and a lint-free cloth. Allow a period of one minute for the spirit to evaporate. Clean the windscreen black patch in a similar manner.

Refitting

3 During the installation of the mirror, it is important that the mirror base, windscreen black patch and the adhesive patch are not touched or contaminated in any way - poor adhesion will result.

4 Prior to fitting the mirror, the temperature inside the vehicle should ideally be around 20°C. While this isn't critical, it's worth ensuring that the inside of the vehicle is as warm and dry as possible.

5 With the contact surfaces thoroughly cleaned, remove the protective tape from one side of the adhesive patch, and press it firmly into contact with the mirror base.

6 If fitting the mirror to a new windscreen, the protective tape must first be removed from the windscreen black patch.

7 Warm the mirror base and the adhesive patch for about 30 seconds to a temperature of 50 to 70°C. Peel back the protective tape from the other side of the adhesive patch on the mirror base, then align the mirror base and the windscreen patch, and press the mirror firmly into position. Hold the base of the mirror firmly against the windscreen for a minimum period of two minutes to ensure full adhesion.
8 Wait at least thirty minutes before adjusting the mirror position.

19 Boot lid - removal, refitting and adjustment



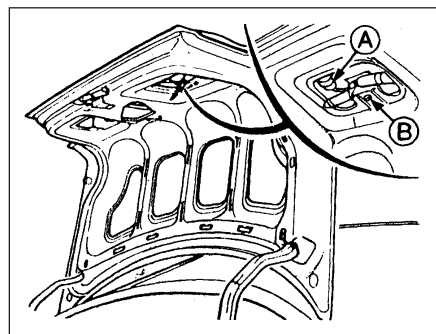
Removal

1 Open the boot lid, and mark the position of the hinges with a pencil.

2 Where applicable, disconnect the wiring multi-plug and the earth lead for the central locking motor from the boot lid (see illustration). Attach a suitable length of strong cord to the end of the wire, then withdraw the lead from the bootlid. Detach the cord and leave it in position in the boot. This will then act as an aid to guiding the wiring through the lid when it is refitted.

3 Place cloth rags beneath each corner of the boot lid to prevent damage to the paintwork.

4 With the help of an assistant, unscrew the mounting bolts (see illustration) and lift the boot lid from the car.



19.2 Multi-plug (A) and earth lead (B) connection points in the boot lid

Refitting and adjustment

5 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Check that the boot lid is correctly aligned with the surrounding bodywork, with an equal clearance around its edge. Adjustment is made by loosening the hinge bolts and moving the boot lid within the elongated mounting holes. Check that the lock enters the striker centrally when the boot lid is closed, and if necessary adjust the striker's position within the elongated holes.

20 Boot lid lock components - removal and refitting



Removal

Lock barrel

1 Open the boot and undo the screw securing the barrel retaining clip, then remove the clip.

2 Detach the barrel from the link rod, and withdraw the lock from the boot lid.

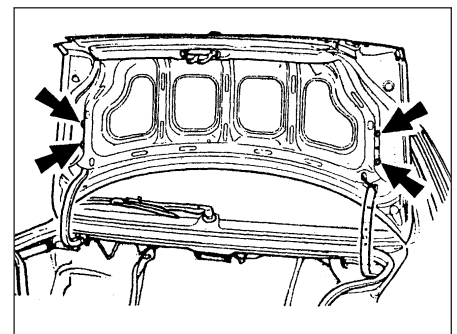
Lock

3 Open the boot lid and remove the lock barrel (see above for details).

4 Undo the three retaining screws, then withdraw the lock from the boot lid.

Lock striker and remote release

5 Open the boot, and undo the two retaining screws, and remove the trim from the rear face of the luggage compartment.



19.4 Boot lid hinge retaining bolt locations (arrowed)



21.4 Detach the wiring connector from the tailgate

6 Using a soft pencil, mark an outline around the striker and the release unit, to act as a guide for repositioning on refitting. Undo the two Torx-type screws, and remove the lock striker and the release unit. Detach the operating cable from the release unit to remove it.

Release cable

7 Remove the striker and release unit as described above, then detach the release cable from it.

8 Detach and remove the kick panel trim beneath the front and rear doors on the driver's side. Fold back the carpet from around the bootlid lock release handle.

9 Withdraw the outer cable from the slot in the lever mounting plate, then detach the inner cable from the lever.

10 Remove the appropriate side trim panels from the rear of the vehicle on the side concerned, to expose the cable routing. Where the cable has to pass through cavities in the body, tie a suitable length of cord to the cable end before pulling the cable through and removing it. The cord can be untied from the cable, and left in situ in the vehicle. It will then act as a "puller-guide" when the cable is being refitted.

Refitting

11 Refitting is a reversal of removal. When refitting the lock, check that the striker enters the lock centrally when the boot lid is closed, and if necessary re-position the striker by loosening the mounting screws.



21.7 Tailgate bump stop



21.5 Tailgate strut and balljoint

21 Tailgate - removal, refitting and adjustment

Removal

1 Open the tailgate, then undo the seven retaining screws and remove the trim panel from the tailgate.

2 Using a soft pencil, mark the fitted position outline around the tailgate hinges to act as a guide for repositioning when refitting.

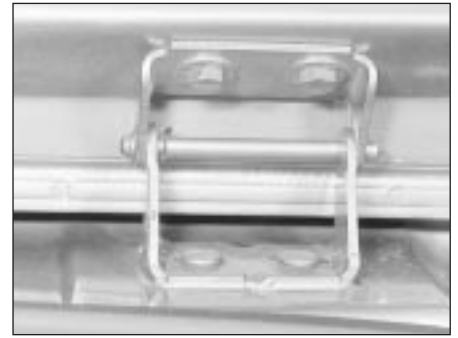
3 Prise free and remove the plug for access to the washer jet, then detach the hose from the jet. Attach a suitable length of strong cord to the end of the hose to assist in guiding the hose back through the aperture of the tailgate when it is being refitted. Now prise free the flexible grommet on the left-hand side, and withdraw the washer jet hose from the tailgate. Undo the cord from the hose, and leave it in position in the tailgate.

4 Where applicable, detach the central locking lead multi-connector and earth lead from the tailgate (see illustration). Attach a suitable length of strong cord to the end of the wire, to assist in guiding the wiring back through the aperture of the tailgate when it is being refitted. Now prise free the flexible grommet on the right-hand side, and withdraw the central locking wires from the tailgate. Undo the cord from the wire, and leave it in position in the tailgate.

5 Have an assistant support the tailgate in the open position, then prise open the support



23.2 Tailgate lock barrel, operating rod and retaining nuts



21.6 Tailgate hinge and retaining bolts

strut balljoint securing clip, and detach the strut each side from the tailgate (see illustration).

6 Unscrew and remove the hinge bolts, then lift the tailgate clear of the vehicle (see illustration).

Refitting and adjustment

7 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but check that the tailgate is correctly aligned with the surrounding bodywork, with an equal clearance around its edge. Adjustment is made by loosening the hinge bolts and moving the tailgate within the elongated mounting holes. Adjust the rear height by turning the rubber bump stop each side in the desired direction (see illustration). Check that the striker enters the lock centrally when the tailgate is closed, and if necessary adjust the position of the striker within the elongated holes.

22 Tailgate support strut - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Support the tailgate in its open position. If both struts are to be removed, the tailgate will need to be supported by an alternative means.

2 Disconnect each end of the support strut by prising out the spring clip retainers with a small screwdriver and pulling the strut from the ball mountings.

Refitting

3 Refitting is a reversal of removal, but note that the piston end of the strut faces downwards.

23 Tailgate lock components - removal and refitting

Removal

Lock barrel

1 Open the tailgate, then remove the seven screws and remove the inner trim panel from the rear of the luggage area.

2 Depending on type, unscrew and remove the lock barrel clip retaining screw, then remove the clip or undo the two retaining nuts (see illustration).



23.5A Undo the three retaining screws . . .



23.5B . . . and withdraw the lock from the tailgate



23.6A Undo the retaining screws . . .

3 Disengage the operating rod and remove the barrel.

Lock

4 Open the tailgate and remove the lock barrel as described above.

5 Undo the three Torx-type retaining screws and remove the lock. Where applicable, detach the wiring in-line connector from the lock (see illustrations).

Striker and release unit

6 Using a soft pencil, mark an outline around the striker and the release unit to act as a guide for repositioning on refitting. Undo the two Torx-type screws (and where applicable, the earth lead screw), then remove the lock striker and release unit. Detach the operating cable from the release unit to remove it (see illustrations).

Release cable

7 Remove the striker and release unit as described above, then detach the release cable from it.

8 Detach and remove the kick panel trim beneath the front and rear doors on the driver's side. Fold back the carpet from around the tailgate release handle.

9 Withdraw the outer cable from the slot in the lever mounting plate, then detach the inner cable from the lever (see illustration).

10 Remove the appropriate side trim panels from the rear of the vehicle on the side concerned, to expose the cable routing.



HAYNES
HINT *Where the cable has to pass through cavities in the body, tie a suitable length of cord to the cable end before pulling the cable through and removing it. The cord can be untied from the cable, and left in situ in the vehicle. It will then act as a "puller-guide" when the cable is being refitted.*

Refitting

11 Refitting is a reversal of removal. When refitting the lock, check that the striker enters the lock centrally when the tailgate is closed, and if necessary re-position the striker by loosening the mounting screws.

24 Central locking system control module - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Remove the front footwell side cowl trim panel from the driver's side, as described in Section 34.

3 Withdraw the central locking module from its location bracket, and detach the multi-plug wiring connections from it (see illustration).



23.6B . . . withdraw the tailgate striker plate and detach the release cable

Refitting

4 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Check the operation of the system to complete.

25 Windscreen and fixed windows - removal and refitting



Removal

Windscreen and rear quarter and rear window/tailgate glass

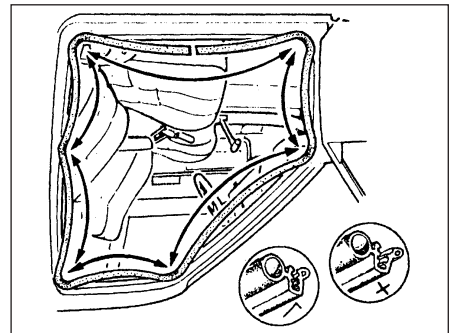
1 The windscreen, rear quarter and rear window/tailgate glass are bonded in place with special mastic. Special tools are required to cut free the old glass and fit replacements,



23.9 Tailgate release handle and operating cable



24.3 Central locking system control module location



26.4 Initial securing points when fitting a door weatherstrip

together with cleaning solutions and primers. It is therefore recommended that this work is entrusted to a Ford dealer or windscreen replacement specialist.

Rear window(s) - Van models

2 Working from the inner face of the door concerned, use a blunt-ended instrument to push the inner lip of the weatherseal beneath the window frame, starting at the top. Get an assistant to support the window on the outside during this operation.

3 With the weatherseal free, withdraw the window from the door.

Rear window - Cabriolet models

4 Detach the heated rear window lead, and withdraw the lead from the weatherstrip.

5 Arrange for an assistant to support the glass from the outside, then wearing protective gloves, press the window outwards and remove it from its frame. Take care not to apply undue strain to the hood material or the hood frame as the window is pressed out.

6 Remove the weatherstrip from the glass.

Refitting

7 Clean the window and aperture in the body/frame. Petrol or spirit-based solvents must not be used for this purpose, as they are harmful to the weatherstrip.

8 Fit the weatherseal on the window, then insert a cord in the weatherseal groove so that the ends project from the bottom of the window and are overlapped by approximately 150 mm.

9 Locate the window on its location aperture, and pass the ends of the cord inside the vehicle. Have an assistant hold the window in position.

10 Slowly pull one end of the cord (at right-angles to the window frame, towards the centre of the glass) so that the lip of the weatherseal goes over the aperture. At the same time, have the assistant press firmly on the outside of the window. When the cord reaches the middle top of the window, pull the remaining length of cord to position the other half of the weatherseal.

11 Reconnect the heated rear window lead, and press it under the weatherstrip (Cabriolet models).

26 Door and tailgate weatherstrips - removal and refitting



Removal

1 To remove a weatherstrip seal from its aperture flange, grip the strip at its joint end, and progressively pull it free, working around the aperture to the other end of the strip.

Refitting

2 First check that the contact surfaces of the weatherstrip and the aperture flange are clean. Check around the aperture flange for

any signs of distortion, and rectify as necessary.

3 To refit the weatherstrip, start by roughly locating its ends midway along the base of the aperture concerned, but do not press them into position over the flange at this stage. Proceed as follows, according to type.

Door weatherstrip

4 In the case of a door weatherstrip, press the strip into position at the corners to initially locate it (see illustration). Check that the distances between each contact point are such that the strip will fit smoothly around the aperture (without distortion), then firmly press the strip fully into position, starting at the top edge and working down each side to finish at the bottom joint. Check that the seal is correctly located, then apply a suitable sealant to the joint, to prevent the possibility of water leakage through it caused by capillary action.

5 Shut the door, and check it for fit. Adjust if required by resetting the position of the striker plate to suit.

Tailgate weatherstrip

6 Position the ends of the weatherstrip so that they are centralised within 300 mm of the tailgate striker plate. A new weatherstrip will need to be measured and cut to length. Progressively fit the weatherstrip around the aperture flange, squeezing it closed over the flange by hand to secure. When fitted, check that it is not distorted, then close the tailgate and check it for fit. Adjustment of the striker plate and the tailgate bump stops may be necessary to obtain a satisfactory fit and seal.

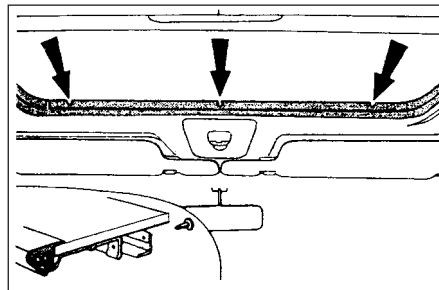
27 Body side-trim mouldings and adhesive emblems - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Insert a length of strong cord (fishing line is ideal), between the moulding or emblem concerned, and break the adhesive bond between the moulding (or emblem) and the panel.

2 Thoroughly clean all traces of adhesive from the panel using methylated spirit, and allow the moulding/emblem location to dry.



29.2 Sunroof lower frame-to-glass panel retaining screws (arrowed)

Refitting

3 Peel back the protective paper from the rear face of the new moulding/emblem, and then carefully fit it into position on the panel concerned, but take care not to touch the adhesive. When in position, apply a hand pressure to the moulding/emblem for a short period to ensure maximum adhesion to the panel.

28 Roof moulding (Van models) - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Prise free and lift the moulding up from the roof at the front end, then pull the moulding from its location channel in the roof.

2 Clean the contact faces of the moulding and the roof channel before refitting the moulding.

Refitting

3 Locate the moulding into position over the channel, check that it is correctly realigned, then progressively press it into place using the palm of the hand.

29 Sunroof - checking and adjustment

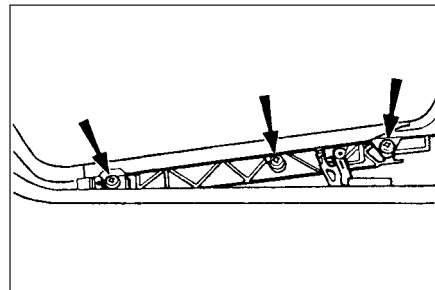


1 The sunroof should operate freely, without sticking or binding, as it is opened and closed. When in the closed position, check that the panel is flush with the surrounding roof panel, the maximum allowable gap at the front edge being 1.0 mm.

2 If adjustment is required, open the sun blind, then undo and remove the three lower frame-to-glass panel retaining screws (see illustration). Slide the lower frame back into the roof.

3 Loosen off the central and front securing screws, adjust the glass roof panel so that it is flush at its front edge with the roof panel, then retighten the securing screws (see illustration).

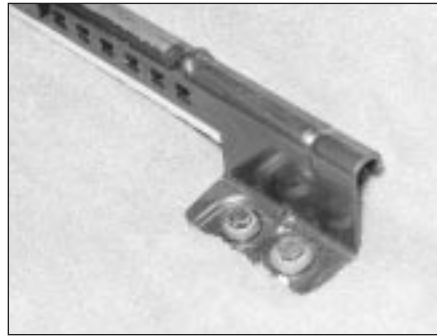
4 Pull the lower frame forwards, insert and tighten its retaining screws to complete.



29.3 Loosen off these screws (arrowed) to adjust the sunroof glass panel



32.1A Front seat/runner rear outboard retaining bolt



32.1B Front seat/runner rear inboard retaining bolts



32.2 Front seat/runner forward mounting bolt

30 Sunroof panel - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Open the sun blind, unscrew and remove the three screws securing the lower frame, and slide the frame back into the roof.

2 Undo the three roof panel-to-sliding gear screws, then push the panel up and out to remove it from the vehicle. Have an assistant lift the panel free from above as it is raised, to avoid the possibility of the panel and/or the surrounding roof from being damaged.

Refitting

3 Refit in the reverse order of removal. When the panel is in position, adjust it as described in the previous Section.

31 Sunroof weatherstrip - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Wind the sunroof panel into the tilted open position, then grip the ends of the weatherstrip and pull it free from the flanged periphery of the roof panel.

2 Clean the contact faces of the panel and the weatherstrip (where the original strip is to be used) before refitting.



32.3 Rear seat cushion retaining screw (Saloon)



32.4 Rear seat backrest-to-cushion hinge screws

Refitting

3 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Ensure that the weatherstrip joint is located in the middle of the rear face of the panel.

32 Seats - removal and refitting



Removal

Front seat



Warning: On vehicles fitted with seat belt pre-tensioning stalks, be careful when handling the seat, as the tensioning device ("grabber") contains a powerful spring, which could cause injury if released in an uncontrolled fashion. The tensioning mechanism should be immobilised by inserting a safety "transit clip" available from Ford parts stockists.

1 If required, the front seat cushion can be removed on its own by undoing the two retaining screws on the underside of the seat at the front, and sliding the cushion forwards. To remove the complete seat, slide the seat forwards to the full extent of its travel, then unscrew and remove the rear mounting bolts (one on the outer slide and two on the inner) (see illustrations).

2 Now slide the seat fully to the rear, then unscrew the front securing bolt each side (see

illustration). Lift the seat and remove it from the vehicle.

Rear seat cushion

3 Prise free the blanking plugs, then unscrew and remove the cushion hinge retaining screw each side (see illustration). Remove the cushion from the vehicle.

Rear seat backrest (Hatchback, Saloon and Estate models)

4 Pivot the rear seat cushion forwards, then fold the backrest down. Undo the two screws retaining the hinge to the backrest each side, and remove the backrest from the vehicle (see illustration).

Rear seat backrest (Cabriolet models)

5 Raise the seat cushion, then unscrew and remove the seat belt lower reel anchor bolts.

6 Unscrew and remove the screws (one each side) securing the backrest upper section.

7 Pivot the seat backrest down (release knob in boot), pull back the backrest cover, then unscrew and remove the two screws each side retaining the top section.

8 Detach the seat belt guide from the top of the backrest, then lift the backrest and feed the belt reel lower anchor plate through the backrest to allow the backrest to be removed from the car.

9 Unscrew the bolts securing the lower backrest to the hinges on each side, and remove the backrest lower section.

Refitting

10 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Where applicable, tighten the seat belt anchor bolts to the specified torque wrench setting.

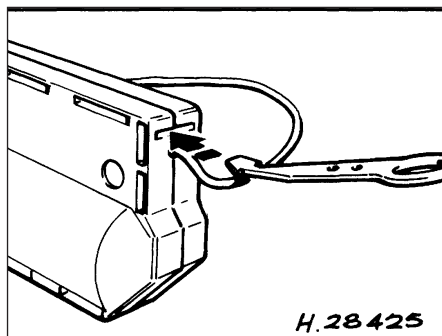
33 Seat belts - removal and refitting



Removal



Warning: On vehicles fitted with seat belt pre-tensioning stalks, be careful when working on the seat belts, as the tensioning device ("grabber") contains a powerful spring, which could cause injury if



33.0 Inserting the seat belt "transit clip" to immobilise the seat belt pre-tensioner

released in an uncontrolled fashion. The tensioning mechanism should be immobilised by inserting a safety "transit clip" available from Ford parts stockists (see illustration).

Note: Seat belts and associated components which have been subject to impact loads must be renewed.

Front seat belt and stalk (3-door Hatchback and Cabriolet models)

1 Prise free the upper cover, then unscrew and remove the front seat belt upper anchor plate retaining bolt. Remove the plate and spacer.

2 Undo the lower anchor rail retaining bolt, pivot the rail towards the centre of the vehicle, pull it free from its mounting and then slide the belt from the rail.

3 Remove the rear quarter trim panel, then on Cabriolet models, undo the two retaining screws and remove the belt guide.

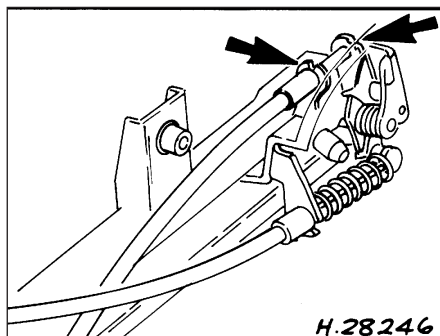
4 Unscrew the bolt retaining the inertia reel unit, then remove the reel and the belt.

5 On vehicles fitted with seat belt pre-tensioners, move the seat fully forwards and disconnect the pre-tensioner cable (see illustration).

6 Undo the single retaining screw, and remove the front seat belt stalk from the seat frame.

Front seat belt and stalk (5-door Hatchback, Saloon and Van models)

7 Prise free the cover, then unscrew and remove the front seat belt upper anchor plate



33.5 On vehicles fitted with seat belt pre-tensioners, move the seat fully forwards and disconnect the pre-tensioner cable at the points arrowed

retaining bolt. Remove the plate and spacer (see illustration).

8 Unscrew and remove the lower anchor plate retaining bolt.

9 Remove the trim from the centre "B" pillar by pulling free the weatherstrip, unscrewing the two retaining screws, withdrawing the trim from the panel and detaching the securing pegs (where applicable).

10 Undo the six screws retaining the scuff plate in position, extract the belt from the slotted hole, and remove the scuff plate.

11 Undo the retaining bolt, and detach the inertia reel unit from the central pillar (see illustration).

12 On vehicles fitted with seat belt pre-tensioners, move the seat fully forwards and disconnect the pre-tensioner cable (see illustration 33.5).

13 Undo the single retaining screw (Torx-type) and detach the front seat belt stalk from the seat frame.

Front seat belt height adjuster

14 Prise free the upper cover, then unscrew and remove the front seat belt upper anchor plate retaining bolt. Remove the plate and spacer.

15 Remove the trim from the centre "B" pillar by pulling free the weatherstrip, unscrewing the two retaining screws, withdrawing the trim from the panel and detaching the securing pegs (where applicable).



33.7 Remove the cover for access to the seat belt upper anchor bolt

16 Unscrew the retaining bolts and remove the height adjuster (see illustration).

Rear seat belts (3-door Hatchback models)

17 Prise free the upper cover, then unscrew and remove the front seat belt upper anchor plate retaining bolt. Remove the plate and spacer.

18 Undo the lower anchor rail retaining bolt, pivot the rail towards the centre of the vehicle, pull it free from its mounting and then slide the belt from the rail.

19 Lift the rear seat cushion for access, then unscrew the retaining bolt and remove the centre buckle/belt anchor plate (see illustration).

20 Unscrew the lower reel belt anchor plate bolt.

21 Unscrew and remove the upper anchor plate bolt, and detach the plate and spacer from the rear "C" pillar.

22 Pivot the rear seat backrest down, and undo the two Torx screws securing the backrest.

23 Remove the trim from the centre "B" pillar by pulling free the weatherstrip, unscrewing the two retaining screws, withdrawing the trim from the panel and detaching the securing pegs (where applicable).

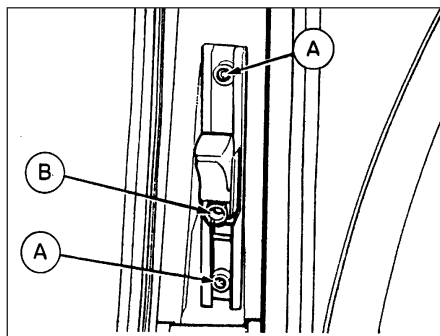
24 Remove the rear quarter trim panel (Section 34).

25 Remove the trim panel from the "C" pillar as described in Section 34.

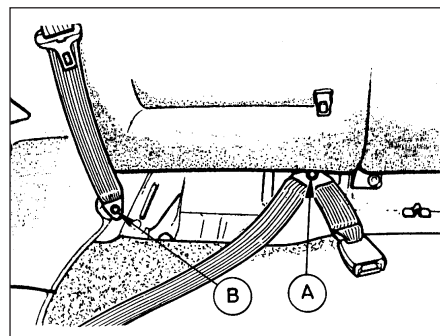
26 Undo the three Torx bolts, and detach the rear seat backrest catch bracket.



33.11 Inertia reel unit and retaining bolt



33.16 Front seat belt height adjuster retaining bolts (A) and anchor plate bolt (B)



33.19 Rear seat belt anchor plates for the central buckle/belt (A) and the reel belt (B)



33.30 Rear seat belt upper anchor bolt



33.31 Rear seat backrest catch (Hatchback models)



33.46 Rear seat backrest catch (Estate models)

27 Unscrew the inertia reel retaining bolt, and withdraw the inertia reel unit and belt.

Rear seat belts (5-door Hatchback models)

28 Lift the rear seat cushion for access, then unscrew the retaining bolt and remove the centre buckle/belt anchor plate.

29 Unscrew the lower reel belt anchor plate bolt.

30 Detach the cover for access, then unscrew and remove the anchor plate and spacer from the "C" pillar (see illustration).

31 Pivot the rear seat backrest down, and undo the two Torx screws securing the backrest catch (see illustration).

32 Remove the trim panel from the "C" pillar as described in Section 34.

33 Undo the three Torx bolts, and detach the rear seat backrest catch bracket.

34 Unscrew the inertia reel retaining bolt, and withdraw the inertia reel unit and belt.

Rear seat belts (Saloon models)

35 Lift the rear seat cushion for access, then unscrew the retaining bolt and remove the centre buckle/belt anchor plate.

36 Unscrew the lower reel belt anchor plate bolt.

37 Detach the cover for access, then unscrew and remove the anchor plate and spacer from the "C" pillar.

38 Pivot the rear seat backrest down, and remove the trim panel from the "C" pillar as described in Section 34.

39 Unscrew the retaining nut, and remove

the rear seat backrest catch pull knob from its bracket in the boot. Pull the cable from the clip on the underside of the boot.

40 Undo the two Torx screws, and release the seat back catch from the mounting bracket.

41 Undo the three Torx bolts, and detach the rear seat backrest catch bracket.

42 Unscrew the inertia reel retaining bolt, and withdraw the inertia reel unit and belt.

Rear seat belts (Estate models)

43 Lift the rear seat cushion for access, unscrew the retaining bolt and remove the centre buckle/belt anchor plate.

44 Unscrew the lower reel belt anchor plate bolt.

45 Detach the cover for access, then unscrew and remove the anchor plate and spacer from the "C" pillar.

46 Pivot the rear seat backrest down, undo the two Torx screws and remove the backrest catch (see illustration).

47 Detach and remove the "C" and "D" pillar trim panels, followed by the rear luggage area trim panel, as described in Section 34.

48 Undo the three Torx screws, and detach the backrest catch mounting (see illustration).

49 Unscrew the retaining bolt, and remove the inertia reel/belt unit (see illustration).

Rear seat belts (Cabriolet models)

50 Lift the rear seat cushion for access, then unscrew the retaining bolt and remove the centre buckle/belt anchor plate.

51 Unscrew the lower anchor plate bolt. To remove the centre lap belt, remove the lower belt buckle and twin buckle assemblies.

52 Unscrew and remove the lower reel belt anchor plate bolt.

53 Release the catch in the boot, and fold down the rear seat backrest. Pull free the cover from the rear face of the backrest for access to its upper section. Undo the two retaining screws on each side (see illustration). Remove the belt guide from the top of the backrest.

54 Raise the backrest, feed the belt anchor plate through and then remove the backrest.

55 Unscrew the retaining bolt and remove the inertia reel/belt.

Refitting

56 On all models, refitting of the front and rear seat belts is a reversal of the removal procedure. Tighten all fastenings to the specified torque settings, and check for satisfactory operation.

34 Interior trim panels - removal and refitting



Removal

Windscreen "A" pillar trim

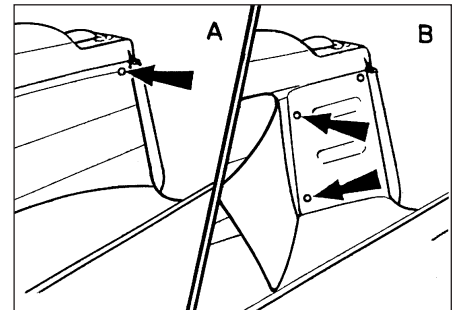
1 Pull free the weatherstrip from the flange on the "A" pillar, undo the retaining screw and withdraw the trim from the pillar.



33.48 Rear seat backrest catch mounting (Estate models)



33.49 Rear seat inertia reel unit (Estate models)



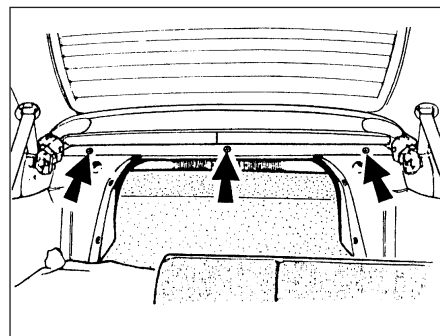
33.53 Rear seat backrest upper section retaining screw locations on Cabriolet models



34.20 "C" pillar trim removal (Estate models)



34.21 "D" pillar trim removal (Estate models)



34.24A Rear parcel shelf retaining screws (arrowed) - Saloon models

Centre "B" pillar

2 Pull free the weatherstrip from the pillar flange. Prise free the cover, then unscrew and remove the front seat belt upper anchor plate retaining bolt. Remove the plate and spacer.

3 On 5-door models, undo the two screws securing the centre pillar trim.

4 Carefully prise free and detach the trim from the central pillar (to which it is attached by plastic pegs).

Rear "C" pillar trim (Hatchback models)

5 Hinge the rear seat cushion forwards, and lower the seat backrest.

6 Where fitted, undo the three retaining screws to withdraw the speaker, and detach the speaker wire. Do not remove the speaker itself.

7 Undo the two Torx-type retaining screws, and remove the backrest catch. Also prise free and remove the rear suspension top mounting cover (just to the rear of the catch).

8 Unscrew and remove the rear seat belt lower anchor plate bolt.

9 Prise free the seat belt upper anchor plate cover, then unscrew the retaining bolt and detach the upper anchor plate and spacer.

10 Prise free the door weatherstrip from the pillar flange.

11 On 3-door models, remove the rear quarter trim as described later in this Section.

12 Undo the retaining screws and withdraw the trim panel from the pillar, feeding the seat

belt and anchor through the trim. Note that it is necessary to remove a cover for access to the rear retaining screw.

Rear "C" pillar trim (Saloon models)

13 Hinge the rear seat cushion forwards, and lower the seat backrest.

14 Detach and remove the rear parcel shelf (see paragraphs 22 to 24).

15 Unscrew and remove the rear seat belt lower anchor plate bolt.

16 Prise free the seat belt upper anchor plate cover, then unscrew the retaining bolt and detach the upper anchor plate and spacer.

17 Undo the two "C" pillar retaining screws. Prise free the door weatherstrip from the "C" pillar flange, then carefully prise free the trim panel from the pillar, feeding the seat belt through it as it is withdrawn.

"C" pillar trim (Estate models)

18 Hinge the rear seat cushion forwards, and lower the seat backrest.

19 Prise free the seat belt upper anchor plate cover, then unscrew the retaining bolt and detach the upper anchor plate and spacer.

20 Carefully prise free and remove the trim panel from the "C" pillar (see illustration).

"D" pillar trim

21 Prise free the trim panel from the "D" pillar to release it from the retaining clips, and remove the trim (see illustration).

Rear parcel shelf (Saloon models)

22 Hinge down the rear seat backrest. Where fitted, detach and remove the rear speakers from the parcel shelf.

23 Undo the retaining screw, and remove the seat belt guide trim panel each side.

24 Unscrew and remove the three parcel shelf retaining screws, then lift the panel at the front edge to detach it from the four plastic retaining clips, and withdraw the panel from the car (see illustrations).

Rear quarter trim panel

25 Detach the front seat belt at its upper and lower anchor points, as described in Section 33.

26 Detach and remove the centre "B" pillar trim as described previously in this Section.

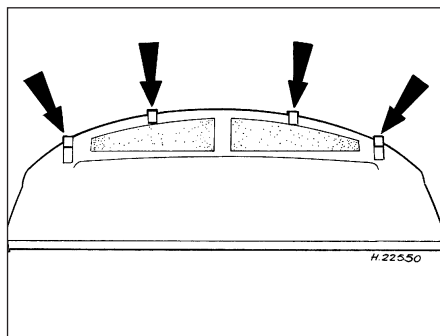
27 Undo the two scuff plate retaining screws, and ease the plate away from the quarter panel.

28 Hinge forward the rear seat cushion and backrest, then detach the belt trim guide bezel from the quarter panel.

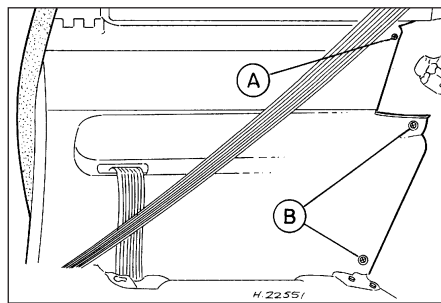
29 Unscrew and remove the retaining screws at the rear of the panel. Prise free the quarter panel from the "B" pillar at the points indicated, and withdraw the panel (see illustrations). As it is withdrawn, disengage the seat belt and anchors through the panel slots.

Front footwell side cowl trim panel

30 Rotate the plastic retaining clip at the front of the panel through 90° to release the

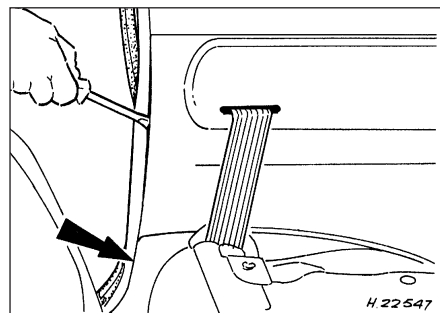


34.24B Rear parcel shelf retaining clips (arrowed) - Saloon models

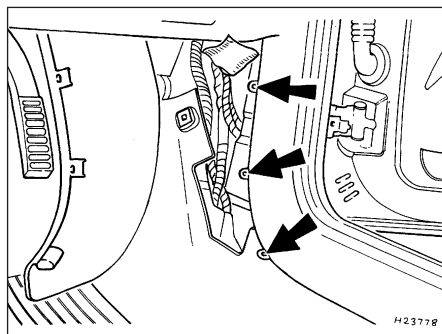


34.29A Rear quarter trim panel securing screw locations

A Screw B Screw with washer



34.29B Prise free the rear quarter trim panel from the "B" pillar at the points indicated



34.30 Location of front footwell side cowl trim panel retaining tabs (arrowed)

panel at the forward fixing, then ease the panel away from the three tab fasteners at the rear edge (see illustration).

Scuff plate

31 Remove the front footwell side cowl trim panel as described above.

32 Prise free the door weatherstrip from the door sill flange.

33 On 5-door Hatchback, Saloon, and Van models, unscrew and remove the screw at the lower end of the "B" pillar trim (just above the seat belt slot in the scuff plate).

34 Unscrew and remove the six scuff plate retaining screws, then feeding the seat belt through it (where applicable), withdraw the scuff plate.

Luggage area trim (Hatchback and Saloon models)

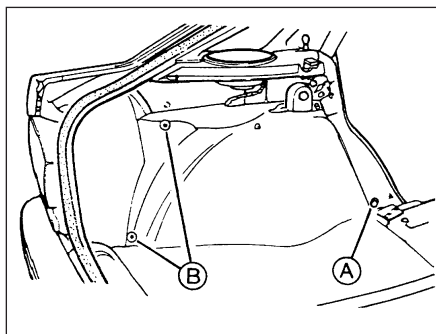
35 Hinge down the rear seat backrest(s), and on Hatchback models, prise free and remove the trim cap from the rear suspension top mounting.

36 Prise free the trim panel retaining clips using a suitable flat-bladed tool (see illustrations).

37 Unscrew and remove the two trim retaining screws together with their large washers, then withdraw the trim panel.

Luggage area trim (Estate models)

38 Lift the rear seat cushion and unscrew the scuff plate screw at the rear, then unscrew and remove the two luggage area trim screws (see illustration).



34.36A Luggage area trim retaining clip (A) and screws (B) - Hatchback models

39 Hinge down the rear seat backrest, then prise free the upper cover and remove the rear seat belt upper anchor plate retaining bolt. Remove the plate and spacer.

40 Undo the two Torx screws, and remove the rear seat backrest catch.

41 Prise the trim panel from the "C" pillar, and remove it.

42 Similarly, prise the trim panel from the "D" pillar, and remove it.

43 Undo the screw attaching the trim panel to the "C" pillar, then the screws securing the luggage area trim panel to the "D" pillar (see illustration).

44 Undo the three luggage area trim panel-to-floor screws, and the single screw securing the panel to the rear crossmember.

45 Lift the trim panel to release it from the inner side panel, then withdraw it from the vehicle.

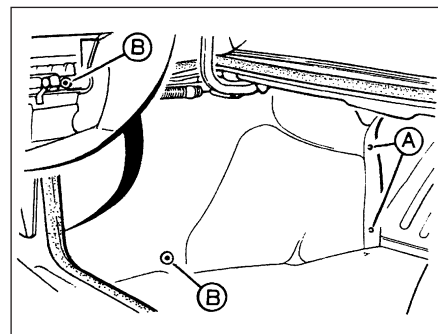
Partition panel (Van models)

46 Working from the front of the panel, unscrew and remove the three panel-to-crossmember retaining bolts on its lower edge (see illustration).

47 Working from the rear of the panel, unscrew and remove the two bolts securing the panel to the rear face of the "B" pillar each side (see illustration), then withdraw the partition panel.

Sun visor

48 Release the visor from the retaining clip, undo the two retaining screws at its hinge



34.36B Luggage area trim retaining clips (A) and screws (B) - Saloon models

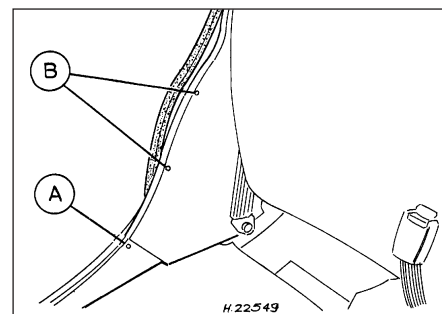
mounting, and remove the visor. To remove the retaining clip, prise open the cover flap to expose the retaining screw, then undo the screw and remove the clip.

Passenger grab handle

49 Prise back the trim flaps at each end of the grab handle to expose the retaining screws. Undo the screws and remove the handle.

Refitting

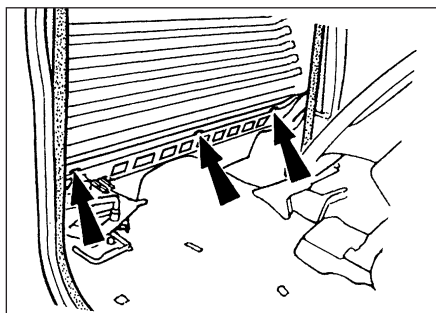
50 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Ensure that any wiring connections are securely made. Where applicable, tighten the seat belt fixings to the specified torque wrench setting and check the seat belt(s) for satisfactory operation on completion.



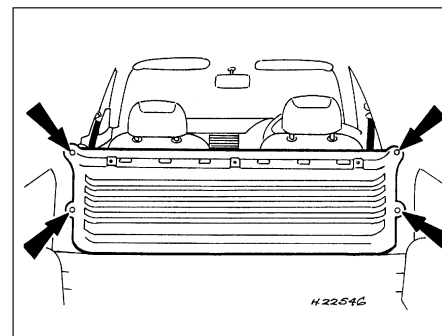
34.38 Rear scuff plate screw (A) and luggage area trim forward screws (B) (Estate models)



34.43 Luggage area side trim retaining screws removal (Estate)



34.46 Partition panel-to-crossmember retaining bolts on the lower edge (arrowed) - Van models



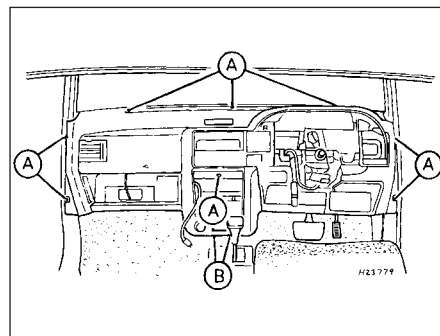
34.47 Partition panel side securing bolts (arrowed) - Van models



35.5 Side vent panel removal on the driver's side



35.8A Pull free the weatherstrip for access to the outboard fascia screws



35.8B Facia retaining screw locations "A" (screw only) and "B" (screw and washers)

35 Facia - removal and refitting



Warning: On vehicles fitted with a passenger's air bag, seek the advice of a Ford dealer concerning safety implications when removing the facia assembly.

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Refer to Chapter 10 for details, and remove the steering wheel.
- 3 Undo the two upper and four lower retaining screws, and remove the upper and lower steering column shrouds.
- 4 Refer to the appropriate Chapters concerned for details, and remove the following facia-associated items:
 - a) Steering column multi-function switch (Chapter 12).
 - b) Instrument panel (Chapter 12).
 - c) Choke cable (Chapter 4).
 - d) Heating/ventilation controls and control panel (Chapter 3).
 - e) Cigar lighter and ashtray (Chapter 12).
 - f) Radio/cassette player (Chapter 12).
 - g) Clock (Chapter 12).
- 5 Undo the two retaining screws, and remove the side vent panel from the facia on the driver's side. As it is withdrawn, disconnect

any wiring connections from the panel-mounted switches (see illustration).

6 Undo the two hinge/retaining screws securing the glovebox lid, and remove it. Undo the two catch screws, and remove the lock/catch. As the catch is withdrawn, disconnect the bulbholder/switch wiring connector.

7 Where fitted, detach and remove the footwell lights from the driver and passenger side lower facia (Chapter 12).

8 Pull free the weatherstrip from the leading edge of the door aperture each side to gain access to the outboard mounting screws. Unscrew and remove the retaining screws from the points indicated (see illustrations).

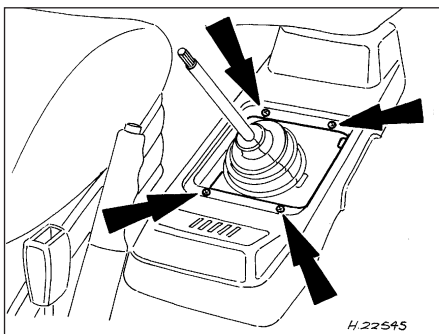
9 Withdraw the facia from its mounting. As it is withdrawn, note the routing of the cables attached to the facia, then detach the cable ties and remove the facia from the vehicle.

10 The associated components of the facia can (if required) be detached by undoing the appropriate retaining screws.

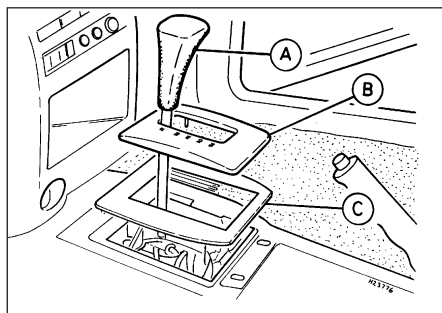
Refitting

11 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Ensure that all wiring and cables are correctly routed and securely reconnected. Refer to the appropriate Chapters for details on refitting the associated fittings to the facia panel.

12 When the facia panel is completely refitted, reconnect the battery then test the various facia and steering column switches to ensure that they operate in a satisfactory manner.



36.2 Short centre console retaining screw locations (arrowed)



36.4 Automatic transmission selector lever knob (A), lever indicator panel (B) and panel bezel (C)

36 Centre console - removal and refitting



Removal

Short console (manual transmission)

1 Unscrew and remove the knob from the gear lever, then prise free the lever gaiter and bezel. Slide the gaiter and bezel up the lever, and lift them off.

2 Unscrew the four retaining screws, and remove the console (see illustration).

Long console (manual and automatic transmission)

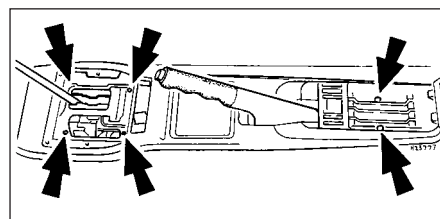
3 On manual transmission models, Unscrew and remove the knob from the gear lever, then prise free the lever gaiter and bezel. Slide the gaiter and bezel up the lever, and lift them off.

4 On automatic transmission models, select "P" (Park). Unscrew and remove the knob from the lever, then prise free the lever indicator panel, followed by the bezel (see illustration).

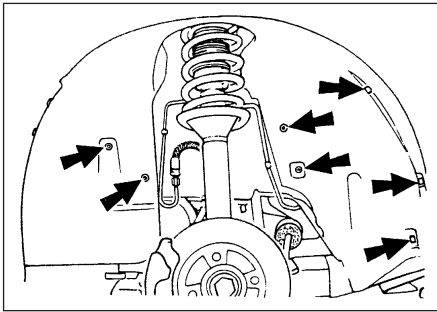
5 On vehicles with electric windows or an electrically-operated luggage compartment lock, carefully prise out the switch panel or switch, and disconnect the wiring connectors.

6 Undo the four console retaining nuts and two screws (see illustration).

7 Pull up the handbrake lever as far as possible, and manipulate the console over the handbrake lever and gear lever. If insufficient clearance exists, slacken the handbrake adjuster as described in Chapter 1.



36.6 Long centre console retaining nut and screw locations (arrowed) - automatic transmission console shown



37.2 Wheel arch liner retaining screw locations (arrowed)

Refitting

8 Refitting is a reversal of removal. If it was necessary to slacken the handbrake adjustment for removal of the console, re-check the adjustment as described in Chapter 1.

37 Wheel arch liners - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 Apply the handbrake, then loosen off the front roadwheel nuts on the side concerned. Raise the vehicle at the front end, and support it on axle stands. Remove the roadwheel.
- 2 Unscrew and remove the seven Torx-type retaining screws (see illustration).
- 3 Press the liner inwards at the top to disengage it from the locating tang (see illustration), then withdraw it from the vehicle.

Refitting

- 4 Refit in the reverse order of the removal procedure. Tighten the roadwheel nuts to the specified torque wrench setting.

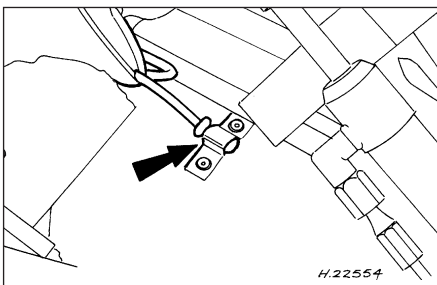
38 Radiator grille - removal and refitting



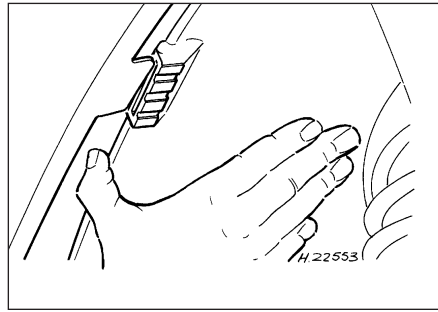
Removal

Pre-1993 models

- 1 Raise and support the bonnet. Unscrew and remove the four retaining screws along the top edge of the grille, then carefully lift the



39.4 Cabriolet powered hood spring wire rod retainers



37.3 Disengaging the wheel arch liner from the locating tang

grille free, and disengage it from the locating socket each side at the bottom (see illustration).

1993-on models

- 2 Raise and support the bonnet. Undo the three nuts securing the grille to the inside of the bonnet, and lift off the grille.

Refitting

- 3 Refit in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

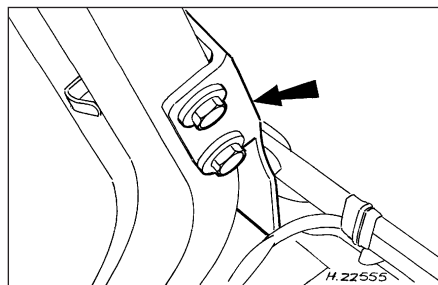
39 Powered hood (Cabriolet models) - removal and refitting



Note: The following instructions detail the removal and refitting of the hood cover only. The removal, repair and refitting of the hood frame, insulation and headlining are specialised tasks, and must be entrusted to a Ford garage or an automotive upholstery specialist.

Removal

- 1 Open the roof, then remove the rear seat cushion by prising free the blanking plugs and unscrewing the seat hinge screw each side.
- 2 Remove the rear quarter trim panel as described in Section 34.
- 3 Raise the roof just enough to allow access to the rear parcel shelf.
- 4 Disconnect the spring wire rod from the retainer on each side (see illustration).
- 5 Unscrew and remove the spring wire securing screw on each side.
- 6 Disconnect the spring wire from the housing at the other end on each side.



39.8 Cabriolet powered hood hinge damper (arrowed)



38.1 Radiator (front) grille panel retaining screw removal - pre-1993 models

- 7 Detach the wiring from the heated rear window connectors.

- 8 Unscrew and remove the two hinge damper bolts on each side (see illustration), then fully open the roof.

- 9 Prise free the hydraulic rod securing clip, then unscrew and remove the three retaining bolts from the brackets (see illustration).

- 10 Enlist the aid of an assistant to help in removing the roof assembly from the car. Grip the roof and pull it towards the front to release it at the rear end, then carefully lift clear of the car.

Refitting

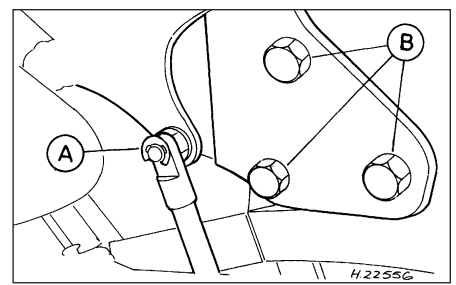
- 11 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. When the roof assembly is fully reconnected, check that it operates in a satisfactory manner before refitting the rear quarter panel and seat cushion.

40 Powered hood control system - hose removal, refitting and system bleeding

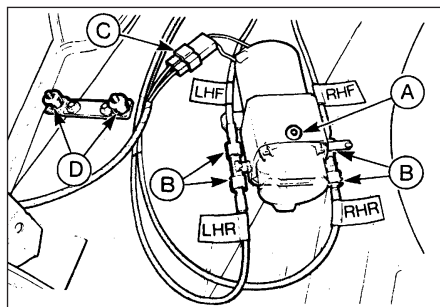


Hose removal

- 1 Open the boot lid and lower the hood. Remove the appropriate trim panels to gain access to the pump (in the left-hand side of the luggage area) and the hydraulic ram (located behind the rear quarter panel) on the side concerned.
- 2 Where more than one hose is to be detached from the pump, the respective hoses and their connections to the pump should be labelled and marked for correct identification, to avoid



39.9 Cabriolet powered hood hydraulic rod
A Securing clip B Retaining bolts



40.2A Hydraulic hose connections to the powered hood pump unit

- A Filler plug
- B Hose unions and markings
- C Pump multi-plug
- D Pump mounting

the possibility of confusion when reconnecting them (see illustrations).

3 Loosen off the fluid filler plug on the pump to depressurise the system.

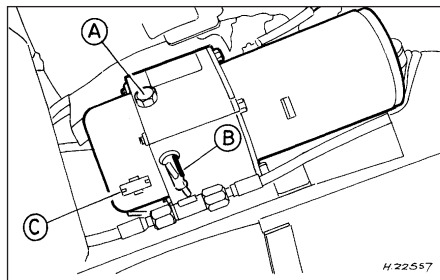
4 Disconnect the hose(s) from the location tangs to the body, and the tape securing it to the ram and other hoses. Loosen off the hose-to-pump union(s), and detach the hose(s). Note that it may well be necessary to detach and partially remove the pump as described in Section 42 to enable a hose on the left-hand side of the pump to be disconnected. Catch any spillage of hydraulic fluid in a suitable container, and plug the hose(s)/connection(s) to prevent the ingress of dirt. Note that the hood must not be raised whilst the hydraulic lines are disconnected, or hydraulic fluid remaining in the system will be ejected

Hose refitting

5 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. When the hoses are reconnected, top-up and bleed the hydraulic system as follows.

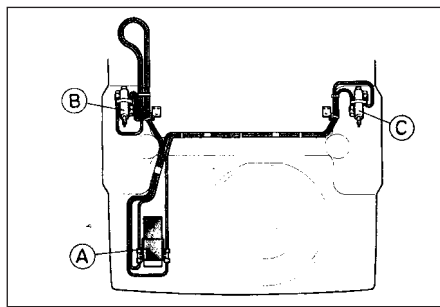
System bleeding

6 Remove the fluid filler plug from the pump. Top-up the fluid level with the specified fluid type (see Specifications) to the "MAX" mark, then loosely retighten the plug. Unscrew and open the by-pass tap 90 to 180° (maximum), then manually raise and lower the hood once. Recheck the fluid level in the pump, top-up



40.6 Cabriolet powered hood hydraulic pump

- A Filler plug
- B By-pass tap
- C Fluid level MAX mark



40.2B Cabriolet powered hood operating components and hydraulic hose routings

- A Hydraulic pump
- B Hydraulic ram (left-hand side)
- C Hydraulic ram (right-hand side)

the level if required, tighten the by-pass tap and refit the filler plug (see illustration).

7 Turn the ignition switch to position "I" (accessory), then close and open the roof five times using the roof operating switch. At the end of this cycle, the roof should operate smoothly in each direction, and the pump motor should have a constant operating sound.

8 With the roof in the open position, recheck the hydraulic fluid level in the pump, and top-up if required.

41 Powered hood control damper/hydraulic ram - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Lower the hood, then detach and remove the left-hand trim panel in the luggage area to gain access to the hydraulic pump.

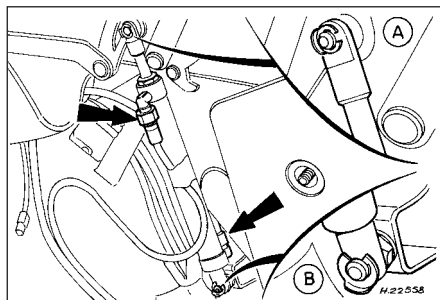
2 Depressurise the hydraulic system by loosening off the pump hydraulic fluid filler plug.

3 Remove the rear quarter trim panel from the side concerned, as described in Section 34.

4 Label the hoses and their connections to the hydraulic ram, to identify them for refitting (see illustration).

5 Release the circlips securing the ram at each end to its attachment points to the vehicle. Note that the lower securing point has the larger of the circlips.

6 Loosen off the hydraulic hose union connectors to the ram, withdraw the ram from



41.4 Cabriolet powered hood hydraulic ram hose connections, showing the upper (A) and lower (B) mounting circlips

its mounting points, and hold it and the hydraulic connections over a suitable container. Detach the hydraulic hoses, and drain all of the fluid into the container before removing the ram. Use plugs to seal off the hoses and the hydraulic connections to the ram, so preventing the ingress of dirt and any further fluid leakage. Note that the hood must not be raised whilst the hydraulic lines are disconnected, or hydraulic fluid remaining in the system will be ejected.

Refitting

7 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. When the ram is refitted to its mountings and the hoses are reconnected to it, top-up and bleed the hydraulic system as described in the previous Section, before refitting the quarter trim panel (Section 34) and the pump cover/side trim in the luggage area.

42 Powered hood operating motor and pump - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Open the boot lid, then detach and remove the left-hand side trim in the luggage area for access to the pump/motor.

3 Unscrew the by-pass tap 90 to 180° (see illustration 40.6).

4 Lower the roof manually, then allow any residual pressure in the system to escape by loosening the filler plug on the top of the pump.

5 Retighten the filler plug and tap. Detach the wiring connector to the pump motor.

6 Label the respective hoses and their connections to the pump for correct identification prior to detaching them, to avoid any possibility of confusion when reconnecting them (see illustration 40.2A).

7 Undo the pump retaining nuts, then partially withdraw the pump. Locate a suitable container (or some rags) beneath it, then unscrew the hydraulic hose unions and detach the hoses from the pump. Plug the exposed ends of the pump and hoses, to prevent the ingress of dirt and further fluid leakage. Remove the pump. Note that the hood must not be raised whilst the hydraulic lines and pump are disconnected, or hydraulic fluid remaining in the system will be ejected.

Refitting

8 Ensure that the hose connections are clean, then reconnect the hoses to the pump, hand-tightening them at this stage.

9 Reconnect the pump motor wiring connection, relocate the pump into position, and tighten its retaining nuts. Check that the hoses are not distorted or under undue tension, then fully tighten their unions.

10 Top-up the pump with the specified hydraulic fluid, and bleed the system as described in Section 40.

11 Reconnect the battery earth lead.






Chapter 12

Body electrical system

Contents

Air bag clock spring - removal and refitting	29	Headlight beam alignment - checking and adjustment	8
Air bag control module - removal and refitting	28	Horn - removal and refitting	14
Air bag (driver's side) - removal and refitting	27	Instrument panel - removal and refitting	9
Anti-theft system components - removal and refitting	26	Instrument panel components - removal and refitting	10
Anti-theft systems - general information	25	Power amplifier - removal and refitting	24
Auxiliary warning system - general information and component renewal	30	Radio aerial - removal and refitting	23
Battery - check, maintenance and charging	See Chapter 1	Radio/cassette player - removal and refitting	20
Battery - removal and refitting	See Chapter 5	Speakers - removal and refitting	22
Bulbs (exterior lights) - renewal	5	Speedometer cable - removal and refitting	11
Bulbs (interior lights) - renewal	6	Switches - removal and refitting	4
Cigar lighter - removal and refitting	12	Tailgate wiper motor assembly - removal and refitting	18
Clock - removal and refitting	13	Windscreen wiper motor and linkage - removal and refitting	16
Compact disc player - removal and refitting	21	Windscreen wiper pivot shaft - removal and refitting	17
Electrical fault-finding - general information	2	Windscreen/tailgate washer system components - removal and refitting	19
Electrical system check	See Chapter 1	Windscreen/tailgate washer system and wiper blade check	See Chapter 1
Exterior light units - removal and refitting	7	Wiper arms - removal and refitting	15
Fuses and relays - general information	3		
General information	1		

Degrees of difficulty

Easy , suitable for novice with little experience		Fairly easy , suitable for beginner with some experience		Fairly difficult , suitable for competent DIY mechanic		Difficult , suitable for experienced DIY mechanic		Very difficult , suitable for expert DIY or professional	
--	---	---	---	---	---	--	---	---	---

Specifications

Fuses (in vehicle fusebox)

Note: Fuse ratings and circuits are liable to change from year to year. Consult the handbook supplied with the vehicle, or consult a Ford dealer, for specific information.

No	Rating (amps)	Circuit(s) protected	No	Rating (amps)	Circuit(s) protected
1	25	Heated rear window, adjustable door mirrors	17	-	Spare
2	30	Anti-lock braking system	18	15	Left-hand main beam, left-hand auxiliary light
3	10	Oxygen sensor	19*	20	Central locking system, anti-theft alarm, electric door mirrors
4	15	Right-hand main beam, right-hand auxiliary light	19**	3	ABS module
5	20	Fuel pump	20	15	Horn
6	10	Right-hand sidelight	21	15	Interior lights, clock, radio, cigar lighter
7	10	Left-hand sidelight	22	30	Electric windows
8	10	Rear foglight	23	30	Headlight washer system
9	30	Radiator cooling fan	24	10	Right-hand dip beam
10	10	Left-hand dip beam	25	3	EEC IV engine management system
11	15	Front foglights	26	5	Heated front seats
12	10	Direction indicator, reversing lights	27	10	Brake stop-lights
13	20	Wiper motor, washer pump	28	10	Air conditioning system
14	20	Heater blower	29**	20	Central locking system, anti-theft alarm
15	30	Anti-lock braking system			
16	3	Heated windscreen			

* Early models ** Later models

12•2 Body electrical system

Additional fuses (in engine compartment)

Note: Fuse ratings and circuits are liable to change from year to year. Consult the handbook supplied with the vehicle, or consult a Ford dealer, for specific information.

No	Rating (amps)	Circuit(s) protected
A	80	Supply cables to main fuse block
B	60	Supply cables to main fuse block
C	60	Supply cables to main fuse block
D	40/50	Cooling fan
E	50	Heated rear window

Relays

No	Colour	Circuit
R1	Grey	Heated windscreen
R2	Red	Windscreen wiper intermittent control
R3	Grey	Heated rear windscreen
R4	Dark green	Anti-lock braking (system)
R5	Violet	Anti-lock braking (pump)
R6	White/Yellow	Main beam
R7	Orange	Rear wiper intermittent control
R8	Green/Red/Yellow	CFI delay relay or EFI supply relay or EEC IV supply relay
R9	Brown	Fuel pump
10	Brown	Magnetic clutch (air conditioning system)
11	Green	Air conditioning system
12	Brown	Engine running
13	Spare	
14	Spare	
15	Spare	
16*	Spare	
16**	Violet	Fuel pump
17	Yellow	Interior light delay
18	Green	Electric windows
19	Grey	Rear foglight (module)
20	Spare	
21	-/White	Busbar/front foglights (module)
22	Blue	Headlight washer system
23	White	Dip beam
24	-/Red or Yellow	Busbar/automatic transmission/alarm
25	White	Front foglights
26	Black	Steering lock/starter switch
27	Spare	

* Early models ** Later models

Bulbs		Wattage			Wattage
Headlights (halogen H4)		60/65	Rear number plate light		10
Sidelights		5	Instrument panel warning lights		1.3
Front indicator lights		21	Hazard warning light switch bulb		1.3
Side indicator repeater lights		5	Instrument panel illumination bulb		2.6
Tail lights (Hatchback/Saloon)		5	Clock illumination bulb		1.2
Brake stop-lights (Hatchback/Saloon)		21	Cigar lighter illumination bulb		1.4
Brake stop-/tail lights (Estate/Van)		21/5	Glovebox illumination light bulb		10
Reversing lights		21	Luggage area illumination bulb		10
Rear direction indicators		21	Courtesy light		10
Rear foglights		21			

Torque wrench settings

	Nm	lbf ft
Wiper motor (original) to mounting bracket	8 to 12	6 to 7.5
Wiper motor (new) to mounting bracket	10 to 12	7.5 to 9
Wiper motor bracket to bulkhead (or tailgate)	6 to 8	4.5 to 6
Wiper motor arm-to-spindle nut	22 to 24	16 to 17
Wiper arm nut:		
Stage 1	17 to 18	12.5 to 13.5
Stage 2 (after operating wiper)	17 to 18	12.5 to 13.5
Horn-to-body retaining nuts	25 to 35	18 to 26

1 General information



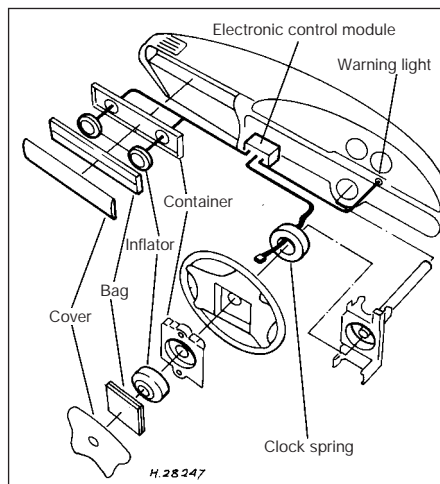
Warning: Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, read through the precautions given in "Safety first!" at the beginning of this manual.

The electrical system is of 12-volt negative earth type. Power for the lights and all electrical accessories is supplied by a lead/acid battery, which is charged by the engine-driven alternator.

This Chapter covers repair and service procedures for the various electrical components not associated with the engine. Information on the battery, ignition system, alternator, and starter motor can be found in Chapter 5.

All 1994-model year Escorts are fitted with a driver's air bag, which is designed to prevent serious chest and head injuries to the driver during an accident. A similar bag for the front seat passenger is also available (see illustration). The combined sensor and electronic for the air bag is located next to the steering column inside the vehicle, and contains a back-up capacitor, crash sensor, decelerometer, safety sensor, integrated circuit and microprocessor. The air bag is inflated by a gas generator, which forces the bag out of the module cover in the centre of the steering wheel. A "clock spring" ensures that a good electrical connection is maintained with the air bag at all times - as the steering wheel is turned in each direction, the spring winds and unwinds.

An anti-theft alarm system is fitted as standard equipment on most models, and is triggered if the vehicle is broken into through the doors, bonnet, boot or tailgate. The alarm will also be triggered if the ignition or audio equipment is tampered with. Additionally, from the 1994 model year onwards, a Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) is fitted. This



1.3 Air bag system components

system, (which works independently of the standard alarm) prevents the engine from being started unless a specific code, programmed into the ignition key, is recognised by the PATS transceiver.

It should be noted that, when portions of the electrical system are serviced, the cable should be disconnected from the battery negative terminal, to prevent electrical shorts and fires.



Caution: When disconnecting the battery for work described in the following Sections, refer to Chapter 5, Section 1.

2 Electrical fault-finding - general information



Note: Refer to the precautions given in "Safety first!" and in Section 1 of this Chapter before starting work. The following tests relate to testing of the main electrical circuits, and should not be used to test delicate electronic circuits (such as engine management systems, anti-lock braking systems, etc), particularly where an electronic control module is used. Also refer to the precautions given in Chapter 5, Section 1.

General

1 A typical electrical circuit consists of an electrical component, any switches, relays, motors, fuses, fusible links or circuit breakers related to that component, and the wiring and connectors which link the component to both the battery and the chassis. To help to pinpoint a problem in an electrical circuit, wiring diagrams are included at the end of this manual.

2 Before attempting to diagnose an electrical fault, first study the appropriate wiring diagram, to obtain a complete understanding of the components included in the particular circuit concerned. The possible sources of a fault can be narrowed down by noting if other components related to the circuit are operating properly. If several components or circuits fail at one time, the problem is likely to be related to a shared fuse or earth connection.

3 Electrical problems usually stem from simple causes, such as loose or corroded connections, a faulty earth connection, a blown fuse, a melted fusible link, or a faulty relay (refer to Section 3 for details of testing relays). Visually inspect the condition of all fuses, wires and connections in a problem circuit before testing the components. Use the wiring diagrams to determine which terminal connections will need to be checked in order to pinpoint the trouble-spot.

4 The basic tools required for electrical fault-finding include a circuit tester or voltmeter (a 12-volt bulb with a set of test leads can also be used for certain tests); an ohmmeter (to measure resistance and check for continuity); a battery and set of test leads; and a jumper

wire, preferably with a circuit breaker or fuse incorporated, which can be used to bypass suspect wires or electrical components. Before attempting to locate a problem with test instruments, use the wiring diagram to determine where to make the connections.

5 To find the source of an intermittent wiring fault (usually due to a poor or dirty connection, or damaged wiring insulation), a "wiggle" test can be performed on the wiring. This involves wiggling the wiring by hand to see if the fault occurs as the wiring is moved. It should be possible to narrow down the source of the fault to a particular section of wiring. This method of testing can be used in conjunction with any of the tests described in the following sub-Sections.

6 Apart from problems due to poor connections, two basic types of fault can occur in an electrical circuit - open-circuit, or short-circuit.

7 Open-circuit faults are caused by a break somewhere in the circuit, which prevents current from flowing. An open-circuit fault will prevent a component from working.

8 Short-circuit faults are caused by a "short" somewhere in the circuit, which allows the current flowing in the circuit to "escape" along an alternative route, usually to earth. Short-circuit faults are normally caused by a breakdown in wiring insulation, which allows a feed wire to touch either another wire, or an earthed component such as the bodyshell. A short-circuit fault will normally cause the relevant circuit fuse to blow.

Finding an open-circuit

9 To check for an open-circuit, connect one lead of a circuit tester or the negative lead of a voltmeter either to the battery negative terminal or to a known good earth.

10 Connect the other lead to a connector in the circuit being tested, preferably nearest to the battery or fuse. At this point, battery voltage should be present, unless the lead from the battery or the fuse itself is faulty (bearing in mind that some circuits are live only when the ignition switch is moved to a particular position).

11 Switch on the circuit, then connect the tester lead to the connector nearest the circuit switch on the component side.

12 If voltage is present (indicated either by the tester bulb lighting or a voltmeter reading, as applicable), this means that the section of the circuit between the relevant connector and the switch is problem-free.

13 Continue to check the remainder of the circuit in the same fashion.

14 When a point is reached at which no voltage is present, the problem must lie between that point and the previous test point with voltage. Most problems can be traced to a broken, corroded or loose connection.

Finding a short-circuit

15 To check for a short-circuit, first disconnect the load(s) from the circuit (loads

12•4 Body electrical system

are the components which draw current from a circuit, such as bulbs, motors, heating elements, etc).

16 Remove the relevant fuse from the circuit, and connect a circuit tester or voltmeter to the fuse connections.

17 Switch on the circuit, bearing in mind that some circuits are live only when the ignition switch is moved to a particular position.

18 If voltage is present (indicated either by the tester bulb lighting or a voltmeter reading, as applicable), this means that there is a short-circuit.

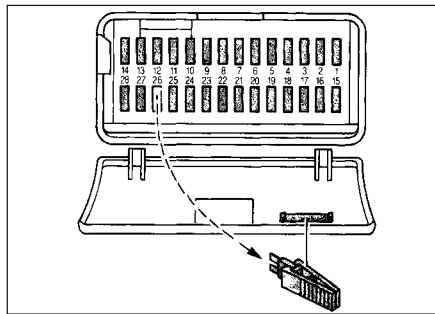
19 If no voltage is present during this test, but the fuse still blows with the load(s) reconnected, this indicates an internal fault in the load(s).

Finding an earth fault

20 The battery negative terminal is connected to "earth" - the metal of the engine/transmission and the vehicle body - and many systems are wired so that they only receive a positive feed, the current returning via the metal of the car body. This means that the component mounting and the body form part of that circuit. Loose or corroded mountings can therefore cause a range of electrical faults, ranging from total failure of a circuit, to a puzzling partial failure. In particular, lights may shine dimly (especially when another circuit sharing the same earth point is in operation), motors (eg wiper motors or the radiator cooling fan motor) may run slowly, and the operation of one circuit may have an apparently-unrelated effect on another. Note that on many vehicles, earth straps are used between certain components, such as the engine/transmission and the body, usually where there is no metal-to-metal contact between components, due to flexible rubber mountings, etc.

21 To check whether a component is properly earthed, disconnect the battery (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1) and connect one lead of an ohmmeter to a known good earth point. Connect the other lead to the wire or earth connection being tested. The resistance reading should be zero; if not, check the connection as follows.

22 If an earth connection is thought to be faulty, dismantle the connection, and clean both the bodyshell and the wire terminal (or the component earth connection mating surface) back to bare metal. Be careful to remove all traces of dirt and corrosion, then use a knife to trim away any paint, so that a clean metal-to-metal joint is made. On reassembly, tighten the joint fasteners securely; if a wire terminal is being refitted, use serrated washers between the terminal and the bodyshell, to ensure a clean and secure connection. When the connection is remade, prevent the onset of corrosion in the future by applying a coat of petroleum jelly or silicone-based grease, or by spraying on (at regular intervals) a proprietary ignition sealer or a water-dispersant lubricant.



3.1 Fuse removal using tweezers

3 Fuses and relays - general information

Note: It is important to note that the ignition switch and the appropriate electrical circuit must always be switched off before any of the fuses (or relays) are removed and renewed. In the event of the fuse/relay having to be removed, the vehicle anti-theft system must be de-activated and the battery earth lead detached. When disconnecting the battery, reference should be made to Chapter 5, Section 1.

1 The main fuse and relay block is located below the facia panel on the driver's side within the vehicle. The fuses can be inspected and if necessary renewed, by unclipping and removing the access cover. Each fuse location is numbered - refer to the fuse chart in the Specifications at the start of this Chapter to check which circuits are protected by each fuse. Plastic tweezers are attached to the inside face of the cover to remove and fit the fuses (see illustration).

2 To remove a fuse, use the tweezers provided to pull it out of the holder. Slide the fuse sideways from the tweezers. The wire within the fuse is clearly visible, and it will be broken if the fuse is blown.

3 Always renew a fuse with one of an identical rating. Never renew a fuse more than once without tracing the source of the trouble. The fuse rating is stamped on top of the fuse.

4 Additional "main" fuses are located separately in a box positioned in front of the battery and these are accessible for



3.4 Additional "main" fuses at the front of the battery

inspection by first raising and supporting the bonnet, then unclipping and hinging back the cover from the fusebox (see illustration). Each of these fuses is lettered for identification - refer to the Specifications at the start of this Chapter to check which circuits they protect. To remove fuses A, B and C, it is first necessary to remove the fusebox. Fuses D and E can be removed from their locations by carefully pulling them free from the location socket in the box. In the event of one of these fuses blowing, it is essential that the circuits concerned are checked and any faults rectified before renewing the faulty fuse. If necessary, entrust this task to a Ford dealer or a competent automotive electrician.

5 With the exception of the indicator flasher relay and where applicable, the Cabriolet powered roof relays, the remainder of the relays are fitted to the reverse side of the "in-vehicle" fuse board. To inspect a relay mounted on the main fuse board, disconnect the battery, remove the fusebox cover and unclip the fusebox. Unscrew the six securing screws to detach and remove the lower facia panel on the driver's side. Carefully withdraw the fuse/relay block.

6 The various relays can be removed from their respective locations on the fuse board by carefully pulling them from the sockets (see illustration).

7 The direction indicator flasher relay is attached to the base of the multi-function switch unit. Access to the relay is made by undoing the retaining screws and removing the steering column lower shroud. The relay can then be withdrawn from the base of the switch (see illustration).



3.6 Relay locations on the underside of the fuse board



3.7 Direction indicator flasher relay removal



4.3A Depress the lock tabs . . .



4.3B . . . and remove the ignition switch

8 The Cabriolet powered roof system has four relays. Relays I and II (and a thermal cut-out) are located beneath the instrument panel, relays III and IV (together with a 15 amp fuse) are located in the left-hand side of the luggage area, next to the powered roof hydraulic pump. Removal of the appropriate trim panel and where applicable, the associated components, gives access to the relay(s) for inspection and renewal (refer to Chapter 11).

9 If a system controlled by a relay becomes inoperative and the relay is suspect, listen to the relay as the circuit is operated. If the relay is functioning, it should be possible to hear it click as it is energised. If the relay proves satisfactory, the fault lies with the components or wiring of the system. If the relay is not being energised, then it is not receiving a main supply voltage or a switching voltage, or the relay is faulty.

4 Switches - removal and refitting



Ignition switch

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Undo the two upper and four lower retaining screws, and remove the upper and lower shrouds from the steering column.

3 Depress the two ignition switch-to-lock securing tabs, and withdraw the switch from the lock (see illustrations).

4 Undo the six retaining screws, and remove the lower fascia panel on the driver's side. Unclip the fusebox panel, then detach the ignition switch wiring multi-plug connector from the fusebox. Release the switch wire from the tie clips and remove the switch.

5 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. When relocating the switch to the steering lock, the barrel driveshaft must align with the switch shaft as it is pushed into position. Check the switch for satisfactory operation on completion.

Steering column multi-function switch

6 Remove the steering wheel as described in Chapter 10.

7 Undo the two upper and four lower retaining screws, and remove the upper and lower steering column shrouds.

8 Undo the single retaining screw, and withdraw the switch upwards from the steering column. Detach the wiring connector and cable tie clips from the switch (see illustrations).

9 Separate the indicator/hazard warning relay and switch from the indicator switch unit.

10 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Refer to Chapter 10 for information required when refitting the steering wheel.

Facia switches

11 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

12 The facia and associated panel-mounted switches are secured in position by integral plastic or metal retaining clips. In some instances, it is possible to release the switch from the panel using a suitable small screwdriver inserted between the switch and the facia to lever the switch from its aperture, but take care not to apply too much force when trying this method.



Where a switch is reluctant to be released, remove the section of the facia panel or the adjoining panel/component to allow access to the rear side of the switch and compress the retaining clips to enable the switch to be withdrawn.

13 Once the switch is released and partially withdrawn from the panel, detach the wiring connector and remove the switch (see illustration).

14 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

Courtesy light switches

15 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

16 With the door open, undo the retaining screw and withdraw the switch from the door pillar. Pull out the wiring slightly, and tie a piece of string to it, so that it can be retrieved if it drops down into the door pillar.

17 Disconnect the wiring from the switch.

18 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

Luggage area light switch

19 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

20 Open the tailgate, undo the two securing screws and remove the rear trim panel to gain access to the rear side of the switch.

21 Release the switch side retaining clips using a thin-bladed screwdriver, and push the switch from its location in the body.



4.8A Undo the retaining screw . . .



4.8B . . . lift the switch clear and detach the wiring connector



4.13 Facia switch removal



4.22 Luggage area contact switch removal from the rear panel



4.26 Contact switch unit in the tailgate



4.31 Handbrake warning light switch

22 Disconnect the wiring connectors and remove the switch (*see illustration*).

23 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

Rear wiper contact switch

24 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

25 Open the tailgate and remove its inner trim panel.

26 Working through the access aperture in the tailgate, use a thin-bladed screwdriver to depress the switch retaining clips and extract the switch from the panel (*see illustration*).

27 Disconnect the wiring connectors and remove the switch.

28 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Make sure that the pins and their contacts are clean. On completion, check the operation of the rear wipers, courtesy light, heated rear

window and the tailgate release/central locking system.

Handbrake warning light switch

29 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

30 Refer to Chapter 11 for details, and remove the front passenger (left-hand) seat and the centre console.

31 Detach the wiring connector from the handbrake warning light switch, then undo the two retaining screws and remove the switch (*see illustration*).

32 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Check that the switch operates in a satisfactory manner before refitting the console and seat.

Brake stop-light switch

33 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

34 The brake stop-light switch is attached to the brake pedal mounting bracket (*see illustration*).

35 Detach the wiring connector from the switch, then twist the switch through a quarter of a turn (90°) and withdraw it from the bracket (*see illustration*).

36 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Ensure that the neck of the switch is against the pedal before turning the switch 90° to secure it.

37 Check that the switch operates in a satisfactory manner to complete. The switch should not operate during the first 2 mm of

pedal travel, but must operate within 20 mm of pedal travel. If necessary, adjustment can be made by removing the switch from the bracket and turning the adjuster nut as required.

Heater/blower motor switch

38 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

39 Pull free and remove the heater control knobs.

40 Unscrew and remove the two instrument bezel retaining screws, and remove the bezel.

41 Undo the four retaining screws, and remove the heater panel facia. Detach the wiring connector to the heater panel illumination bulb.

42 Compress the switch tabs to pull free the switch, then detach the wiring multi-plug from the switch (*see illustration*).

43 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

Electric window switches

44 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

45 Insert a thin-bladed screwdriver between the switch and the console, then carefully prise free the switch from its location. If the switch is reluctant to release, do not apply excessive force; remove the centre console (*see Chapter 11 for details*) and release the switch from the underside.

46 Detach the wire connector from the switch, and remove it (*see illustration*).

47 Refit in the reverse order of removal, then check the switch for satisfactory operation.



4.34 Brake stop-light switch location



4.35 Brake stop-light switch removal



4.42 Heater blower motor switch removal



4.46 Electric window switch removal



4.50 Electric door mirror switch



5.1 Detach the wiring connector . . .



5.2A . . . remove the rubber protector cap . . .

Electric door mirror switch

48 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

49 Carefully prise free the switch using a thin-bladed screwdriver as a lever, but insert a suitable protective pad between the screwdriver and the housing to avoid damage.

50 Detach the wiring multi-plug connector and remove the switch (see illustration).

51 Refit in the reverse order of removal, then adjust the mirror and check that the operation of the switch is satisfactory.

Powered roof switch (Cabriolet)

52 This switch is removed in the same manner as that described for the electric window switches in paragraphs 44 to 47 above.

Starter inhibitor switch (automatic transmission)

53 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

54 The starter inhibitor switch is located on the transmission housing, and prevents the engine from being started with the selector lever in any position except "P" or "N". Access to the switch is gained after raising and supporting the vehicle at the front end on axle stands.

55 Detach the switch multi-plug, then unscrew and remove the switch from the transmission, together with its O-ring. As the switch is removed, catch any fluid spillage in a suitable container, and plug the switch aperture in the transmission to prevent any further loss.

56 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Use a new O-ring, and tighten the switch securely. Ensure that the wiring connection is securely made. On completion, check that the engine only starts when the selector is in the "P" or "N" position.

5 Bulbs (exterior lights) - renewal

Note: Ensure that all exterior lights are switched off before disconnecting the wiring connectors to any exterior light bulbs. The headlight and front sidelight bulbs are removable from within the engine compartment with the bonnet raised. Note that if a bulb fails, and has just been in use, it will still be extremely hot, particularly in the case of a headlight bulb.

Headlight

1 Pull free the wiring connector from the rear of the headlight on the side concerned (see illustration).

2 Prise free the protector cap from the rear of the headlight unit, then compress the retaining wire clips and pivot them out of the way (see illustrations).

3 Withdraw the bulb from its location in the headlight (see illustration).

4 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. Make sure that the tabs on the bulb support are correctly located in the lens assembly.



Take care not to touch the bulb glass with your fingers - if accidentally touched, clean the bulb with methylated spirit.

5 Check the headlight beam alignment as described in Section 8.

Front sidelight

All models except XR3i

6 Compress the wire retaining clip, and detach the wiring connector from the sidelight (see illustration).

7 Pull free the sidelight bulbholder from its location in the rear of the headlight (see illustration).

8 Remove the bulb from the bulbholder.



5.2B . . . compress the clips . . .



5.3 . . . and withdraw the headlight bulb



5.6 Detach the wiring connector . . .



5.7 . . . and withdraw the sidelight bulbholder



5.14 Front indicator unit retaining spring

9 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. Check for satisfactory operation on completion.

XR3i models

10 Unhook the retaining spring from the rear of the sidelight, and move the sidelight forwards in order to release it.

11 Grip the bulbholder and pull it free from the sidelight (do not pull on the wire).

12 Depress and twist the bulb to remove it from the bulbholder.

13 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. As the light is fitted into position, engage its tags in the slots of the headlight unit. Check for satisfactory operation on completion.

Front direction indicator

All models except XR3i

14 Unhook the retaining spring from the rear of the direction indicator, and move the



5.16 Front indicator bulb renewal

direction indicator forwards in order to release it (see illustration).

15 Grip the bulbholder and pull it free from the indicator (do not pull on the wire).

16 Depress and twist the bulb to remove it from the bulbholder (see illustration).

17 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. As the light is fitted into position, engage its tags in the slots of the headlight (see illustration). Check for satisfactory operation on completion.

XR3i models

18 Insert a small screwdriver between the top edge of the direction indicator light and the bumper, and lift up the retaining clip (see illustration).

19 Carefully withdraw the light unit from the bumper.

20 Turn the bulbholder and release it from the rear of the light unit.

21 Withdraw the old bulb and fit the new.



5.17 Engage the tags in their locating slots when refitting the front indicator unit

22 Guide the indicator back into the bumper until the retaining clip engages.

23 Check for satisfactory operation.

Front direction indicator side repeater

24 Carefully prise the light from the front wing, taking care not to damage the paintwork.

25 Pull out the bulbholder and wiring, then remove the bulb (see illustration).

26 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure, and check for satisfactory operation.

Front foglight (XR3i models)

27 Withdraw the front direction indicator as described previously.

28 Swing back the direction indicator retaining spring clip then ease the foglight out on the spring clip side, and pull it forward (see illustration).

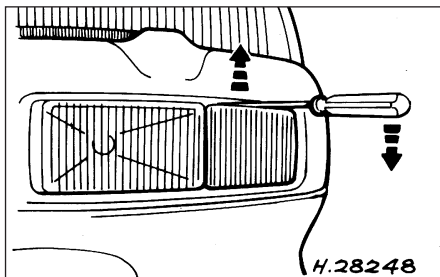
29 Detach the bulbholder and remove the bulb.

30 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Check that the operation of the foglight is satisfactory on completion.

Rear light cluster

Hatchback and Saloon models

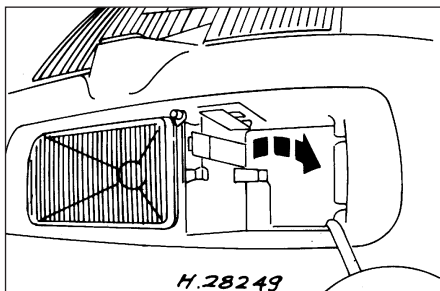
31 On pre-1993 model year vehicles, working in the luggage area, press the lock tabs (recessed in the rear face of the bulbholder on the side concerned) in towards the centre, and pull free the bulbholder. On later models, release the two clips and remove the light cluster trim. Disconnect the wiring multi-plug, press the bulbholder retainer upwards, and pull free the bulbholder (see illustrations).



5.18 Using a screwdriver to release the direction indicator light unit on XR3i models



5.25 Side repeater light assembly



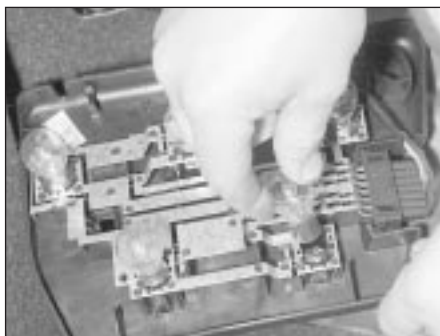
5.28 On XR3i models, swing back the direction indicator unit retaining spring clip, then ease the foglight out on the spring clip side



5.31A Rear bulbholder removal on pre-1993 Saloon and Hatchback models



5.31B On later models, press the bulbholder retainer (arrowed) upwards and pull free the bulbholder



5.32 Removing a bulb from the bulbholder



5.34 Rear light cluster removal on Estate models



5.40 Number plate light removal from the bumper on Estate models



5.42A Prise open the clip . . .

32 Depress and twist the bulb concerned to remove it from the holder (see illustration).

33 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. Relocate the holder by pressing it in until the retainers engage. Refit the multi-plug, where applicable. Check the operation of the rear lights on completion.

Estate models

34 Prise back the rear trim cover on the side concerned to gain access to the light from within the luggage area. Press the lock tab down, lift the holder a fraction and withdraw it (see illustration).

35 Depress and twist free the bulb concerned from the holder.

36 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. Relocate the holder by sliding the lower end into position first, then

press the upper end into position so that it clicks into place. Check the operation of the rear lights on completion.

Van models

37 Working from within the rear of the vehicle on the side concerned, turn the appropriate bulbholder in an anti-clockwise direction and withdraw the holder.

38 Depress and untwist the bulb to release it from its holder.

39 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. Check the rear lights for satisfactory operation on completion.

Number plate lights

40 Prise the number plate light from the rear bumper using a small screwdriver (see illustration).

41 Disconnect the wiring plug and earth lead from the light.

42 On Hatchback, Saloon and Estate models, prise open the plastic retaining clip to withdraw the bulbholder from the light unit, then depress and untwist the bulb to remove it from the holder (see illustrations).

43 To remove the bulb on Van models, twist the bulbholder anti-clockwise and withdraw it, then pull free the bulb.

44 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. Check the operation of the lights on completion.

Rear foglight (1993 model year onwards)

45 With the tailgate open, release the cover from the inner trim panel to access the bulbholder.

46 Twist the bulbholder anti-clockwise and withdraw it, then pull free the bulb.

47 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. Check the operation of the light on completion.

6 Bulbs (interior lights) - renewal



Courtesy lights

1 Prise out the light using a small flat-bladed screwdriver (see illustration).

2 Release the festoon-type bulb from the spring contacts.

3 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure. Check the tension of the spring contacts, and if necessary bend them so that they firmly contact the bulb end caps.

Luggage area light

4 Prise free and withdraw the light (see illustration).

5 Pull free the bulb from its holder and remove it.

6 Fit the new bulb and refit the light using a reversal of the removal procedure.

Instrument panel illumination and warning lights

7 Remove the instrument panel as described in Section 9.



5.42B . . . and separate the number plate light unit and bulbholder



6.1 Roof-mounted courtesy light removal



6.4 Luggage area light removed for bulb replacement



6.8 Bulbholder removal from the instrument panel

8 Turn the bulbholder a quarter-turn to align the shoulders with the slots, then remove it and pull the capless bulb from the bulbholder (see illustration).

9 Fit the new bulb in reverse order.

Heater control panel illumination

10 Undo the two retaining screws from its upper edge, and withdraw the instrument panel surround.

11 Pull free the heater control knobs, then undo the heater control panel retaining screws. Withdraw the panel from the facia just enough to gain access to the bulbs on its rear face (see illustration).

12 Twist the bulbs anti-clockwise to remove them.

13 Refit in the reverse order of removal, and check for satisfactory operation on completion.

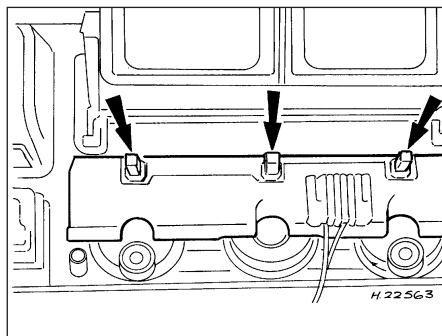
Automatic transmission selector illumination

14 Prise out the lever quadrant cover (taking care not to scratch the console), then pull the bulbholder from under the selector lever position indicator, untwist and remove the bulb from the holder.

15 Fit the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

Glovebox light

16 Open the glovebox, then undo the two



6.11 Heater control panel illumination bulb locations (arrowed)

retaining screws and withdraw the light/switch unit.

17 Prise free the switch/bulbholder, then untwist and remove the bulb from the holder (see illustration).

18 Fit the new bulb using a reversal of the removal procedure.

Hazard warning light tell-tale

19 Pull free the cover from the switch, then pull free the bulb from the switch/holder.

20 Refit in the reverse order of removal, and check for satisfactory operation.

Clock illumination

21 Engage the hooked ends of a pair of circlip pliers in the two holes in the underside of the clock bezel as shown, and carefully pull free the clock from its aperture in the facia. The bulbholder can then be untwisted and withdrawn from the rear face of the clock and the bulb renewed (see illustrations).

22 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

Cigar lighter illumination

23 Remove the lighter (Section 12), then withdraw the illumination ring from the facia. Remove the bulb from the illumination ring.

24 Refit in the reverse order of removal. Check for satisfactory operation on completion.



6.17 Glovebox light switch/bulbholder removal

7 Exterior light units - removal and refitting



1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1), before removing any of the light units.

Headlight

2 Open and support the bonnet, then on pre-1993 models, undo the four retaining screws along the top edge of the grille panel, and lift the panel clear. On 1993-on XR3i models, undo the four screws, release the two clips and remove the plastic support bracket above the radiator.

3 Remove the front indicator as described later in this Section.

4 Detach the wiring connections from the headlight and sidelight in the rear of the appropriate headlight unit.

5 Working through the cut-out of the direction indicator, unscrew the headlight lower retaining screw, then undo the two upper securing screws from the points indicated (see illustration). On later models, there is an additional upper retaining screw. Withdraw the headlight forwards from the vehicle.

6 If a new headlight is to be fitted, remove the headlight and sidelight bulbs/holders, and transfer them to the new light unit as described in Section 5. The individual parts of the headlight are not otherwise renewable.



6.21A Pull free the clock from the facia . . .



6.21B . . . for access to the bulbholder



7.5 Headlight unit retaining screws (arrowed)



7.7A Headlight engagement pin

7 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. When fitting the headlight into position, ensure that the location pin sits in its recess, and note the arrangement of the insulating washers on the retaining screws (see illustrations). Loosely locate the headlight, and temporarily fit the indicator to check that the gap between the headlight and the indicator is even. Fully tighten the upper retaining screws, then remove the indicator to tighten the lower headlight screw.

8 When the headlight and indicator units are fitted and their wiring connectors attached, check the lights for satisfactory operation before fitting the front grille panel.

9 Finally adjust the headlight beam alignment as described in Section 8.

Front direction indicator

All models except XR3i

10 Unhook the retaining spring from the rear of the direction indicator (see illustration 5.14).

11 Move the direction indicator forwards in order to release it.

12 Turn the bulbholder and release it from the rear of the direction indicator.

13 Remove the direction indicator from the vehicle.

14 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Check that the operation of the indicator is satisfactory on completion.

XR3i models

15 Insert a small screwdriver between the top edge of the light and the bumper, and lift up the retaining clip (see illustration 5.18).

16 Carefully withdraw the indicator assembly from the bumper.

17 Turn the bulbholder and release it from the rear of the direction indicator.

18 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Check that the operation of the indicator is satisfactory on completion.

Front sidelight (XR3i models)

19 Unhook the retaining spring from the rear of the sidelight unit.

20 Move the sidelight forwards in order to release it.

21 Turn the bulbholder and release it from the rear of the sidelight.

22 Remove the sidelight from the vehicle.



7.7B Headlight retaining screw showing washer arrangement

23 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Check that the operation of the sidelight is satisfactory on completion.

Front foglight (XR3i models)

24 Insert a small screwdriver between the top edge of the direction indicator light and the bumper, and lift up the retaining clip (see illustration 5.18).

25 Carefully withdraw the direction indicator from the bumper.

26 Turn the bulbholder and release it from the rear of the direction indicator.

27 Swing back the direction indicator retaining spring clip then ease the foglight out, on the spring clip side, and pull it forward (see illustration 5.28).

28 Detach the bulbholder and remove the unit.

29 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Check that the operation of the foglight is satisfactory on completion.

Direction indicator side repeater

30 Raise and support the bonnet. Detach the indicator wiring multi-plug at the bulkhead, and attach a length of string to the connector end of the wire going to the side repeater. This will act as a guide to feed the wire back through the body channels when refitting the repeater unit.

31 Rotate the light in a clockwise direction to release it from the body panel, and withdraw it from the vehicle. When the wiring connector and string are drawn through, they can be separated and the string left in position.



7.34 Rear light lens showing the retaining nuts

32 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Attach the wire to the string and draw it through the body panels, then disconnect the string and reconnect the light multi-plug at the bulkhead. When the light is refitted, check for satisfactory operation.

Rear light cluster

33 Working in the luggage area, release the rear bulbholder (according to type) from the side concerned as described in Section 5.

34 Unscrew the mounting nuts and withdraw the rear light lens from the rear of the vehicle (see illustration).

35 Renew the seal gasket if it is in poor condition. Refit in the reverse order to removal, and check for satisfactory operation of the rear lights on completion.

Number plate lights

36 Prise the number plate light from the rear bumper using a small screwdriver, then disconnect the wiring plug (see photo 13.26).

37 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

Rear foglight (1993 model year onwards)

38 With the tailgate open, undo the ten retaining screws and withdraw the tailgate inner trim panel.

39 Disconnect the bulbholder multi-plug, then undo the retaining nut and remove the foglight.

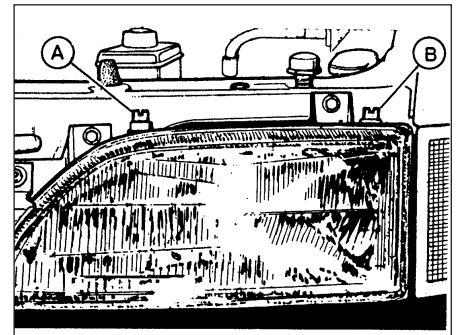
40 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

8 Headlight beam alignment - checking and adjustment

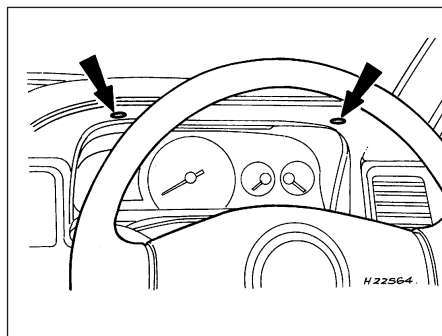


1 Accurate adjustment of the headlight beam is only possible using optical beam-setting equipment, and this work should therefore be carried out by a Ford dealer or service station with the necessary facilities.

2 Temporary adjustment can be made when the headlight has been removed and refitted, or to compensate for normal adjustment whenever a heavy load is being carried. Turn the adjustment screws on the top and rear of the headlight to make the adjustment (see illustration).



8.2 Horizontal (A) and vertical (B) headlight beam adjustment screws



9.3 Instrument panel bezel retaining screw locations (arrowed)



9.4A Instrument cluster retaining screws



9.4B Detach the wiring multi-plugs from the instrument panel

3 Before making any adjustments to the headlight settings, it is important that the tyre pressures are correct, and that the vehicle is standing on level ground. Bounce the front of the vehicle a few times to settle the suspension. Ideally, somebody of normal size should sit in the driver's seat during the adjustment, and the vehicle should have a full tank of fuel.

4 Whenever temporary adjustments are made, the settings must be reset as soon as possible once the vehicle is in normal use.

9 Instrument panel - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

2 Although not strictly necessary, in order to withdraw the instrument panel, the removal of the steering wheel will provide much improved access, particularly when detaching (and subsequently reconnecting) the speedometer cable and wiring multi-plugs from the rear of the unit. Refer to Chapter 10 for steering wheel removal and refitting procedures.

3 Undo the two retaining screws from the underside top edge of the instrument panel bezel and withdraw the bezel, releasing it from

the location clips each side and underneath (see illustration).

4 Unscrew and remove the four instrument panel retaining screws, and carefully withdraw the panel to the point where the wiring multi-plugs and the speedometer cable can be detached from the rear (see illustrations). Note that it may be necessary to push the speedometer cable through the from the engine compartment side to allow the instrument panel to be sufficiently withdrawn. Take care when handling the instrument panel whilst it is removed, and position it in a safe place where it will not get knocked or damaged. If a tachometer is fitted, do not lay the panel on its face for extended periods, as the silicone fluid in the tachometer may well be released.

Refitting

5 Refitting is a reversal of removal. On completion check the function of all electrical components.

10 Instrument panel components - removal and refitting

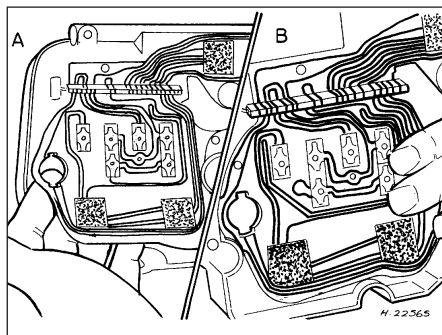


Removal

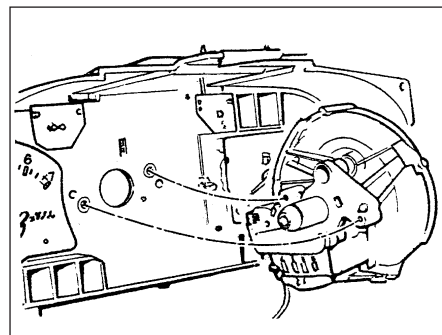
1 Remove the instrument panel as described in Section 9. As mentioned, take particular care when handling the panel.



10.2 Rear face of the instrument panel showing bulbholder locations



10.3 Printed circuit removal (A) and refitting (B) to/from the rear face of the instrument panel



10.4 Speedometer removal from the instrument cluster

Printed circuit

2 Untwist and remove all of the illumination light bulbs/holders from the rear of the instrument panel (see illustration).

3 Carefully release and remove the wiring multi-plug connector from the rear face of the panel. Pull free the printed circuit, releasing it from the securing pins and the air-cored gauge terminals on the rear face of the panel (see illustration).

Speedometer

4 Remove the odometer reset knob, then release the four securing clips and remove the two bulbs and the panel surround from the panel. Withdraw the speedometer (see illustration).

Tachometer

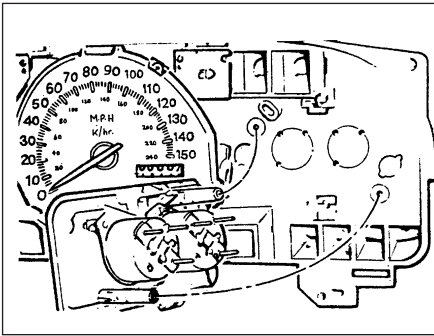
5 Remove the odometer reset knob, release the securing clips, remove the two bulbs and the panel surround from the panel.

6 Applying great care, detach the printed circuit from the air-cored gauge terminals, and remove the tachometer from the panel. Do not lay the gauge on its face for extended periods, as the silicone fluid in the tachometer may well be released.

Fuel/temperature gauge

7 Remove the odometer reset knob, release the securing clips, remove the two bulbs and the panel surround from the panel.

8 Applying great care, detach the printed



10.8 Air-cored fuel/temperature gauge removal from the instrument cluster

circuit from the air-cored gauge terminals. Undo the two retaining screws, and remove the fuel/temperature gauge from the panel (see illustration).

Refitting

9 Refitting is a reversal of removal. When refitting the printed circuit, ensure that it is gently pushed back into contact with the securing pins and gauge terminals.

11 Speedometer cable - removal and refitting

- 1 Remove the instrument panel as described in Section 9.
- 2 Unscrew the speedometer cable from the pinion/speed sensor on the transmission.
- 3 Release the cable ties and retaining clips in the engine compartment, and withdraw the cable grommet from the bulkhead.
- 4 Note the cable routing for use when refitting. Pull the speedometer cable through into the engine compartment, and remove it from the car (see illustration).
- 5 Refitting is the reversal of removal. Ensure that the cable is routed as noted before removal, secured with the relevant clips and cable ties, and that the grommet is properly located in the bulkhead.

12 Cigar lighter - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Pull out the ashtray and reaching through its aperture in the fascia, disconnect the wiring from the cigar lighter.
- 3 Push the cigar lighter out of its location, and disconnect the wiring (see illustration).
- 4 Extract the lighter element, then reaching through with a thin-bladed screwdriver, unclip



11.4 Withdrawing the speedometer cable through the bulkhead

and release the lighter body from the illumination ring.

- 5 If required, the lighter illumination ring can be pulled free and withdrawn from the fascia.

Refitting

- 6 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

13 Clock - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 2 Proceed as described in Section 6, paragraph 21, and carefully prise the clock from the fascia. Disconnect the wiring plug from the rear face of the clock.

Refitting

- 3 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Reset the clock on completion.

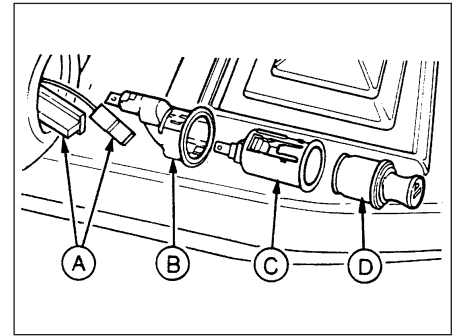
14 Horn - removal and refitting

Removal

- 1 The horn(s) are located on the body front valance, behind the front bumper (see



14.1 Horn location



12.3 Cigar lighter components

- A Wiring connectors C Lighter body
B Illumination ring D Element

illustration). To remove a horn, first apply the handbrake, then jack up the front of the vehicle and support it on axle stands.

- 2 Disconnect the horn wiring plug(s).
- 3 Unscrew the nut securing the horn(s) to the mounting bracket, and remove the horn(s) from the vehicle.

Refitting

- 4 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

15 Wiper arms - removal and refitting

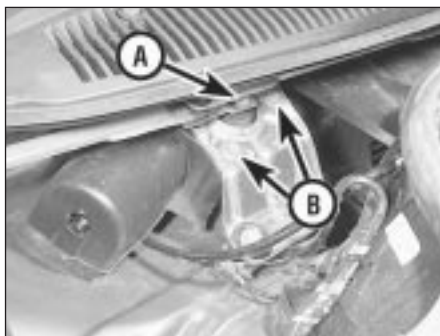
- 1 With the wiper(s) "parked" (ie in the normal at-rest position), mark the positions of the blade(s) on the screen, using a wax crayon or strips of masking tape.
- 2 Lift up the plastic cap from the bottom of the wiper arm, and loosen the nut one or two turns (see illustration).
- 3 Lift the wiper arm, and release it from the taper on the spindle by moving it from side to side.
- 4 Completely remove the nut and washer, then withdraw the wiper arm from the spindle.

Refitting

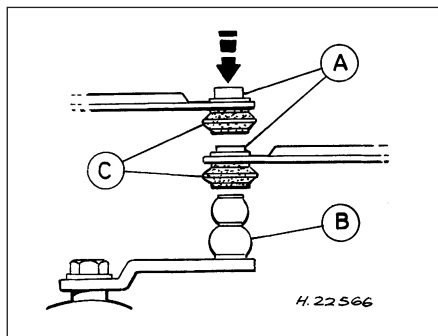
- 5 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure. Make sure that the arm is fitted in the previously-noted position.



15.2 Windscreen wiper arm retaining nut

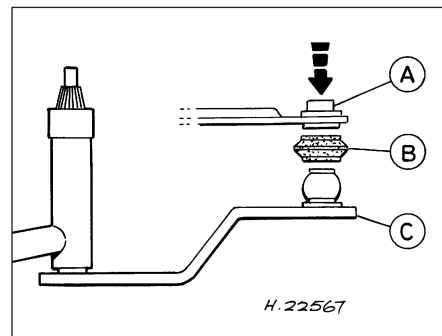


16.3 Windscreen wiper motor showing link arm-to-spindle connection (A) and two of the wiper motor-to-mounting retaining bolts (B)



16.7A Windscreen wiper linkage to motor balljoint connection

A Pivot bush C Rubber seal
B Wiper motor arm



16.7B Windscreen wiper linkage-to-pivot shaft connection

A Pivot bush C Pivot shaft
B Rubber seal

16 Windscreen wiper motor and linkage - removal and refitting



Removal

Wiper motor

- 1 Operate the wiper motor, then switch it off so that it returns to its rest position.
- 2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).
- 3 Unscrew and remove the link arm-to-motor spindle retaining nut (see illustration). Disengage the arm from the spindle.
- 4 Undo the three wiper motor retaining bolts, then move the wiper motor sideways from its mounting bracket.
- 5 Detach the wiper motor wiring multi-plug, withdraw the wiper motor and remove its insulating cover.

Linkage

- 6 Remove the windscreen wiper arms (and blades) from the pivots as described in Section 15.
- 7 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1). Move the wiper linkage to the required position for access to the linkage balljoints, then carefully prise free

the linkages from their ball pins using a suitable open-ended spanner as a lever (see illustrations).

- 8 Remove the rubber seal from the pivot bushes. Where the surfaces of the ball pins are damaged, the pivot shaft and/or motor must be renewed. The rubber seals which are located over the edge of the pivot bushes must be renewed during refitting.

Refitting

- 9 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Lubricate the pivot bushes and the rubber seals during reassembly. When reconnecting the link arm on the motor spindle, ensure that the arm lug engages in the slot in the taper of the motor spindle. Check for satisfactory operation on completion.

17 Windscreen wiper pivot shaft - removal and refitting



Removal

- 1 Operate the wiper motor, then switch it off so that it returns to its rest position.
- 2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

- 3 Remove the windscreen wiper arms as described in Section 15.

- 4 Detach and remove the cowl grille. This is secured by six plastic screws and two cross-head screws located under plastic caps (see illustration).

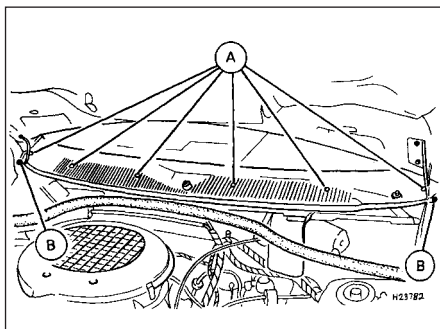
- 5 Unscrew and remove the four wiper motor bracket retaining bolts, then remove the wiper motor bracket assembly (see illustration). Disconnect the wiring multi-plug as the motor bracket assembly is withdrawn.

- 6 Prise free the wiper linkage from the pivot shaft using a suitable open-ended spanner.

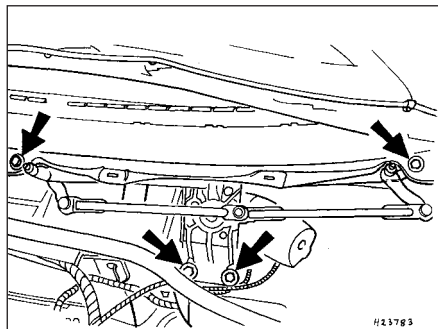
- 7 Pull free the pivot shaft cap from the housing, release the circlip, withdraw the two special washers and remove the pivot shaft. The special washer and spring washer can then be removed from the shaft (see illustration).

Refitting

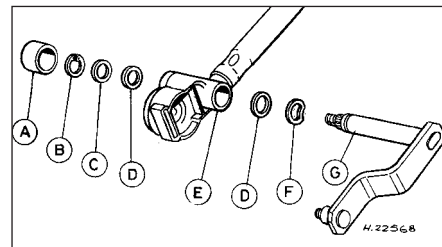
- 8 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Lubricate the pivot shaft, bushes and rubber seals during reassembly. When reconnecting the link arm on the motor spindle, ensure that the arm lug engages in the slot in the taper of the motor spindle. Check for satisfactory operation on completion.



17.4 Remove the plastic screws (A) and the cross-head screws (B) to remove the cowl grille

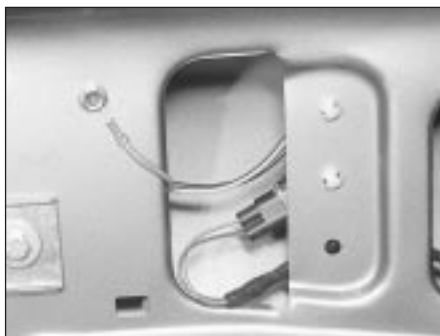


17.5 Wiper motor bracket retaining bolt locations



17.7 Wiper pivot shaft components

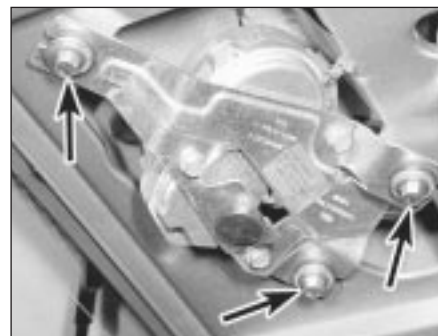
A Cap D Special washer (0.15 mm)
B Circlip E Bush
C Special washer (1.8 mm) F Wave washer
G Pivot shaft



18.6 Tailgate wiper earth lead and in-line connector



18.7A Tailgate wiper motor and mounting bolts (arrowed) on Hatchback models



18.7B Tailgate wiper motor and mounting bolts (arrowed) on Estate models

18 Tailgate wiper motor assembly - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Operate the wiper, then switch it off so that it returns to its rest position. Note that the wiper motor will only operate with the tailgate shut, as the spring-tensioned connector pins must be in contact with the contact plates.

2 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

3 Remove the wiper arm with reference to Section 15.

4 Unscrew the nut from the spindle housing protruding through the tailgate.

5 Undo the eight plastic screws (early models), ten screws (later models) and remove the trim panel from inside the tailgate.

7 Unbolt and remove the wiper assembly from inside the tailgate (see illustrations).

8 If necessary, the wiper motor can be detached from its mounting bracket by unscrewing the three retaining bolts (see illustration). As they are detached, note the location of the washers and insulators.

Refitting

9 Refitting is a reversal of removal. When the wiper arm is refitted, its park position should

be set correctly. On Hatchback models, the distance from the point where the arm meets the centre of the wiper blade should be 90 ± 5 mm from the bottom of the rear window. On Estate models, this distance should be 75 ± 5 mm.

19 Windscreen/tailgate washer system components - removal and refitting



Removal

Washer pump

1 To remove the pump from the reservoir, first syphon out any remaining fluid from the reservoir, then detach the washer hoses and the wiring multi-plug to the washer pump. The pump can now be pulled (or if required), levered free from the reservoir (see illustration).

Reservoir and pump

2 To remove the washer reservoir and pump, first unscrew and remove the reservoir retaining bolt in the engine compartment (see illustration).

3 Refer to Chapter 11 for details, and remove the wheel arch liner trim on the left-hand side.

4 Detach the pump multi-plug, the washer low fluid level switch multi-plug (where fitted) and the pump hoses, and disconnect them from the reservoir. Drain any fluid remaining in



18.7C Removing the wiper motor from the tailgate (Hatchback models)

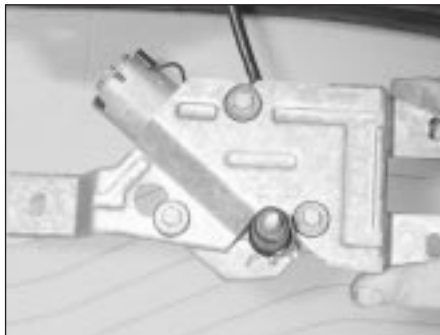
the reservoir/pump into a suitable container.

5 Unscrew and remove the two reservoir retaining bolts from under the wheel arch, then remove the reservoir and pump from the vehicle.

6 If required, pull or prise free the pump to remove it from the reservoir.

Hoses

7 The hose system to the windscreen washers is in sections, with nylon connector pieces where required. This means that any section of hose can be renewed individually when required. Access to the hoses in the engine compartment is good, but it will be necessary to detach and remove the insulation panel from the underside of the bonnet to allow access to the hoses and connections to the washer nozzles.



18.8 Tailgate wiper motor-to-mounting bracket bolts (Hatchback models)



19.1 Washer pump and hose locations under the front wheel arch



19.2 Washer reservoir retaining bolt in the engine compartment



19.9 Remove trim for access to the tailgate washer nozzle

8 The front washer reservoir also supplies the rear tailgate washer by means of a tube running along the left-hand side within the body apertures.

Nozzles

9 These are secured to the body panels by retaining tabs which are an integral part of the washer nozzle stem. To remove a washer nozzle, first detach and remove the insulation from the underside of the bonnet, or the appropriate trim piece (according to type) for the tailgate washer (**see illustration**).

10 Using suitable needle-nosed pliers, squeeze together the nozzle retaining tabs, twist the nozzle a quarter of a turn, and withdraw it from its aperture in the body (**see illustration**). Once withdrawn, the hose can be detached and the nozzle removed. Do not allow the hose to fall into the body whilst the nozzle is detached - tape the hose to the body to prevent this.

Refitting

11 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Always renew the pump-to-reservoir seal washer, and ensure that all connections are securely made. When reconnecting the pump hoses, ensure that the hose marked with white tape is connected to the corresponding white connection on the pump.

12 On completion, top-up the washer reservoir using a suitable washer additive and check that the operation of the washers is satisfactory. If necessary, adjust the washer



19.10 Washer nozzle removal

jets by inserting a pin into the centre of the jet and directing the flow at the top part of the windscreen/rear window.

20 Radio/cassette player - removal and refitting

Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1). If the radio has a security code, make sure this is known before disconnecting the battery.

2 In order to release the radio retaining clips, two U-shaped rods must be inserted into the special holes on each side of the radio (**see illustration**). If possible, it is preferable to obtain purpose-made rods from an audio specialist, as these have cut-outs which snap firmly into the clips so that the radio can be pulled out. Pull the unit squarely from its aperture, or it may jam. If the unit proves difficult to withdraw, remove the cassette tray (or where applicable, the CD player) from beneath the unit, then reach through the aperture and ease it out from behind. From 1993 model year onwards, it will first be necessary to remove the two side bezels using a Ford tool, to gain access to the removal tool holes.

3 With the radio/cassette sufficiently withdrawn, disconnect the feed, earth, aerial

and speaker leads (**see illustration**). Where applicable, also detach and remove the plastic support bracket from the rear of the unit.

Refitting

4 Refitting is a reversal of removal. When the leads are reconnected to the rear of the unit, press it into position to the point where the retaining clips are felt to engage. Reactivate the unit in accordance with the code and the instructions given in the Ford Audio Operating Manual supplied with the vehicle.

21 Compact disc player - removal and refitting

The removal and refitting procedures for this (where fitted) are similar to those described for the radio/cassette player in the previous Section, but do not remove the bezel securing screws above the CD player.

22 Speakers - removal and refitting

Removal

Door-mounted speaker

1 Remove the trim panel from the door concerned as described in Chapter 11. Undo the speaker retaining screws, then withdraw the speaker from the door and disconnect the wiring (**see illustration**). Note that the speaker must not be detached from its moulding.

Rear quarter panel-mounted speaker (Cabriolet models)

2 Lower the hood. If the hood is manually-operated, lock it in the lowered position, then pull free the roof release lever knob.

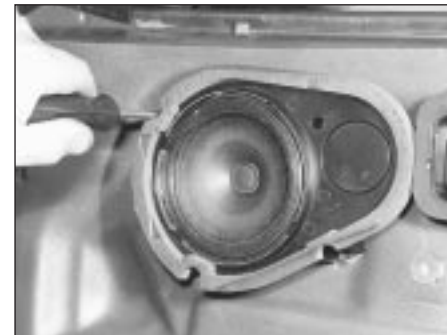
3 Remove the quarter window regulator or lift switches (according to type), and remove the rear quarter trim panel as described in Chapter 11. Undo the three retaining screws



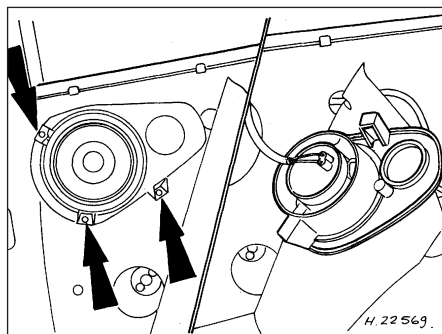
20.2 Radio/cassette removal



20.3 Wiring and aerial lead connections on the rear face of the radio/cassette



22.1 Door-mounted speaker removal



22.3 Rear quarter panel speaker retaining screws and wiring connector on Cabriolet models

and withdraw the speaker (see illustration). Disconnect the wiring from the speaker. Note that the speaker must not be detached from its moulding.

Rear parcel shelf-mounted speaker (Saloon models)

4 Detach the wiring connector from the speaker, then loosen off (but do not remove), the speaker retaining bolt sufficiently to allow the speaker to be withdrawn, leaving the bracket and bolt in position in the speaker recess (see illustration).

Rear parcel tray-mounted speaker (Hatchback models)

5 Unscrew the three retaining screws, lower the speaker from the parcel tray, then detach the wiring connections (see illustration). Note that the speaker and its moulding must not be separated.

Luggage area trim-mounting speaker (Estate models)

6 Remove the appropriate luggage area side trim panel as described in Chapter 11 for access to the speaker.

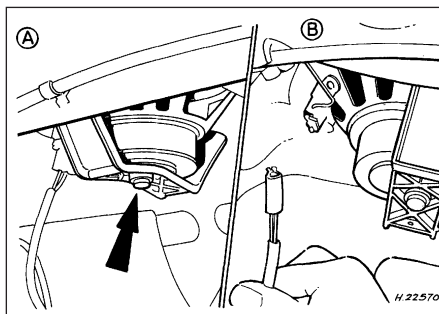
7 Unscrew the three retaining screws, withdraw the speaker and detach the wiring connections (see illustrations). Note that the speaker and its moulding must not be separated.

Refitting

8 Refitting is a reversal of removal.



23.2 Roof-mounted aerial retaining screw



22.4 Remove the retaining bolt (A) and detach the wiring connector (B) to remove the rear parcel shelf-mounted speaker on Saloon models



22.5 Rear parcel shelf-mounted speaker (Hatchback models)



22.7A Luggage area-mounted speaker (Estate models)



22.7B Detach the wiring from the speaker

23 Radio aerial - removal and refitting

Removal

Manual type (Hatchback, Saloon and Estate models)

1 Remove the trim cover from the access aperture in the headlining beneath the aerial by carefully prising it free.

2 Working through the aperture in the headlining, undo the single retaining screw, withdraw the aerial and detach the cable base from the roof (see illustration).

Manual type (Cabriolet models)

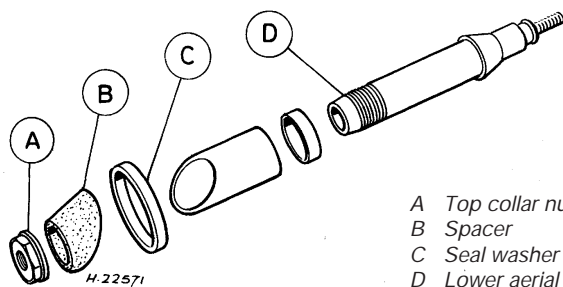
3 Open the boot lid, disconnect its support strut from the left-hand side panel, then undo the two retaining screws and remove the luggage area side trim panel.

4 Unscrew and remove the aerial mast, then unscrew and remove the collar retaining nut to remove the spacer and upper seal washer (see illustration).

5 Working within the luggage area side of the quarter panel, unscrew the lead and remove the aerial.

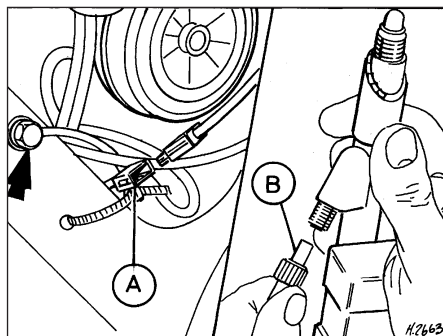
Electric aerial (Cabriolet models)

6 Open the boot lid, disconnect its support strut from the left-hand side panel, then undo the two retaining screws and remove the luggage area side trim panel.



A Top collar nut
B Spacer
C Seal washer
D Lower aerial section

23.4 Manual aerial components on Cabriolet models



23.9 Electric aerial wiring (A) and aerial (B) connections

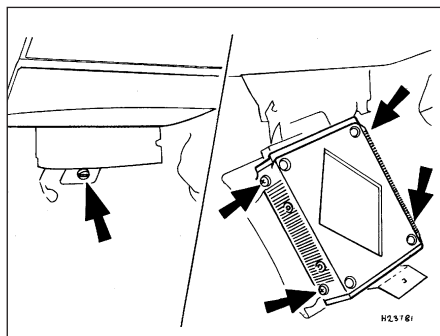
7 Unscrew the aerial upper retaining nut, then remove the bezel and the seal washer.

8 Working from the luggage area side, unscrew and remove the self-tapping screw securing the aerial bottom bracket to the apron.

9 Unscrew the knurled type nut to detach the aerial from the base of the unit, then detach the wiring and aerial lead at their connections, and withdraw the aerial from the vehicle (see illustration).

Refitting

10 Refitting is a reversal of removal. Ensure



24.2 Power amplifier securing bolts

that the contact surfaces of both the body panel and the aerial are clean before fitting the aerial into position.

24 Power amplifier - removal and refitting

Removal

1 This is fitted to models equipped with the Premium Sound System, and is located in the area between the glovebox and the bulkhead.

2 To remove the amplifier, undo the retaining screw, lower the unit complete with its support bracket, and detach the wiring multi-plug connectors (see illustration). If required, the bracket and the amplifier can be separated by unscrewing the four Torx screws.

Refitting

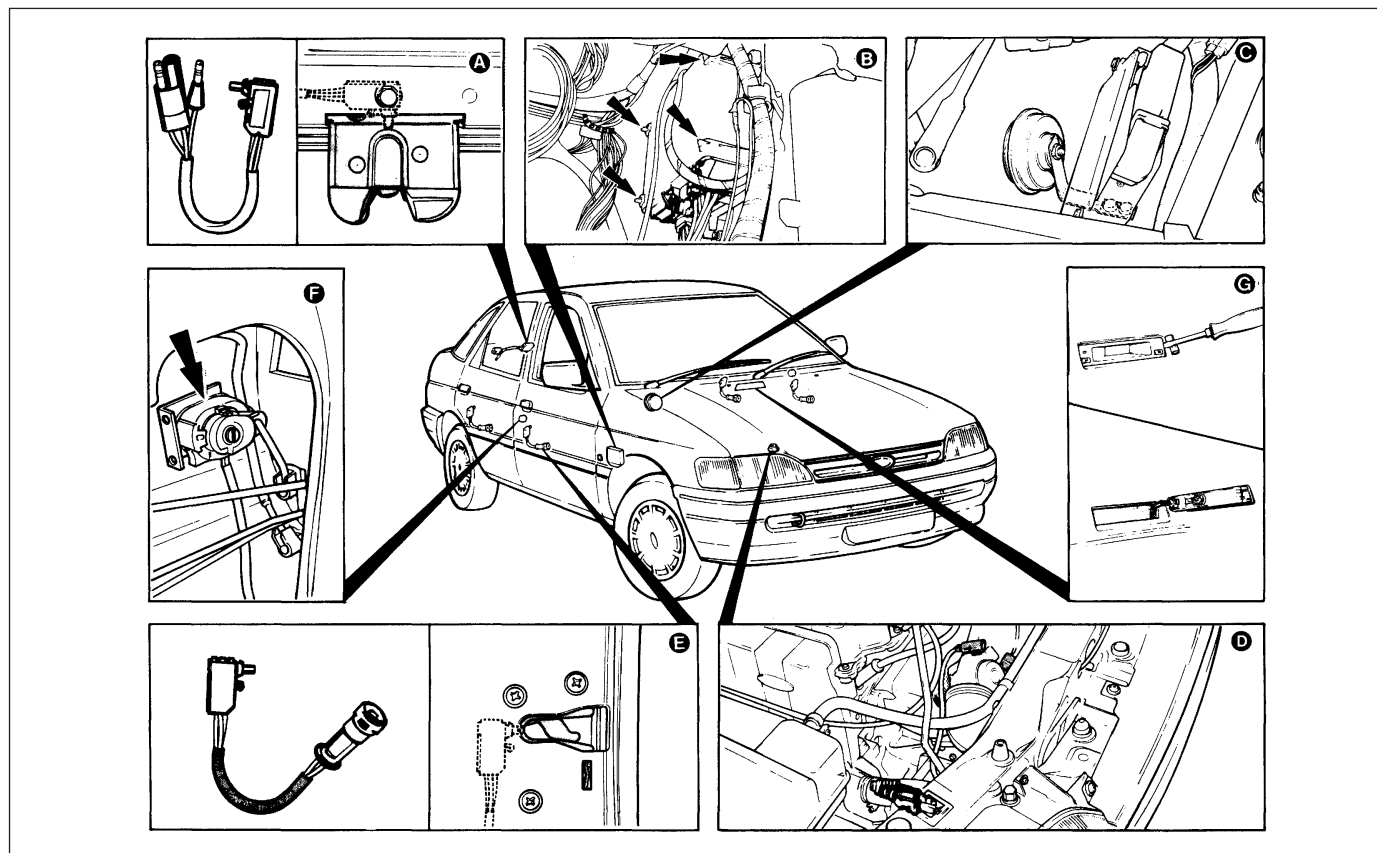
3 Refit in the reverse order of removal.

25 Anti-theft systems - general information

Anti-theft alarm system

1 This system provides an added form of vehicle security (see illustration). When the system is activated, the alarm will sound if the vehicle is broken into through any one of the doors, the bonnet, boot (or tailgate). The alarm will also be triggered if the ignition system is turned on or the radio/cassette disconnected whilst the system is activated.

2 This system is activated/de-activated whenever one of the front doors is locked/unlocked by the key. The system operates on all doors, the bonnet and boot lid (or tailgate) whenever each door is individually



25.1 Anti-theft alarm system components and their locations

A Trip switch (luggage compartment)

B System module
C Alarm horn

D Alarm switch (bonnet)
E Alarm switch (doors)

F Activation switches
G Clock

locked (or, in the case of central locking, when the central locking is engaged). It is important to note that opening the bootlid/tailgate first when the system is activated will trigger the alarm. In addition to the alarm being sounded, the ignition/starting system is also immobilised when the system is activated.

3 A further security feature included is that even though the battery may be disconnected whilst the system is activated, the alarm activation continues as soon as the battery is reconnected. Because of this feature, it is important to ensure that the system is deactivated before disconnecting the battery at any time, such as when working on the vehicle.

4 The system incorporates a diagnostic mode to enable Ford technicians to quickly identify any faults in the system.

Anti-theft alarm system activation and check

5 Fully insert the door lock key into the lock of the front door (driver's or passenger side), turn the key as far as possible, and hold in this position for one second. With the doors, bonnet and boot lid/tailgate all closed, a twenty-second activation delay starts from this point, although access to the luggage area is still possible within the activation period without triggering the alarm. When the bootlid/tailgate is closed, the activation period of twenty seconds restarts.

6 The initial activating period is confirmed by the control light in the clock flashing on and off rapidly; when the activation period is complete, the control light flashes at a reduced rate.

7 De-activation of the alarm system can only be made by unlocking either of the front doors with the key. This also applies when the alarm has been triggered. If the bootlid/tailgate is opened before one of the front doors is unlocked, the alarm will be tripped, and can only be stopped by unlocking one of the front doors.

8 Any malfunctions in the system will be indicated by the action of the control light as soon as the ignition is switched on. When the system is in good order, the control light will come on for five seconds; where a system fault exists, the light will stay on for twenty seconds.

9 As well as the above-mentioned features, models fitted with central locking incorporate a double locking system, whereby the inner door handles are also locked. This system is activated by turning the door key fully to the rear (unlocked) position, then to the front (locked) position within a period of four seconds. A sound buzzer indicates that the vehicle is double-locked. When this system is in operation, it can only be de-activated using the door key to unlock one of the front doors. In the event of the battery going flat or an electrical fault in the system developing whilst the system is activated, the doors can still be unlocked in the normal manner using the key.

10 The bootlid/tailgate remote release fitted to the centre console is only active when the ignition is switched off and double locking is not engaged.

11 Any malfunctions in this system are indicated by the control light in the clock in the same manner as that described for the conventional anti-theft alarm system (paragraph 8).

12 In the event of a fault in the system being indicated, first check that all doors, the bonnet and the bootlid/tailgate are fully closed. If the system switches are checked, ensure that their wiring connections are good and secure, also that the switch plungers are clean and are able to move freely.

Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS)

13 From 1994 model year onwards, a Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) is fitted. This system, (which works independently of the standard alarm system) is a vehicle immobiliser which prevents the engine from being started unless a specific code, programmed into the ignition key, is recognised by the PATS transceiver.

14 The PATS transceiver, fitted around the ignition switch, decodes a signal from the ignition key as the key is turned from position "O" to position "II". If the coded signal matches that stored in the memory of the PATS module, the engine will start. If the signal is not recognised, the engine will crank on the starter but will not fire.

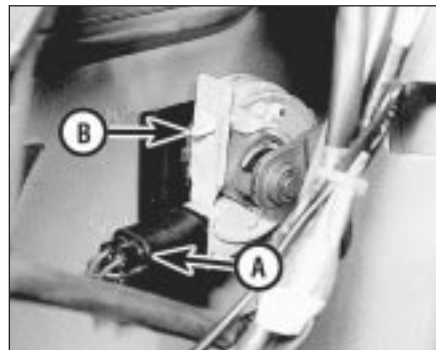
15 The PATS status is indicated by the LED control light in the clock as used for the anti-theft alarm system.

26 Anti-theft system components - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Before disconnecting any components of the anti-theft alarm system, first check that the system is de-activated, then disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).



26.3 Door lock switch wiring connector (A) and retaining catch (B)

Door lock switch

2 Remove the trim panel and the insulation sheet from the door, as described in Chapter 11.

3 Detach the wiring multi-plug connector from the alarm switch in the door (see illustration).

4 Release the snap-lock catch, withdraw the switch from the door lock cylinder, and remove it from the door.

Door lock ajar switch

5 Remove the trim panel and the insulation sheet from the door, as described in Chapter 11.

6 Detach the wiring multi-plug from the door lock ajar switch.

7 Remove the door lock as described in Chapter 11.

8 Release the retaining clip, and detach the door ajar switch from the door lock. It is probable that the retaining clip will break when releasing the switch, in which case it will need to be renewed.

Bootlid/tailgate ajar switch

9 Undo the retaining screws, and remove the trim panel from the bootlid or tailgate (as applicable).

10 Detach the wiring loom multi-plug, then referring to Chapter 11 for details, remove the lock from the bootlid/tailgate.

11 Release the retaining clip and detach the ajar switch from the lock unit. It is probable that the retaining clip will break when releasing the switch, in which case it will need to be renewed.

Bonnet alarm switch

12 Grip the switch flange, and pull the switch up and clear of its aperture in the front cross-panel (see illustration).

13 Disconnect the wiring connector and remove the switch.

Alarm horn

14 Where the vehicle is fitted with ABS, detach and remove the ABS module as described in Chapter 9.

15 Detach the wiring from the horn, undo the horn bracket retaining bolts, and remove the



26.12 Bonnet alarm switch removal (anti-theft alarm system)



26.15 Alarm system horn

horn together with its retaining bracket (see illustration).

Alarm system module

16 Detach and remove the cowl side trim kick panel.

17 Detach the wiring multi-plug from the module, then release the module from the four retaining clips and remove it.

PATS transceiver

18 Undo the two upper and four lower retaining screws, and remove the steering column upper and lower shrouds.

19 Undo the five screws and withdraw the detachable lower facia panel from beneath the steering column.

20 Undo the single screw, and withdraw the PATS transceiver from the ignition switch/steering lock barrel (see illustration).

21 Release the wiring harness from the clips on the steering column, trace the harness under the facia, and disconnect the wiring multi-plug. Remove the transceiver from the car.

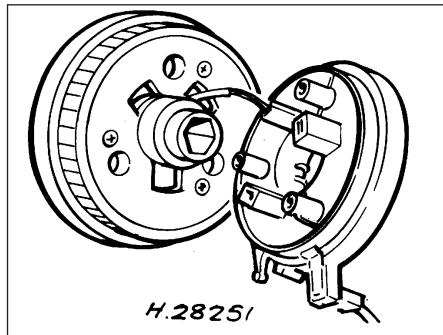
PATS module

22 Refer to Chapter 11 and remove the facia.
23 Disconnect the wiring multi-plug from the PATS module, located on the bulkhead on the passenger's side.

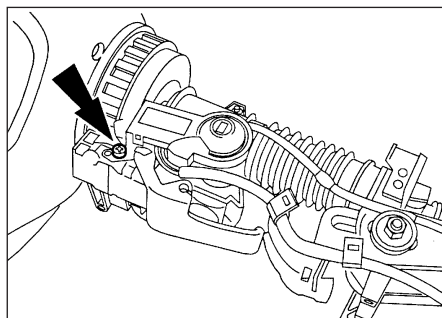
24 Pull the module downwards to remove it from the mounting bracket.

Refitting

18 The refitting of the respective components



29.3 Removing the air bag clock spring assembly from the steering wheel



26.20 Undo the screw (arrowed) and withdraw the PATS transceiver from the ignition switch/steering lock barrel

is a reversal of the removal procedure. Ensure that all component retaining clips are secure, that the wiring looms are correctly routed, and that the wiring connections are secure. Check for satisfactory operation of the systems to complete.

27 Air bag (driver's side) - removal and refitting



Warning: Handle the air bag with extreme care as a precaution against personal injury, and always hold it with the cover facing away from your body. If in doubt concerning any proposed work involving the air bag or its control circuitry, consult a Ford dealer or other qualified specialist.

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).



Warning: Before proceeding, wait a minimum of 15 minutes, as a precaution against accidental firing of the air bag unit. This period ensures that any stored energy in the back-up capacitor is dissipated.

2 Undo the two screws, and remove the steering column upper shroud.

3 Turn the steering wheel as necessary so that one of the air bag retaining bolts becomes accessible from the rear of the steering wheel. Undo the bolt, then turn the steering wheel again until the second bolt is accessible. Undo this bolt also.

4 Withdraw the air bag from the steering wheel far enough to access the wiring multi-plug (see illustration). Some force may be needed to free the unit from the additional steering wheel spoke retainers.

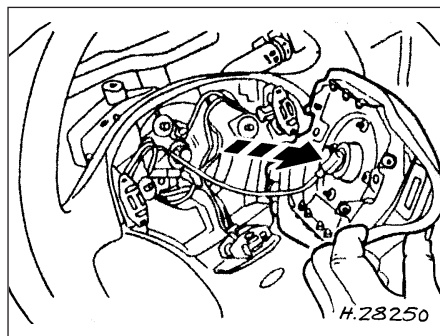
5 Disconnect the multi-plug from the rear of the unit, and remove it from the vehicle.



Warning: Position the air bag in a safe place, with the mechanism facing downwards as a precaution against accidental operation.



Warning: Do not attempt to open or repair the air bag unit, or apply any electrical current to it. Do not use any air bag which is visibly



27.4 Withdrawing the air bag module from the steering wheel

damaged or which has been tampered with.

Refitting

6 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure.

28 Air bag control module - removal and refitting



Removal

1 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).



Warning: Before proceeding, wait a minimum of 15 minutes, as a precaution against accidental firing of the air bag unit. This period ensures that any stored energy in the back-up capacitor is dissipated.

2 Undo the six screws and withdraw the detachable lower facia panel from beneath the steering column.

3 Disconnect the multi-plug from the module, by pressing the locking tab upwards and swivelling the retaining strap.

4 Unscrew the mounting bolts and remove the module from the vehicle.

Refitting

5 Refitting is a reversal of the removal procedure.

29 Air bag clock spring - removal and refitting

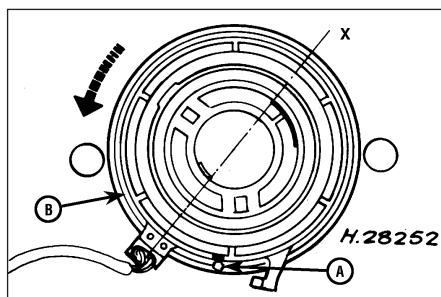


Removal

1 Remove the steering wheel as described in Chapter 10.

2 Disconnect the wires at the two horn terminals in the centre of the steering wheel.

3 Undo the three retaining screws, and remove the clock spring/horn slip ring from the steering wheel (see illustration). As the unit is withdrawn, note which aperture in the steering wheel the air bag wiring passes through, as an aid to reassembly.



29.8 Centring the air bag clock spring. Depress locking pin (A) and rotate outer rotor (B) anti-clockwise ("X" indicates relative position of the direction indicator cancelling cam to the cable connector - see text)

Refitting

4 Apply a smear of molybdenum disulphide grease to the horn slip rings.

5 Position the clock spring/horn slip ring on the steering wheel, and secure with the retaining screws.

6 Reconnect the two horn wires to their terminals.

7 The clock spring must now be centred as follows.

8 Depress the locking pin, and rotate the clock spring outer rotor fully anti-clockwise until it is tight (**see illustration**).

9 Now turn the outer rotor approximately 3.75 turns clockwise, then release the locking pin. Ensure that the locking pin engages when it is released.

10 Check that the relative position of the direction indicator cancelling cam to the cable connector on the clock spring assembly is as shown (**see illustration 29.8**).

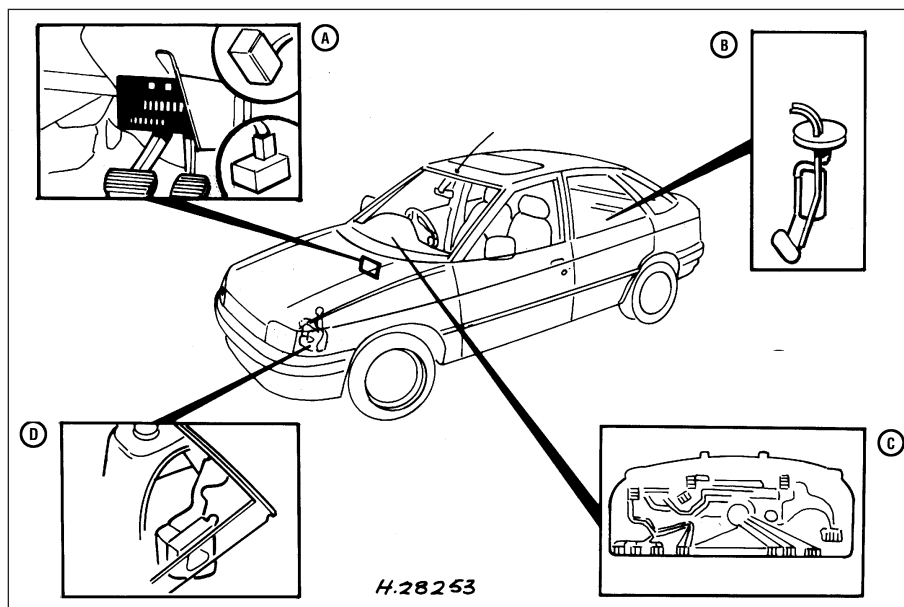
11 Refit the steering wheel as described in Chapter 10.

30 Auxiliary warning system - general information and component renewal



1 An auxiliary warning system is available as an option on certain models (**see illustration**). The system has three functions - low fuel warning, low washer fluid level warning, and an "ignition off, lights on, driver's door open" warning.

2 The low fuel and washer fluid level warnings are provided by warning lights in the instrument panel and the "ignition off, lights



30.1 Auxiliary warning system components

A Control module

B Low fuel level float

C Instrument panel warning lights

D Low washer fluid level switch

on, driver's door open" warning is provided by an audible alarm tone.

3 The warning lights are activated by floats which monitor the fuel and fluid levels. The float for the low fuel level is an integral part of the fuel gauge sender, and activates the warning light when the fuel level in the tank drops to below 10 litres (2.2 gallons). The float for the washer fluid level is contained in the fluid reservoir, and consists of a magnet which operates a reed switch inserted in the side of the reservoir. When the fluid level falls to the level of the reed switch, the magnet on the float activates the switch to illuminate the warning light.

4 The alarm tone for the "ignition off, lights on, driver's door open" warning is activated by the driver's door courtesy light switch if the door is opened with the ignition switched off and the lights left on.

5 The operation of the system is controlled by a control module assembly located under the fascia above the fusebox.

Component renewal

Warning lights

5 The procedure for warning light bulb renewal is contained in Section 6.

Low fuel level float

6 The low fuel level float is part of the fuel gauge sender - removal and refitting procedures are contained in Chapter 4.

Low washer fluid level reed switch

7 Remove the windscreen washer reservoir as described in Section 19.

8 Withdraw the switch from the side of the reservoir by levering against the switch body.

9 Ensure that the sealing grommet is correctly fitted in the reservoir, then push the switch fully into the grommet to refit.

10 Refit the washer reservoir as described in Section 19.

Control module assembly

11 Disconnect the battery negative (earth) lead (refer to Chapter 5, Section 1).

12 Undo the six screws and withdraw the detachable lower facia panel from beneath the steering column.

13 Unclip the control module, and disconnect the multi-plug.

14 Refitting is a reversal of removal.

1. All diagrams are divided into numbered circuits depending on function e.g. Diagram 10 : Typical Interior lighting.
2. Items are arranged in relation to a plan view of the vehicle.
3. Items may appear on more than one diagram so are found using a grid reference e.g. 2/A1 denotes an item on diagram 2 grid location A1.
4. Complex items appear on the diagrams as blocks and are expanded on the internal connections page.
5. Feed wires are coloured red (black when switched) and all earth wires are coloured brown.
6. Brackets show how the circuit may be connected in more than one way.
7. Not all items are fitted to all models.

CENTRAL ELECTRIC BOX

FUSE	RATING	CIRCUIT
1	30A	Heated Rear Window And Electric Mirrors
2	30A	Anti-lock Braking System
3	10A	Lambda Sensor
4	15A	Main Beam RH
5	20A	Fuel Pump
6	10A	Side Light LH, Instrument Illumination
7	10A	Side Light RH
8	10A	Foglight Rear
9	30A	Cooling Fan
10	10A	Dip Beam LH
11	15A	Foglight Front
12	10A	Direction Indicator, Reversing Lights
13	20A	Wiper Motor, Washer Pump
14	20A	Heater Blower
15	30A	Anti-lock Braking System
16	3A	Windscreen De-ice
17	3A	Windscreen De-ice Relay
18	15A	Main Beam LH
19	20A	Central Door Locking/Anti-theft Alarm
20	15A	Horn, Hazard Flashers
21	15A	Interior Lights, Cigar Lighter, Radio, Clock
22	30A	Electric Windows
24	10A	Dip Beam RH
25	3A	EEC IV Module
27	10A	Stop Lights, Heated Washer Jets

KEY TO SYMBOLS

PLUG-IN CONNECTOR	
EARTH	
BULB	
DIODE	
FUSE	
SOLDERED JOINT	

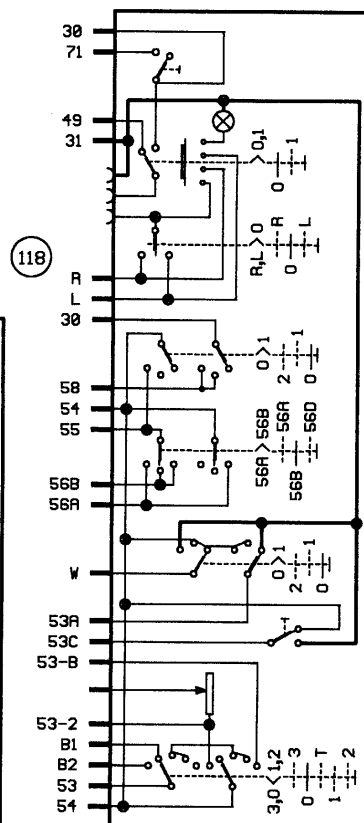
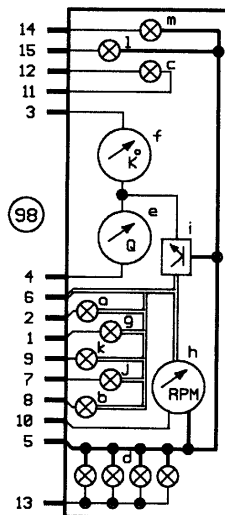
MAXI-FUSEBOX

FUSE	RATING	CIRCUIT
A	80A	Central Electric Box
B	60A	Central Electric Box
C	60A	Central Electric Box
D	50A	Cooling Fan Motor
E	50A	Heated Windscreen
F	50A	Glow Plug Relay (Diesel)

INTERNAL CONNECTION DETAILS

a = Alternator Warning Light
 b = Handbrake Warning Light
 c = Main Beam Warning Light
 d = Instrument Illumination
 e = Fuel Gauge
 f = Temperature Gauge
 g = Oil Pressure Light
 h = Tachometer
 i = Voltage Stabilizer
 j = ABS Warning Light
 k = Choke Warning Light
 l = Flasher Warning Light LH
 m = Flasher Warning Light RH

KEY TO INSTRUMENT CLUSTER
(ITEM 98)



H24988

T.M.MARKE

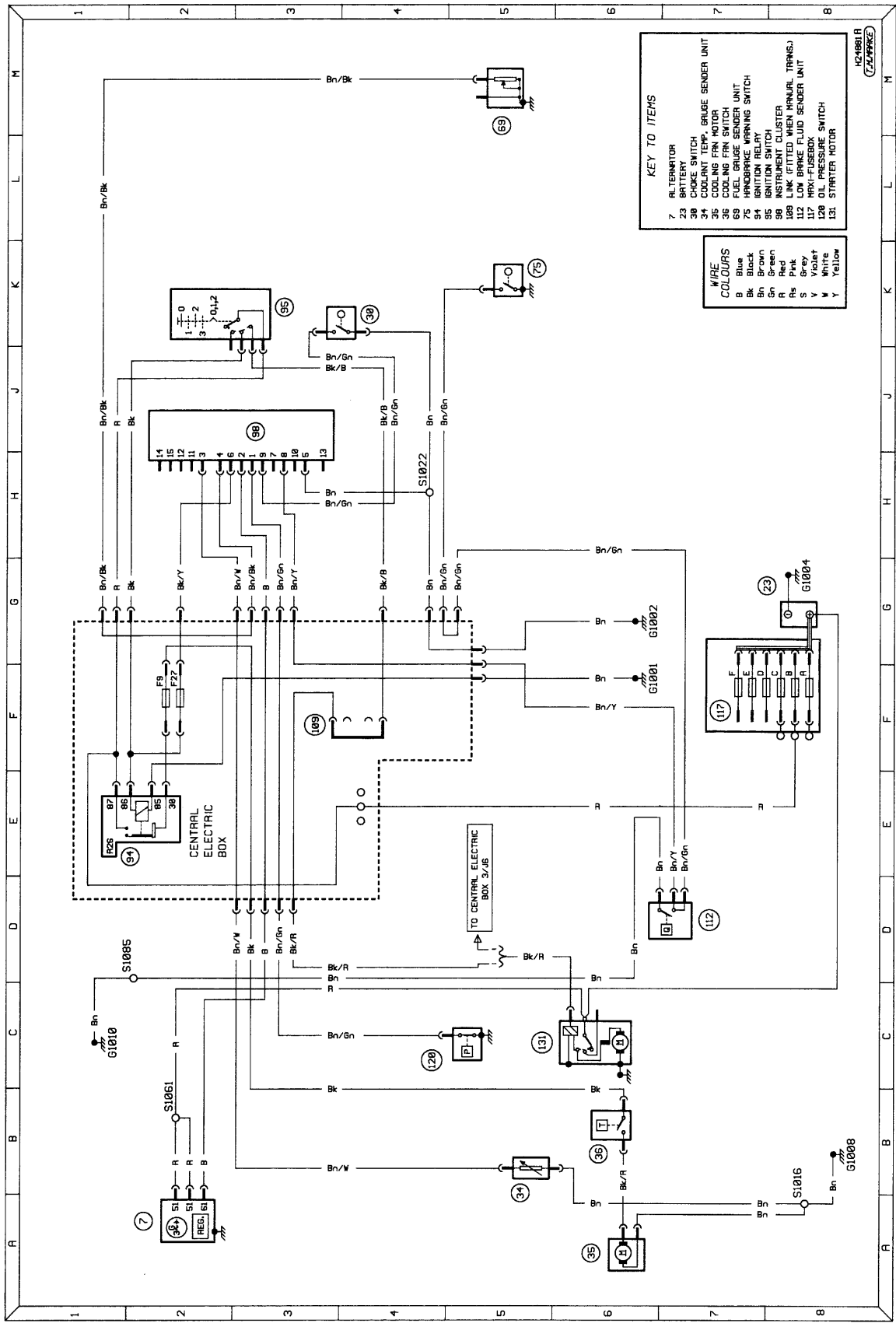


Diagram 1: Typical starting, charging, cooling fan, gauges and warning lights

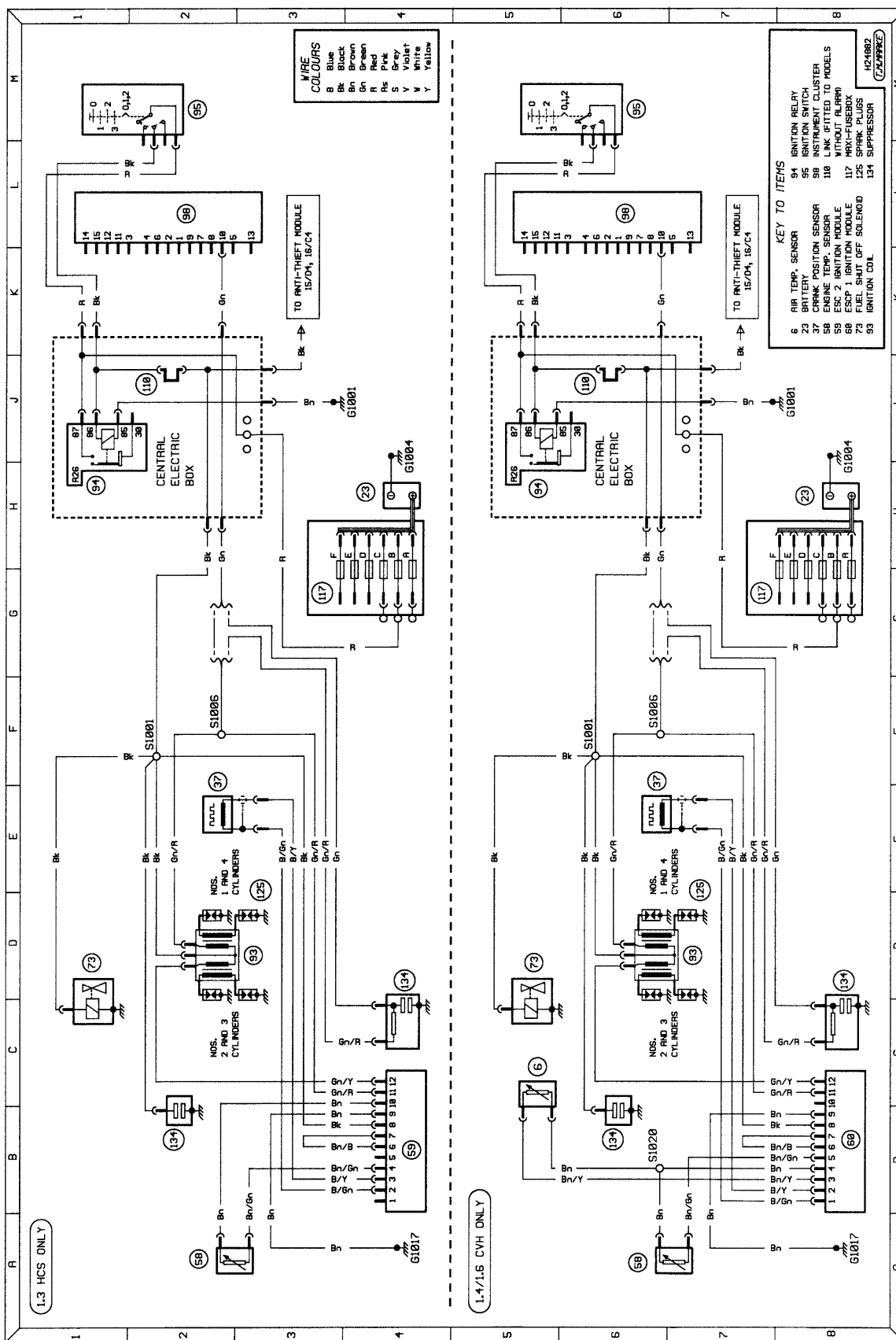


Diagram 2: Typical ignition variation - all carburettor-engined models (manual gearbox)

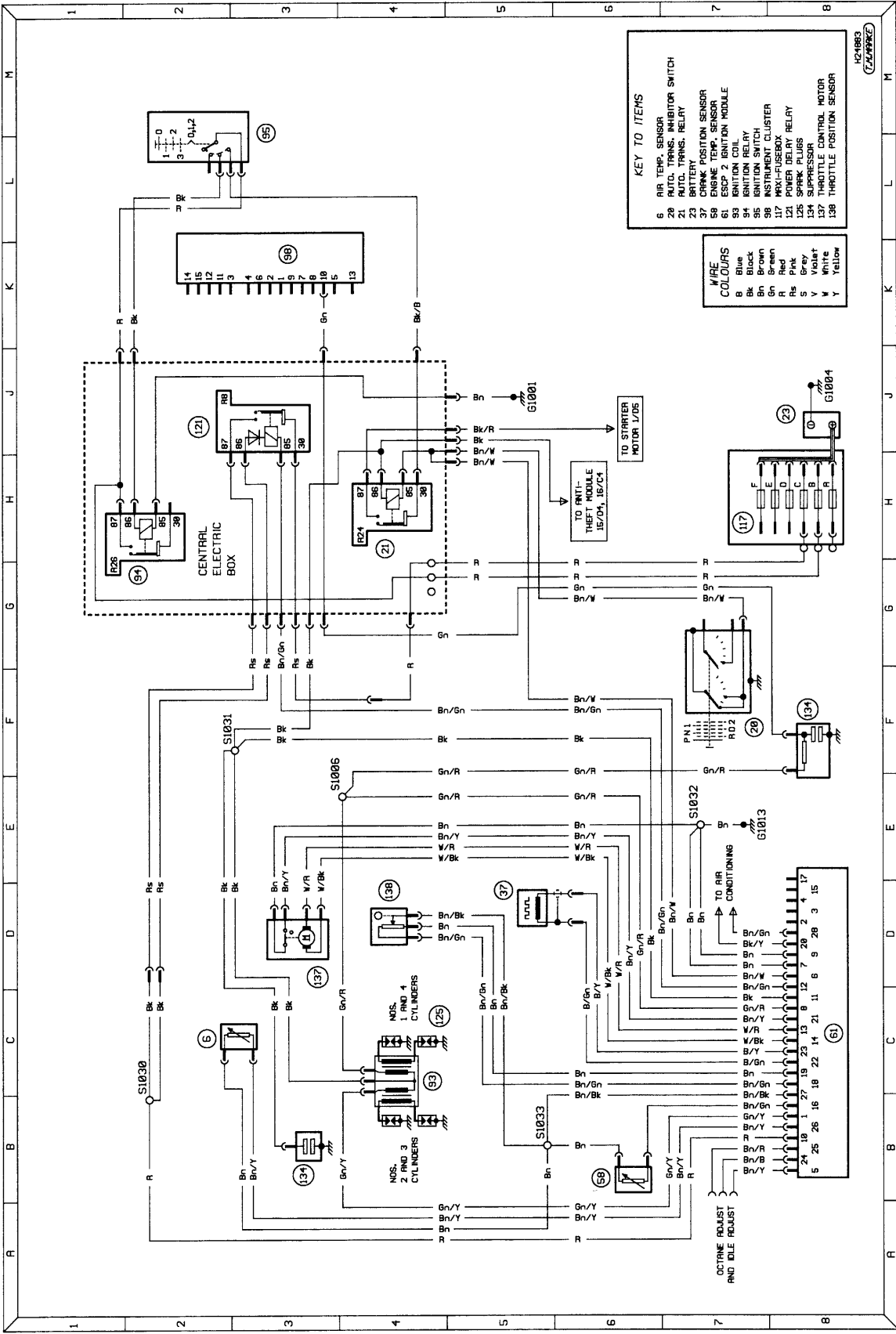


Diagram 3: Typical ignition variation - 1.6 CVH-engined model (automatic transmission)

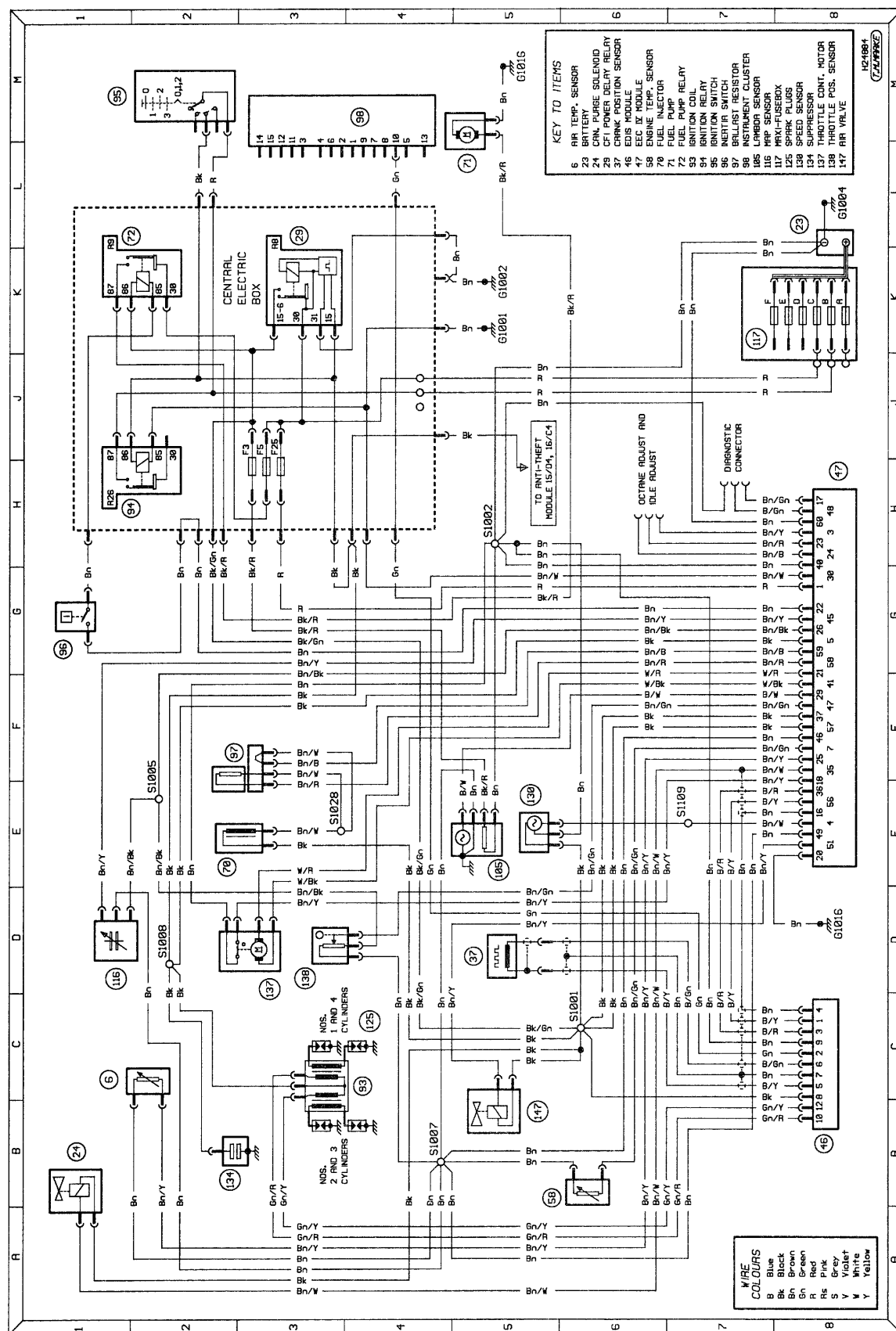


Diagram 4: Typical 1.3 CFI fuel injection and ignition

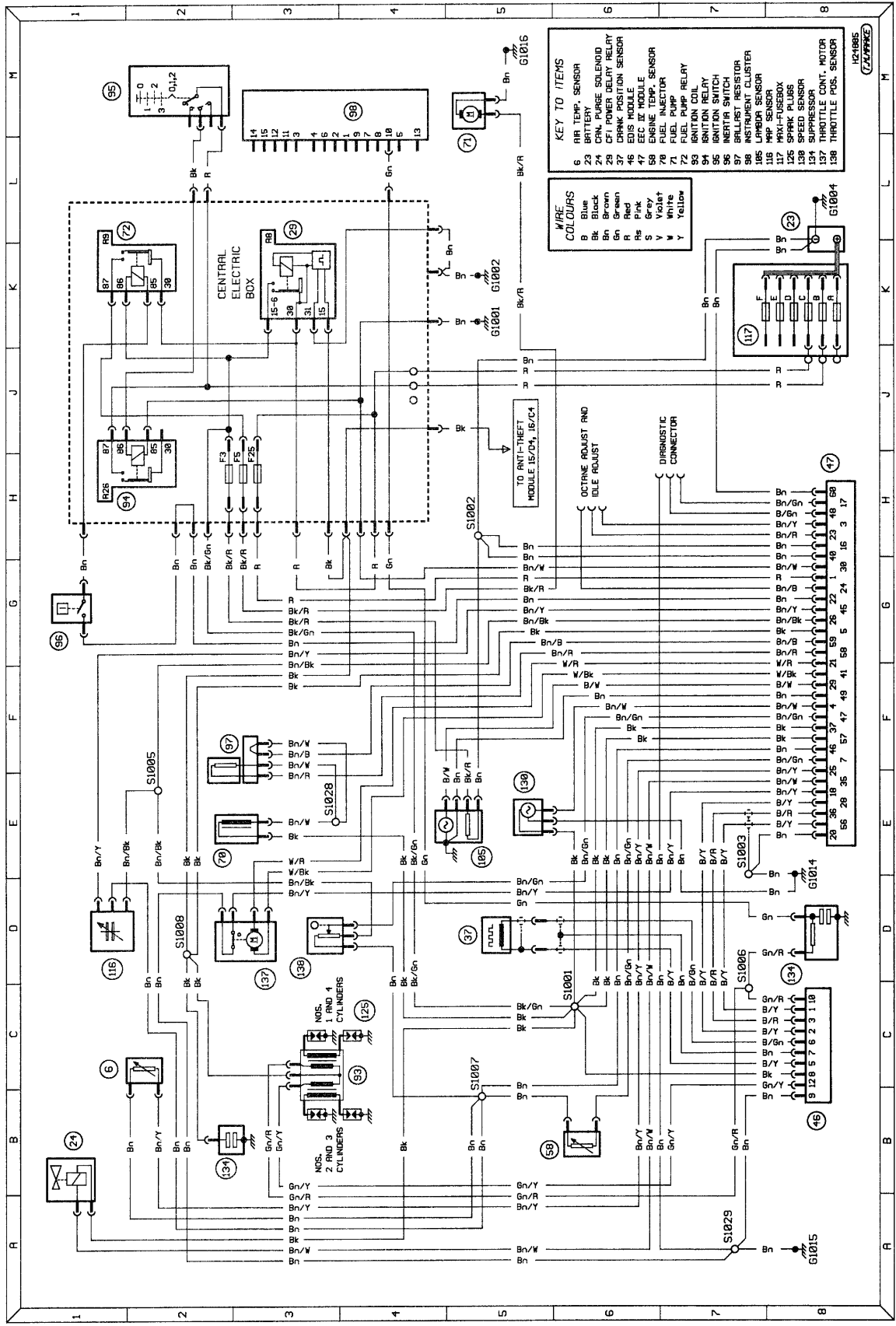


Diagram 5: Typical 1.4 CFI fuel injection and ignition

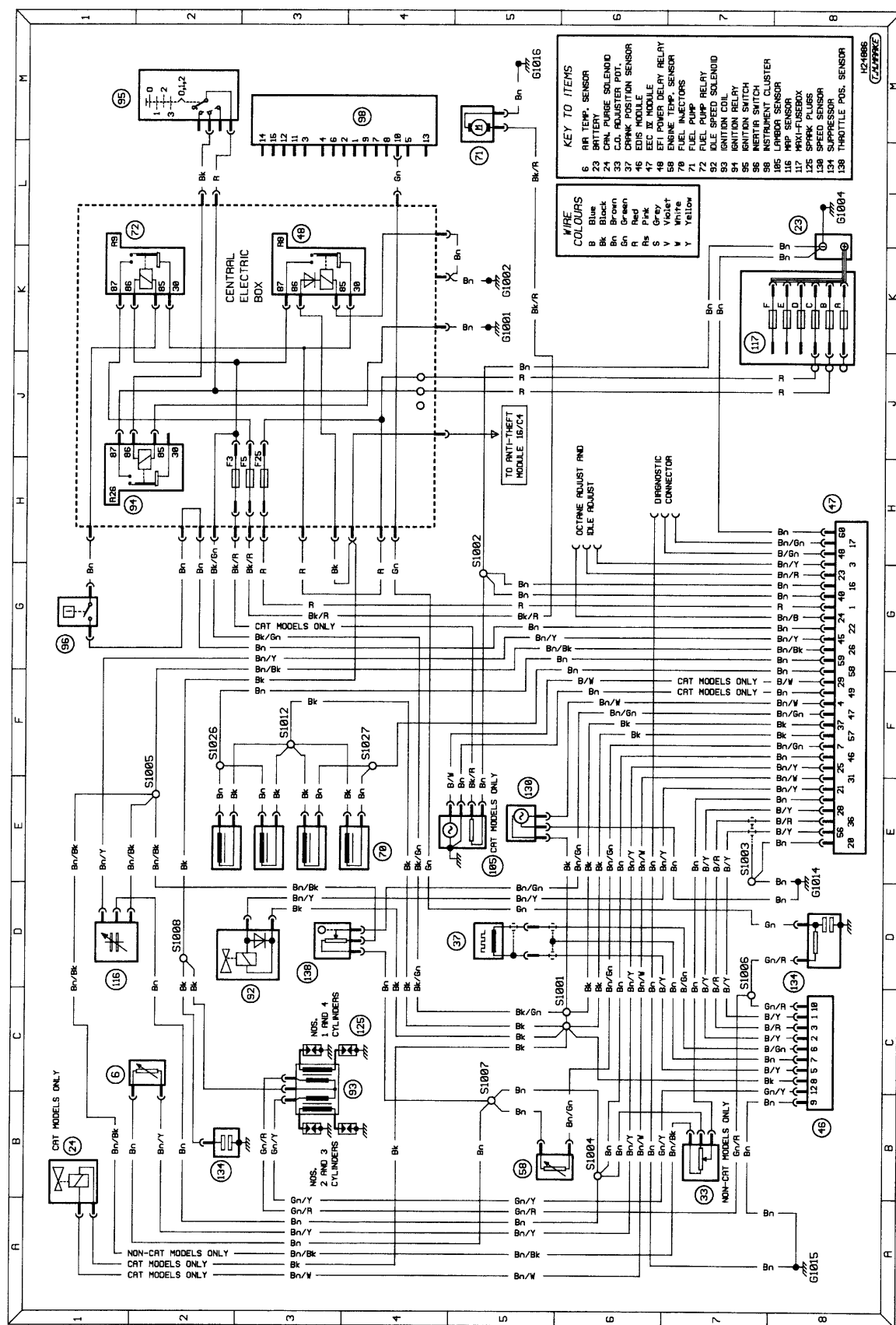


Diagram 6: Typical 1.6 CVH EFI fuel injection and ignition

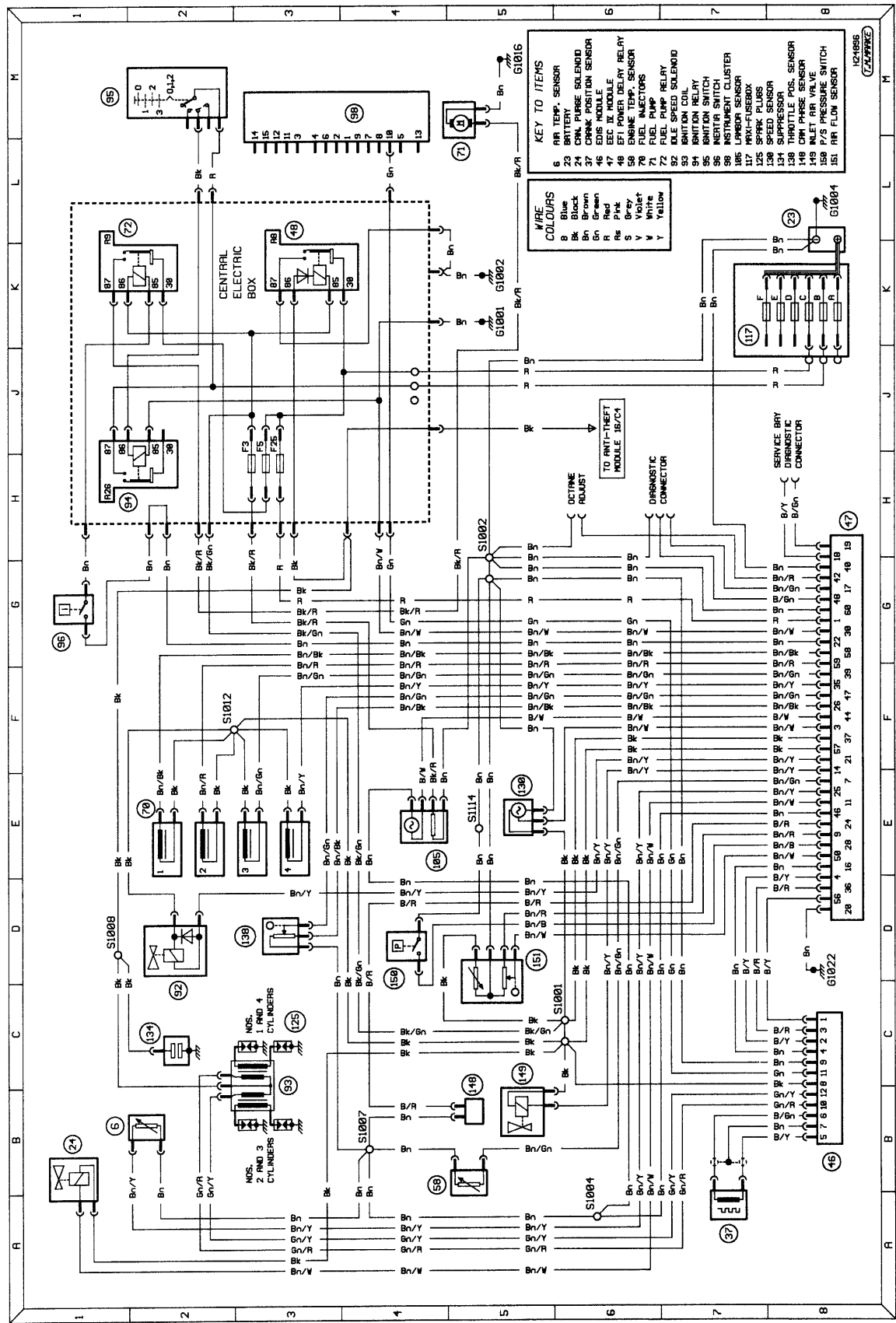


Diagram 7: Typical 1.6/1.8 Zetec engine fuel injection and ignition

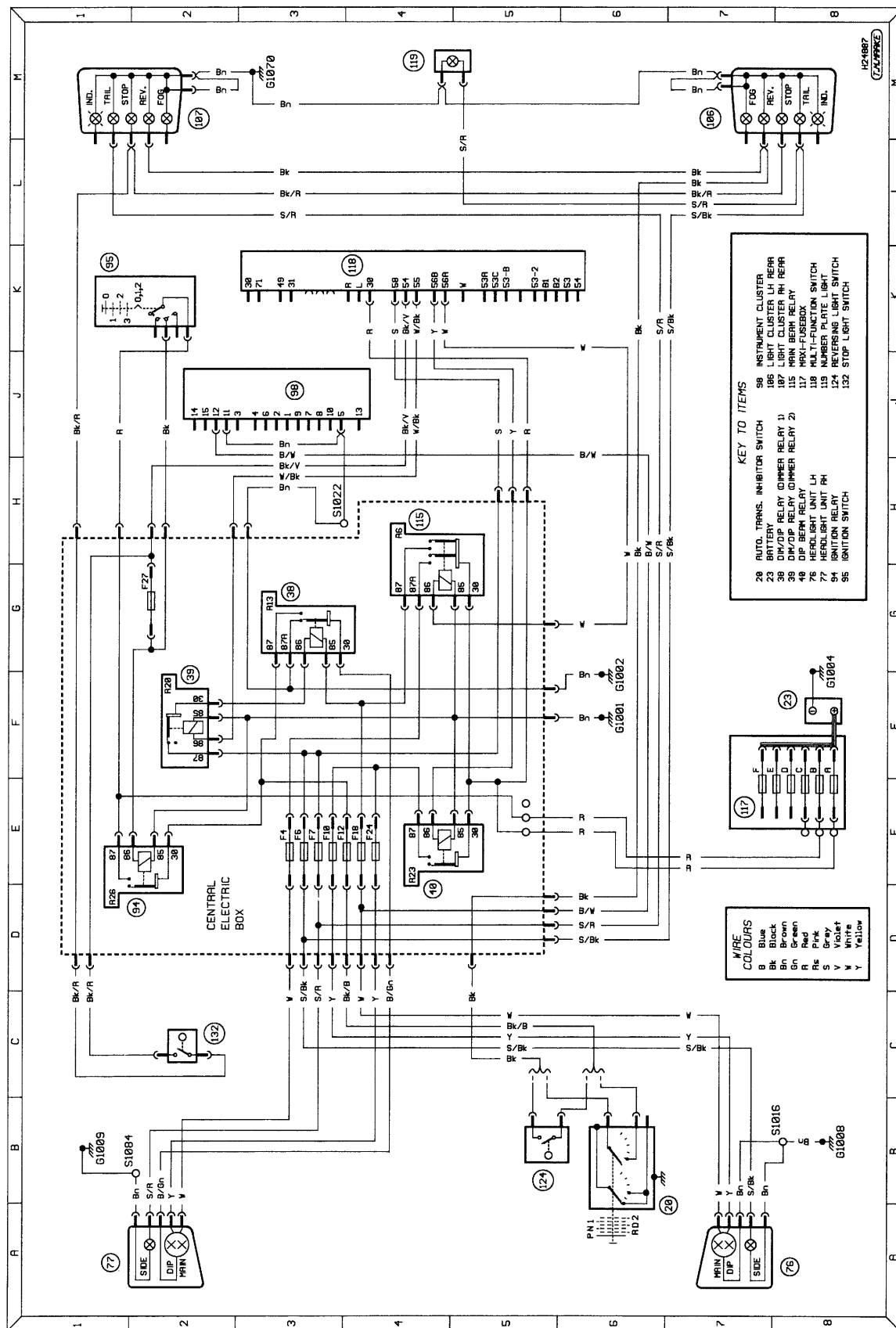


Diagram 8: Typical exterior lighting - head/side, stop and reversing lights (all models)

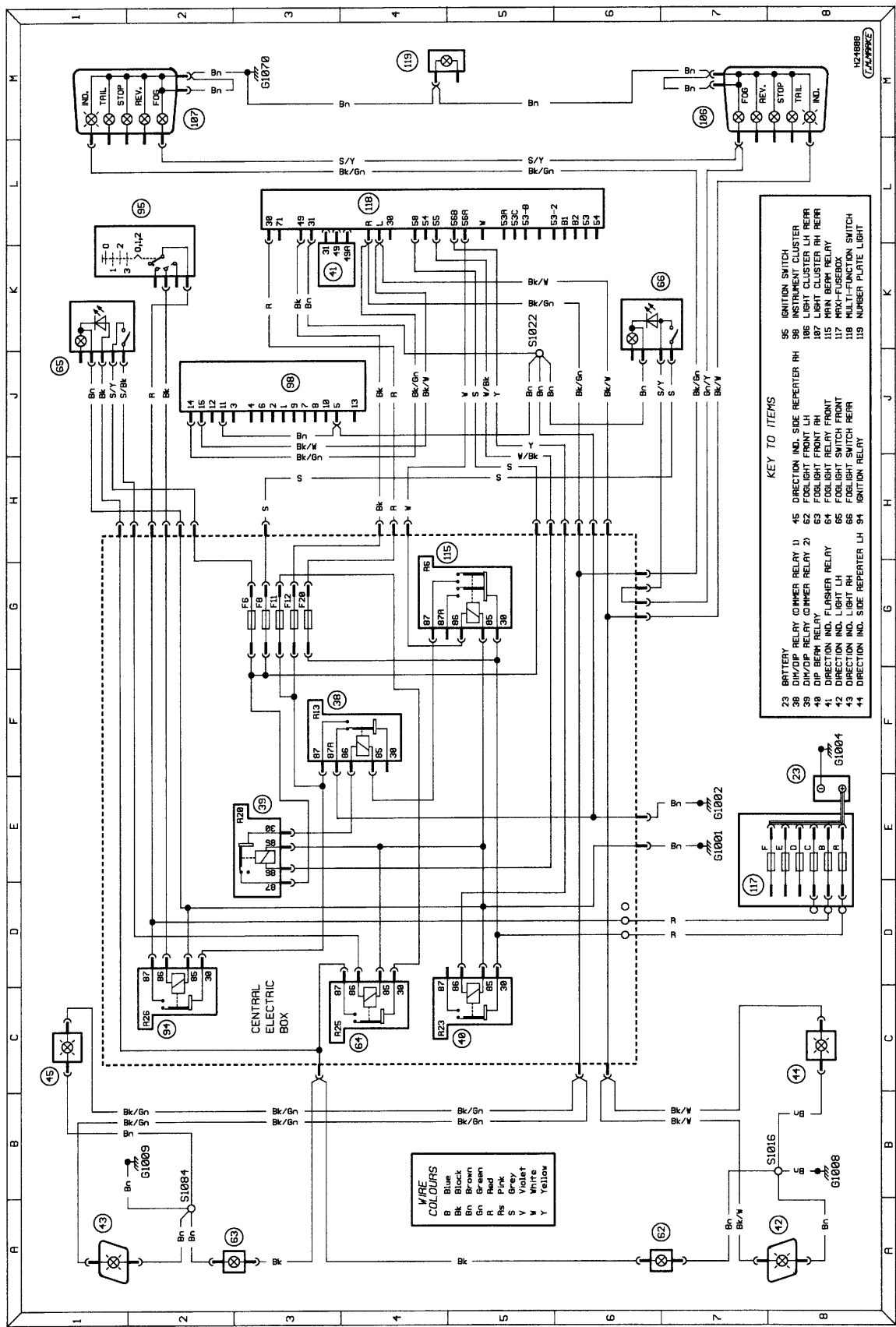
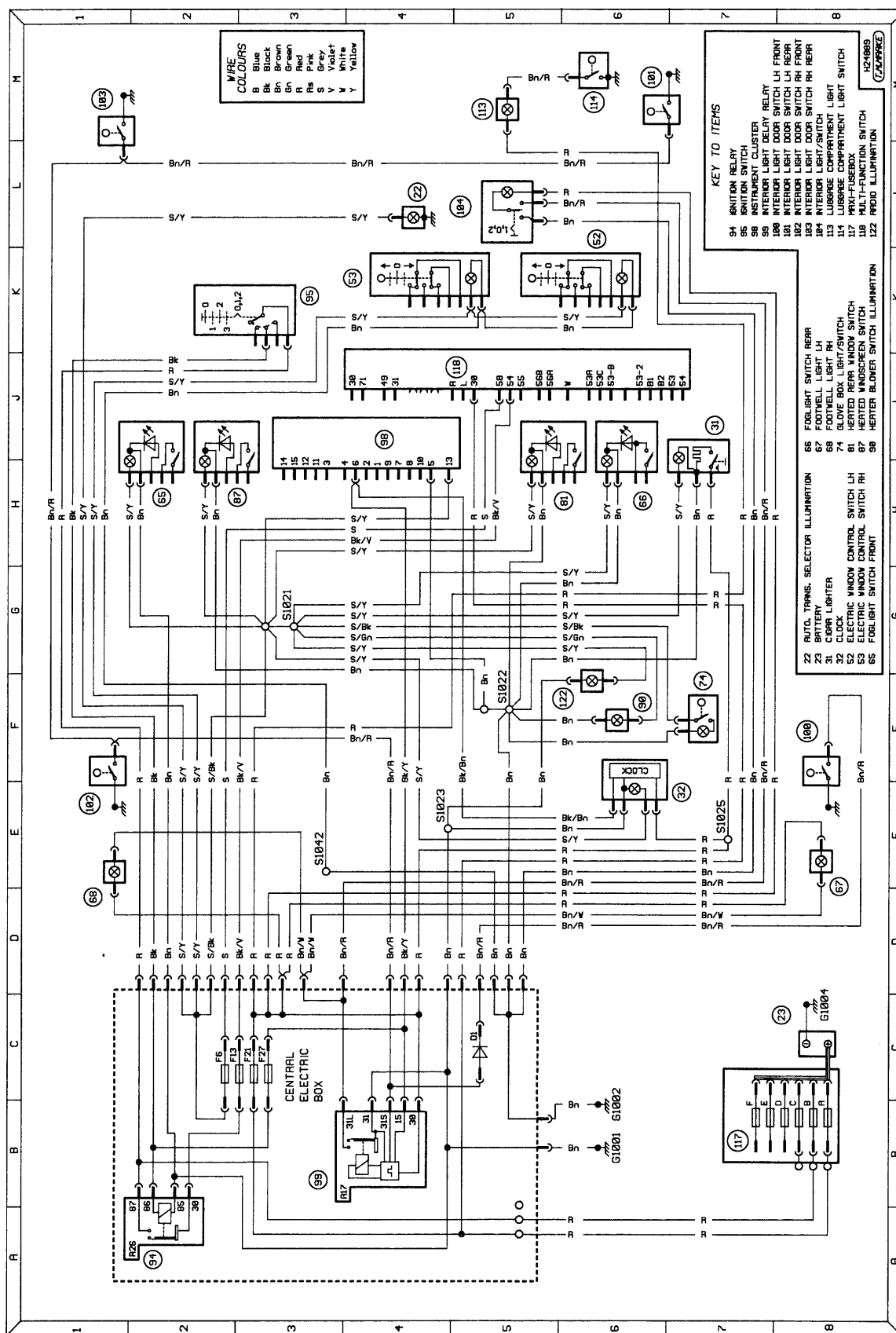


Diagram 9: Typical exterior lighting - fog and direction indicator lights (all models)



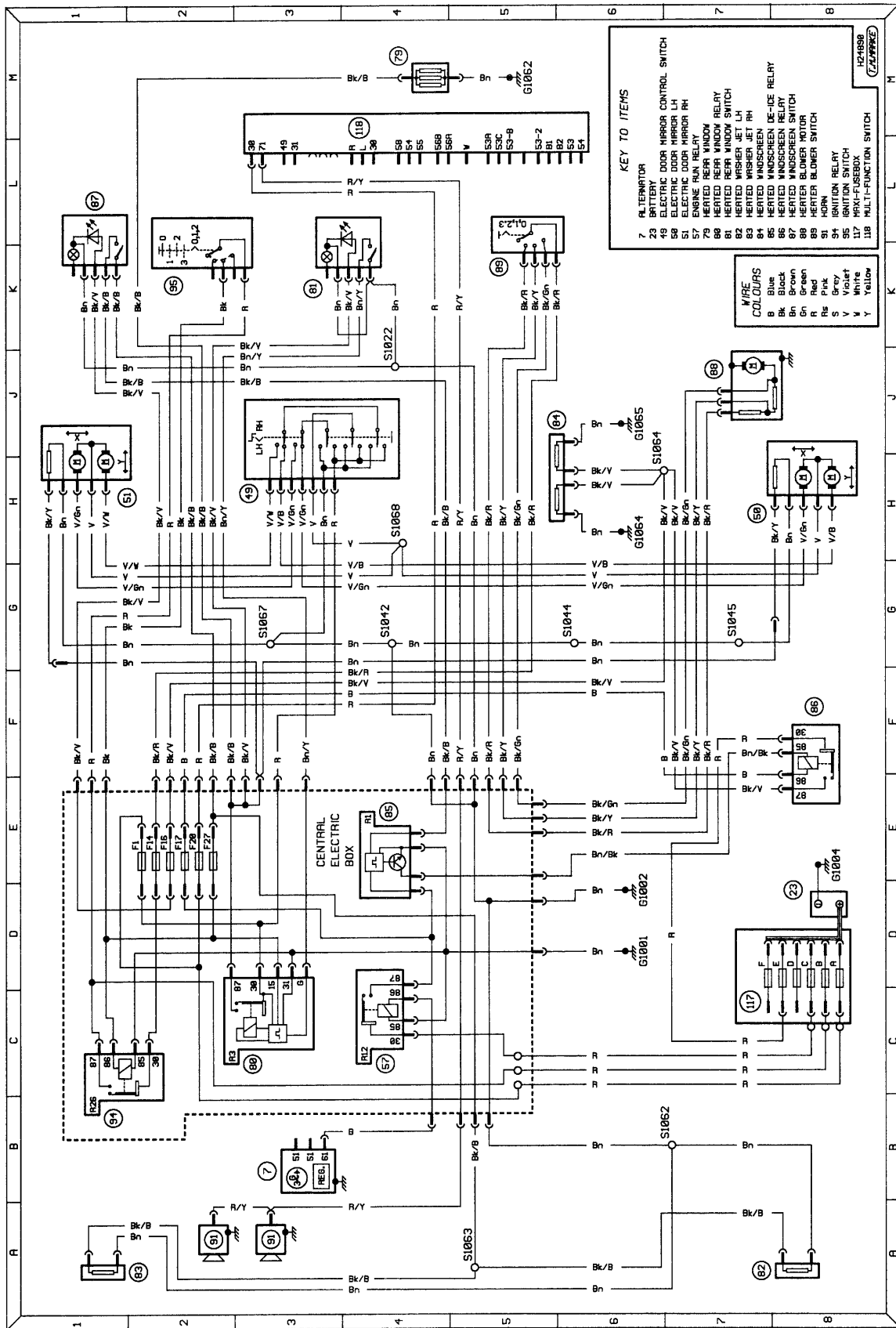


Diagram 11: Typical horn, heater blower, heated mirrors and screens

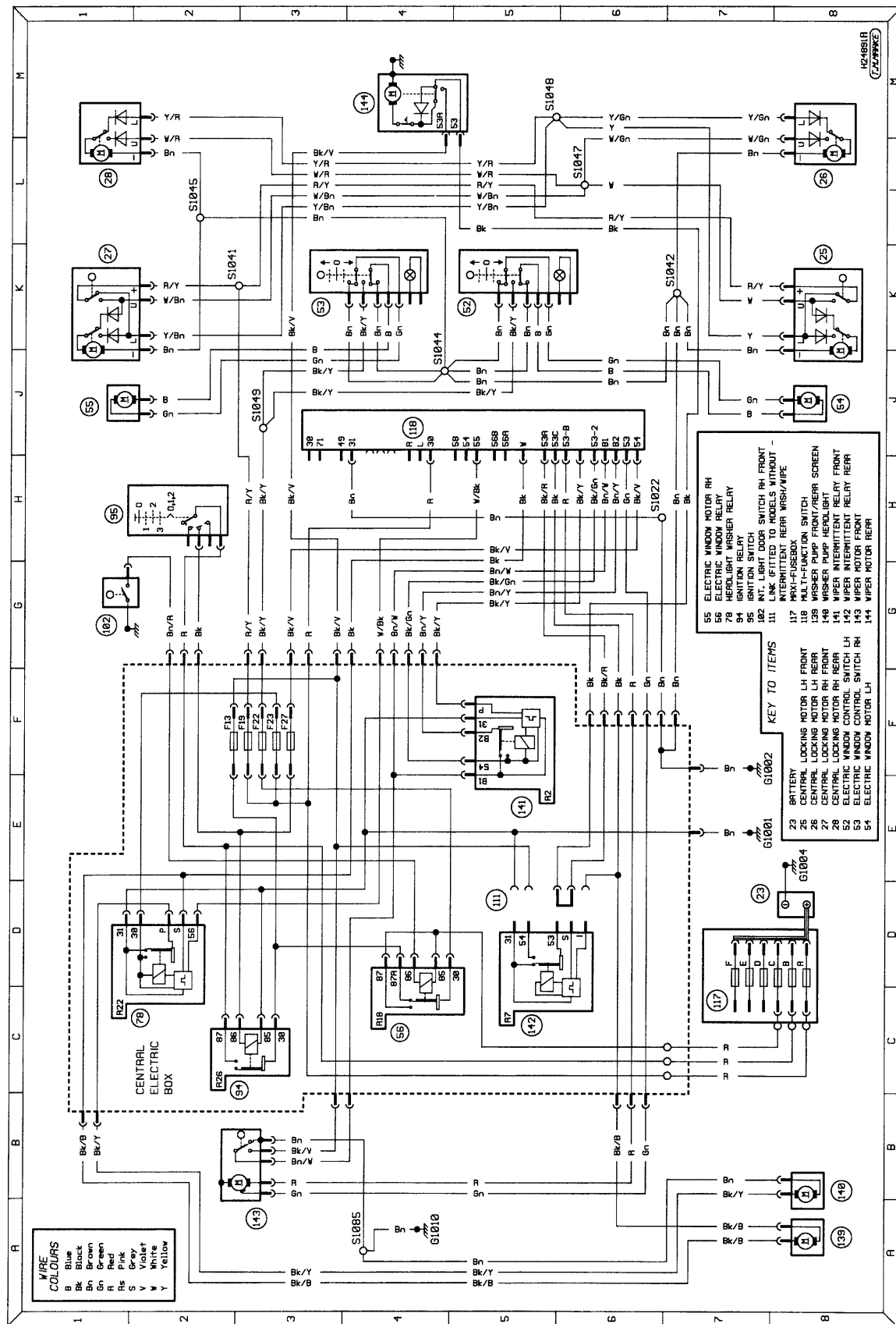


Diagram 12: Typical wash/wipe, central locking and electric windows

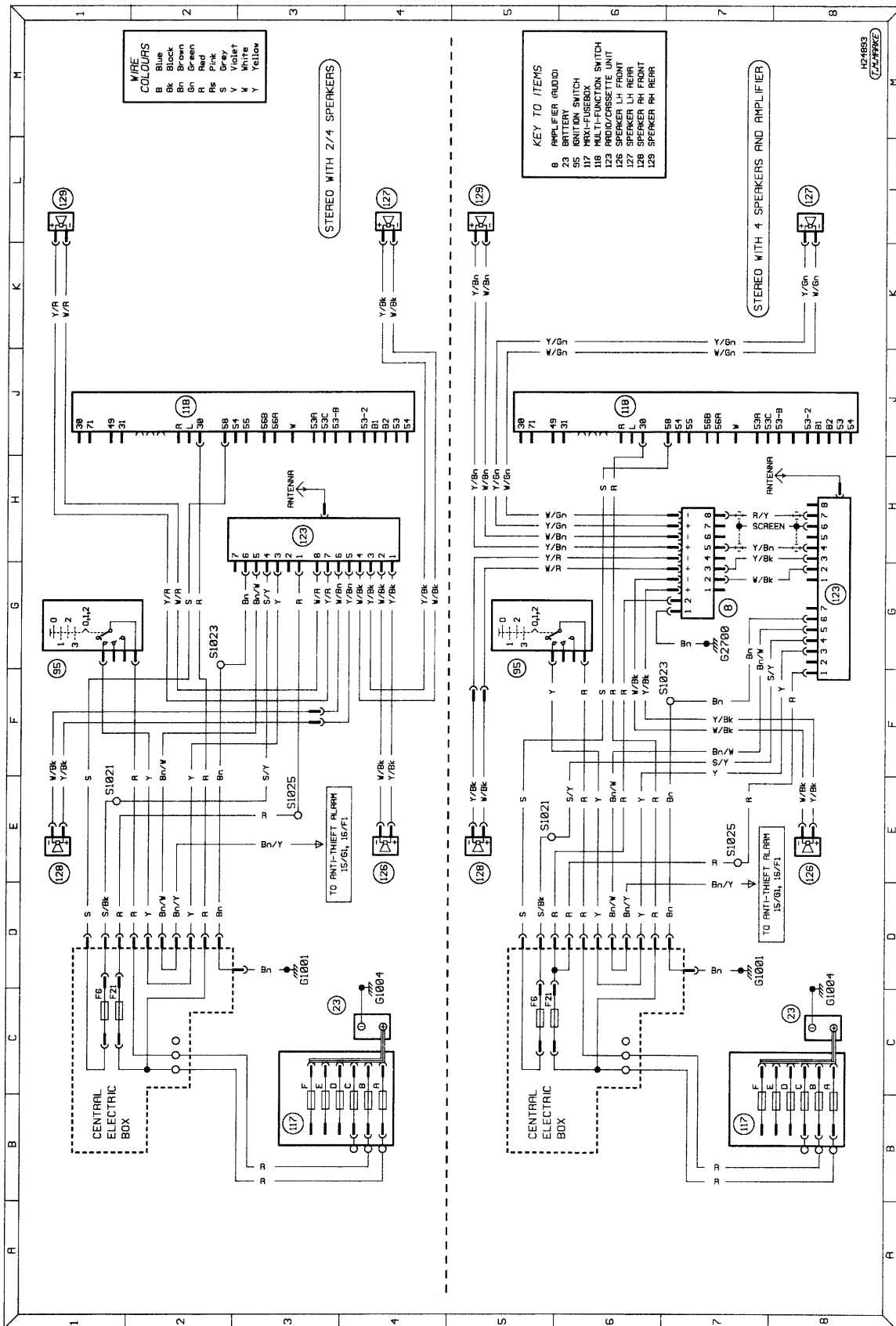


Diagram 13: Typical in-car entertainment

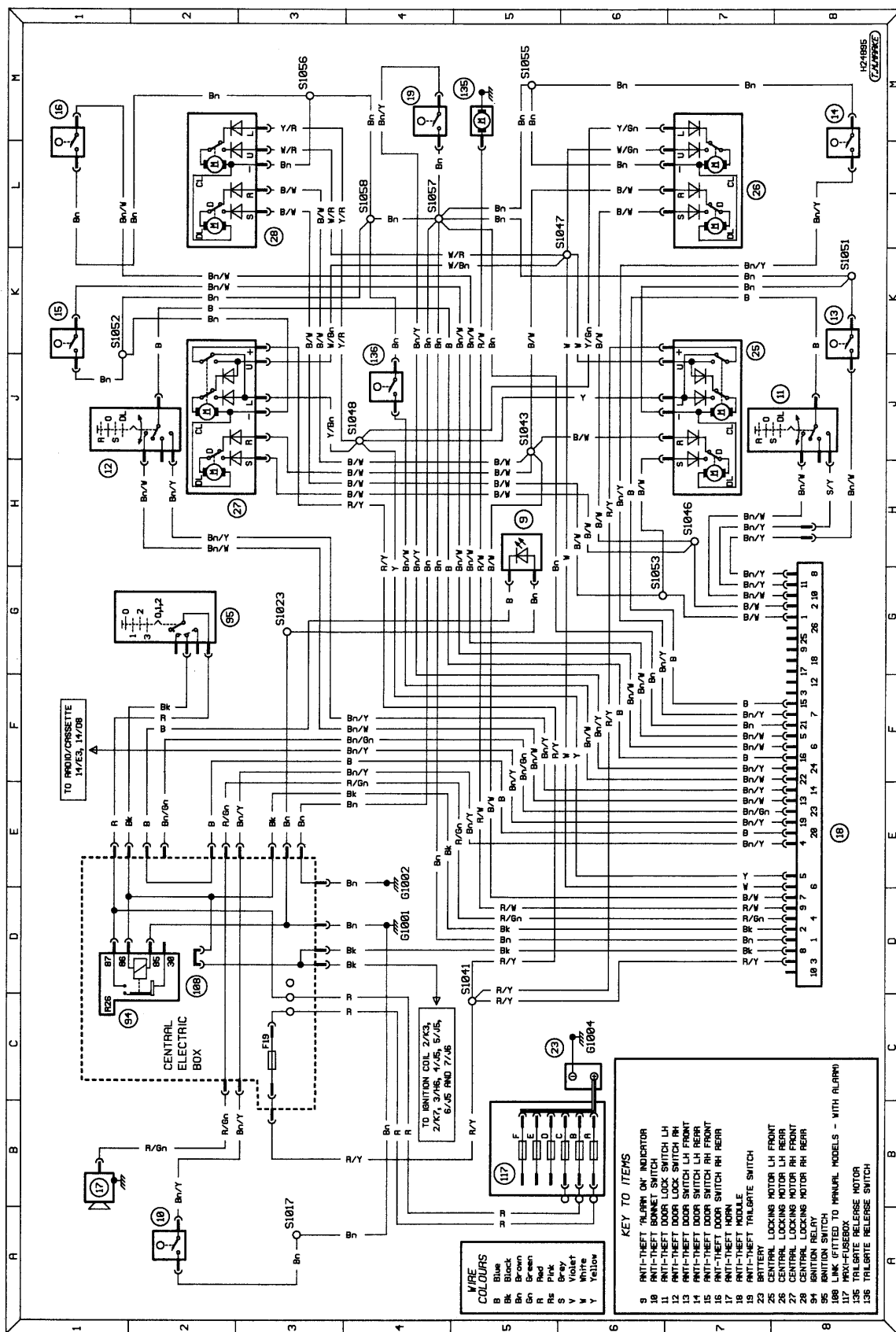


Diagram 14: Typical anti-theft alarm

This is a guide to getting your vehicle through the MOT test. Obviously it will not be possible to examine the vehicle to the same standard as the professional MOT tester. However, working through the following checks will enable you to identify any problem areas before submitting the vehicle for the test.

Where a testable component is in borderline condition, the tester has discretion in deciding whether to pass or fail it. The basis of such discretion is whether the tester would be happy for a close relative or friend to use the vehicle with the component in that condition. If the vehicle presented is clean and evidently well cared for, the tester may be more inclined to pass a borderline component than if the vehicle is scruffy and apparently neglected.

It has only been possible to summarise the test requirements here, based on the regulations in force at the time of printing. Test standards are becoming increasingly stringent, although there are some exemptions for older vehicles. For full details obtain a copy of the Haynes publication *Pass the MOT!* (available from stockists of Haynes manuals).

An assistant will be needed to help carry out some of these checks.



The checks have been sub-divided into four categories, as follows:

1 Checks carried out FROM THE DRIVER'S SEAT

2 Checks carried out WITH THE VEHICLE ON THE GROUND

3 Checks carried out WITH THE VEHICLE RAISED AND THE WHEELS FREE TO TURN

4 Checks carried out on YOUR VEHICLE'S EXHAUST EMISSION SYSTEM

1 Checks carried out FROM THE DRIVER'S SEAT

Handbrake

- ☐ Test the operation of the handbrake. Excessive travel (too many clicks) indicates incorrect brake or cable adjustment.
- ☐ Check that the handbrake cannot be released by tapping the lever sideways. Check the security of the lever mountings.



Footbrake

- ☐ Depress the brake pedal and check that it does not creep down to the floor, indicating a master cylinder fault. Release the pedal, wait a few seconds, then depress it again. If the pedal travels nearly to the floor before firm resistance is felt, brake adjustment or repair is necessary. If the pedal feels spongy, there is air in the hydraulic system which must be removed by bleeding.



- ☐ Check that the brake pedal is secure and in good condition. Check also for signs of fluid leaks on the pedal, floor or carpets, which would indicate failed seals in the brake master cylinder.
- ☐ Check the servo unit (when applicable) by operating the brake pedal several times, then keeping the pedal depressed and starting the engine. As the engine starts, the pedal will move down slightly. If not, the vacuum hose or the servo itself may be faulty.

Steering wheel and column

- ☐ Examine the steering wheel for fractures or looseness of the hub, spokes or rim.
- ☐ Move the steering wheel from side to side and then up and down. Check that the steering wheel is not loose on the column, indicating wear or a loose retaining nut. Continue moving the steering wheel as before, but also turn it slightly from left to right.
- ☐ Check that the steering wheel is not loose on the column, and that there is no abnormal



movement of the steering wheel, indicating wear in the column support bearings or couplings.

Windscreen and mirrors

- ☐ The windscreen must be free of cracks or other significant damage within the driver's field of view. (Small stone chips are acceptable.) Rear view mirrors must be secure, intact, and capable of being adjusted.





Seat belts and seats

Note: The following checks are applicable to all seat belts, front and rear.

- ☐ Examine the webbing of all the belts (including rear belts if fitted) for cuts, serious fraying or deterioration. Fasten and unfasten each belt to check the buckles. If applicable, check the retracting mechanism. Check the security of all seat belt mountings accessible from inside the vehicle.
- ☐ The front seats themselves must be securely attached and the backrests must lock in the upright position.

Doors

- ☐ Both front doors must be able to be opened and closed from outside and inside, and must latch securely when closed.

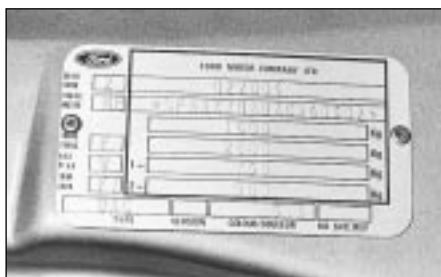
2 Checks carried out WITH THE VEHICLE ON THE GROUND

Vehicle identification

- ☐ Number plates must be in good condition, secure and legible, with letters and numbers correctly spaced – spacing at (A) should be twice that at (B).



- ☐ The VIN plate and/or homologation plate must be legible.



Electrical equipment

- ☐ Switch on the ignition and check the operation of the horn.
- ☐ Check the windscreen washers and wipers, examining the wiper blades; renew damaged or perished blades. Also check the operation of the stop-lights.



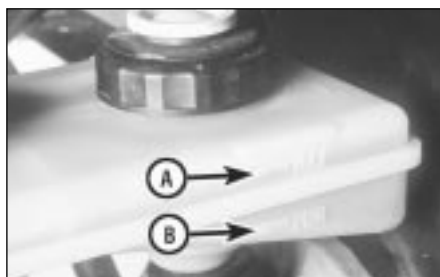
- ☐ Check the operation of the sidelights and number plate lights. The lenses and reflectors must be secure, clean and undamaged.
- ☐ Check the operation and alignment of the headlights. The headlight reflectors must not be tarnished and the lenses must be undamaged.
- ☐ Switch on the ignition and check the operation of the direction indicators (including the instrument panel tell-tale) and the hazard warning lights. Operation of the sidelights and stop-lights must not affect the indicators - if it does, the cause is usually a bad earth at the rear light cluster.
- ☐ Check the operation of the rear foglight(s), including the warning light on the instrument panel or in the switch.

Footbrake

- ☐ Examine the master cylinder, brake pipes and servo unit for leaks, loose mountings, corrosion or other damage.



- ☐ The fluid reservoir must be secure and the fluid level must be between the upper (A) and lower (B) markings.



- ☐ Inspect both front brake flexible hoses for cracks or deterioration of the rubber. Turn the steering from lock to lock, and ensure that the hoses do not contact the wheel, tyre, or any part of the steering or suspension mechanism. With the brake pedal firmly depressed, check the hoses for bulges or leaks under pressure.



Steering and suspension

- ☐ Have your assistant turn the steering wheel from side to side slightly, up to the point where the steering gear just begins to transmit this movement to the roadwheels. Check for excessive free play between the steering wheel and the steering gear, indicating wear or insecurity of the steering column joints, the column-to-steering gear coupling, or the steering gear itself.
- ☐ Have your assistant turn the steering wheel more vigorously in each direction, so that the roadwheels just begin to turn. As this is done, examine all the steering joints, linkages, fittings and attachments. Renew any component that shows signs of wear or damage. On vehicles with power steering, check the security and condition of the steering pump, drivebelt and hoses.
- ☐ Check that the vehicle is standing level, and at approximately the correct ride height.

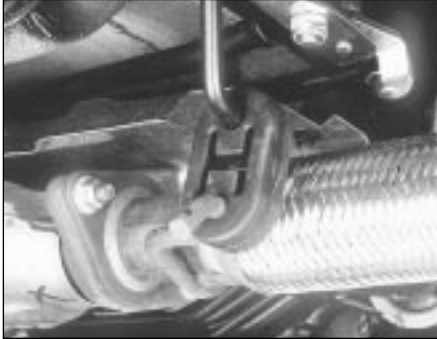
Shock absorbers

- ☐ Depress each corner of the vehicle in turn, then release it. The vehicle should rise and then settle in its normal position. If the vehicle continues to rise and fall, the shock absorber is defective. A shock absorber which has seized will also cause the vehicle to fail.



Exhaust system

□ Start the engine. With your assistant holding a rag over the tailpipe, check the entire system for leaks. Repair or renew leaking sections.



3 Checks carried out WITH THE VEHICLE RAISED AND THE WHEELS FREE TO TURN

Jack up the front and rear of the vehicle, and securely support it on axle stands. Position the stands clear of the suspension assemblies. Ensure that the wheels are clear of the ground and that the steering can be turned from lock to lock.

Steering mechanism

□ Have your assistant turn the steering from lock to lock. Check that the steering turns smoothly, and that no part of the steering mechanism, including a wheel or tyre, fouls any brake hose or pipe or any part of the body structure.

□ Examine the steering rack rubber gaiters for damage or insecurity of the retaining clips. If power steering is fitted, check for signs of damage or leakage of the fluid hoses, pipes or connections. Also check for excessive stiffness or binding of the steering, a missing split pin or locking device, or severe corrosion of the body structure within 30 cm of any steering component attachment point.



Front and rear suspension and wheel bearings

□ Starting at the front right-hand side, grasp the roadwheel at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions and shake it vigorously. Check for free play or insecurity at the wheel bearings, suspension balljoints, or suspension mountings, pivots and attachments.

□ Now grasp the wheel at the 12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions and repeat the previous inspection. Spin the wheel, and check for roughness or tightness of the front wheel bearing.



□ If excess free play is suspected at a component pivot point, this can be confirmed by using a large screwdriver or similar tool and levering between the mounting and the component attachment. This will confirm whether the wear is in the pivot bush, its retaining bolt, or in the mounting itself (the bolt holes can often become elongated).



□ Carry out all the above checks at the other front wheel, and then at both rear wheels.

Springs and shock absorbers

□ Examine the suspension struts (when applicable) for serious fluid leakage, corrosion, or damage to the casing. Also check the security of the mounting points.

□ If coil springs are fitted, check that the spring ends locate in their seats, and that the spring is not corroded, cracked or broken.

□ If leaf springs are fitted, check that all leaves are intact, that the axle is securely attached to each spring, and that there is no deterioration of the spring eye mountings, bushes, and shackles.

□ The same general checks apply to vehicles fitted with other suspension types, such as torsion bars, hydraulic displacer units, etc. Ensure that all mountings and attachments are secure, that there are no signs of excessive wear, corrosion or damage, and (on hydraulic types) that there are no fluid leaks or damaged pipes.

□ Inspect the shock absorbers for signs of serious fluid leakage. Check for wear of the mounting bushes or attachments, or damage to the body of the unit.

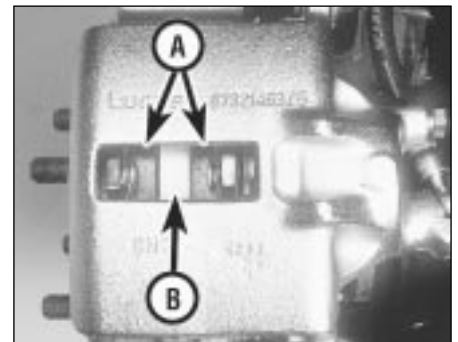
Driveshafts (fwd vehicles only)

□ Rotate each front wheel in turn and inspect the constant velocity joint gaiters for splits or damage. Also check that each driveshaft is straight and undamaged.



Braking system

□ If possible without dismantling, check brake pad wear and disc condition. Ensure that the friction lining material has not worn excessively, (A) and that the discs are not fractured, pitted, scored or badly worn (B).



□ Examine all the rigid brake pipes underneath the vehicle, and the flexible hose(s) at the rear. Look for corrosion, chafing or insecurity of the pipes, and for signs of bulging under pressure, chafing, splits or deterioration of the flexible hoses.

□ Look for signs of fluid leaks at the brake calipers or on the brake backplates. Repair or renew leaking components.

□ Slowly spin each wheel, while your assistant depresses and releases the footbrake. Ensure that each brake is operating and does not bind when the pedal is released.



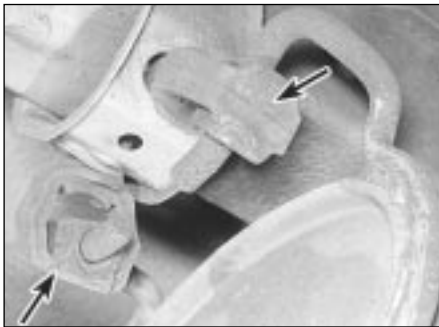
□ Examine the handbrake mechanism, checking for frayed or broken cables, excessive corrosion, or wear or insecurity of the linkage. Check that the mechanism works on each relevant wheel, and releases fully, without binding.

□ It is not possible to test brake efficiency without special equipment, but a road test can be carried out later to check that the vehicle pulls up in a straight line.

Fuel and exhaust systems

□ Inspect the fuel tank (including the filler cap), fuel pipes, hoses and unions. All components must be secure and free from leaks.

□ Examine the exhaust system over its entire length, checking for any damaged, broken or missing mountings, security of the retaining clamps and rust or corrosion.



Wheels and tyres

□ Examine the sidewalls and tread area of each tyre in turn. Check for cuts, tears, lumps, bulges, separation of the tread, and exposure of the ply or cord due to wear or damage. Check that the tyre bead is correctly seated on the wheel rim, that the valve is sound and



properly seated, and that the wheel is not distorted or damaged.

□ Check that the tyres are of the correct size for the vehicle, that they are of the same size and type on each axle, and that the pressures are correct.

□ Check the tyre tread depth. The legal minimum at the time of writing is 1.6 mm over at least three-quarters of the tread width. Abnormal tread wear may indicate incorrect front wheel alignment.

Body corrosion

□ Check the condition of the entire vehicle structure for signs of corrosion in load-bearing areas. (These include chassis box sections, side sills, cross-members, pillars, and all suspension, steering, braking system and seat belt mountings and anchorages.) Any corrosion which has seriously reduced the thickness of a load-bearing area is likely to cause the vehicle to fail. In this case professional repairs are likely to be needed.

□ Damage or corrosion which causes sharp or otherwise dangerous edges to be exposed will also cause the vehicle to fail.

4 Checks carried out on YOUR VEHICLE'S EXHAUST EMISSION SYSTEM

Petrol models

□ Have the engine at normal operating temperature, and make sure that it is in good tune (ignition system in good order, air filter element clean, etc).

□ Before any measurements are carried out, raise the engine speed to around 2500 rpm, and hold it at this speed for 20 seconds. Allow

the engine speed to return to idle, and watch for smoke emissions from the exhaust tailpipe. If the idle speed is obviously much too high, or if dense blue or clearly-visible black smoke comes from the tailpipe for more than 5 seconds, the vehicle will fail. As a rule of thumb, blue smoke signifies oil being burnt (engine wear) while black smoke signifies unburnt fuel (dirty air cleaner element, or other carburettor or fuel system fault).

□ An exhaust gas analyser capable of measuring carbon monoxide (CO) and hydrocarbons (HC) is now needed. If such an instrument cannot be hired or borrowed, a local garage may agree to perform the check for a small fee.

CO emissions (mixture)

□ At the time of writing, the maximum CO level at idle is 3.5% for vehicles first used after August 1986 and 4.5% for older vehicles. From January 1996 a much tighter limit (around 0.5%) applies to catalyst-equipped vehicles first used from August 1992. If the CO level cannot be reduced far enough to pass the test (and the fuel and ignition systems are otherwise in good condition) then the carburettor is badly worn, or there is some problem in the fuel injection system or catalytic converter (as applicable).

HC emissions

□ With the CO emissions within limits, HC emissions must be no more than 1200 ppm (parts per million). If the vehicle fails this test at idle, it can be re-tested at around 2000 rpm; if the HC level is then 1200 ppm or less, this counts as a pass.

□ Excessive HC emissions can be caused by oil being burnt, but they are more likely to be due to unburnt fuel.

Diesel models

□ The only emission test applicable to Diesel engines is the measuring of exhaust smoke density. The test involves accelerating the engine several times to its maximum unloaded speed.

Note: *It is of the utmost importance that the engine timing belt is in good condition before the test is carried out.*

□ Excessive smoke can be caused by a dirty air cleaner element. Otherwise, professional advice may be needed to find the cause.

Introduction

A selection of good tools is a fundamental requirement for anyone contemplating the maintenance and repair of a motor vehicle. For the owner who does not possess any, their purchase will prove a considerable expense, offsetting some of the savings made by doing-it-yourself. However, provided that the tools purchased meet the relevant national safety standards and are of good quality, they will last for many years and prove an extremely worthwhile investment.

To help the average owner to decide which tools are needed to carry out the various tasks detailed in this manual, we have compiled three lists of tools under the following headings: *Maintenance and minor repair*, *Repair and overhaul*, and *Special*. Newcomers to practical mechanics should start off with the *Maintenance and minor repair* tool kit, and confine themselves to the simpler jobs around the vehicle. Then, as confidence and experience grow, more difficult tasks can be undertaken, with extra tools being purchased as, and when, they are needed. In this way, a *Maintenance and minor repair* tool kit can be built up into a *Repair and overhaul* tool kit over a considerable period of time, without any major cash outlays. The experienced do-it-yourselfer will have a tool kit good enough for most repair and overhaul procedures, and will add tools from the *Special* category when it is felt that the expense is justified by the amount of use to which these tools will be put.

Maintenance and minor repair tool kit

The tools given in this list should be considered as a minimum requirement if routine maintenance, servicing and minor repair operations are to be undertaken. We recommend the purchase of combination spanners (ring one end, open-ended the other); although more expensive than open-ended ones, they do give the advantages of both types of spanner.

- ☐ Combination spanners:
 - Metric - 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 19, 21, 22, 24 & 26 mm
- ☐ Adjustable spanner - 35 mm jaw (approx)
- ☐ Transmission drain plug key (Allen type)
- ☐ Set of feeler gauges
- ☐ Spark plug spanner (with rubber insert)
- ☐ Spark plug gap adjustment tool
- ☐ Brake bleed nipple spanner
- ☐ Screwdrivers:
 - Flat blade - approx 100 mm long x 6 mm dia
 - Cross blade - approx 100 mm long x 6 mm dia
- ☐ Combination pliers
- ☐ Hacksaw (junior)
- ☐ Tyre pump
- ☐ Tyre pressure gauge
- ☐ Oil can
- ☐ Oil filter removal tool
- ☐ Fine emery cloth
- ☐ Wire brush (small)
- ☐ Funnel (medium size)

Repair and overhaul tool kit

These tools are virtually essential for anyone undertaking any major repairs to a motor vehicle, and are additional to those given in the *Maintenance and minor repair* list. Included in this list is a comprehensive set of sockets. Although these are expensive, they will be found invaluable as they are so versatile - particularly if various drives are included in the set. We recommend the half-inch square-drive type, as this can be used with most proprietary torque wrenches. If you cannot afford a socket set, even bought piecemeal, then inexpensive tubular box spanners are a useful alternative.

The tools in this list will occasionally need to be supplemented by tools from the *Special* list:

- ☐ Sockets (or box spanners) to cover range in previous list
- ☐ Reversible ratchet drive (for use with sockets) (see illustration)
- ☐ Extension piece, 250 mm (for use with sockets)
- ☐ Universal joint (for use with sockets)
- ☐ Torque wrench (for use with sockets)
- ☐ Self-locking grips
- ☐ Ball pein hammer
- ☐ Soft-faced mallet (plastic/aluminium or rubber)
- ☐ Screwdrivers:
 - Flat blade - long & sturdy, short (chubby), and narrow (electrician's) types
 - Cross blade - Long & sturdy, and short (chubby) types
- ☐ Pliers:
 - Long-nosed
 - Side cutters (electrician's)
 - Circclip (internal and external)
- ☐ Cold chisel - 25 mm
- ☐ Scriber
- ☐ Scraper
- ☐ Centre-punch
- ☐ Pin punch
- ☐ Hacksaw
- ☐ Brake hose clamp
- ☐ Brake/clutch bleeding kit
- ☐ Selection of twist drills



Sockets and reversible ratchet drive

- ☐ Steel rule/straight-edge
- ☐ Allen keys (inc. splined/Torx type) (see illustrations)
- ☐ Selection of files
- ☐ Wire brush
- ☐ Axle stands
- ☐ Jack (strong trolley or hydraulic type)
- ☐ Light with extension lead

Special tools

The tools in this list are those which are not used regularly, are expensive to buy, or which need to be used in accordance with their manufacturers' instructions. Unless relatively difficult mechanical jobs are undertaken frequently, it will not be economic to buy many of these tools. Where this is the case, you could consider clubbing together with friends (or joining a motorists' club) to make a joint purchase, or borrowing the tools against a deposit from a local garage or tool hire specialist. It is worth noting that many of the larger DIY superstores now carry a large range of special tools for hire at modest rates.

The following list contains only those tools and instruments freely available to the public, and not those special tools produced by the vehicle manufacturer specifically for its dealer network. You will find occasional references to these manufacturers' special tools in the text of this manual. Generally, an alternative method of doing the job without the vehicle manufacturers' special tool is given. However, sometimes there is no alternative to using them. Where this is the case and the relevant tool cannot be bought or borrowed, you will have to entrust the work to a franchised garage.

- ☐ Valve spring compressor (see illustration)
- ☐ Valve grinding tool
- ☐ Piston ring compressor (see illustration)
- ☐ Piston ring removal/installation tool (see illustration)
- ☐ Cylinder bore hone (see illustration)
- ☐ Balljoint separator
- ☐ Coil spring compressors (where applicable)
- ☐ Two/three-legged hub and bearing puller (see illustration)



Spline bit set

REF•6 Tools and Working Facilities



Spline key set



Valve spring compressor



Piston ring compressor



Piston ring removal/installation tool



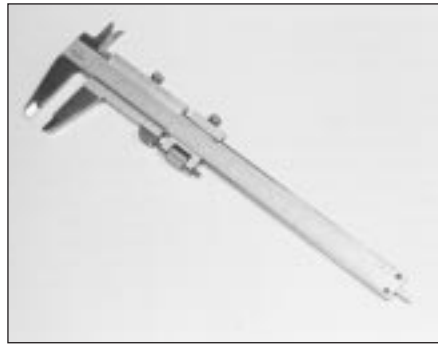
Cylinder bore hone



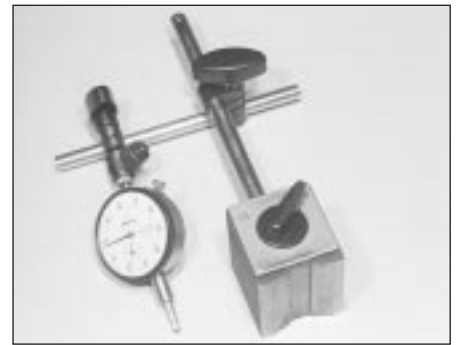
Three-legged hub and bearing puller



Micrometer set



Vernier calipers



Dial test indicator and magnetic stand



Compression testing gauge



Clutch plate alignment set



Brake shoe steady spring cup removal tool

- ☐ Impact screwdriver
- ☐ Micrometer and/or vernier calipers (*see illustrations*)
- ☐ Dial gauge (*see illustration*)
- ☐ Universal electrical multi-meter
- ☐ Cylinder compression gauge (*see illustration*)
- ☐ Clutch plate alignment set (*see illustration*)
- ☐ Brake shoe steady spring cup removal tool (*see illustration*)
- ☐ Bush and bearing removal/installation set (*see illustration*)
- ☐ Stud extractors (*see illustration*)
- ☐ Tap and die set (*see illustration*)
- ☐ Lifting tackle
- ☐ Trolley jack

Buying tools

For practically all tools, a tool factor is the best source, since he will have a very comprehensive range compared with the average garage or accessory shop. Having said that, accessory shops often offer excellent quality tools at discount prices, so it pays to shop around.

Remember, you don't have to buy the most expensive items on the shelf, but it is always advisable to steer clear of the very cheap tools. There are plenty of good tools around at

reasonable prices, but always aim to purchase items which meet the relevant national safety standards. If in doubt, ask the proprietor or manager of the shop for advice before making a purchase.

Care and maintenance of tools

Having purchased a reasonable tool kit, it is necessary to keep the tools in a clean and serviceable condition. After use, always wipe off any dirt, grease and metal particles using a clean, dry cloth, before putting the tools away. Never leave them lying around after they have been used. A simple tool rack on the garage or workshop wall for items such as screwdrivers and pliers is a good idea. Store all normal spanners and sockets in a metal box. Any measuring instruments, gauges, meters, etc, must be carefully stored where they cannot be damaged or become rusty.

Take a little care when tools are used. Hammer heads inevitably become marked, and screwdrivers lose the keen edge on their blades from time to time. A little timely attention with emery cloth or a file will soon restore items like this to a good serviceable finish.

Working facilities

Not to be forgotten when discussing tools

is the workshop itself. If anything more than routine maintenance is to be carried out, some form of suitable working area becomes essential.

It is appreciated that many an owner-mechanic is forced by circumstances to remove an engine or similar item without the benefit of a garage or workshop. Having done this, any repairs should always be done under the cover of a roof.

Wherever possible, any dismantling should be done on a clean, flat workbench or table at a suitable working height.

Any workbench needs a vice; one with a jaw opening of 100 mm is suitable for most jobs. As mentioned previously, some clean dry storage space is also required for tools, as well as for any lubricants, cleaning fluids, touch-up paints and so on, which become necessary.

Another item which may be required, and which has a much more general usage, is an electric drill with a chuck capacity of at least 8 mm. This, together with a good range of twist drills, is virtually essential for fitting accessories.

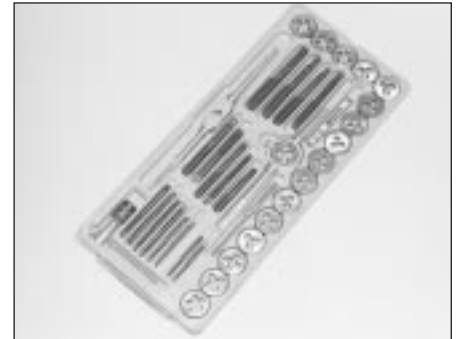
Last, but not least, always keep a supply of old newspapers and clean, lint-free rags available, and try to keep any working area as clean as possible.



Bush and bearing removal/installation set



Stud extractor set



Tap and die set

Whenever servicing, repair or overhaul work is carried out on the car or its components, observe the following procedures and instructions. This will assist in carrying out the operation efficiently and to a professional standard of workmanship.

Joint mating faces and gaskets

When separating components at their mating faces, never insert screwdrivers or similar implements into the joint between the faces in order to prise them apart. This can cause severe damage which results in oil leaks, coolant leaks, etc upon reassembly. Separation is usually achieved by tapping along the joint with a soft-faced hammer in order to break the seal. However, note that this method may not be suitable where dowels are used for component location.

Where a gasket is used between the mating faces of two components, a new one must be fitted on reassembly; fit it dry unless otherwise stated in the repair procedure. Make sure that the mating faces are clean and dry, with all traces of old gasket removed. When cleaning a joint face, use a tool which is unlikely to score or damage the face, and remove any burrs or nicks with an oilstone or fine file.

Make sure that tapped holes are cleaned with a pipe cleaner, and keep them free of jointing compound, if this is being used, unless specifically instructed otherwise.

Ensure that all orifices, channels or pipes are clear, and blow through them, preferably using compressed air.

Oil seals

Oil seals can be removed by levering them out with a wide flat-bladed screwdriver or similar implement. Alternatively, a number of self-tapping screws may be screwed into the seal, and these used as a purchase for pliers or some similar device in order to pull the seal free.

Whenever an oil seal is removed from its working location, either individually or as part of an assembly, it should be renewed.

The very fine sealing lip of the seal is easily damaged, and will not seal if the surface it contacts is not completely clean and free from scratches, nicks or grooves. If the original sealing surface of the component cannot be restored, and the manufacturer has not made provision for slight relocation of the seal relative to the sealing surface, the component should be renewed.

Protect the lips of the seal from any surface which may damage them in the course of fitting. Use tape or a conical sleeve where possible. Lubricate the seal lips with oil before fitting and, on dual-lipped seals, fill the space between the lips with grease.

Unless otherwise stated, oil seals must be fitted with their sealing lips toward the lubricant to be sealed.

Use a tubular drift or block of wood of the appropriate size to install the seal and, if the seal housing is shouldered, drive the seal down to the shoulder. If the seal housing is

unshouldered, the seal should be fitted with its face flush with the housing top face (unless otherwise instructed).

Screw threads and fastenings

Seized nuts, bolts and screws are quite a common occurrence where corrosion has set in, and the use of penetrating oil or releasing fluid will often overcome this problem if the offending item is soaked for a while before attempting to release it. The use of an impact driver may also provide a means of releasing such stubborn fastening devices, when used in conjunction with the appropriate screwdriver bit or socket. If none of these methods works, it may be necessary to resort to the careful application of heat, or the use of a hacksaw or nut splitter device.

Studs are usually removed by locking two nuts together on the threaded part, and then using a spanner on the lower nut to unscrew the stud. Studs or bolts which have broken off below the surface of the component in which they are mounted can sometimes be removed using a stud extractor. Always ensure that a blind tapped hole is completely free from oil, grease, water or other fluid before installing the bolt or stud. Failure to do this could cause the housing to crack due to the hydraulic action of the bolt or stud as it is screwed in.

When tightening a castellated nut to accept a split pin, tighten the nut to the specified torque, where applicable, and then tighten further to the next split pin hole. Never slacken the nut to align the split pin hole, unless stated in the repair procedure.

When checking or retightening a nut or bolt to a specified torque setting, slacken the nut or bolt by a quarter of a turn, and then retighten to the specified setting. However, this should not be attempted where angular tightening has been used.

For some screw fastenings, notably cylinder head bolts or nuts, torque wrench settings are no longer specified for the latter stages of tightening, "angle-tightening" being called up instead. Typically, a fairly low torque wrench setting will be applied to the bolts/nuts in the correct sequence, followed by one or more stages of tightening through specified angles.

Locknuts, locktabs and washers

Any fastening which will rotate against a component or housing during tightening should always have a washer between it and the relevant component or housing.

Spring or split washers should always be renewed when they are used to lock a critical component such as a big-end bearing retaining bolt or nut. Locktabs which are folded over to retain a nut or bolt should always be renewed.

Self-locking nuts can be re-used in non-critical areas, providing resistance can be felt when the locking portion passes over the bolt or stud thread. However, it should be noted that self-locking stiffnuts tend to lose their

effectiveness after long periods of use, and should then be renewed as a matter of course.

Split pins must always be replaced with new ones of the correct size for the hole.

When thread-locking compound is found on the threads of a fastener which is to be re-used, it should be cleaned off with a wire brush and solvent, and fresh compound applied on reassembly.

Special tools

Some repair procedures in this manual entail the use of special tools such as a press, two or three-legged pullers, spring compressors, etc. Wherever possible, suitable readily-available alternatives to the manufacturer's special tools are described, and are shown in use. In some instances, where no alternative is possible, it has been necessary to resort to the use of a manufacturer's tool, and this has been done for reasons of safety as well as the efficient completion of the repair operation. Unless you are highly-skilled and have a thorough understanding of the procedures described, never attempt to bypass the use of any special tool when the procedure described specifies its use. Not only is there a very great risk of personal injury, but expensive damage could be caused to the components involved.

Environmental considerations

When disposing of used engine oil, brake fluid, antifreeze, etc, give due consideration to any detrimental environmental effects. Do not, for instance, pour any of the above liquids down drains into the general sewage system, or onto the ground to soak away. Many local council refuse tips provide a facility for waste oil disposal, as do some garages. If none of these facilities are available, consult your local Environmental Health Department, or the National Rivers Authority, for further advice.

With the universal tightening-up of legislation regarding the emission of environmentally-harmful substances from motor vehicles, most vehicles have tamperproof devices fitted to the main adjustment points of the fuel system. These devices are primarily designed to prevent unqualified persons from adjusting the fuel/air mixture, with the chance of a consequent increase in toxic emissions. If such devices are found during servicing or overhaul, they should, wherever possible, be renewed or refitted in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements or current legislation.



Note: It is antisocial and illegal to dump oil down the drain. To find the location of your local oil recycling bank, call this number free.

Engine

- ☐ Engine backfires
- ☐ Engine difficult to start when cold
- ☐ Engine difficult to start when hot
- ☐ Engine fails to rotate when attempting to start
- ☐ Engine hesitates on acceleration
- ☐ Engine idles erratically
- ☐ Engine lacks power
- ☐ Engine misfires at idle speed
- ☐ Engine misfires throughout the driving speed range
- ☐ Engine noises
- ☐ Engine rotates, but will not start
- ☐ Engine runs-on after switching off
- ☐ Engine stalls
- ☐ Engine starts, but stops immediately
- ☐ Oil pressure warning light illuminated with engine running
- ☐ Starter motor noisy or excessively-rough in engagement

Cooling system

- ☐ Corrosion
- ☐ External coolant leakage
- ☐ Internal coolant leakage
- ☐ Overcooling
- ☐ Overheating

Fuel and exhaust systems

- ☐ Excessive fuel consumption
- ☐ Excessive noise or fumes from exhaust system
- ☐ Fuel leakage and/or fuel odour

Clutch

- ☐ Clutch fails to disengage (unable to select gears)
- ☐ Clutch slips (engine speed increases, with no increase in vehicle speed)
- ☐ Judder as clutch is engaged
- ☐ Noise when depressing or releasing clutch pedal
- ☐ Pedal travels to floor - no pressure or very little resistance

Driveshafts

- ☐ Clicking or knocking noise on turns (at slow speed on full-lock)
- ☐ Vibration when accelerating or decelerating

Manual transmission

- ☐ Jumps out of gear
- ☐ Lubricant leaks
- ☐ Noisy in neutral with engine running
- ☐ Noisy in one particular gear
- ☐ Vibration

Automatic transmission

- ☐ Engine will not start in any gear, or starts in gears other than Park or Neutral
- ☐ Fluid leakage
- ☐ General gear selection problems
- ☐ Transmission fluid brown, or has burned smell
- ☐ Transmission slips, shifts roughly, is noisy, or has no drive in forward or reverse gears
- ☐ Transmission will not downshift (kickdown) with accelerator fully depressed

Braking system

- ☐ Brake pedal feels spongy when depressed
- ☐ Brakes binding
- ☐ Excessive brake pedal effort required to stop vehicle
- ☐ Excessive brake pedal travel
- ☐ Judder felt through brake pedal or steering wheel when braking
- ☐ Noise (grinding or high-pitched squeal) when brakes applied
- ☐ Rear wheels locking under normal braking
- ☐ Vehicle pulls to one side under braking

Suspension and steering systems

- ☐ Excessive pitching and/or rolling around corners, or during braking
- ☐ Excessive play in steering
- ☐ Excessively-stiff steering
- ☐ Lack of power assistance
- ☐ Tyre wear excessive
- ☐ Vehicle pulls to one side
- ☐ Wandering or general instability
- ☐ Wheel wobble and vibration

Electrical system

- ☐ Battery will not hold a charge for more than a few days
- ☐ Central locking system inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation
- ☐ Electric windows inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation
- ☐ Horn inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation
- ☐ Ignition warning light fails to come on
- ☐ Ignition warning light remains illuminated with engine running
- ☐ Instrument readings inaccurate or erratic
- ☐ Lights inoperative
- ☐ Windscreen/tailgate washers inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation
- ☐ Windscreen/tailgate wipers inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation

Introduction

The vehicle owner who does his or her own maintenance according to the recommended service schedules should not have to use this section of the manual very often. Modern component reliability is such that, provided those items subject to wear or deterioration are inspected or renewed at the specified intervals, sudden failure is comparatively rare. Faults do not usually just happen as a result of sudden failure, but develop over a period of time. Major mechanical failures in particular are usually preceded by characteristic symptoms over hundreds or even thousands of miles. Those components which do occasionally fail without warning are often small and easily carried in the vehicle.

With any fault-finding, the first step is to decide where to begin investigations. Sometimes this is obvious, but on other occasions, a little detective work will be necessary. The owner who makes half a dozen haphazard adjustments or replacements may be successful in curing a fault (or its symptoms), but will be none the wiser if the fault recurs, and ultimately may have spent more time and money than was necessary. A calm and logical approach will be found to be more satisfactory in the long run. Always take into account any warning signs or abnormalities that may have been noticed in the period preceding the fault - power loss, high or low gauge readings, unusual smells, etc - and remember that failure of components such as fuses or spark plugs may only be pointers to some underlying fault.

The pages which follow provide an easy reference guide to the more common problems which may occur during the operation of the vehicle. These problems and their possible causes are grouped under

headings denoting various components or systems, such as Engine, Cooling system, etc. The Chapter and/or Section which deals with the problem is also shown in brackets. Whatever the fault, certain basic principles apply. These are as follows:

Verify the fault. This is simply a matter of being sure that you know what the symptoms are before starting work. This is particularly important if you are investigating a fault for someone else, who may not have described it very accurately.

Don't overlook the obvious. For example, if the vehicle won't start, is there petrol in the tank? (Don't take anyone else's word on this particular point, and don't trust the fuel gauge either!) If an electrical fault is indicated, look for loose or broken wires before digging out the test gear.

Cure the disease, not the symptom. Substituting a flat battery with a fully-charged one will get you off the hard shoulder, but if the underlying cause is not attended to, the new battery will go the same way. Similarly, changing oil-fouled spark plugs for a new set will get you moving again, but remember that the reason for the fouling (if it wasn't simply an incorrect grade of plug) will have to be established and corrected.

Don't take anything for granted. Particularly, don't forget that a "new" component may itself be defective (especially if it's been rattling around in the boot for months), and don't leave components out of a fault diagnosis sequence just because they are new or recently fitted. When you do finally diagnose a difficult fault, you'll probably realise that all the evidence was there from the start.

Engine

Engine fails to rotate when attempting to start

- ☐ Battery terminal connections loose or corroded (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Battery discharged or faulty (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Broken, loose or disconnected wiring in the starting circuit (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Defective starter solenoid or switch (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Defective starter motor (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Flywheel ring gear or starter pinion teeth loose or broken (Chapter 2 or 5).
- ☐ Engine earth strap broken or disconnected (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Automatic transmission not in Park/Neutral position, or selector lever position sensor faulty (Chapter 7, Part B).

Engine rotates, but will not start

- ☐ Fuel tank empty.
- ☐ Battery discharged (engine rotates slowly) (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Battery terminal connections loose or corroded (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Ignition components damp or damaged (Chapters 1 and 5).
- ☐ Broken, loose or disconnected wiring in the ignition circuit (Chapters 1 and 5).
- ☐ Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Major mechanical failure (eg camshaft drive) (Chapter 2A, B or C).

Engine difficult to start when cold

- ☐ Battery discharged (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Battery terminal connections loose or corroded (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Other ignition system fault (Chapters 1 and 5).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, B or C).

Engine difficult to start when hot

- ☐ Air filter element dirty or clogged (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Faulty hydraulic tappet(s) (Chapter 2B or C).

Starter motor noisy or excessively-rough in engagement

- ☐ Flywheel ring gear or starter pinion teeth loose or broken (Chapter 2 or 5).
- ☐ Starter motor mounting bolts loose or missing (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Starter motor internal components worn or damaged (Chapter 5).

Engine starts but stops immediately

- ☐ Loose or faulty electrical connections in the ignition circuit (Chapters 1 and 5).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Vacuum leak at the inlet manifold (Chapters 1, 4 and 6).

Engine idles erratically

- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Air filter element clogged (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Vacuum leak at the inlet manifold or associated hoses (Chapters 1, 4 and 6).
- ☐ Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Incorrect valve clearances (Chapter 2A).
- ☐ Faulty hydraulic tappet(s) (Chapter 2B or C).
- ☐ Uneven or low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Camshaft lobes worn (Chapter 2).
- ☐ Timing chain and sprockets worn (Chapter 2A).
- ☐ Timing belt incorrectly-tensioned (Chapter 2B or C).

Engine misfires at idle speed

- ☐ Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Faulty spark plug HT leads (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Incorrect ignition timing (Chapters 5 and 6).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Vacuum leak at inlet manifold or hoses (Chapters 1, 4 and 6).
- ☐ Incorrect valve clearances (Chapter 2A).
- ☐ Faulty hydraulic tappet(s) (Chapter 2B or C).
- ☐ Uneven or low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, B and C).
- ☐ Disconnected/leaking crankcase ventilation hoses (Chapters 1 and 6).

Engine misfires throughout the driving speed range

- ☐ Fuel filter choked (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Fuel pump faulty or delivery pressure low (Chapter 4).
- ☐ Fuel tank vent blocked or fuel pipes restricted (Chapter 4).
- ☐ Vacuum leak at inlet manifold or hoses (Chapters 1, 4 and 6).
- ☐ Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Faulty spark plug HT leads (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Faulty ignition coil (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Uneven or low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A, B or C).

Engine hesitates on acceleration

- ☐ Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Vacuum leak at inlet manifold or hoses (Chapters 1, 4 and 6).

Engine stalls

- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Vacuum leak at inlet manifold or hoses (Chapters 1, 4 and 6).
- ☐ Fuel filter choked (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Fuel pump faulty or delivery pressure low (Chapter 4).
- ☐ Fuel tank vent blocked or fuel pipes restricted (Chapter 4).

Engine lacks power

- ☐ Incorrect ignition timing (Chapters 5 and 6).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Timing chain or belt incorrectly fitted (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Fuel filter choked (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Fuel pump faulty or delivery pressure low (Chapter 4).
- ☐ Uneven or low cylinder compressions (Chapter 2A).
- ☐ Worn, faulty or incorrectly-gapped spark plugs (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Vacuum leak at inlet manifold or hoses (Chapters 1, 4 and 6).
- ☐ Brakes binding (Chapters 1 and 9).
- ☐ Clutch slipping (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Automatic transmission fluid level incorrect (Chapter 1).

Cooling system

Overheating

- ☐ Insufficient coolant in system (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Thermostat faulty (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Radiator core blocked or grille restricted (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Radiator cooling fan(s) or temperature sensor faulty Chapter 3).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Pressure cap faulty (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Auxiliary drivebelt worn or slipping (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Ignition timing incorrect (Chapters 5 and 6).
- ☐ Inaccurate coolant temperature gauge sender (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Airlock in cooling system (Chapter 1).

Overcooling

- ☐ Thermostat faulty (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Inaccurate coolant temperature gauge sender (Chapter 3).

Engine backfires

- ☐ Ignition timing incorrect (Chapters 5 and 6).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Timing chain or belt incorrectly fitted (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Vacuum leak at inlet manifold or hoses (Chapters 1, 4 and 6).

Oil pressure warning light illuminated with engine running

- ☐ Low oil level or incorrect oil grade (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Faulty oil pressure warning light switch (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Worn engine bearings and/or oil pump (Chapter 2).
- ☐ High engine operating temperature (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Oil pressure relief valve defective (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Oil pick-up strainer clogged (Chapter 2A, B or C).

Engine runs-on after switching off

- ☐ Idle speed excessively high (Chapters 4 and 6).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Excessive carbon build-up in engine (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ High engine operating temperature (Chapter 3).

Engine noises

Pre-ignition (pinking) or knocking during acceleration or under load

- ☐ Ignition timing incorrect (Chapters 5 and 6).
- ☐ Incorrect grade of fuel (Chapter 4).
- ☐ Vacuum leak at the manifold or hoses (Chapters 1, 4 and 6).
- ☐ Excessive carbon build-up in engine (Chapter 2A, B or C).

Whistling or wheezing noises

- ☐ Leaking inlet manifold gasket (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Leaking exhaust manifold gasket or downpipe-to-manifold joint (Chapters 1, 2A, B or C, and 4).
- ☐ Leaking vacuum hose (Chapters 1, 4, 6 and 9).
- ☐ Blowing cylinder head gasket (Chapter 2A, B or C).

Tapping or rattling noises

- ☐ Incorrect valve clearance adjustment (Chapter 2A).
- ☐ Faulty hydraulic tappet(s) (Chapter 2B or C).
- ☐ Worn valve gear or camshaft (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Worn timing chain, belt or tensioner (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Component fault (water pump, alternator, etc) (Chapters 3 and 5).

Knocking or thumping noises

- ☐ Worn big-end bearings (regular heavy knocking, perhaps less under load) Chapter 2D).
- ☐ Worn main bearings (rumbling and knocking, perhaps worsening under load) Chapter 2D).
- ☐ Piston slap (most noticeable when cold) (Chapter 2D).
- ☐ Component fault (water pump, alternator, etc) (Chapters 3 and 5).

External coolant leakage

- ☐ Deteriorated or damaged hoses or hose clips (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Radiator core or heater matrix leaking (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Pressure cap faulty (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Water pump seal leaking (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Boiling due to overheating (Chapter 3).
- ☐ Core plug leaking (Chapter 2D).

Internal coolant leakage

- ☐ Leaking cylinder head gasket (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Cracked cylinder head or cylinder bore (Chapter 2D).

Corrosion

- ☐ Infrequent draining and flushing (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Incorrect antifreeze mixture, or antifreeze type (Chapter 1).

Fuel and exhaust systems

Excessive fuel consumption

- ☐ Unsympathetic driving style, or adverse conditions.
- ☐ Air filter element dirty or clogged (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).
- ☐ Ignition timing incorrect (Chapters 5 and 6).
- ☐ Tyres under-inflated (Chapter 1).

Fuel leakage and/or fuel odour

- ☐ Damaged or corroded fuel tank, pipes or connections (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Charcoal canister and/or connecting pipes leaking (Chapter 6).

Excessive noise or fumes from exhaust system

- ☐ Leaking exhaust or manifold joints (Chapters 1, 2A, B or C, and 4).
- ☐ Leaking, corroded or damaged silencers or pipe (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Broken mountings, causing body or suspension contact (Chapters 1 and 4).

Clutch

Pedal travels to floor - no pressure or very little resistance

- ☐ Broken clutch cable (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Faulty clutch automatic adjuster (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Broken clutch release bearing or fork (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Broken diaphragm spring in clutch pressure plate (Chapter 8).

Clutch fails to disengage (unable to select gears)

- ☐ Faulty clutch automatic adjuster (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Clutch disc sticking on transmission input shaft splines (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Clutch disc sticking to flywheel or pressure plate (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Faulty pressure plate assembly (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Clutch release mechanism worn or incorrectly assembled (Chapter 8).

Clutch slips (engine speed increases, with no increase in vehicle speed)

- ☐ Faulty clutch automatic adjuster (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Clutch disc linings excessively worn (Chapter 8).

- ☐ Clutch disc linings contaminated with oil or grease (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Faulty pressure plate or weak diaphragm spring (Chapter 8).

Judder as clutch is engaged

- ☐ Clutch disc linings contaminated with oil or grease (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Clutch disc linings excessively worn (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Clutch cable sticking or frayed (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Faulty or distorted pressure plate or diaphragm spring (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Worn or loose engine/transmission mountings (Chapter 2A, B or C).
- ☐ Clutch disc hub or transmission input shaft splines worn (Chapter 8).

Noise when depressing or releasing clutch pedal

- ☐ Worn clutch release bearing (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Worn or dry clutch pedal bushes (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Faulty pressure plate assembly (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Pressure plate diaphragm spring broken (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Broken clutch disc cushioning springs (Chapter 8).

Driveshafts

Clicking or knocking noise on turns (at slow speed on full-lock)

- ☐ Lack of constant velocity joint lubricant (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Worn outer constant velocity joint (Chapter 8).

Vibration when accelerating or decelerating

- ☐ Worn inner constant velocity joint (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Bent or distorted driveshaft (Chapter 8).

Manual transmission

Noisy in neutral with engine running

- ☐ Input shaft bearings worn (noise apparent with clutch pedal released, but not when depressed) (Chapter 7A).*
- ☐ Clutch release bearing worn (noise apparent with clutch pedal depressed, possibly less when released) (Chapter 8).

Noisy in one particular gear

- ☐ Worn, damaged or chipped gear teeth (Chapter 7A).*

Difficulty engaging gears

- ☐ Clutch fault (Chapter 8).
- ☐ Worn or damaged gear linkage (Chapter 7A).
- ☐ Incorrectly-adjusted gear linkage (Chapter 7A).
- ☐ Worn synchroniser assemblies (Chapter 7A).*

Vibration

- ☐ Lack of oil (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Worn bearings (Chapter 7A).*

Jumps out of gear

- ☐ Worn or damaged gear linkage (Chapter 7A).
- ☐ Incorrectly-adjusted gear linkage (Chapter 7A).
- ☐ Worn synchroniser assemblies (Chapter 7A).*
- ☐ Worn selector forks (Chapter 7A).*

Lubricant leaks

- ☐ Leaking differential side gear oil seal (Chapter 7A).
- ☐ Leaking housing joint (Chapter 7A).*
- ☐ Leaking input shaft oil seal (Chapter 7A).*
- ☐ Leaking selector shaft oil seal (Chapter 7A).
- ☐ Leaking speedometer drive pinion O-ring (Chapter 7A).

** Although the corrective action necessary to remedy the symptoms described is beyond the scope of the home mechanic, the above information should be helpful in isolating the cause of the condition, so that the owner can communicate clearly with a professional mechanic.*

Automatic transmission

Note: Due to the complexity of the automatic transmission, it is difficult for the home mechanic to properly diagnose and service this unit. For problems other than the following, the vehicle should be taken to a dealer service department or automatic transmission specialist.

Fluid leakage

- ☐ Automatic transmission fluid is usually deep red in colour. Fluid leaks should not be confused with engine oil, which can easily be blown onto the transmission by airflow.
- ☐ To determine the source of a leak, first remove all built-up dirt and grime from the transmission housing and surrounding areas, using a degreasing agent, or by steam-cleaning. Drive the vehicle at low speed, so airflow will not blow the leak far from its source. Raise and support the vehicle, and determine where the leak is coming from. The following are common areas of leakage:
 - a) Transmission fluid sump (Chapters 1 and 7B).
 - b) Dipstick tube (Chapters 1 and 7B).
 - c) Transmission-to-fluid cooler pipes/unions (Chapter 7B).
 - d) Speedometer drive pinion O-ring.
 - e) Differential output fluid seals (Chapter 7B).

Transmission fluid brown, or has burned smell

- ☐ Transmission fluid level low, or fluid in need of renewal (Chapter 1).

General gear selection problems

- ☐ Chapter 7B deals with checking and adjusting the selector cable on automatic transmissions. The following are common problems which may be caused by a poorly-adjusted cable:

- a) Engine starting in gears other than Park or Neutral.
 - b) Indicator on gear selector lever pointing to a gear other than the one actually being used.
 - c) Vehicle moves when in Park or Neutral.
 - d) Poor gear shift quality or erratic gear changes.
- Refer to Chapter 7B for the selector cable adjustment procedure.

Transmission will not downshift (kickdown) with accelerator pedal fully depressed

- ☐ Low transmission fluid level (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Incorrect selector cable adjustment (Chapter 7B).
- ☐ Engine management system fault (Chapters 1, 4, 5 and 6).

Engine will not start in any gear, or starts in gears other than Park or Neutral

- ☐ Incorrect selector lever position sensor adjustment (Chapter 7B).
- ☐ Incorrect selector cable adjustment (Chapter 7B).

Transmission slips, is noisy, or has no drive in forward or reverse gears

- ☐ There are many probable causes for the above problems, but the home mechanic should be concerned with only one possibility - fluid level. Before taking the vehicle to a dealer or transmission specialist, check the fluid level and condition of the fluid as described in Chapter 1. Correct the fluid level as necessary, or change the fluid if needed. If the problem persists, professional help will be necessary.

Braking system

Note: Before assuming that a brake problem exists, make sure that the tyres are in good condition and correctly inflated, that the front wheel alignment is correct, and that the vehicle is not loaded with weight in an unequal manner. Apart from checking the condition of all pipe and hose connections, any faults occurring on the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) should be referred to a Ford dealer for diagnosis.

Vehicle pulls to one side under braking

- ☐ Worn, defective, damaged or contaminated front or rear brake pads/shoes on one side (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Seized or partially-seized front or rear brake caliper/wheel cylinder piston (Chapter 9).
- ☐ A mixture of brake lining materials fitted between sides Chapter 1).
- ☐ Brake caliper mounting bolts loose (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Rear brake backplate mounting bolts loose (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Worn or damaged steering or suspension components (Chapter 10).

Noise (grinding or high-pitched squeal) when brakes applied

- ☐ Brake pad or shoe friction lining material worn down to metal backing Chapter 1).
- ☐ Excessive corrosion of brake disc or drum (may be apparent after the vehicle has been standing for some time) (Chapter 1).

Brakes binding

- ☐ Seized brake caliper or wheel cylinder piston(s) (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Faulty handbrake mechanism (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Faulty master cylinder (Chapter 9).

Rear wheels locking under normal braking

- ☐ Rear brake pad/shoe linings contaminated (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Faulty brake pressure regulator (Chapter 9).

Excessive brake pedal travel

- ☐ Inoperative rear brake self-adjust mechanism (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Faulty master cylinder (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Air in hydraulic system (Chapter 9).

Brake pedal feels spongy when depressed

- ☐ Air in hydraulic system (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Deteriorated flexible rubber brake hoses (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Master cylinder mounting nuts loose (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Faulty master cylinder (Chapter 9).

Excessive brake pedal effort required to stop vehicle

- ☐ Faulty vacuum servo unit (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Disconnected, damaged or insecure brake servo vacuum hose (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Primary or secondary hydraulic circuit failure (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Seized brake caliper or wheel cylinder piston(s) (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Brake pads or brake shoes incorrectly fitted (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Incorrect grade of brake pads or brake shoes fitted (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Brake pads or brake shoe linings contaminated (Chapter 1).

Judder felt through brake pedal or steering wheel when braking

- ☐ Excessive run-out or distortion of front discs or rear discs/drums Chapter 9).
- ☐ Brake pad or brake shoe linings worn (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Brake caliper or rear brake backplate mounting bolts loose (Chapter 9).
- ☐ Wear in suspension or steering components or mountings (Chapter 10).

Suspension and steering systems

Note: Before diagnosing suspension or steering faults, be sure that the trouble is not due to incorrect tyre pressures, mixtures of tyre types, or binding brakes.

Vehicle pulls to one side

- ☐ Defective tyre (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Excessive wear in suspension or steering components (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Incorrect front wheel alignment (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Accident damage to steering or suspension components (Chapter 10).

Wheel wobble and vibration

- ☐ Front roadwheels out of balance (vibration felt mainly through the steering wheel) (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Rear roadwheels out of balance (vibration felt throughout the vehicle) (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Roadwheels damaged or distorted (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Faulty or damaged tyre (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Worn steering or suspension joints, bushes or components (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Roadwheel nuts loose (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Wear in driveshaft joint, or loose driveshaft nut (vibration worst when under load) (Chapter 8).

Excessive pitching and/or rolling around corners, or during braking

- ☐ Defective shock absorbers (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Broken or weak coil/leaf spring and/or suspension component (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Worn or damaged anti-roll bar or mountings (Chapter 10).

Excessive play in steering

- ☐ Worn steering column universal joint(s) or flexible coupling (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Worn steering track-rod end balljoints (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Worn rack-and-pinion steering gear (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Worn steering or suspension joints, bushes or components (Chapter 10).

Lack of power assistance

- ☐ Broken or slipping auxiliary drivebelt (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Incorrect power steering fluid level (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Restriction in power steering fluid hoses (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Faulty power steering pump (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Faulty rack-and-pinion steering gear (Chapter 10).

Wandering or general instability

- ☐ Incorrect front wheel alignment (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Worn steering or suspension joints, bushes or components (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Roadwheels out of balance (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Faulty or damaged tyre (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Roadwheel nuts loose (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Defective shock absorbers (Chapter 10).

Excessively-stiff steering

- ☐ Lack of steering gear lubricant (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Seized track-rod end balljoint or suspension balljoint (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Broken or slipping auxiliary drivebelt (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Incorrect front wheel alignment (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Steering rack or column bent or damaged (Chapter 10).

Tyre wear excessive

Tyres worn on inside or outside edges

- ☐ Tyres under-inflated (wear on both edges) (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Incorrect camber or castor angles (wear on one edge only) (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Worn steering or suspension joints, bushes or components (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Excessively-hard cornering.
- ☐ Accident damage.

Tyre treads exhibit feathered edges

- ☐ Incorrect toe setting (Chapter 10).

Tyres worn in centre of tread

- ☐ Tyres over-inflated (Chapter 1).

Tyres worn on inside and outside edges

- ☐ Tyres under-inflated (Chapter 1).

Tyres worn unevenly

- ☐ Tyres out of balance (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Excessive wheel or tyre run-out (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Worn shock absorbers (Chapter 10).
- ☐ Faulty tyre (Chapter 1).

Electrical system

Note: For problems associated with the starting system, refer to the faults listed under "Engine" earlier in this Section.

Battery will not hold a charge for more than a few days

- ☐ Battery defective internally (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Battery electrolyte level low (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Battery terminal connections loose or corroded (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Auxiliary drivebelt worn or incorrectly-adjusted (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Alternator not charging at correct output (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Alternator or voltage regulator faulty (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Short-circuit causing continual battery drain (Chapters 5 and 12).

Ignition (no-charge) warning light remains illuminated with engine running

- ☐ Auxiliary drivebelt broken, worn, or incorrectly-adjusted (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Alternator brushes worn, sticking, or dirty (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Alternator brush springs weak or broken (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Internal fault in alternator or voltage regulator (Chapter 5).
- ☐ Broken, disconnected, or loose wiring in charging circuit (Chapter 5).

Ignition (no-charge) warning light fails to come on

- ☐ Warning light bulb blown (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Broken, disconnected, or loose wiring in warning light circuit (Chapters 5 and 12).
- ☐ Alternator faulty (Chapter 5).

Lights inoperative

- ☐ Bulb blown (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Corrosion of bulb or bulbholder contacts (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty relay (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Broken, loose, or disconnected wiring (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty switch (Chapter 12).

Instrument readings inaccurate or erratic

Instrument readings increase with engine speed

- ☐ Faulty voltage regulator (Chapter 12).

Fuel or temperature gauges give no reading

- ☐ Faulty gauge sender unit (Chapters 3 or 4).
- ☐ Wiring open-circuit (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty gauge (Chapter 12).

Fuel or temperature gauges give continuous maximum reading

- ☐ Faulty gauge sender unit (Chapters 3 or 4).
- ☐ Wiring short-circuit (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty gauge (Chapter 12).

Horn inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation

Horn fails to operate

- ☐ Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Cable or cable connections loose, broken or disconnected (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty horn (Chapter 12).

Horn emits intermittent or unsatisfactory sound

- ☐ Cable connections loose (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Horn mountings loose (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty horn (Chapter 12).

Horn operates all the time

- ☐ Horn push either earthed or stuck down (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Horn cable to horn push earthed (Chapter 12).

Windscreen/tailgate wipers inoperative or unsatisfactory in operation

Wipers fail to operate, or operate very slowly

- ☐ Wiper blades stuck to screen, or linkage seized or binding (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Cable or cable connections loose, broken or disconnected (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty relay (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty wiper motor (Chapter 12).

Wiper blades sweep over too large or too small an area of the glass

- ☐ Wiper arms incorrectly-positioned on spindles (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Excessive wear of wiper linkage (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Wiper motor or linkage mountings loose or insecure (Chapter 12).

Wiper blades fail to clean the glass effectively

- ☐ Wiper blade rubbers worn or perished (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Wiper arm tension springs broken, or arm pivots seized (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Insufficient windscreen washer additive to adequately remove road film (Chapter 1).

Windscreen/tailgate washers inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation

One or more washer jets inoperative

- ☐ Blocked washer jet (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Disconnected, kinked or restricted fluid hose (Chapter 1).
- ☐ Insufficient fluid in washer reservoir (Chapter 1).

Washer pump fails to operate

- ☐ Broken or disconnected wiring or connections (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty washer switch (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty washer pump (Chapter 12).

Washer pump runs for some time before fluid is emitted from jets

- ☐ Faulty one-way valve in fluid supply hose (Chapter 12).

Electric windows inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation

Window glass will only move in one direction

- ☐ Faulty switch (Chapter 12).

Window glass slow to move

- ☐ Incorrectly-adjusted door glass guide channels (Chapter 11).
- ☐ Regulator seized or damaged, or in need of lubrication (Chapter 11).
- ☐ Door internal components or trim fouling regulator (Chapter 11).
- ☐ Faulty motor (Chapter 12).

Window glass fails to move

- ☐ Incorrectly-adjusted door glass guide channels (Chapter 11).
- ☐ Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty relay (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Broken or disconnected wiring or connections (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty motor (Chapter 12).

Central locking system inoperative, or unsatisfactory in operation

Complete system failure

- ☐ Blown fuse (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty relay (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Broken or disconnected wiring or connections (Chapter 12).

Latch locks but will not unlock, or unlocks but will not lock

- ☐ Faulty master switch (Chapter 11).
- ☐ Broken or disconnected latch operating rods or levers (Chapter 11).
- ☐ Faulty relay (Chapter 12).

One lock motor fails to operate

- ☐ Broken or disconnected wiring or connections (Chapter 12).
- ☐ Faulty lock motor (Chapter 11).
- ☐ Broken, binding or disconnected latch operating rods or levers (Chapter 11).
- ☐ Fault in door latch (Chapter 11).

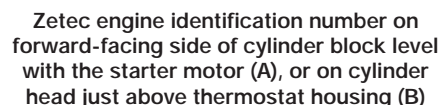
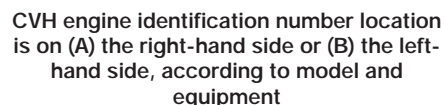
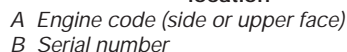
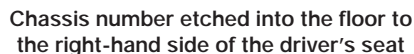
Spare parts are available from many sources; for example, Ford garages, other garages and accessory shops, and motor factors. Our advice regarding spare part sources is as follows.

Other garages and accessory shops - These are often very good places to buy the materials and components required for the

Motor factors - Good factors will stock all the more important components which wear out comparatively quickly (eg exhaust systems, brake pads, seals and hydraulic parts, clutch components, bearing shells, pistons, valves etc). Motor factors will often provide new or reconditioned components on a part exchange basis - this can save a considerable amount of money.

Modifications are a continuing and unpublicised process in vehicle manufacture, quite apart from major model changes. Spare parts manuals and lists are compiled upon a numerical basis, the individual vehicle identification numbers being essential to correct identification of the component concerned.

The *engine number* location is dependent on the engine type. On the HCS (OHV) engine, it is stamped on the front left-hand side of the cylinder block towards the transmission (facing the radiator) (**see illustration**). On the CVH (OHC) engine, the location of the engine number is dependent on the equipment fitted, but is on the exhaust side of the engine, facing either towards the timing belt end or the transmission end (**see illustration**). On the Zetec engine, the number can be found on the forward-facing side of the cylinder block, level with the starter motor, or on the cylinder head just above the thermostat housing (**see illustrations**).



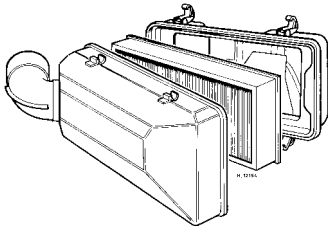
A

ABS (Anti-lock brake system) A system, usually electronically controlled, that senses incipient wheel lockup during braking and relieves hydraulic pressure at wheels that are about to skid.

Air bag An inflatable bag hidden in the steering wheel (driver's side) or the dash or glovebox (passenger side). In a head-on collision, the bags inflate, preventing the driver and front passenger from being thrown forward into the steering wheel or windscreen.

Air cleaner A metal or plastic housing, containing a filter element, which removes dust and dirt from the air being drawn into the engine.

Air filter element The actual filter in an air cleaner system, usually manufactured from pleated paper and requiring renewal at regular intervals.



Air filter

Allen key A hexagonal wrench which fits into a recessed hexagonal hole.

Alligator clip A long-nosed spring-loaded metal clip with meshing teeth. Used to make temporary electrical connections.

Alternator A component in the electrical system which converts mechanical energy from a drivebelt into electrical energy to charge the battery and to operate the starting system, ignition system and electrical accessories.

Ampere (amp) A unit of measurement for the flow of electric current. One amp is the amount of current produced by one volt acting through a resistance of one ohm.

Anaerobic sealer A substance used to prevent bolts and screws from loosening. Anaerobic means that it does not require oxygen for activation. The Loctite brand is widely used.

Antifreeze A substance (usually ethylene glycol) mixed with water, and added to a vehicle's cooling system, to prevent freezing of the coolant in winter. Antifreeze also contains chemicals to inhibit corrosion and the formation of rust and other deposits that would tend to clog the radiator and coolant passages and reduce cooling efficiency.

Anti-seize compound A coating that reduces the risk of seizing on fasteners that are subjected to high temperatures, such as exhaust manifold bolts and nuts.

Asbestos A natural fibrous mineral with great heat resistance, commonly used in the composition of brake friction materials.

Asbestos is a health hazard and the dust created by brake systems should never be inhaled or ingested.

Axle A shaft on which a wheel revolves, or which revolves with a wheel. Also, a solid beam that connects the two wheels at one end of the vehicle. An axle which also transmits power to the wheels is known as a live axle.

Axleshaft A single rotating shaft, on either side of the differential, which delivers power from the final drive assembly to the drive wheels. Also called a driveshaft or a halfshaft.

B

Ball bearing An anti-friction bearing consisting of a hardened inner and outer race with hardened steel balls between two races.

Bearing The curved surface on a shaft or in a bore, or the part assembled into either, that permits relative motion between them with minimum wear and friction.

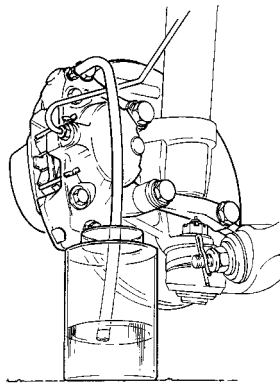


Bearing

Big-end bearing The bearing in the end of the connecting rod that's attached to the crankshaft.

Bleed nipple A valve on a brake wheel cylinder, caliper or other hydraulic component that is opened to purge the hydraulic system of air. Also called a bleed screw.

Brake bleeding Procedure for removing air from lines of a hydraulic brake system.



Brake bleeding

Brake disc The component of a disc brake that rotates with the wheels.

Brake drum The component of a drum brake that rotates with the wheels.

Brake linings The friction material which contacts the brake disc or drum to retard the vehicle's speed. The linings are bonded or riveted to the brake pads or shoes.

Brake pads The replaceable friction pads that pinch the brake disc when the brakes are applied. Brake pads consist of a friction material bonded or riveted to a rigid backing plate.

Brake shoe The crescent-shaped carrier to which the brake linings are mounted and which forces the lining against the rotating drum during braking.

Braking systems For more information on braking systems, consult the *Haynes Automotive Brake Manual*.

Breaker bar A long socket wrench handle providing greater leverage.

Bulkhead The insulated partition between the engine and the passenger compartment.

C

Caliper The non-rotating part of a disc-brake assembly that straddles the disc and carries the brake pads. The caliper also contains the hydraulic components that cause the pads to pinch the disc when the brakes are applied. A caliper is also a measuring tool that can be set to measure inside or outside dimensions of an object.

Camshaft A rotating shaft on which a series of cam lobes operate the valve mechanisms. The camshaft may be driven by gears, by sprockets and chain or by sprockets and a belt.

Canister A container in an evaporative emission control system; contains activated charcoal granules to trap vapours from the fuel system.



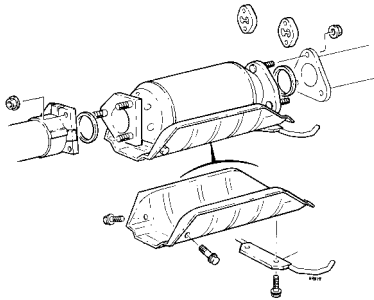
Canister

Carburettor A device which mixes fuel with air in the proper proportions to provide a desired power output from a spark ignition internal combustion engine.

Castellated Resembling the parapets along the top of a castle wall. For example, a castellated balljoint stud nut.

Castor In wheel alignment, the backward or forward tilt of the steering axis. Castor is positive when the steering axis is inclined rearward at the top.

Catalytic converter A silencer-like device in the exhaust system which converts certain pollutants in the exhaust gases into less harmful substances.



Catalytic converter

Circlip A ring-shaped clip used to prevent endwise movement of cylindrical parts and shafts. An internal circlip is installed in a groove in a housing; an external circlip fits into a groove on the outside of a cylindrical piece such as a shaft.

Clearance The amount of space between two parts. For example, between a piston and a cylinder, between a bearing and a journal, etc.

Coil spring A spiral of elastic steel found in various sizes throughout a vehicle, for example as a springing medium in the suspension and in the valve train.

Compression Reduction in volume, and increase in pressure and temperature, of a gas, caused by squeezing it into a smaller space.

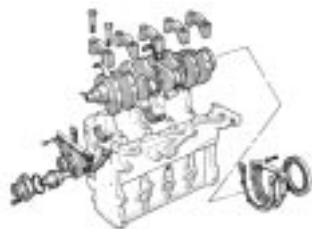
Compression ratio The relationship between cylinder volume when the piston is at top dead centre and cylinder volume when the piston is at bottom dead centre.

Constant velocity (CV) joint A type of universal joint that cancels out vibrations caused by driving power being transmitted through an angle.

Core plug A disc or cup-shaped metal device inserted in a hole in a casting through which core was removed when the casting was formed. Also known as a freeze plug or expansion plug.

Crankcase The lower part of the engine block in which the crankshaft rotates.

Crankshaft The main rotating member, or shaft, running the length of the crankcase, with offset "throws" to which the connecting rods are attached.



Crankshaft assembly

Crocodile clip See Alligator clip

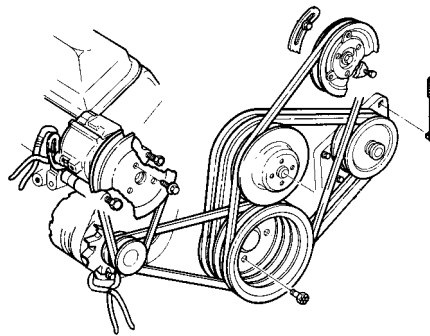
D

Diagnostic code Code numbers obtained by accessing the diagnostic mode of an engine management computer. This code can be used to determine the area in the system where a malfunction may be located.

Disc brake A brake design incorporating a rotating disc onto which brake pads are squeezed. The resulting friction converts the energy of a moving vehicle into heat.

Double-overhead cam (DOHC) An engine that uses two overhead camshafts, usually one for the intake valves and one for the exhaust valves.

Drivebelt(s) The belt(s) used to drive accessories such as the alternator, water pump, power steering pump, air conditioning compressor, etc. off the crankshaft pulley.



Accessory drivebelts

Driveshaft Any shaft used to transmit motion. Commonly used when referring to the axleshafts on a front wheel drive vehicle.

Drum brake A type of brake using a drum-shaped metal cylinder attached to the inner surface of the wheel. When the brake pedal is pressed, curved brake shoes with friction linings press against the inside of the drum to slow or stop the vehicle.

E

EGR valve A valve used to introduce exhaust gases into the intake air stream.

Electronic control unit (ECU) A computer which controls (for instance) ignition and fuel injection systems, or an anti-lock braking system. For more information refer to the *Haynes Automotive Electrical and Electronic Systems Manual*.

Electronic Fuel Injection (EFI) A computer controlled fuel system that distributes fuel through an injector located in each intake port of the engine.

Emergency brake A braking system, independent of the main hydraulic system, that can be used to slow or stop the vehicle if the primary brakes fail, or to hold the vehicle stationary even though the brake pedal isn't depressed. It usually consists of a hand lever that actuates either front or rear brakes mechanically through a series of cables and linkages. Also known as a handbrake or parking brake.

Endfloat The amount of lengthwise movement between two parts. As applied to a crankshaft, the distance that the crankshaft can move forward and back in the cylinder block.

Engine management system (EMS) A computer controlled system which manages the fuel injection and the ignition systems in an integrated fashion.

Exhaust manifold A part with several passages through which exhaust gases leave the engine combustion chambers and enter the exhaust pipe.

F

Fan clutch A viscous (fluid) drive coupling device which permits variable engine fan speeds in relation to engine speeds.

Feeler blade A thin strip or blade of hardened steel, ground to an exact thickness, used to check or measure clearances between parts.



Feeler blade

Firing order The order in which the engine cylinders fire, or deliver their power strokes, beginning with the number one cylinder.

Flywheel A heavy spinning wheel in which energy is absorbed and stored by means of momentum. On cars, the flywheel is attached to the crankshaft to smooth out firing impulses.

Free play The amount of travel before any action takes place. The "looseness" in a linkage, or an assembly of parts, between the initial application of force and actual movement. For example, the distance the brake pedal moves before the pistons in the master cylinder are actuated.

Fuse An electrical device which protects a circuit against accidental overload. The typical fuse contains a soft piece of metal which is calibrated to melt at a predetermined current flow (expressed as amps) and break the circuit.

Fusible link A circuit protection device consisting of a conductor surrounded by heat-resistant insulation. The conductor is smaller than the wire it protects, so it acts as the weakest link in the circuit. Unlike a blown fuse, a failed fusible link must frequently be cut from the wire for replacement.

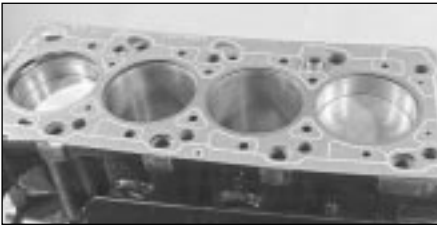
G

Gap The distance the spark must travel in jumping from the centre electrode to the side electrode in a spark plug. Also refers to the spacing between the points in a contact breaker assembly in a conventional points-type ignition, or to the distance between the reluctor or rotor and the pickup coil in an electronic ignition.



Adjusting spark plug gap

Gasket Any thin, soft material - usually cork, cardboard, asbestos or soft metal - installed between two metal surfaces to ensure a good seal. For instance, the cylinder head gasket seals the joint between the block and the cylinder head.



Gasket

Gauge An instrument panel display used to monitor engine conditions. A gauge with a movable pointer on a dial or a fixed scale is an analogue gauge. A gauge with a numerical readout is called a digital gauge.

H

Halfshaft A rotating shaft that transmits power from the final drive unit to a drive wheel, usually when referring to a live rear axle.

Harmonic balancer A device designed to reduce torsion or twisting vibration in the crankshaft. May be incorporated in the crankshaft pulley. Also known as a vibration damper.

Hone An abrasive tool for correcting small irregularities or differences in diameter in an engine cylinder, brake cylinder, etc.

Hydraulic tappet A tappet that utilises hydraulic pressure from the engine's lubrication system to maintain zero clearance (constant contact with both camshaft and valve stem). Automatically adjusts to variation in valve stem length. Hydraulic tappets also reduce valve noise.

I

Ignition timing The moment at which the spark plug fires, usually expressed in the number of crankshaft degrees before the piston reaches the top of its stroke.

Inlet manifold A tube or housing with passages through which flows the air-fuel mixture (carburettor vehicles and vehicles with throttle body injection) or air only (port fuel-injected vehicles) to the port openings in the cylinder head.

J

Jump start Starting the engine of a vehicle with a discharged or weak battery by attaching jump leads from the weak battery to a charged or helper battery.

L

Load Sensing Proportioning Valve (LSPV) A brake hydraulic system control valve that works like a proportioning valve, but also takes into consideration the amount of weight carried by the rear axle.

Locknut A nut used to lock an adjustment nut, or other threaded component, in place. For example, a locknut is employed to keep the adjusting nut on the rocker arm in position.

Lockwasher A form of washer designed to prevent an attaching nut from working loose.

M

MacPherson strut A type of front suspension system devised by Earle MacPherson at Ford of England. In its original form, a simple lateral link with the anti-roll bar creates the lower control arm. A long strut - an integral coil spring and shock absorber - is mounted between the body and the steering knuckle. Many modern so-called MacPherson strut systems use a conventional lower A-arm and don't rely on the anti-roll bar for location.

Multimeter An electrical test instrument with the capability to measure voltage, current and resistance.

N

NOx Oxides of Nitrogen. A common toxic pollutant emitted by petrol and diesel engines at higher temperatures.

O

Ohm The unit of electrical resistance. One volt applied to a resistance of one ohm will produce a current of one amp.

Ohmmeter An instrument for measuring electrical resistance.

O-ring A type of sealing ring made of a special rubber-like material; in use, the O-ring is compressed into a groove to provide the sealing action.

Overhead cam (ohc) engine An engine with the camshaft(s) located on top of the cylinder head(s).

Overhead valve (ohv) engine An engine with the valves located in the cylinder head, but with the camshaft located in the engine block.

Oxygen sensor A device installed in the engine exhaust manifold, which senses the oxygen content in the exhaust and converts this information into an electric current. Also called a Lambda sensor.

P

Phillips screw A type of screw head having a cross instead of a slot for a corresponding type of screwdriver.

Plastigage A thin strip of plastic thread, available in different sizes, used for measuring clearances. For example, a strip of Plastigage is laid across a bearing journal. The parts are assembled and dismantled; the width of the crushed strip indicates the clearance between journal and bearing.



Plastigage

Propeller shaft The long hollow tube with universal joints at both ends that carries power from the transmission to the differential on front-engined rear wheel drive vehicles.

Proportioning valve A hydraulic control valve which limits the amount of pressure to the rear brakes during panic stops to prevent wheel lock-up.

R

Rack-and-pinion steering A steering system with a pinion gear on the end of the steering shaft that mates with a rack (think of a geared wheel opened up and laid flat). When the steering wheel is turned, the pinion turns, moving the rack to the left or right. This movement is transmitted through the track rods to the steering arms at the wheels.

Radiator A liquid-to-air heat transfer device designed to reduce the temperature of the coolant in an internal combustion engine cooling system.

Refrigerant Any substance used as a heat transfer agent in an air-conditioning system. R-12 has been the principle refrigerant for many years; recently, however, manufacturers have begun using R-134a, a non-CFC substance that is considered less harmful to the ozone in the upper atmosphere.

Rocker arm A lever arm that rocks on a shaft or pivots on a stud. In an overhead valve engine, the rocker arm converts the upward movement of the pushrod into a downward movement to open a valve.

Rotor In a distributor, the rotating device inside the cap that connects the centre electrode and the outer terminals as it turns, distributing the high voltage from the coil secondary winding to the proper spark plug. Also, that part of an alternator which rotates inside the stator. Also, the rotating assembly of a turbocharger, including the compressor wheel, shaft and turbine wheel.

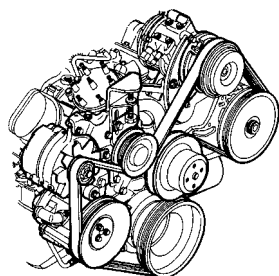
Runout The amount of wobble (in-and-out movement) of a gear or wheel as it's rotated. The amount a shaft rotates "out-of-true." The out-of-round condition of a rotating part.

S

Sealant A liquid or paste used to prevent leakage at a joint. Sometimes used in conjunction with a gasket.

Sealed beam lamp An older headlight design which integrates the reflector, lens and filaments into a hermetically-sealed one-piece unit. When a filament burns out or the lens cracks, the entire unit is simply replaced.

Serpentine drivebelt A single, long, wide accessory drivebelt that's used on some newer vehicles to drive all the accessories, instead of a series of smaller, shorter belts. Serpentine drivebelts are usually tensioned by an automatic tensioner.



Serpentine drivebelt

Shim Thin spacer, commonly used to adjust the clearance or relative positions between two parts. For example, shims inserted into or under bucket tappets control valve clearances. Clearance is adjusted by changing the thickness of the shim.

Slide hammer A special puller that screws into or hooks onto a component such as a shaft or bearing; a heavy sliding handle on the shaft bottoms against the end of the shaft to knock the component free.

Sprocket A tooth or projection on the periphery of a wheel, shaped to engage with a chain or drivebelt. Commonly used to refer to the sprocket wheel itself.

Starter inhibitor switch On vehicles with an automatic transmission, a switch that prevents starting if the vehicle is not in Neutral or Park.

Strut See MacPherson strut.

T

Tappet A cylindrical component which transmits motion from the cam to the valve stem, either directly or via a pushrod and rocker arm. Also called a cam follower.

Thermostat A heat-controlled valve that regulates the flow of coolant between the cylinder block and the radiator, so maintaining optimum engine operating temperature. A thermostat is also used in some air cleaners in which the temperature is regulated.

Thrust bearing The bearing in the clutch assembly that is moved in to the release levers by clutch pedal action to disengage the clutch. Also referred to as a release bearing.

Timing belt A toothed belt which drives the camshaft. Serious engine damage may result if it breaks in service.

Timing chain A chain which drives the camshaft.

Toe-in The amount the front wheels are closer together at the front than at the rear. On rear wheel drive vehicles, a slight amount of toe-in is usually specified to keep the front wheels running parallel on the road by offsetting other forces that tend to spread the wheels apart.

Toe-out The amount the front wheels are closer together at the rear than at the front. On front wheel drive vehicles, a slight amount of toe-out is usually specified.

Tools For full information on choosing and using tools, refer to the *Haynes Automotive Tools Manual*.

Tracer A stripe of a second colour applied to a wire insulator to distinguish that wire from another one with the same colour insulator.

Tune-up A process of accurate and careful adjustments and parts replacement to obtain the best possible engine performance.

Turbocharger A centrifugal device, driven by exhaust gases, that pressurises the intake air. Normally used to increase the power output from a given engine displacement, but can also be used primarily to reduce exhaust emissions (as on VW's "Umwelt" Diesel engine).

U

Universal joint or U-joint A double-pivoted connection for transmitting power from a driving to a driven shaft through an angle. A U-joint consists of two Y-shaped yokes and a cross-shaped member called the spider.

V

Valve A device through which the flow of liquid, gas, vacuum, or loose material in bulk may be started, stopped, or regulated by a movable part that opens, shuts, or partially obstructs one or more ports or passageways. A valve is also the movable part of such a device.

Valve clearance The clearance between the valve tip (the end of the valve stem) and the rocker arm or tappet. The valve clearance is measured when the valve is closed.

Vernier caliper A precision measuring instrument that measures inside and outside dimensions. Not quite as accurate as a micrometer, but more convenient.

Viscosity The thickness of a liquid or its resistance to flow.

Volt A unit for expressing electrical "pressure" in a circuit. One volt that will produce a current of one ampere through a resistance of one ohm.

W

Welding Various processes used to join metal items by heating the areas to be joined to a molten state and fusing them together. For more information refer to the *Haynes Automotive Welding Manual*.

Wiring diagram A drawing portraying the components and wires in a vehicle's electrical system, using standardised symbols. For more information refer to the *Haynes Automotive Electrical and Electronic Systems Manual*.

Note: References throughout this index relate to Chapter•page number

A

Accelerator cable - 4A•3, 4B•4
 Accelerator pedal - 4A•4, 4B•4
 Acknowledgements - 0•4
 Aerial - 12•17
 Air bag - 0•5, 12•20
 Air cleaner - 1•28, 4A•3, 4B•3, 6•11
 Air conditioning system - 1•18, 3•10, 3•11, 3•12, 3•13, 6•6
 Air inlet components - 4B•3, 4B•4
 Air mass meter - 6•6, 6•7
 Alarm - 12•18, 12•19
 Alternator - 5•6, 5•7
 Anti-lock braking system - 9•18, 9•19, 9•20
 Anti-roll bar - 10•7
 Anti-theft alarm system - 12•18, 12•19
 Antifreeze - 1•3, 1•11, 1•26, 1•27, 3•3
 Asbestos - 0•5
 ATF - 1•3, 1•14, 1•30
 Automatic choke - 4A•12, 4A•13
Automatic transmission - 2B•16, 2C•20, 2D•9, 2D•12, 7B•1 *et seq*, 12•7, 12•10
 Automatic transmission fluid - 1•3, 1•14, 1•30
 Auxiliary warning system - 12•21
 Axle - 10•10, 10•12

B

Backrest - 11•15
 Battery - 0•5, 1•12, 1•14, 5•2, 5•3
 Big-end bearings - 2D•25, 2D•28
 Bleeding brakes - 9•13
 Bleeding power-assisted steering - 10•16
 Body corrosion - REF•4
Body electrical system - 12•1 *et seq*
Bodywork and fittings - 11•1 *et seq*
 Bonnet - 1•24, 11•5, 11•6, 12•19
 Boot - 8•7, 8•8

Boot lid - 11•11, 12•19
 Brake backplate - 9•9
 Brake fluid - 1•3, 1•12, 1•31
Braking system - 1•23, 9•1 *et seq*, REF•1, REF•2, REF•3
 Bulbs - 12•7, 12•9
 Bumpers - 11•4, 11•5

C

Cables - 3•11, 4A•3, 4A•4, 4B•4, 7B•2, 8•2, 9•16, 11•6, 11•12, 11•13, 12•13
 Calipers - 9•3, 9•10
 Camshaft - 2B•8, 2C•12, 2D•19
 Camshaft position sensor - 6•6, 6•7
 Capacities - 1•3
 Carburettor - 4A•7, 4A•9, 4A•11, 4A•12, 4A•14, 4A•15
 Carpets - 11•2
 Cassette player - 12•16
 Catalytic converter - 6•12
 Central locking system - 11•13
 Centre console - 11•20
 Charcoal canister - 6•9
 Charging system - 5•6
 Choke - 4A•4, 4A•12, 4A•13
 Cigar lighter - 12•10, 12•13
 Clock - 12•10, 12•13
Clutch and driveshafts - 1•24, 8•1 *et seq*
 CO emissions (mixture) - REF•4
 Coil - 5•4
 Coil springs - 10•11
 Compact disc player - 12•16
 Compression test - 2A•3, 2B•4, 2C•5
 Compressor - 3•12
 Condenser - 3•12
 Connecting rods - 2D•20, 2D•23, 2D•28, 2D•29
 Console - 11•20
 Contents - 0•2

Coolant - 1•3, 1•11, 1•26, 1•27, 3•3
 Coolant pump - 3•7, 3•8
 Coolant temperature sensor - 3•6, 6•6, 6•7
 Cooling fan - 3•5, 3•6, 3•13
Cooling, heating and air conditioning systems - 1•28, 3•1 *et seq*
 Courtesy lights - 12•5, 12•9
 Crankcase - 2D•21
 Crankshaft - 2A•7, 2A•10, 2B•6, 2B•8, 2B•15, 2C•8, 2C•12, 2C•18, 2D•20, 2D•24, 2D•26
 Crankshaft speed/position sensor - 5•6, 6•6, 6•7
 Cushion - 11•15
 CV joint - 1•22
 CV joint gaiter - 8•7, 8•8
CVH engine - in-car engine repair procedures - 2B•1 *et seq*
 Cylinder block - 2D•21
 Cylinder head - 2A•4, 2A•5, 2A•6, 2B•4, 2B•11, 2C•6, 2C•15, 2D•14, 2D•16, 2D•17

D

De-ice switch - 3•13
 Dehydrator - 3•12
 Dents in bodywork - 11•3
 Depressurisation of fuel system - 4B•2
 Differential side gear fluid seals - 7B•3
 Differential side gear oil seals - 7A•4
 Dimensions - 0•6
 Direction indicators - 12•8, 12•11
 Discs - 9•6, 9•10
 Door - 1•24, 11•6 to 11•10, 11•14, 12•7, 12•19, REF•2
 Drivebelts - 1•15, 2B•16, 2C•20
 Driveshaft - 1•22, 8•5, 8•6, 8•7, 8•8, 8•9
 Drivetrain - 1•24
 Drums - 9•6

E

Earth fault - 12•4
 ECU (Electronic Control Unit) - 6•6, 6•7
 Electric shock - 0•5
 Electrical equipment - 1•24, REF•2
 Electrical fault finding - 12•3
 Electrical system - 1•14
 Electrolyte - 1•12
 Electronic control systems - 6•2
Emissions control systems - 6•1 *et seq*
Engine electrical systems - 5•1 *et seq*
 Engine management system - 4B•7, 4B•8
 Engine oil - 1•3, 1•10, 1•19
Engine removal and general engine overhaul procedures - 2D•1 *et seq*
 Environmental considerations - REF•8
 Evaporative emissions control (EVAP) system - 6•8
 Evaporator - 3•12
 Exhaust emission checks - REF•4
 Exhaust manifold - 2A•5, 2B•5, 2C•7
 Exhaust system - 1•23, 4A•15, 4B•15, REF•3
 Expansion tank - 3•6, 3•7

F

Facia - 11•20, 12•5
 Fan - 3•5, 3•6, 3•13
 Fast idle adjustment - 4A•7, 4A•12
Fault finding - 12•3, REF•9 *et seq*
 Fire - 0•5
 Float - 4A•8, 4A•12
 Fluid seals - 7B•3
 Flywheel - 2A•12, 2B•16, 2C•20
 Foglights - 12•8, 12•9, 12•11
 Footwell - 11•18
Fuel and exhaust systems - carburettor engines - 4A•1 *et seq*
Fuel and exhaust systems - fuel-injected engines - 4B•1 *et seq*
 Fuel and exhaust systems - REF•4
 Fuel cut-off switch - 4B•6
 Fuel filler pipe - 4A•6
 Fuel filter - 1•30
 Fuel gauge - 4A•6, 4B•6, 12•12
 Fuel hoses - 1•18
 Fuel injection system - 4B•7, 4B•8, 4B•9, 4B•11, 4B•13
 Fuel injector(s) - 4B•9, 4B•11, 4B•13
 Fuel level - 12•21
 Fuel pressure check - 4B•4, 4B•5, 4B•6
 Fuel pressure regulator - 4B•9, 4B•12, 4B•14
 Fuel pump - 4A•4, 4B•4, 4B•5
 Fuel rail - 4B•11, 4B•13
 Fuel tank - 4A•5, 4A•6, 4B•5
 Fuel trap - 4B•11
 Fume or gas intoxication - 0•5
 Fuses - 12•4

G

Gaiters - 1•22, 8•7, 8•8, 10•15
 Gashes in bodywork - 11•3
 Gear lever - 7A•3

Gear selector mechanism - 7B•2
 Gearbox - See Manual transmission
 Gearchange linkage - 7A•2, 7A•3
 Gearchange selector shaft oil seal - 7A•5
 Glass - 11•7, 11•8, 11•13
Glossary of technical terms - REF•17 *et seq*
 Glovebox - 12•10
 Grab handle - 11•19
 Grille - 11•21

H

Handbrake - 1•30, 9•15, 9•16, 12•6, REF•1
 Handles - 11•9, 11•10, 11•19
 Hazard warning light - 12•10
 HC emissions - REF•4
HCS engine - in-car engine repair procedures - 2A•1 *et seq*
 Headlight - 12•7, 12•10, 12•11
 Headlight washer - 1•12
 Heater - 3•2, 3•9, 3•10, 3•11, 12•6, 12•10
 Hood - 11•21, 11•22, 12•7
 Horn - 12•13
 HT leads - 1•26
 Hub bearings - 10•5, 10•8
 Hydraulic pipes and hoses - 9•13
 Hydraulic tappets - 2B•8, 2C•12
 Hydrofluoric acid - 0•5

I

Idle speed adjustment - 1•20, 1•21
 Idle speed control valve - 4B•13, 4B•14
 Ignition coil - 5•4
 Ignition module - 5•5
 Ignition switch - 12•5
 Ignition system - 5•3, 5•4
 Ignition timing - 5•5
 Indicators - 12•8, 12•11
 Information sensors - 6•5
 Injectors - 4B•9, 4B•11, 4B•13
 Inlet air temperature sensor - 6•6, 6•7
 Inlet manifold - 2A•4, 2B•5, 2C•6
 Instrument panel - 12•9, 12•12
 Instruments - 1•24
 Introduction to the Ford Escort and Orion - 0•4

J

Jacking - 0•7
 Joint mating faces and gaskets - REF•8
 Jump starting - 0•9

L

Leaf springs - 10•11
 Leaks - 0•10, 1•17
 Light units - 12•10
 Light-laden valve - 9•17, 9•18
 Load-apportioning valve - 9•20
 Locknuts, locktabs and washers - REF•8
 Locks - 11•6, 11•9, 11•11, 11•12, 11•13, 12•19
 Lower arm - 10•7
 Lubricants and fluids - 1•3
 Luggage area - 11•19, 12•5, 12•9, 12•17

M

Main bearings - 2D•25, 2D•26
 Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor - 6•6, 6•7, 6•8
 Manifolds - 2A•4, 2A•5, 2B•5, 2C•6, 2C•7
Manual transmission - 2A•11, 2B•16, 2C•20, 2D•9, 2D•12, 7A•1 *et seq*
 Manual transmission oil - 1•3, 1•21
 Master cylinder - 9•11
 Mirrors - 11•10, 11•11, 12•7, REF•1
 Mixture adjustment - 1•20, 1•21
 MOT test checks - REF•1
 Mountings - 2A•11, 2B•16, 2C•20

N

Needle valve - 4A•8, 4A•12
 Nozzles - 12•16
 Number plate lights - 12•9, 12•11

O

Oil - engine - 1•3, 1•10, 1•19
 Oil - manual transmission - 1•3, 1•21
 Oil filler cap - 1•29
 Oil filter - 1•19
 Oil pump - 2A•9, 2A•10, 2B•13, 2B•14, 2C•17
 Oil seals - 2A•10, 2B•8, 2B•15, 2C•12, 2C•18, 7A•4, 7B•3, REF•8
 Oil separator - 6•11
 Oxygen sensor - 6•6, 6•7, 6•8

P

Pads - 9•3, 9•9
 Parcel shelf - 11•18
 Parking light - 12•7, 12•11
 Partition panel - 11•19
 Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) - 12•19
 Pedals - 4A•4, 4B•4, 8•3, 9•12
 Piston rings - 2D•26
 Pistons - 2D•20, 2D•23, 2D•28, 2D•29
 Plastic components - 11•4
 Poisonous or irritant substances - 0•5
 Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system - 1•29, 6•11
 Power amplifier - 12•18
 Power steering fluid - 1•3, 1•12, 1•13
 Power steering pressure switch - 6•6, 6•7, 6•8
 Power-assisted steering - 10•15, 10•16
 Printed circuit - 12•12
 Pulse-air system - 6•9
 Purge solenoid valve - 6•9

Q

Quarter window - 11•8, 11•13

R

Radiator - 3•5, 3•6, 11•21
 Radio - 12•16
 Rear axle - 10•10, 10•12
 Rear light cluster - 12•8, 12•11
 Rear window - 11•14

Regulator (window) - 11•8
 Relays - 12•4
 Release bearing - 8•5
 Repair procedures - REF•8
 Reversing light switch - 7A•5
 Road test - 1•24
 Roadwheels - 1•22, 1•24
 Rocker arms - 2B•8
 Rocker cover - 2A•4, 2B•4
 Rocker gear - 2A•5
 Roll-over valve - 4A•6, 4B•6
Routine maintenance and servicing - 1•1
 et seq
 Bodywork and underframe - 11•2
 Upholstery and carpets - 11•2
 Respraying - 11•3
 Rubber gaiters - 1•22, 8•7, 8•8, 10•15
 Rust holes in bodywork - 11•3

S

Safety first! - 0•5
 Scalding - 0•5
 Scratches in bodywork - 11•3
 Screw threads and fastenings - REF•8
 Scuff plate - 11•19
 Seat belts - 1•15, 11•15, 11•16, 11•17,
 REF•2
 Seats - 11•15
 Selector - 12•10
 Selector cable - 7B•2
 Self-diagnosis system - 6•4
 Servo - 9•12, 9•15
 Shock absorbers - 10•11, REF•2, REF•3
 Shoes - 9•7, 9•15
 Sidelight - 12•7, 12•11
 Spare parts - REF•16
 Spark plugs - 1•25
 Speakers - 12•16
 Speedometer - 7A•4, 7A•5, 7B•2, 7B•3,
 12•12
 Speedometer cable - 12•13
 Spindle carrier - 10•4
 Springs - 10•11, REF•3
 Starter inhibitor switch - 7B•4, 12•7
 Starter motor - 5•10, 5•12
 Starting system - 5•10

Steering - 1•22, 1•24
 Steering angles - 10•17
 Steering column - 10•14, 10•15, 12•5
 Steering mechanism - REF•3
 Steering wheel - 10•13, REF•1
 Stop-light - 12•6
 Struts - 10•5, 10•6, 10•9, 11•12
 Subframe - 10•7
 Sump - 2A•9, 2B•12, 2C•16
 Sun visor - 11•19
 Sunroof - 11•14, 11•15
 Suspension - 1•22, 1•24, REF•3
Suspension and steering systems - 10•1 *et*
 seq, REF•2
 Switches - 3•6, 3•13, 4B•6, 6•6, 6•7, 6•8,
 7A•5, 7B•4, 12•5, 12•6, 12•7, 12•19,
 12•21

T

Tachometer - 12•12
 Tailgate - 11•12, 11•13, 11•14, 12•19
 Tappets - 2B•8, 2C•12, 2D•19
 Temperature gauge - 3•6, 12•12
 Thermostat - 3•3, 3•4
 Throttle housing - 4B•13
 Throttle kicker unit - 4A•8
 Throttle plate control motor - 4B•10
 Throttle position sensor - 6•6, 6•7
 Timing - 5•5
 Timing belt - 1•30, 2B•7, 2B•8, 2C•9,
 2C•10, 2C•11, 2C•12
 Timing chain - 2A•7, 2A•8
 Tools - REF•8
 Tools and working facilities - REF•4
 Top Dead Centre (TDC) for No 1 piston -
 2A•3, 2B•4, 2C•5
 Towing - 0•7
 Track rod - 10•17
 Trim mouldings - 11•14
 Trim panels - 11•6, 11•17, 11•18
 Tyres - 1•12, REF•4

U

Underframe - 11•2
 Upholstery - 11•2

V

Vacuum motor - 3•13
 Vacuum reservoir - 3•13
 Vacuum servo - 9•15
 Valve clearances - 1•19, 2A•4, 2B•3, 2C•4
 Valves - 2D•16, 2D•17
 Vehicle identification - REF•2, REF•16
 Vehicle speed sensor - 6•6, 6•7, 6•8
 Ventilation components - 3•9, 3•10
 Vents - 3•10
 Voltage regulator - 5•7

W

Warning lights - 12•9, 12•21
 Washer fluid - 12•21
 Washer pump - 12•15
 Washer system - 1•14, 12•15
 Water pump - 3•7, 3•8
 Weatherstrips - 11•14, 11•15
 Weekly checks - 1•10
 Weights - 0•6
 Wheel alignment - 10•17
 Wheel arch liners - 11•21
 Wheel bearings - REF•3
 Wheel cylinder - 9•8
 Wheel sensors - 9•19, 9•20
 Wheel changing - 0•7
 Wheels - REF•4
 Wheel bearings - 10•5
 Windows - 11•7, 11•8, 11•13, 12•6
 Windscreen - 11•13, REF•1
 Wiper arms - 12•13
 Wiper blades - 1•14
 Wiper motor - 12•14, 12•15
 Wipers - 12•6
 Wiring - 1•18
Wiring diagrams - 12•22 *et seq*

Z

Zetec engine - in-car engine repair
 procedures - 2C•1 *et seq*

Preserving Our Motoring Heritage



< The Model J Duesenberg Derham Tourster. Only eight of these magnificent cars were ever built – this is the only example to be found outside the United States of America

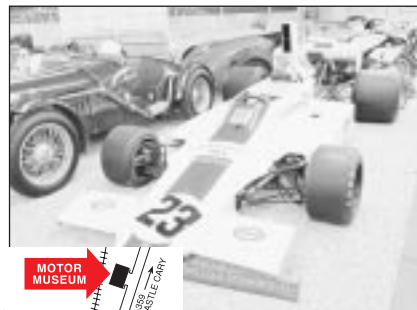
Almost every car you've ever loved, loathed or desired is gathered under one roof at the Haynes Motor Museum. Over 300 immaculately presented cars and motorbikes represent every aspect of our motoring heritage, from elegant reminders of bygone days, such as the superb Model J Duesenberg to curiosities like the bug-eyed BMW Isetta. There are also many old friends and flames. Perhaps you remember the 1959 Ford Popular that you did your courting in? The magnificent 'Red Collection' is a spectacle of classic sports cars including AC, Alfa Romeo, Austin Healey, Ferrari, Lamborghini, Maserati, MG, Riley, Porsche and Triumph.

A Perfect Day Out

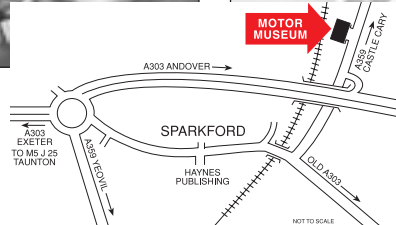
Each and every vehicle at the Haynes Motor Museum has played its part in the history and culture of Motoring. Today, they make a wonderful spectacle and a great day out for all the family. Bring the kids, bring Mum and Dad, but above all bring your camera to capture those golden memories for ever. You will also find an impressive array of motoring memorabilia, a comfortable 70 seat video cinema and one of the most extensive transport book shops in Britain. The Pit Stop Cafe serves everything from a cup of tea to wholesome, home-made meals or, if you prefer, you can enjoy the large picnic area nestled in the beautiful rural surroundings of Somerset.



> John Haynes O.B.E., Founder and Chairman of the museum at the wheel of a Haynes Light 12.



< Graham Hill's Lola Cosworth Formula 1 car next to a 1934 Riley Sports.



The Museum is situated on the A359 Yeovil to Frome road at Sparkford, just off the A303 in Somerset. It is about 40 miles south of Bristol, and 25 minutes drive from the M5 intersection at Taunton.

Open 9.30am - 5.30pm (10.00am - 4.00pm Winter) 7 days a week, except Christmas Day, Boxing Day and New Years Day
Special rates available for schools, coach parties and outings Charitable Trust No. 292048